

Free Component Library (FCL):
Reference guide.

Reference guide for FCL units.
Document version 2.6
November 2013

Michaël Van Canneyt

Contents

0.1	Overview	66
1	Reference for unit 'ascii85'	67
1.1	Used units	67
1.2	Overview	67
1.3	Constants, types and variables	67
1.3.1	Types	67
1.4	TASCII85DecoderStream	68
1.4.1	Description	68
1.4.2	Method overview	68
1.4.3	Property overview	68
1.4.4	TASCII85DecoderStream.Create	68
1.4.5	TASCII85DecoderStream.Decode	69
1.4.6	TASCII85DecoderStream.Close	69
1.4.7	TASCII85DecoderStream.ClosedP	69
1.4.8	TASCII85DecoderStream.Destroy	69
1.4.9	TASCII85DecoderStream.Read	70
1.4.10	TASCII85DecoderStream.Seek	70
1.4.11	TASCII85DecoderStream.BExpectBoundary	70
1.5	TASCII85EncoderStream	70
1.5.1	Description	70
1.5.2	Method overview	71
1.5.3	Property overview	71
1.5.4	TASCII85EncoderStream.Create	71
1.5.5	TASCII85EncoderStream.Destroy	71
1.5.6	TASCII85EncoderStream.Write	71
1.5.7	TASCII85EncoderStream.Width	72
1.5.8	TASCII85EncoderStream.Boundary	72
1.6	TASCII85RingBuffer	72
1.6.1	Description	72
1.6.2	Method overview	72

1.6.3	Property overview	72
1.6.4	TASCII85RingBuffer.Write	73
1.6.5	TASCII85RingBuffer.Read	73
1.6.6	TASCII85RingBuffer.FillCount	73
1.6.7	TASCII85RingBuffer.Size	73
2	Reference for unit 'AVL_Tree'	74
2.1	Used units	74
2.2	Overview	74
2.3	TAVLTree	74
2.3.1	Description	74
2.3.2	Method overview	75
2.3.3	Property overview	75
2.3.4	TAVLTree.Find	75
2.3.5	TAVLTree.FindKey	76
2.3.6	TAVLTree.FindSuccessor	76
2.3.7	TAVLTree.FindPrecessor	76
2.3.8	TAVLTree.FindLowest	76
2.3.9	TAVLTree.FindHighest	77
2.3.10	TAVLTree.FindNearest	77
2.3.11	TAVLTree.FindPointer	77
2.3.12	TAVLTree.FindLeftMost	77
2.3.13	TAVLTree.FindRightMost	78
2.3.14	TAVLTree.FindLeftMostKey	78
2.3.15	TAVLTree.FindRightMostKey	78
2.3.16	TAVLTree.FindLeftMostSameKey	78
2.3.17	TAVLTree.FindRightMostSameKey	79
2.3.18	TAVLTree.Add	79
2.3.19	TAVLTree.Delete	79
2.3.20	TAVLTree.Remove	79
2.3.21	TAVLTree.RemovePointer	80
2.3.22	TAVLTree.MoveDataLeftMost	80
2.3.23	TAVLTree.MoveDataRightMost	80
2.3.24	TAVLTree.Clear	80
2.3.25	TAVLTree.FreeAndClear	81
2.3.26	TAVLTree.FreeAndDelete	81
2.3.27	TAVLTree.ConsistencyCheck	81
2.3.28	TAVLTree.WriteReportToStream	81
2.3.29	TAVLTree.ReportAsString	82
2.3.30	TAVLTree.SetNodeManager	82

2.3.31	TAVLTree.Create	82
2.3.32	TAVLTree.Destroy	82
2.3.33	TAVLTree.GetEnumerator	83
2.3.34	TAVLTree.OnCompare	83
2.3.35	TAVLTree.Count	83
2.4	TAVLTreeNode	83
2.4.1	Description	83
2.4.2	Method overview	83
2.4.3	TAVLTreeNode.Clear	84
2.4.4	TAVLTreeNode.TreeDepth	84
2.5	TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator	84
2.5.1	Description	84
2.5.2	Method overview	84
2.5.3	Property overview	84
2.5.4	TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator.Create	84
2.5.5	TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator.MoveNext	85
2.5.6	TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator.Current	85
2.6	TAVLTreeNodeMemManager	85
2.6.1	Description	85
2.6.2	Method overview	85
2.6.3	Property overview	85
2.6.4	TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.DisposeNode	86
2.6.5	TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.NewNode	86
2.6.6	TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.Clear	86
2.6.7	TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.Create	86
2.6.8	TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.Destroy	86
2.6.9	TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.MinimumFreeNode	87
2.6.10	TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.MaximumFreeNodeRatio	87
2.6.11	TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.Count	87
2.7	TBaseAVLTreeNodeManager	87
2.7.1	Description	87
2.7.2	Method overview	88
2.7.3	TBaseAVLTreeNodeManager.DisposeNode	88
2.7.4	TBaseAVLTreeNodeManager.NewNode	88
3	Reference for unit 'base64'	89
3.1	Used units	89
3.2	Overview	89
3.3	Constants, types and variables	89
3.3.1	Types	89

3.4	Procedures and functions	90
3.4.1	DecodeStringBase64	90
3.4.2	EncodeStringBase64	90
3.5	EBase64DecodingException	90
3.5.1	Description	90
3.6	TBase64DecodingStream	90
3.6.1	Description	90
3.6.2	Method overview	91
3.6.3	Property overview	91
3.6.4	TBase64DecodingStream.Create	91
3.6.5	TBase64DecodingStream.Reset	91
3.6.6	TBase64DecodingStream.Read	91
3.6.7	TBase64DecodingStream.Seek	92
3.6.8	TBase64DecodingStream.EOF	92
3.6.9	TBase64DecodingStream.Mode	92
3.7	TBase64EncodingStream	93
3.7.1	Description	93
3.7.2	Method overview	93
3.7.3	TBase64EncodingStream.Destroy	93
3.7.4	TBase64EncodingStream.Flush	93
3.7.5	TBase64EncodingStream.Write	94
3.7.6	TBase64EncodingStream.Seek	94
4	Reference for unit 'BlowFish'	95
4.1	Used units	95
4.2	Overview	95
4.3	Constants, types and variables	95
4.3.1	Constants	95
4.3.2	Types	95
4.4	EBlowFishError	96
4.4.1	Description	96
4.5	TBlowFish	96
4.5.1	Description	96
4.5.2	Method overview	96
4.5.3	TBlowFish.Create	96
4.5.4	TBlowFish.Encrypt	97
4.5.5	TBlowFish.Decrypt	97
4.6	TBlowFishDeCryptStream	97
4.6.1	Description	97
4.6.2	Method overview	97

4.6.3	TBlowFishDeCryptStream.Read	97
4.6.4	TBlowFishDeCryptStream.Seek	98
4.7	TBlowFishEncryptStream	98
4.7.1	Description	98
4.7.2	Method overview	98
4.7.3	TBlowFishEncryptStream.Destroy	98
4.7.4	TBlowFishEncryptStream.Write	99
4.7.5	TBlowFishEncryptStream.Seek	99
4.7.6	TBlowFishEncryptStream.Flush	99
4.8	TBlowFishStream	100
4.8.1	Description	100
4.8.2	Method overview	100
4.8.3	Property overview	100
4.8.4	TBlowFishStream.Create	100
4.8.5	TBlowFishStream.Destroy	100
4.8.6	TBlowFishStream.BlowFish	101
5	Reference for unit 'bufstream'	102
5.1	Used units	102
5.2	Overview	102
5.3	Constants, types and variables	102
5.3.1	Constants	102
5.4	TBufStream	102
5.4.1	Description	102
5.4.2	Method overview	103
5.4.3	Property overview	103
5.4.4	TBufStream.Create	103
5.4.5	TBufStream.Destroy	103
5.4.6	TBufStream.Buffer	104
5.4.7	TBufStream.Capacity	104
5.4.8	TBufStream.BufferPos	104
5.4.9	TBufStream.BufferSize	104
5.5	TReadBufStream	105
5.5.1	Description	105
5.5.2	Method overview	105
5.5.3	TReadBufStream.Seek	105
5.5.4	TReadBufStream.Read	105
5.6	TWriteBufStream	106
5.6.1	Description	106
5.6.2	Method overview	106

5.6.3	TWriteBufStream.Destroy	106
5.6.4	TWriteBufStream.Seek	106
5.6.5	TWriteBufStream.Write	106
6	Reference for unit 'CacheCls'	108
6.1	Used units	108
6.2	Overview	108
6.3	Constants, types and variables	108
6.3.1	Resource strings	108
6.3.2	Types	108
6.4	ECacheError	109
6.4.1	Description	109
6.5	TCache	109
6.5.1	Description	109
6.5.2	Method overview	110
6.5.3	Property overview	110
6.5.4	TCache.Create	110
6.5.5	TCache.Destroy	110
6.5.6	TCache.Add	110
6.5.7	TCache.AddNew	111
6.5.8	TCache.FindSlot	111
6.5.9	TCache.IndexOf	111
6.5.10	TCache.Remove	112
6.5.11	TCache.Data	112
6.5.12	TCache.MRUSlot	112
6.5.13	TCache.LRUSlot	113
6.5.14	TCache.SlotCount	113
6.5.15	TCache.Slots	113
6.5.16	TCache.OnIsDataEqual	113
6.5.17	TCache.OnFreeSlot	114
7	Reference for unit 'contnrs'	115
7.1	Used units	115
7.2	Overview	115
7.3	Constants, types and variables	115
7.3.1	Constants	115
7.3.2	Types	116
7.4	Procedures and functions	119
7.4.1	RSHash	119
7.5	EDuplicate	119
7.5.1	Description	119

7.6	EKeyNotFound	119
7.6.1	Description	119
7.7	TBucketList	119
7.7.1	Description	119
7.7.2	Method overview	120
7.7.3	TBucketList.Create	120
7.8	TClassList	120
7.8.1	Description	120
7.8.2	Method overview	120
7.8.3	Property overview	120
7.8.4	TClassList.Add	121
7.8.5	TClassList.Extract	121
7.8.6	TClassList.Remove	121
7.8.7	TClassList.IndexOf	121
7.8.8	TClassList.First	122
7.8.9	TClassList.Last	122
7.8.10	TClassList.Insert	122
7.8.11	TClassList.Items	122
7.9	TComponentList	123
7.9.1	Description	123
7.9.2	Method overview	123
7.9.3	Property overview	123
7.9.4	TComponentList.Destroy	123
7.9.5	TComponentList.Add	123
7.9.6	TComponentList.Extract	124
7.9.7	TComponentList.Remove	124
7.9.8	TComponentList.IndexOf	124
7.9.9	TComponentList.First	125
7.9.10	TComponentList.Last	125
7.9.11	TComponentList.Insert	125
7.9.12	TComponentList.Items	125
7.10	TCustomBucketList	126
7.10.1	Description	126
7.10.2	Method overview	126
7.10.3	Property overview	126
7.10.4	TCustomBucketList.Destroy	126
7.10.5	TCustomBucketList.Clear	126
7.10.6	TCustomBucketList.Add	127
7.10.7	TCustomBucketList.Assign	127
7.10.8	TCustomBucketList.Exists	127

7.10.9	TCustomBucketList.Find	127
7.10.10	TCustomBucketList.ForEach	128
7.10.11	TCustomBucketList.Remove	128
7.10.12	TCustomBucketList.Data	128
7.11	TFPCustomHashTable	128
7.11.1	Description	128
7.11.2	Method overview	129
7.11.3	Property overview	129
7.11.4	TFPCustomHashTable.Create	129
7.11.5	TFPCustomHashTable.CreateWith	130
7.11.6	TFPCustomHashTable.Destroy	130
7.11.7	TFPCustomHashTable.ChangeTableSize	130
7.11.8	TFPCustomHashTable.Clear	130
7.11.9	TFPCustomHashTable.Delete	131
7.11.10	TFPCustomHashTable.Find	131
7.11.11	TFPCustomHashTable.IsEmpty	131
7.11.12	TFPCustomHashTable.HashFunction	131
7.11.13	TFPCustomHashTable.Count	132
7.11.14	TFPCustomHashTable.HashTableSize	132
7.11.15	TFPCustomHashTable.HashTable	132
7.11.16	TFPCustomHashTable.VoidSlots	132
7.11.17	TFPCustomHashTable.LoadFactor	133
7.11.18	TFPCustomHashTable.AVGChainLen	133
7.11.19	TFPCustomHashTable.MaxChainLength	133
7.11.20	TFPCustomHashTable.NumberOfCollisions	133
7.11.21	TFPCustomHashTable.Density	134
7.12	TFPDataHashTable	134
7.12.1	Description	134
7.12.2	Method overview	134
7.12.3	Property overview	134
7.12.4	TFPDataHashTable.Iterate	134
7.12.5	TFPDataHashTable.Add	135
7.12.6	TFPDataHashTable.Items	135
7.13	TFPHashList	135
7.13.1	Description	135
7.13.2	Method overview	136
7.13.3	Property overview	136
7.13.4	TFPHashList.Create	136
7.13.5	TFPHashList.Destroy	136
7.13.6	TFPHashList.Add	137

7.13.7	TFPHashList.Clear	137
7.13.8	TFPHashList.NameOfIndex	137
7.13.9	TFPHashList.HashOfIndex	137
7.13.10	TFPHashList.GetNextCollision	138
7.13.11	TFPHashList.Delete	138
7.13.12	TFPHashList.Error	138
7.13.13	TFPHashList.Expand	138
7.13.14	TFPHashList.Extract	139
7.13.15	TFPHashList.IndexOf	139
7.13.16	TFPHashList.Find	139
7.13.17	TFPHashList.FindIndexOf	139
7.13.18	TFPHashList.FindWithHash	140
7.13.19	TFPHashList.Rename	140
7.13.20	TFPHashList.Remove	140
7.13.21	TFPHashList.Pack	140
7.13.22	TFPHashList.ShowStatistics	141
7.13.23	TFPHashList.ForEachCall	141
7.13.24	TFPHashList.Capacity	141
7.13.25	TFPHashList.Count	141
7.13.26	TFPHashList.Items	142
7.13.27	TFPHashList.List	142
7.13.28	TFPHashList.Strs	142
7.14	TFPHashObject	142
7.14.1	Description	142
7.14.2	Method overview	143
7.14.3	Property overview	143
7.14.4	TFPHashObject.CreateNotOwned	143
7.14.5	TFPHashObject.Create	143
7.14.6	TFPHashObject.ChangeOwner	143
7.14.7	TFPHashObject.ChangeOwnerAndName	144
7.14.8	TFPHashObject.Rename	144
7.14.9	TFPHashObject.Name	144
7.14.10	TFPHashObject.Hash	144
7.15	TFPHashObjectList	145
7.15.1	Method overview	145
7.15.2	Property overview	145
7.15.3	TFPHashObjectList.Create	145
7.15.4	TFPHashObjectList.Destroy	145
7.15.5	TFPHashObjectList.Clear	146
7.15.6	TFPHashObjectList.Add	146

7.15.7	TFPHashObjectList.NameOfIndex	146
7.15.8	TFPHashObjectList.HashOfIndex	147
7.15.9	TFPHashObjectList.GetNextCollision	147
7.15.10	TFPHashObjectList.Delete	147
7.15.11	TFPHashObjectList.Expand	147
7.15.12	TFPHashObjectList.Extract	148
7.15.13	TFPHashObjectList.Remove	148
7.15.14	TFPHashObjectList.IndexOf	148
7.15.15	TFPHashObjectList.Find	148
7.15.16	TFPHashObjectList.FindIndexOf	149
7.15.17	TFPHashObjectList.FindWithHash	149
7.15.18	TFPHashObjectList.Rename	149
7.15.19	TFPHashObjectList.FindInstanceOf	149
7.15.20	TFPHashObjectList.Pack	150
7.15.21	TFPHashObjectList.ShowStatistics	150
7.15.22	TFPHashObjectList.ForEachCall	150
7.15.23	TFPHashObjectList.Capacity	150
7.15.24	TFPHashObjectList.Count	151
7.15.25	TFPHashObjectList.OwnsObjects	151
7.15.26	TFPHashObjectList.Items	151
7.15.27	TFPHashObjectList.List	151
7.16	TFPObjectHashTable	152
7.16.1	Description	152
7.16.2	Method overview	152
7.16.3	Property overview	152
7.16.4	TFPObjectHashTable.Create	152
7.16.5	TFPObjectHashTable.CreateWith	152
7.16.6	TFPObjectHashTable.Iterate	153
7.16.7	TFPObjectHashTable.Add	153
7.16.8	TFPObjectHashTable.Items	153
7.16.9	TFPObjectHashTable.OwnsObjects	153
7.17	TFPObjectList	154
7.17.1	Description	154
7.17.2	Method overview	154
7.17.3	Property overview	154
7.17.4	TFPObjectList.Create	154
7.17.5	TFPObjectList.Destroy	155
7.17.6	TFPObjectList.Clear	155
7.17.7	TFPObjectList.Add	155
7.17.8	TFPObjectList.Delete	156

7.17.9	TFPObjectList.Exchange	156
7.17.10	TFPObjectList.Expand	156
7.17.11	TFPObjectList.Extract	156
7.17.12	TFPObjectList.Remove	157
7.17.13	TFPObjectList.IndexOf	157
7.17.14	TFPObjectList.FindInstanceOf	157
7.17.15	TFPObjectList.Insert	158
7.17.16	TFPObjectList.First	158
7.17.17	TFPObjectList.Last	158
7.17.18	TFPObjectList.Move	158
7.17.19	TFPObjectList.Assign	159
7.17.20	TFPObjectList.Pack	159
7.17.21	TFPObjectList.Sort	159
7.17.22	TFPObjectList.ForEachCall	160
7.17.23	TFPObjectList.Capacity	160
7.17.24	TFPObjectList.Count	160
7.17.25	TFPObjectList.OwnsObjects	160
7.17.26	TFPObjectList.Items	161
7.17.27	TFPObjectList.List	161
7.18	TFPStringHashTable	161
7.18.1	Description	161
7.18.2	Method overview	161
7.18.3	Property overview	162
7.18.4	TFPStringHashTable.Iterate	162
7.18.5	TFPStringHashTable.Add	162
7.18.6	TFPStringHashTable.Items	162
7.19	THTCustomNode	162
7.19.1	Description	162
7.19.2	Method overview	162
7.19.3	Property overview	163
7.19.4	THTCustomNode.CreateWith	163
7.19.5	THTCustomNode.HasKey	163
7.19.6	THTCustomNode.Key	163
7.20	THTDataNode	164
7.20.1	Description	164
7.20.2	Property overview	164
7.20.3	THTDataNode.Data	164
7.21	THTObjectNode	164
7.21.1	Description	164
7.21.2	Property overview	164

7.21.3	THTObjectNode.Data	164
7.22	THTOwnedObjectNode	165
7.22.1	Description	165
7.22.2	Method overview	165
7.22.3	THTOwnedObjectNode.Destroy	165
7.23	THTStringNode	165
7.23.1	Description	165
7.23.2	Property overview	165
7.23.3	THTStringNode.Data	165
7.24	TObjectBucketList	166
7.24.1	Description	166
7.24.2	Method overview	166
7.24.3	Property overview	166
7.24.4	TObjectBucketList.Add	166
7.24.5	TObjectBucketList.Remove	166
7.24.6	TObjectBucketList.Data	167
7.25	TObjectList	167
7.25.1	Description	167
7.25.2	Method overview	167
7.25.3	Property overview	167
7.25.4	TObjectList.create	167
7.25.5	TObjectList.Add	168
7.25.6	TObjectList.Extract	168
7.25.7	TObjectList.Remove	168
7.25.8	TObjectList.IndexOf	169
7.25.9	TObjectList.FindInstanceOf	169
7.25.10	TObjectList.Insert	169
7.25.11	TObjectList.First	169
7.25.12	TObjectList.Last	170
7.25.13	TObjectList.OwnsObjects	170
7.25.14	TObjectList.Items	170
7.26	TObjectQueue	170
7.26.1	Method overview	170
7.26.2	TObjectQueue.Push	171
7.26.3	TObjectQueue.Pop	171
7.26.4	TObjectQueue.Peek	171
7.27	TObjectStack	171
7.27.1	Description	171
7.27.2	Method overview	172
7.27.3	TObjectStack.Push	172

7.27.4	TObjectStack.Pop	172
7.27.5	TObjectStack.Peek	172
7.28	TOrderedList	173
7.28.1	Description	173
7.28.2	Method overview	173
7.28.3	TOrderedList.Create	173
7.28.4	TOrderedList.Destroy	173
7.28.5	TOrderedList.Count	174
7.28.6	TOrderedList.AtLeast	174
7.28.7	TOrderedList.Push	174
7.28.8	TOrderedList.Pop	174
7.28.9	TOrderedList.Peek	175
7.29	TQueue	175
7.29.1	Description	175
7.30	TStack	175
7.30.1	Description	175
8	Reference for unit 'CustApp'	176
8.1	Used units	176
8.2	Overview	176
8.3	Constants, types and variables	176
8.3.1	Types	176
8.3.2	Variables	177
8.4	TCustomApplication	177
8.4.1	Description	177
8.4.2	Method overview	177
8.4.3	Property overview	178
8.4.4	TCustomApplication.Create	178
8.4.5	TCustomApplication.Destroy	178
8.4.6	TCustomApplication.HandleException	178
8.4.7	TCustomApplication.Initialize	179
8.4.8	TCustomApplication.Run	179
8.4.9	TCustomApplication.ShowException	179
8.4.10	TCustomApplication.Terminate	180
8.4.11	TCustomApplication.FindOptionIndex	180
8.4.12	TCustomApplication.GetOptionValue	180
8.4.13	TCustomApplication.HasOption	181
8.4.14	TCustomApplication.CheckOptions	181
8.4.15	TCustomApplication.GetEnvironmentList	182
8.4.16	TCustomApplication.Log	182

8.4.17	TCustomApplication.ExeName	182
8.4.18	TCustomApplication.HelpFile	183
8.4.19	TCustomApplication.Terminated	183
8.4.20	TCustomApplication.Title	183
8.4.21	TCustomApplication.OnException	184
8.4.22	TCustomApplication.ConsoleApplication	184
8.4.23	TCustomApplication.Location	184
8.4.24	TCustomApplication.Params	184
8.4.25	TCustomApplication.ParamCount	185
8.4.26	TCustomApplication.EnvironmentVariable	185
8.4.27	TCustomApplication.OptionChar	185
8.4.28	TCustomApplication.CaseSensitiveOptions	186
8.4.29	TCustomApplication.StopOnException	186
8.4.30	TCustomApplication.EventLogFilter	186
9	Reference for unit 'daemonapp'	187
9.1	Used units	187
9.2	Overview	187
9.3	Daemon application architecture	188
9.4	Constants, types and variables	188
9.4.1	Resource strings	188
9.4.2	Types	189
9.4.3	Variables	192
9.5	Procedures and functions	192
9.5.1	Application	192
9.5.2	DaemonError	193
9.5.3	RegisterDaemonApplicationClass	193
9.5.4	RegisterDaemonClass	193
9.5.5	RegisterDaemonMapper	193
9.6	EDaemon	194
9.6.1	Description	194
9.7	TCustomDaemon	194
9.7.1	Description	194
9.7.2	Method overview	194
9.7.3	Property overview	194
9.7.4	TCustomDaemon.LogMessage	194
9.7.5	TCustomDaemon.ReportStatus	195
9.7.6	TCustomDaemon.Definition	195
9.7.7	TCustomDaemon.DaemonThread	195
9.7.8	TCustomDaemon.Controller	196

9.7.9	TCustomDaemon.Status	196
9.7.10	TCustomDaemon.Logger	196
9.8	TCustomDaemonApplication	196
9.8.1	Description	196
9.8.2	Method overview	197
9.8.3	Property overview	197
9.8.4	TCustomDaemonApplication.Create	197
9.8.5	TCustomDaemonApplication.Destroy	197
9.8.6	TCustomDaemonApplication.ShowException	197
9.8.7	TCustomDaemonApplication.CreateDaemon	198
9.8.8	TCustomDaemonApplication.StopDaemons	198
9.8.9	TCustomDaemonApplication.InstallDaemons	198
9.8.10	TCustomDaemonApplication.RunDaemons	198
9.8.11	TCustomDaemonApplication.UnInstallDaemons	199
9.8.12	TCustomDaemonApplication.ShowHelp	199
9.8.13	TCustomDaemonApplication.CreateForm	199
9.8.14	TCustomDaemonApplication.OnRun	199
9.8.15	TCustomDaemonApplication.EventLog	200
9.8.16	TCustomDaemonApplication.GUIMainLoop	200
9.8.17	TCustomDaemonApplication.GuiHandle	200
9.8.18	TCustomDaemonApplication.RunMode	200
9.8.19	TCustomDaemonApplication.AutoRegisterMessageFile	201
9.9	TCustomDaemonMapper	201
9.9.1	Description	201
9.9.2	Method overview	201
9.9.3	Property overview	201
9.9.4	TCustomDaemonMapper.Create	201
9.9.5	TCustomDaemonMapper.Destroy	202
9.9.6	TCustomDaemonMapper.DaemonDefs	202
9.9.7	TCustomDaemonMapper.OnCreate	202
9.9.8	TCustomDaemonMapper.OnDestroy	202
9.9.9	TCustomDaemonMapper.OnRun	203
9.9.10	TCustomDaemonMapper.OnInstall	203
9.9.11	TCustomDaemonMapper.OnUnInstall	203
9.10	TDaemon	203
9.10.1	Description	203
9.10.2	Property overview	204
9.10.3	TDaemon.Definition	204
9.10.4	TDaemon.Status	204
9.10.5	TDaemon.OnStart	204

9.10.6	TDaemon.OnStop	205
9.10.7	TDaemon.OnPause	205
9.10.8	TDaemon.OnContinue	205
9.10.9	TDaemon.OnShutDown	206
9.10.10	TDaemon.OnExecute	206
9.10.11	TDaemon.BeforeInstall	206
9.10.12	TDaemon.AfterInstall	207
9.10.13	TDaemon.BeforeUnInstall	207
9.10.14	TDaemon.AfterUnInstall	207
9.10.15	TDaemon.OnControlCode	207
9.11	TDaemonApplication	208
9.11.1	Description	208
9.12	TDaemonController	208
9.12.1	Description	208
9.12.2	Method overview	208
9.12.3	Property overview	208
9.12.4	TDaemonController.Create	208
9.12.5	TDaemonController.Destroy	209
9.12.6	TDaemonController.StartService	209
9.12.7	TDaemonController.Main	209
9.12.8	TDaemonController.Controller	209
9.12.9	TDaemonController.ReportStatus	210
9.12.10	TDaemonController.Daemon	210
9.12.11	TDaemonController.Params	210
9.12.12	TDaemonController.LastStatus	210
9.12.13	TDaemonController.CheckPoint	211
9.13	TDaemonDef	211
9.13.1	Description	211
9.13.2	Method overview	211
9.13.3	Property overview	211
9.13.4	TDaemonDef.Create	211
9.13.5	TDaemonDef.Destroy	212
9.13.6	TDaemonDef.DaemonClass	212
9.13.7	TDaemonDef.Instance	212
9.13.8	TDaemonDef.DaemonClassName	212
9.13.9	TDaemonDef.Name	213
9.13.10	TDaemonDef.Description	213
9.13.11	TDaemonDef.DisplayName	213
9.13.12	TDaemonDef.RunArguments	213
9.13.13	TDaemonDef.Options	214

9.13.14	TDaemonDef.Enabled	214
9.13.15	TDaemonDef.WinBindings	214
9.13.16	TDaemonDef.OnCreateInstance	214
9.13.17	TDaemonDef.LogStatusReport	215
9.14	TDaemonDefs	215
9.14.1	Description	215
9.14.2	Method overview	215
9.14.3	Property overview	215
9.14.4	TDaemonDefs.Create	215
9.14.5	TDaemonDefs.IndexOfDaemonDef	216
9.14.6	TDaemonDefs.FindDaemonDef	216
9.14.7	TDaemonDefs.DaemonDefByName	216
9.14.8	TDaemonDefs.Daemons	216
9.15	TDaemonMapper	217
9.15.1	Description	217
9.15.2	Method overview	217
9.15.3	TDaemonMapper.Create	217
9.15.4	TDaemonMapper.CreateNew	217
9.16	TDaemonThread	218
9.16.1	Description	218
9.16.2	Method overview	218
9.16.3	Property overview	218
9.16.4	TDaemonThread.Create	218
9.16.5	TDaemonThread.Execute	218
9.16.6	TDaemonThread.CheckControlMessage	219
9.16.7	TDaemonThread.StopDaemon	219
9.16.8	TDaemonThread.PauseDaemon	219
9.16.9	TDaemonThread.ContinueDaemon	219
9.16.10	TDaemonThread.ShutDownDaemon	220
9.16.11	TDaemonThread.InterrogateDaemon	220
9.16.12	TDaemonThread.Daemon	220
9.17	TDependencies	220
9.17.1	Description	220
9.17.2	Method overview	220
9.17.3	Property overview	221
9.17.4	TDependencies.Create	221
9.17.5	TDependencies.Items	221
9.18	TDependency	221
9.18.1	Description	221
9.18.2	Method overview	221

9.18.3	Property overview	221
9.18.4	TDependency.Assign	222
9.18.5	TDependency.Name	222
9.18.6	TDependency.IsGroup	222
9.19	TWinBindings	222
9.19.1	Description	222
9.19.2	Method overview	222
9.19.3	Property overview	223
9.19.4	TWinBindings.Create	223
9.19.5	TWinBindings.Destroy	223
9.19.6	TWinBindings.Assign	223
9.19.7	TWinBindings.ErrCode	223
9.19.8	TWinBindings.Win32ErrCode	224
9.19.9	TWinBindings.Dependencies	224
9.19.10	TWinBindings.GroupName	224
9.19.11	TWinBindings.Password	225
9.19.12	TWinBindings.UserName	225
9.19.13	TWinBindings.StartType	225
9.19.14	TWinBindings.WaitHint	225
9.19.15	TWinBindings.IDTag	226
9.19.16	TWinBindings.ServiceType	226
9.19.17	TWinBindings.ErrorSeverity	226
10	Reference for unit 'db'	227
10.1	Used units	227
10.2	Overview	227
10.3	Constants, types and variables	227
10.3.1	Constants	227
10.3.2	Types	228
10.4	Procedures and functions	241
10.4.1	BuffersEqual	241
10.4.2	DatabaseError	242
10.4.3	DatabaseErrorFmt	242
10.4.4	DateTimeRecToDateTime	242
10.4.5	DateTimeToDateTimeRec	243
10.4.6	DisposeMem	243
10.4.7	ExtractFieldName	243
10.4.8	SkipComments	243
10.5	EDatabaseError	244
10.5.1	Description	244

10.6	EUpdateError	244
10.6.1	Description	244
10.6.2	Method overview	244
10.6.3	Property overview	244
10.6.4	EUpdateError.Create	244
10.6.5	EUpdateError.Destroy	245
10.6.6	EUpdateError.Context	245
10.6.7	EUpdateError.ErrorCode	245
10.6.8	EUpdateError.OriginalException	245
10.6.9	EUpdateError.PreviousError	246
10.7	IProviderSupport	246
10.7.1	Method overview	246
10.7.2	IProviderSupport.PSEndTransaction	246
10.7.3	IProviderSupport.PSExecute	246
10.7.4	IProviderSupport.PSExecuteStatement	247
10.7.5	IProviderSupport.PSGetAttributes	247
10.7.6	IProviderSupport.PSGetCommandText	247
10.7.7	IProviderSupport.PSGetCommandType	247
10.7.8	IProviderSupport.PSGetDefaultOrder	247
10.7.9	IProviderSupport.PSGetIndexDefs	247
10.7.10	IProviderSupport.PSGetKeyFields	247
10.7.11	IProviderSupport.PSGetParams	247
10.7.12	IProviderSupport.PSGetQuoteChar	247
10.7.13	IProviderSupport.PSGetTableName	248
10.7.14	IProviderSupport.PSGetUpdateException	248
10.7.15	IProviderSupport.PSInTransaction	248
10.7.16	IProviderSupport.PSIsSQLBased	248
10.7.17	IProviderSupport.PSIsSQLSupported	248
10.7.18	IProviderSupport.PSReset	248
10.7.19	IProviderSupport.PSSetCommandText	248
10.7.20	IProviderSupport.PSSetParams	248
10.7.21	IProviderSupport.PSStartTransaction	248
10.7.22	IProviderSupport.PSUpdateRecord	249
10.8	TAutoIncField	249
10.8.1	Description	249
10.8.2	Method overview	249
10.8.3	TAutoIncField.Create	249
10.9	TBCDField	249
10.9.1	Description	249
10.9.2	Method overview	250

10.9.3	Property overview	250
10.9.4	TBCDField.Create	250
10.9.5	TBCDField.CheckRange	250
10.9.6	TBCDField.Value	250
10.9.7	TBCDField.Precision	251
10.9.8	TBCDField.Currency	251
10.9.9	TBCDField.MaxValue	251
10.9.10	TBCDField.MinValue	252
10.9.11	TBCDField.Size	252
10.10	TBinaryField	252
10.10.1	Description	252
10.10.2	Method overview	252
10.10.3	Property overview	252
10.10.4	TBinaryField.Create	253
10.10.5	TBinaryField.Size	253
10.11	TBlobField	253
10.11.1	Description	253
10.11.2	Method overview	253
10.11.3	Property overview	254
10.11.4	TBlobField.Create	254
10.11.5	TBlobField.Clear	254
10.11.6	TBlobField.IsBlob	254
10.11.7	TBlobField.LoadFromFile	254
10.11.8	TBlobField.LoadFromStream	255
10.11.9	TBlobField.SaveToFile	255
10.11.10	TBlobField.SaveToStream	255
10.11.11	TBlobField.SetFieldType	256
10.11.12	TBlobField.BlobSize	256
10.11.13	TBlobField.Modified	256
10.11.14	TBlobField.Value	256
10.11.15	TBlobField.Transliterate	257
10.11.16	TBlobField.BlobType	257
10.11.17	TBlobField.Size	257
10.12	TBooleanField	257
10.12.1	Description	257
10.12.2	Method overview	258
10.12.3	Property overview	258
10.12.4	TBooleanField.Create	258
10.12.5	TBooleanField.Value	258
10.12.6	TBooleanField.DisplayValues	258

10.13 TBytesField	259
10.13.1 Description	259
10.13.2 Method overview	259
10.13.3 TBytesField.Create	259
10.14 TCheckConstraint	259
10.14.1 Description	259
10.14.2 Method overview	260
10.14.3 Property overview	260
10.14.4 TCheckConstraint.Assign	260
10.14.5 TCheckConstraint.CustomConstraint	260
10.14.6 TCheckConstraint.ErrorMessage	260
10.14.7 TCheckConstraint.FromDictionary	261
10.14.8 TCheckConstraint.ImportedConstraint	261
10.15 TCheckConstraints	261
10.15.1 Description	261
10.15.2 Method overview	261
10.15.3 Property overview	261
10.15.4 TCheckConstraints.Create	262
10.15.5 TCheckConstraints.Add	262
10.15.6 TCheckConstraints.Items	262
10.16 TCurrencyField	262
10.16.1 Description	262
10.16.2 Method overview	263
10.16.3 Property overview	263
10.16.4 TCurrencyField.Create	263
10.16.5 TCurrencyField.Currency	263
10.17 TCustomConnection	263
10.17.1 Description	263
10.17.2 Method overview	263
10.17.3 Property overview	264
10.17.4 TCustomConnection.Close	264
10.17.5 TCustomConnection.Destroy	264
10.17.6 TCustomConnection.Open	264
10.17.7 TCustomConnection.DataSetCount	265
10.17.8 TCustomConnection.DataSets	265
10.17.9 TCustomConnection.Connected	265
10.17.10 TCustomConnection.LoginPrompt	266
10.17.11 TCustomConnection.AfterConnect	266
10.17.12 TCustomConnection.AfterDisconnect	266
10.17.13 TCustomConnection.BeforeConnect	266

10.17.14	CustomConnection.BeforeDisconnect	267
10.17.15	CustomConnection.OnLogin	267
10.18	TDatabase	267
10.18.1	Description	267
10.18.2	Method overview	268
10.18.3	Property overview	268
10.18.4	TDatabase.Create	268
10.18.5	TDatabase.Destroy	268
10.18.6	TDatabase.CloseDataSets	268
10.18.7	TDatabase.CloseTransactions	269
10.18.8	TDatabase.StartTransaction	269
10.18.9	TDatabase.EndTransaction	269
10.18.10	TDatabase.TransactionCount	269
10.18.11	TDatabase.Transactions	270
10.18.12	TDatabase.Directory	270
10.18.13	TDatabase.IsSQLBased	270
10.18.14	TDatabase.Connected	271
10.18.15	TDatabase.DatabaseName	271
10.18.16	TDatabase.KeepConnection	271
10.18.17	TDatabase.Params	271
10.19	TDataLink	272
10.19.1	Description	272
10.19.2	Method overview	272
10.19.3	Property overview	272
10.19.4	TDataLink.Create	272
10.19.5	TDataLink.Destroy	273
10.19.6	TDataLink.Edit	273
10.19.7	TDataLink.UpdateRecord	273
10.19.8	TDataLink.ExecuteAction	273
10.19.9	TDataLink.UpdateAction	274
10.19.10	TDataLink.Active	274
10.19.11	TDataLink.ActiveRecord	274
10.19.12	TDataLink.BOF	274
10.19.13	TDataLink.BufferCount	275
10.19.14	TDataLink.DataSet	275
10.19.15	TDataLink.DataSource	275
10.19.16	TDataLink.DataSourceFixed	275
10.19.17	TDataLink.Editing	276
10.19.18	TDataLink.Eof	276
10.19.19	TDataLink.ReadOnly	276

10.19.20	TDataLink.RecordCount	276
10.20	TDataSet	277
10.20.1	Description	277
10.20.2	Method overview	279
10.20.3	Property overview	280
10.20.4	TDataSet.Create	281
10.20.5	TDataSet.Destroy	281
10.20.6	TDataSet.ActiveBuffer	281
10.20.7	TDataSet.GetFieldData	281
10.20.8	TDataSet.SetFieldData	282
10.20.9	TDataSet.Append	282
10.20.10	TDataSet.AppendRecord	282
10.20.11	TDataSet.BookmarkValid	283
10.20.12	TDataSet.Cancel	283
10.20.13	TDataSet.CheckBrowseMode	283
10.20.14	TDataSet.ClearFields	283
10.20.15	TDataSet.Close	284
10.20.16	TDataSet.ControlsDisabled	284
10.20.17	TDataSet.CompareBookmarks	284
10.20.18	TDataSet.CreateBlobStream	285
10.20.19	TDataSet.CursorPosChanged	285
10.20.20	TDataSet.DataConvert	285
10.20.21	TDataSet.Delete	285
10.20.22	TDataSet.DisableControls	286
10.20.23	TDataSet.Edit	286
10.20.24	TDataSet.EnableControls	287
10.20.25	TDataSet.FieldByName	287
10.20.26	TDataSet.FindField	287
10.20.27	TDataSet.FindFirst	288
10.20.28	TDataSet.FindLast	288
10.20.29	TDataSet.FindNext	288
10.20.30	TDataSet.FindPrior	288
10.20.31	TDataSet.First	289
10.20.32	TDataSet.FreeBookmark	289
10.20.33	TDataSet.GetBookmark	289
10.20.34	TDataSet.GetCurrentRecord	290
10.20.35	TDataSet.GetFieldList	290
10.20.36	TDataSet.GetFieldNames	290
10.20.37	TDataSet.GotoBookmark	290
10.20.38	TDataSet.Insert	291

10.20.39	DataSet.InsertRecord	291
10.20.40	DataSet.IsEmpty	291
10.20.41	DataSet.IsLinkedTo	291
10.20.42	DataSet.IsSequenced	292
10.20.43	DataSet.Last	292
10.20.44	DataSet.Locate	292
10.20.45	DataSet.Lookup	293
10.20.46	DataSet.MoveBy	293
10.20.47	DataSet.Next	293
10.20.48	DataSet.Open	294
10.20.49	DataSet.Post	294
10.20.50	DataSet.Prior	295
10.20.51	DataSet.Refresh	295
10.20.52	DataSet.Resync	295
10.20.53	DataSet.SetFields	295
10.20.54	DataSet.Translate	296
10.20.55	DataSet.UpdateCursorPos	296
10.20.56	DataSet.UpdateRecord	296
10.20.57	DataSet.UpdateStatus	297
10.20.58	DataSet.BlockReadSize	297
10.20.59	DataSet.BOF	297
10.20.60	DataSet.Bookmark	297
10.20.61	DataSet.CanModify	298
10.20.62	DataSet.DataSource	298
10.20.63	DataSet.DefaultFields	299
10.20.64	DataSet.EOF	299
10.20.65	DataSet.FieldCount	300
10.20.66	DataSet.FieldDefs	300
10.20.67	DataSet.Found	300
10.20.68	DataSet.Modified	301
10.20.69	DataSet.IsUniDirectional	301
10.20.70	DataSet.RecordCount	301
10.20.71	DataSet.RecNo	302
10.20.72	DataSet.RecordSize	302
10.20.73	DataSet.State	302
10.20.74	DataSet.Fields	303
10.20.75	DataSet.FieldValues	303
10.20.76	DataSet.Filter	303
10.20.77	DataSet.Filtered	304
10.20.78	DataSet.FilterOptions	304

10.20.79	TDataset.Active	304
10.20.80	TDataset.AutoCalcFields	305
10.20.81	TDataset.BeforeOpen	305
10.20.82	TDataset.AfterOpen	306
10.20.83	TDataset.BeforeClose	306
10.20.84	TDataset.AfterClose	306
10.20.85	TDataset.BeforeInsert	306
10.20.86	TDataset.AfterInsert	307
10.20.87	TDataset.BeforeEdit	307
10.20.88	TDataset.AfterEdit	307
10.20.89	TDataset.BeforePost	308
10.20.90	TDataset.AfterPost	308
10.20.91	TDataset.BeforeCancel	308
10.20.92	TDataset.AfterCancel	309
10.20.93	TDataset.BeforeDelete	309
10.20.94	TDataset.AfterDelete	309
10.20.95	TDataset.BeforeScroll	309
10.20.96	TDataset.AfterScroll	310
10.20.97	TDataset.BeforeRefresh	310
10.20.98	TDataset.AfterRefresh	310
10.20.99	TDataset.OnCalcFields	311
10.20.100	TDataset.OnDeleteError	311
10.20.101	TDataset.OnEditError	312
10.20.102	TDataset.OnFilterRecord	312
10.20.103	TDataset.OnNewRecord	312
10.20.104	TDataset.OnPostError	313
10.21	TDatasource	313
10.21.1	Description	313
10.21.2	Method overview	313
10.21.3	Property overview	314
10.21.4	TDatasource.Create	314
10.21.5	TDatasource.Destroy	314
10.21.6	TDatasource.Edit	314
10.21.7	TDatasource.IsLinkedTo	315
10.21.8	TDatasource.State	315
10.21.9	TDatasource.AutoEdit	315
10.21.10	TDatasource.DatasSet	315
10.21.11	TDatasource.Enabled	316
10.21.12	TDatasource.OnStateChange	316
10.21.13	TDatasource.OnDataChange	316

10.21.14TDataSource.OnUpdateData	317
10.22TDateField	317
10.22.1 Description	317
10.22.2 Method overview	317
10.22.3 TDateField.Create	317
10.23TDateTimeField	317
10.23.1 Description	317
10.23.2 Method overview	318
10.23.3 Property overview	318
10.23.4 TDateTimeField.Create	318
10.23.5 TDateTimeField.Value	318
10.23.6 TDateTimeField.DisplayFormat	318
10.23.7 TDateTimeField.EditMask	319
10.24TDBDataset	319
10.24.1 Description	319
10.24.2 Method overview	319
10.24.3 Property overview	319
10.24.4 TDBDataset.destroy	320
10.24.5 TDBDataset.DataBase	320
10.24.6 TDBDataset.Transaction	320
10.25TDBTransaction	320
10.25.1 Description	320
10.25.2 Method overview	321
10.25.3 Property overview	321
10.25.4 TDBTransaction.Create	321
10.25.5 TDBTransaction.destroy	321
10.25.6 TDBTransaction.CloseDataSets	321
10.25.7 TDBTransaction.DataBase	322
10.25.8 TDBTransaction.Active	322
10.26TDefCollection	322
10.26.1 Description	322
10.26.2 Method overview	322
10.26.3 Property overview	322
10.26.4 TDefCollection.create	323
10.26.5 TDefCollection.Find	323
10.26.6 TDefCollection.GetItemNames	323
10.26.7 TDefCollection.IndexOf	323
10.26.8 TDefCollection.Dataset	324
10.26.9 TDefCollection.Updated	324
10.27TDetailDataLink	324

10.27.1 Description	324
10.27.2 Property overview	324
10.27.3 TDetailDataLink.DetailDataSet	324
10.28 TField	325
10.28.1 Description	325
10.28.2 Method overview	325
10.28.3 Property overview	327
10.28.4 TField.Create	328
10.28.5 TField.Destroy	328
10.28.6 TField.Assign	328
10.28.7 TField.AssignValue	328
10.28.8 TField.Clear	329
10.28.9 TField.FocusControl	329
10.28.10 TField.GetData	329
10.28.11 TField.IsBlob	330
10.28.12 TField.IsValidChar	330
10.28.13 TField.RefreshLookupList	330
10.28.14 TField.SetData	330
10.28.15 TField.SetFieldType	331
10.28.16 TField.Validate	331
10.28.17 TField.AsBCD	331
10.28.18 TField.AsBoolean	332
10.28.19 TField.AsBytes	332
10.28.20 TField.AsCurrency	332
10.28.21 TField.AsDateTime	332
10.28.22 TField.AsFloat	333
10.28.23 TField.AsLongint	333
10.28.24 TField.AsLargeInt	333
10.28.25 TField.AsInteger	334
10.28.26 TField.AsString	334
10.28.27 TField.AsWideString	334
10.28.28 TField.AsVariant	335
10.28.29 TField.AttributeSet	335
10.28.30 TField.Calculated	335
10.28.31 TField.CanModify	336
10.28.32 TField.CurValue	336
10.28.33 TField.DataSet	336
10.28.34 TField.DataSize	336
10.28.35 TField.DataType	337
10.28.36 TField.DisplayName	337

10.28.37	Field.DisplayText	337
10.28.38	Field.EditMask	337
10.28.39	Field.EditMaskPtr	338
10.28.40	Field.FieldNo	338
10.28.41	Field.IsIndexField	338
10.28.42	Field.IsNull	339
10.28.43	Field.Lookup	339
10.28.44	Field.NewValue	339
10.28.45	Field.Offset	339
10.28.46	Field.Size	340
10.28.47	Field.Text	340
10.28.48	Field.ValidChars	340
10.28.49	Field.Value	341
10.28.50	Field.OldValue	341
10.28.51	Field.LookupList	341
10.28.52	Field.Alignment	342
10.28.53	Field.CustomConstraint	342
10.28.54	Field.ConstraintErrorMessage	342
10.28.55	Field.DefaultExpression	343
10.28.56	Field.DisplayLabel	343
10.28.57	Field.DisplayWidth	343
10.28.58	Field.FieldKind	343
10.28.59	Field.FieldName	344
10.28.60	Field.HasConstraints	344
10.28.61	Field.Index	344
10.28.62	Field.ImportedConstraint	344
10.28.63	Field.KeyFields	345
10.28.64	Field.LookupCache	345
10.28.65	Field.LookupDataSet	345
10.28.66	Field.LookupKeyFields	346
10.28.67	Field.LookupResultField	346
10.28.68	Field.Origin	346
10.28.69	Field.ProviderFlags	346
10.28.70	Field.ReadOnly	347
10.28.71	Field.Required	347
10.28.72	Field.Visible	347
10.28.73	Field.OnChange	348
10.28.74	Field.OnGetText	348
10.28.75	Field.OnSetText	348
10.28.76	Field.OnValidate	348

10.29 TFieldDef	349
10.29.1 Description	349
10.29.2 Method overview	349
10.29.3 Property overview	349
10.29.4 TFieldDef.Create	349
10.29.5 TFieldDef.Destroy	350
10.29.6 TFieldDef.Assign	350
10.29.7 TFieldDef.CreateField	350
10.29.8 TFieldDef.FieldClass	351
10.29.9 TFieldDef.FieldNo	351
10.29.10 TFieldDef.InternalCalcField	351
10.29.11 TFieldDef.Required	351
10.29.12 TFieldDef.Attributes	352
10.29.13 TFieldDef.DataType	352
10.29.14 TFieldDef.Precision	352
10.29.15 TFieldDef.Size	352
10.30 TFieldDefs	353
10.30.1 Description	353
10.30.2 Method overview	353
10.30.3 Property overview	353
10.30.4 TFieldDefs.Create	353
10.30.5 TFieldDefs.Add	353
10.30.6 TFieldDefs.AddFieldDef	354
10.30.7 TFieldDefs.Assign	354
10.30.8 TFieldDefs.Find	354
10.30.9 TFieldDefs.Update	354
10.30.10 TFieldDefs.MakeNameUnique	355
10.30.11 TFieldDefs.HiddenFields	355
10.30.12 TFieldDefs.Items	355
10.31 TFields	355
10.31.1 Description	355
10.31.2 Method overview	356
10.31.3 Property overview	356
10.31.4 TFields.Create	356
10.31.5 TFields.Destroy	356
10.31.6 TFields.Add	356
10.31.7 TFields.CheckFieldName	357
10.31.8 TFields.CheckFieldNames	357
10.31.9 TFields.Clear	357
10.31.10 TFields.FindField	358

10.31.11	Fields.FieldName	358
10.31.12	Fields.FieldByNumber	358
10.31.13	Fields.GetEnumerator	358
10.31.14	Fields.GetFieldNames	359
10.31.15	Fields.IndexOf	359
10.31.16	Fields.Remove	359
10.31.17	Fields.Count	359
10.31.18	Fields.Dataset	360
10.31.19	Fields.Fields	360
10.32	TFieldsEnumerator	360
10.32.1	Description	360
10.32.2	Method overview	361
10.32.3	Property overview	361
10.32.4	TFieldsEnumerator.Create	361
10.32.5	TFieldsEnumerator.MoveNext	361
10.32.6	TFieldsEnumerator.Current	361
10.33	TFloatField	362
10.33.1	Description	362
10.33.2	Method overview	362
10.33.3	Property overview	362
10.33.4	TFloatField.Create	362
10.33.5	TFloatField.CheckRange	362
10.33.6	TFloatField.Value	363
10.33.7	TFloatField.Currency	363
10.33.8	TFloatField.MaxValue	363
10.33.9	TFloatField.MinValue	364
10.33.10	TFloatField.Precision	364
10.34	TFMTBCDField	364
10.34.1	Method overview	364
10.34.2	Property overview	364
10.34.3	TFMTBCDField.Create	364
10.34.4	TFMTBCDField.CheckRange	365
10.34.5	TFMTBCDField.Value	365
10.34.6	TFMTBCDField.Precision	365
10.34.7	TFMTBCDField.Currency	365
10.34.8	TFMTBCDField.MaxValue	365
10.34.9	TFMTBCDField.MinValue	365
10.34.10	TFMTBCDField.Size	365
10.35	TGraphicField	366
10.35.1	Description	366

10.35.2 Method overview	366
10.35.3 TGraphicField.Create	366
10.36TGuidField	366
10.36.1 Description	366
10.36.2 Method overview	366
10.36.3 Property overview	367
10.36.4 TGuidField.Create	367
10.36.5 TGuidField.AsGuid	367
10.37TIndexDef	367
10.37.1 Description	367
10.37.2 Method overview	367
10.37.3 Property overview	367
10.37.4 TIndexDef.Create	368
10.37.5 TIndexDef.Expression	368
10.37.6 TIndexDef.Fields	368
10.37.7 TIndexDef.CaseInsFields	369
10.37.8 TIndexDef.DescFields	369
10.37.9 TIndexDef.Options	369
10.37.10 TIndexDef.Source	369
10.38TIndexDefs	370
10.38.1 Description	370
10.38.2 Method overview	370
10.38.3 Property overview	370
10.38.4 TIndexDefs.Create	370
10.38.5 TIndexDefs.Add	370
10.38.6 TIndexDefs.AddIndexDef	371
10.38.7 TIndexDefs.Find	371
10.38.8 TIndexDefs.FindIndexForFields	371
10.38.9 TIndexDefs.GetIndexForFields	371
10.38.10 TIndexDefs.Update	372
10.38.11 TIndexDefs.Items	372
10.39TIntegerField	372
10.39.1 Description	372
10.40TLargeintField	372
10.40.1 Description	372
10.40.2 Method overview	372
10.40.3 Property overview	373
10.40.4 TLargeintField.Create	373
10.40.5 TLargeintField.CheckRange	373
10.40.6 TLargeintField.Value	373

10.40.7 TLargeintField.MaxValue	373
10.40.8 TLargeintField.MinValue	374
10.41 TLongintField	374
10.41.1 Description	374
10.41.2 Method overview	374
10.41.3 Property overview	374
10.41.4 TLongintField.Create	375
10.41.5 TLongintField.CheckRange	375
10.41.6 TLongintField.Value	375
10.41.7 TLongintField.MaxValue	375
10.41.8 TLongintField.MinValue	376
10.42 TLookupList	376
10.42.1 Description	376
10.42.2 Method overview	376
10.42.3 TLookupList.Create	376
10.42.4 TLookupList.Destroy	376
10.42.5 TLookupList.Add	377
10.42.6 TLookupList.Clear	377
10.42.7 TLookupList.FirstKeyByValue	377
10.42.8 TLookupList.ValueOfKey	377
10.42.9 TLookupList.ValuesToStrings	378
10.43 TMasterDataLink	378
10.43.1 Description	378
10.43.2 Method overview	378
10.43.3 Property overview	378
10.43.4 TMasterDataLink.Create	378
10.43.5 TMasterDataLink.Destroy	379
10.43.6 TMasterDataLink.FieldNames	379
10.43.7 TMasterDataLink.Fields	379
10.43.8 TMasterDataLink.OnMasterChange	379
10.43.9 TMasterDataLink.OnMasterDisable	380
10.44 TMasterParamsDataLink	380
10.44.1 Description	380
10.44.2 Method overview	380
10.44.3 Property overview	380
10.44.4 TMasterParamsDataLink.Create	380
10.44.5 TMasterParamsDataLink.RefreshParamNames	381
10.44.6 TMasterParamsDataLink.CopyParamsFromMaster	381
10.44.7 TMasterParamsDataLink.Params	381
10.45 TMemoField	381

10.45.1 Description	381
10.45.2 Method overview	382
10.45.3 Property overview	382
10.45.4 TMemoField.Create	382
10.45.5 TMemoField.Transliterate	382
10.46TNamedItem	382
10.46.1 Description	382
10.46.2 Property overview	382
10.46.3 TNamedItem.DisplayName	383
10.46.4 TNamedItem.Name	383
10.47TNumericField	383
10.47.1 Description	383
10.47.2 Method overview	383
10.47.3 Property overview	383
10.47.4 TNumericField.Create	384
10.47.5 TNumericField.Alignment	384
10.47.6 TNumericField.DisplayFormat	384
10.47.7 TNumericField.EditFormat	384
10.48TParam	385
10.48.1 Description	385
10.48.2 Method overview	385
10.48.3 Property overview	386
10.48.4 TParam.Create	386
10.48.5 TParam.Assign	386
10.48.6 TParam.AssignField	387
10.48.7 TParam.AssignToField	387
10.48.8 TParam.AssignFieldValue	387
10.48.9 TParam.AssignFromField	388
10.48.10TParam.Clear	388
10.48.11TParam.GetData	388
10.48.12TParam.GetDataSize	388
10.48.13TParam.LoadFromFile	389
10.48.14TParam.LoadFromStream	389
10.48.15TParam.SetBlobData	389
10.48.16TParam.SetData	389
10.48.17TParam.AsBlob	390
10.48.18TParam.AsBoolean	390
10.48.19TParam.AsCurrency	390
10.48.20TParam.AsDate	391
10.48.21TParam.AsDateTime	391

10.48.22	TPParam.AsFloat	391
10.48.23	TPParam.AsInteger	391
10.48.24	TPParam.AsLargeInt	392
10.48.25	TPParam.AsMemo	392
10.48.26	TPParam.AsSmallInt	392
10.48.27	TPParam.AsString	392
10.48.28	TPParam.AsTime	393
10.48.29	TPParam.AsWord	393
10.48.30	TPParam.AsFmtBCD	393
10.48.31	TPParam.Bound	393
10.48.32	TPParam.Dataset	394
10.48.33	TPParam.IsNull	394
10.48.34	TPParam.NativeStr	394
10.48.35	TPParam.Text	394
10.48.36	TPParam.Value	395
10.48.37	TPParam.AsWideString	395
10.48.38	TPParam.DataType	395
10.48.39	TPParam.Name	395
10.48.40	TPParam.NumericScale	396
10.48.41	TPParam.ParamType	396
10.48.42	TPParam.Precision	396
10.48.43	TPParam.Size	397
10.49	TParams	397
10.49.1	Description	397
10.49.2	Method overview	397
10.49.3	Property overview	398
10.49.4	TParams.Create	398
10.49.5	TParams.AddParam	398
10.49.6	TParams.AssignValues	398
10.49.7	TParams.CreateParam	398
10.49.8	TParams.FindParam	399
10.49.9	TParams.GetParamList	399
10.49.10	TParams.IsEqual	399
10.49.11	TParams.ParamByName	400
10.49.12	TParams.ParseSQL	400
10.49.13	TParams.RemoveParam	401
10.49.14	TParams.CopyParamValuesFromDataset	401
10.49.15	TParams.Dataset	401
10.49.16	TParams.Items	402
10.49.17	TParams.ParamValues	402

10.50TSmallintField	402
10.50.1 Description	402
10.50.2 Method overview	402
10.50.3 TSmallintField.Create	403
10.51TStringField	403
10.51.1 Description	403
10.51.2 Method overview	403
10.51.3 Property overview	403
10.51.4 TStringField.Create	403
10.51.5 TStringField.SetFieldType	404
10.51.6 TStringField.FixedChar	404
10.51.7 TStringField.Transliterate	404
10.51.8 TStringField.Value	404
10.51.9 TStringField.EditMask	405
10.51.10TStringField.Size	405
10.52TTimeField	405
10.52.1 Description	405
10.52.2 Method overview	405
10.52.3 TTimeField.Create	406
10.53TVarBytesField	406
10.53.1 Description	406
10.53.2 Method overview	406
10.53.3 TVarBytesField.Create	406
10.54TVariantField	406
10.54.1 Description	406
10.54.2 Method overview	407
10.54.3 TVariantField.Create	407
10.55TWideMemoField	407
10.55.1 Description	407
10.55.2 Method overview	407
10.55.3 Property overview	407
10.55.4 TWideMemoField.Create	407
10.55.5 TWideMemoField.Value	408
10.56TWideStringField	408
10.56.1 Description	408
10.56.2 Method overview	408
10.56.3 Property overview	408
10.56.4 TWideStringField.Create	408
10.56.5 TWideStringField.SetFieldType	409
10.56.6 TWideStringField.Value	409

10.57TWordField	409
10.57.1 Description	409
10.57.2 Method overview	409
10.57.3 TWordField.Create	409
11 Reference for unit 'dbugintf'	410
11.1 Overview	410
11.2 Writing a debug server	410
11.3 Constants, types and variables	410
11.3.1 Resource strings	410
11.3.2 Constants	411
11.3.3 Types	411
11.4 Procedures and functions	411
11.4.1 GetDebuggingEnabled	411
11.4.2 InitDebugClient	412
11.4.3 SendBoolean	412
11.4.4 SendDateTime	412
11.4.5 SendDebug	412
11.4.6 SendDebugEx	413
11.4.7 SendDebugFmt	413
11.4.8 SendDebugFmtEx	413
11.4.9 SendInteger	414
11.4.10 SendMethodEnter	414
11.4.11 SendMethodExit	414
11.4.12 SendPointer	415
11.4.13 SendSeparator	415
11.4.14 SetDebuggingEnabled	415
11.4.15 StartDebugServer	415
12 Reference for unit 'dbugmsg'	417
12.1 Used units	417
12.2 Overview	417
12.3 Constants, types and variables	417
12.3.1 Constants	417
12.3.2 Types	418
12.4 Procedures and functions	418
12.4.1 DebugMessageName	418
12.4.2 ReadDebugMessageFromStream	418
12.4.3 WriteDebugMessageToStream	419
13 Reference for unit 'eventlog'	420

13.1	Used units	420
13.2	Overview	420
13.3	Constants, types and variables	420
13.3.1	Resource strings	420
13.3.2	Types	421
13.4	ELogError	421
13.4.1	Description	421
13.5	TEventLog	422
13.5.1	Description	422
13.5.2	Method overview	422
13.5.3	Property overview	422
13.5.4	TEventLog.Destroy	422
13.5.5	TEventLog.EventTypeToString	423
13.5.6	TEventLog.RegisterMessageFile	423
13.5.7	TEventLog.UnRegisterMessageFile	424
13.5.8	TEventLog.Pause	424
13.5.9	TEventLog.Resume	424
13.5.10	TEventLog.Log	424
13.5.11	TEventLog.Warning	425
13.5.12	TEventLog.Error	425
13.5.13	TEventLog.Debug	425
13.5.14	TEventLog.Info	425
13.5.15	TEventLog.AppendContent	426
13.5.16	TEventLog.Identification	426
13.5.17	TEventLog.LogType	426
13.5.18	TEventLog.Active	426
13.5.19	TEventLog.RaiseExceptionOnError	427
13.5.20	TEventLog.DefaultEventType	427
13.5.21	TEventLog.FileName	427
13.5.22	TEventLog.TimeStampFormat	428
13.5.23	TEventLog.CustomLogType	428
13.5.24	TEventLog.EventIDOffset	428
13.5.25	TEventLog.OnGetCustomCategory	429
13.5.26	TEventLog.OnGetCustomEventID	429
13.5.27	TEventLog.OnGetCustomEvent	429
13.5.28	TEventLog.Paused	429
14	Reference for unit 'ezcgi'	430
14.1	Used units	430
14.2	Overview	430

14.3	Constants, types and variables	430
14.3.1	Constants	430
14.4	ECGIException	430
14.4.1	Description	430
14.5	TEZcgi	431
14.5.1	Description	431
14.5.2	Method overview	431
14.5.3	Property overview	431
14.5.4	TEZcgi.Create	431
14.5.5	TEZcgi.Destroy	431
14.5.6	TEZcgi.Run	432
14.5.7	TEZcgi.WriteContent	432
14.5.8	TEZcgi.PutLine	432
14.5.9	TEZcgi.GetValue	433
14.5.10	TEZcgi.DoPost	433
14.5.11	TEZcgi.DoGet	433
14.5.12	TEZcgi.Values	433
14.5.13	TEZcgi.Names	434
14.5.14	TEZcgi.Variables	434
14.5.15	TEZcgi.VariableCount	435
14.5.16	TEZcgi.Name	435
14.5.17	TEZcgi.Email	435
15	Reference for unit 'fpTimer'	436
15.1	Used units	436
15.2	Overview	436
15.3	Constants, types and variables	436
15.3.1	Types	436
15.3.2	Variables	436
15.4	TFPCustomTimer	437
15.4.1	Description	437
15.4.2	Method overview	437
15.4.3	TFPCustomTimer.Create	437
15.4.4	TFPCustomTimer.Destroy	437
15.4.5	TFPCustomTimer.StartTimer	438
15.4.6	TFPCustomTimer.StopTimer	438
15.5	TFPTimer	438
15.5.1	Description	438
15.5.2	Property overview	438
15.5.3	TFPTimer.Enabled	438

15.5.4	TFPTimer.Interval	439
15.5.5	TFPTimer.OnTimer	439
15.6	TFPTimerDriver	439
15.6.1	Description	439
15.6.2	Method overview	439
15.6.3	Property overview	439
15.6.4	TFPTimerDriver.Create	440
15.6.5	TFPTimerDriver.StartTimer	440
15.6.6	TFPTimerDriver.StopTimer	440
15.6.7	TFPTimerDriver.Timer	440
16	Reference for unit 'gettext'	441
16.1	Used units	441
16.2	Overview	441
16.3	Constants, types and variables	441
16.3.1	Constants	441
16.3.2	Types	441
16.4	Procedures and functions	442
16.4.1	GetLanguageIDs	442
16.4.2	TranslateResourceStrings	443
16.4.3	TranslateUnitResourceStrings	443
16.5	EMOFileError	443
16.5.1	Description	443
16.6	TMOFile	443
16.6.1	Description	443
16.6.2	Method overview	444
16.6.3	TMOFile.Create	444
16.6.4	TMOFile.Destroy	444
16.6.5	TMOFile.Translate	444
17	Reference for unit 'IBConnection'	445
17.1	Used units	445
17.2	Constants, types and variables	445
17.2.1	Constants	445
17.2.2	Types	445
17.3	EIBDatabaseError	446
17.3.1	Description	446
17.4	TIBConnection	446
17.4.1	Description	446
17.4.2	Method overview	447
17.4.3	Property overview	447

17.4.4	TIBConnection.Create	447
17.4.5	TIBConnection.GetConnectionInfo	447
17.4.6	TIBConnection.CreateDB	447
17.4.7	TIBConnection.DropDB	448
17.4.8	TIBConnection.BlobSegmentSize	448
17.4.9	TIBConnection.ODSMajorVersion	448
17.4.10	TIBConnection.DatabaseName	449
17.4.11	TIBConnection.Dialect	449
17.4.12	TIBConnection.KeepConnection	449
17.4.13	TIBConnection.LoginPrompt	449
17.4.14	TIBConnection.Params	450
17.4.15	TIBConnection.OnLogin	450
17.5	TIBConnectionDef	450
17.5.1	Description	450
17.5.2	Method overview	451
17.5.3	TIBConnectionDef.TypeName	451
17.5.4	TIBConnectionDef.ConnectionClass	451
17.5.5	TIBConnectionDef.Description	451
17.5.6	TIBConnectionDef.DefaultLibraryName	451
17.5.7	TIBConnectionDef.LoadFunction	451
17.5.8	TIBConnectionDef.UnLoadFunction	452
17.5.9	TIBConnectionDef.LoadedLibraryName	452
17.6	TIBCursor	452
17.6.1	Description	452
17.7	TIBTrans	452
17.7.1	Description	452
18	Reference for unit 'idea'	453
18.1	Used units	453
18.2	Overview	453
18.3	Constants, types and variables	453
18.3.1	Constants	453
18.3.2	Types	454
18.4	Procedures and functions	454
18.4.1	CipherIdea	454
18.4.2	DeKeyIdea	454
18.4.3	EnKeyIdea	455
18.5	EIDEAError	455
18.5.1	Description	455
18.6	TIDEADeCryptStream	455

18.6.1	Description	455
18.6.2	Method overview	455
18.6.3	TIDEADeCryptStream.Create	456
18.6.4	TIDEADeCryptStream.Read	456
18.6.5	TIDEADeCryptStream.Seek	456
18.7	TIDEAEncryptStream	457
18.7.1	Description	457
18.7.2	Method overview	457
18.7.3	TIDEAEncryptStream.Create	457
18.7.4	TIDEAEncryptStream.Destroy	457
18.7.5	TIDEAEncryptStream.Write	458
18.7.6	TIDEAEncryptStream.Seek	458
18.7.7	TIDEAEncryptStream.Flush	458
18.8	TIDEAStream	458
18.8.1	Description	458
18.8.2	Method overview	459
18.8.3	Property overview	459
18.8.4	TIDEAStream.Create	459
18.8.5	TIDEAStream.Key	459
19	Reference for unit 'inicol'	460
19.1	Used units	460
19.2	Overview	460
19.3	Constants, types and variables	460
19.3.1	Constants	460
19.4	EIniCol	461
19.4.1	Description	461
19.5	TIniCollection	461
19.5.1	Description	461
19.5.2	Method overview	461
19.5.3	Property overview	461
19.5.4	TIniCollection.Load	461
19.5.5	TIniCollection.Save	462
19.5.6	TIniCollection.SaveToIni	462
19.5.7	TIniCollection.SaveToFile	462
19.5.8	TIniCollection.LoadFromIni	463
19.5.9	TIniCollection.LoadFromFile	463
19.5.10	TIniCollection.Prefix	463
19.5.11	TIniCollection.SectionPrefix	464
19.5.12	TIniCollection.FileName	464

19.5.13	TIniCollection.GlobalSection	464
19.6	TIniCollectionItem	465
19.6.1	Description	465
19.6.2	Method overview	465
19.6.3	Property overview	465
19.6.4	TIniCollectionItem.SaveToIni	465
19.6.5	TIniCollectionItem.LoadFromIni	465
19.6.6	TIniCollectionItem.SaveToFile	466
19.6.7	TIniCollectionItem.LoadFromFile	466
19.6.8	TIniCollectionItem.SectionName	466
19.7	TNamedIniCollection	467
19.7.1	Description	467
19.7.2	Method overview	467
19.7.3	Property overview	467
19.7.4	TNamedIniCollection.IndexOfUserData	467
19.7.5	TNamedIniCollection.IndexOfName	467
19.7.6	TNamedIniCollection.FindByName	468
19.7.7	TNamedIniCollection.FindByUserData	468
19.7.8	TNamedIniCollection.NamedItems	468
19.8	TNamedIniCollectionItem	468
19.8.1	Description	468
19.8.2	Property overview	468
19.8.3	TNamedIniCollectionItem.UserData	469
19.8.4	TNamedIniCollectionItem.Name	469
20	Reference for unit 'IniFiles'	470
20.1	Used units	470
20.2	Overview	470
20.3	TCustomIniFile	470
20.3.1	Description	470
20.3.2	Method overview	471
20.3.3	Property overview	471
20.3.4	TCustomIniFile.Create	471
20.3.5	TCustomIniFile.Destroy	472
20.3.6	TCustomIniFile.SectionExists	472
20.3.7	TCustomIniFile.ReadString	472
20.3.8	TCustomIniFile.WriteString	473
20.3.9	TCustomIniFile.ReadInteger	473
20.3.10	TCustomIniFile.WriteInteger	473
20.3.11	TCustomIniFile.ReadInt64	473

20.3.12	TCustomIniFile.WriteInt64	473
20.3.13	TCustomIniFile.ReadBool	474
20.3.14	TCustomIniFile.WriteBool	474
20.3.15	TCustomIniFile.ReadDate	474
20.3.16	TCustomIniFile.ReadDateTime	474
20.3.17	TCustomIniFile.ReadFloat	475
20.3.18	TCustomIniFile.ReadTime	475
20.3.19	TCustomIniFile.ReadBinaryStream	475
20.3.20	TCustomIniFile.WriteDate	476
20.3.21	TCustomIniFile.WriteDateTime	476
20.3.22	TCustomIniFile.WriteFloat	476
20.3.23	TCustomIniFile.WriteTime	477
20.3.24	TCustomIniFile.WriteBinaryStream	477
20.3.25	TCustomIniFile.ReadSection	477
20.3.26	TCustomIniFile.ReadSections	477
20.3.27	TCustomIniFile.ReadSectionValues	478
20.3.28	TCustomIniFile.EraseSection	478
20.3.29	TCustomIniFile.DeleteKey	478
20.3.30	TCustomIniFile.UpdateFile	478
20.3.31	TCustomIniFile.ValueExists	479
20.3.32	TCustomIniFile.FileName	479
20.3.33	TCustomIniFile.EscapeLineFeeds	479
20.3.34	TCustomIniFile.CaseSensitive	480
20.3.35	TCustomIniFile.StripQuotes	480
20.4	THashedStringList	480
20.4.1	Description	480
20.4.2	Method overview	480
20.4.3	THashedStringList.Destroy	480
20.4.4	THashedStringList.IndexOf	481
20.4.5	THashedStringList.IndexOfName	481
20.5	TIniFile	481
20.5.1	Description	481
20.5.2	Method overview	481
20.5.3	Property overview	482
20.5.4	TIniFile.Create	482
20.5.5	TIniFile.Destroy	482
20.5.6	TIniFile.ReadString	482
20.5.7	TIniFile.WriteString	483
20.5.8	TIniFile.ReadSection	483
20.5.9	TIniFile.ReadSectionRaw	483

20.5.10	TIniFile.ReadSections	483
20.5.11	TIniFile.ReadSectionValues	484
20.5.12	TIniFile.EraseSection	484
20.5.13	TIniFile.DeleteKey	484
20.5.14	TIniFile.UpdateFile	484
20.5.15	TIniFile.Stream	485
20.5.16	TIniFile.CacheUpdates	485
20.6	TIniFileKey	485
20.6.1	Description	485
20.6.2	Method overview	485
20.6.3	Property overview	485
20.6.4	TIniFileKey.Create	486
20.6.5	TIniFileKey.Ident	486
20.6.6	TIniFileKey.Value	486
20.7	TIniFileKeyList	486
20.7.1	Description	486
20.7.2	Method overview	486
20.7.3	Property overview	487
20.7.4	TIniFileKeyList.Destroy	487
20.7.5	TIniFileKeyList.Clear	487
20.7.6	TIniFileKeyList.Items	487
20.8	TIniFileSection	487
20.8.1	Description	487
20.8.2	Method overview	488
20.8.3	Property overview	488
20.8.4	TIniFileSection.Empty	488
20.8.5	TIniFileSection.Create	488
20.8.6	TIniFileSection.Destroy	488
20.8.7	TIniFileSection.Name	488
20.8.8	TIniFileSection.KeyList	489
20.9	TIniFileSectionList	489
20.9.1	Description	489
20.9.2	Method overview	489
20.9.3	Property overview	489
20.9.4	TIniFileSectionList.Destroy	489
20.9.5	TIniFileSectionList.Clear	490
20.9.6	TIniFileSectionList.Items	490
20.10	TMemIniFile	490
20.10.1	Description	490
20.10.2	Method overview	490

20.10.3 TMemIniFile.Create	490
20.10.4 TMemIniFile.Clear	491
20.10.5 TMemIniFile.GetStrings	491
20.10.6 TMemIniFile.Rename	491
20.10.7 TMemIniFile.SetStrings	491
21 Reference for unit 'iostream'	493
21.1 Used units	493
21.2 Overview	493
21.3 Constants, types and variables	493
21.3.1 Types	493
21.4 EIOStreamError	494
21.4.1 Description	494
21.5 TIOStream	494
21.5.1 Description	494
21.5.2 Method overview	494
21.5.3 TIOStream.Create	494
21.5.4 TIOStream.Read	494
21.5.5 TIOStream.Write	495
21.5.6 TIOStream.Seek	495
22 Reference for unit 'libtar'	496
22.1 Used units	496
22.2 Overview	496
22.3 Constants, types and variables	496
22.3.1 Constants	496
22.3.2 Types	497
22.4 Procedures and functions	499
22.4.1 ClearDirRec	499
22.4.2 ConvertFilename	499
22.4.3 FileTimeGMT	499
22.4.4 PermissionString	499
22.5 TTarArchive	500
22.5.1 Description	500
22.5.2 Method overview	500
22.5.3 TTarArchive.Create	500
22.5.4 TTarArchive.Destroy	500
22.5.5 TTarArchive.Reset	500
22.5.6 TTarArchive.FindNext	501
22.5.7 TTarArchive.ReadFile	501
22.5.8 TTarArchive.GetFilePos	501

22.5.9	TTarArchive.SetFilePos	502
22.6	TTarWriter	502
22.6.1	Description	502
22.6.2	Method overview	502
22.6.3	Property overview	502
22.6.4	TTarWriter.Create	502
22.6.5	TTarWriter.Destroy	503
22.6.6	TTarWriter.AddFile	503
22.6.7	TTarWriter.AddStream	503
22.6.8	TTarWriter.AddString	504
22.6.9	TTarWriter.AddDir	504
22.6.10	TTarWriter.AddSymbolicLink	504
22.6.11	TTarWriter.AddLink	505
22.6.12	TTarWriter.AddVolumeHeader	505
22.6.13	TTarWriter.Finalize	505
22.6.14	TTarWriter.Permissions	505
22.6.15	TTarWriter.UID	506
22.6.16	TTarWriter.GID	506
22.6.17	TTarWriter.UserName	506
22.6.18	TTarWriter.GroupName	506
22.6.19	TTarWriter.Mode	507
22.6.20	TTarWriter.Magic	507
23	Reference for unit 'mssqlconn'	508
23.1	Used units	508
23.2	Overview	508
23.3	Constants, types and variables	508
23.3.1	Types	508
23.3.2	Variables	509
23.4	EMSSQLDatabaseError	509
23.4.1	Description	509
23.5	TMSSQLConnection	509
23.5.1	Description	509
23.5.2	Method overview	510
23.5.3	Property overview	510
23.5.4	TMSSQLConnection.Create	510
23.5.5	TMSSQLConnection.GetConnectionInfo	510
23.5.6	TMSSQLConnection.CreateDB	510
23.5.7	TMSSQLConnection.DropDB	510
23.5.8	TMSSQLConnection.Password	510

23.5.9	TMSSQLConnection.Transaction	511
23.5.10	TMSSQLConnection.UserName	511
23.5.11	TMSSQLConnection.CharSet	511
23.5.12	TMSSQLConnection.HostName	511
23.5.13	TMSSQLConnection.Connected	512
23.5.14	TMSSQLConnection.Role	512
23.5.15	TMSSQLConnection.DatabaseName	512
23.5.16	TMSSQLConnection.KeepConnection	512
23.5.17	TMSSQLConnection.LoginPrompt	512
23.5.18	TMSSQLConnection.Params	512
23.5.19	TMSSQLConnection.OnLogin	513
23.6	TMSSQLConnectionDef	513
23.6.1	Method overview	513
23.6.2	TMSSQLConnectionDef.TypeName	513
23.6.3	TMSSQLConnectionDef.ConnectionClass	513
23.6.4	TMSSQLConnectionDef.Description	513
23.6.5	TMSSQLConnectionDef.DefaultLibraryName	513
23.6.6	TMSSQLConnectionDef.LoadFunction	513
23.6.7	TMSSQLConnectionDef.UnLoadFunction	514
23.6.8	TMSSQLConnectionDef.LoadedLibraryName	514
23.7	TSybaseConnection	514
23.7.1	Description	514
23.7.2	Method overview	514
23.7.3	TSybaseConnection.Create	514
23.8	TSybaseConnectionDef	514
23.8.1	Method overview	514
23.8.2	TSybaseConnectionDef.TypeName	515
23.8.3	TSybaseConnectionDef.ConnectionClass	515
23.8.4	TSybaseConnectionDef.Description	515
24	Reference for unit 'Pipes'	516
24.1	Used units	516
24.2	Overview	516
24.3	Constants, types and variables	516
24.3.1	Constants	516
24.4	Procedures and functions	516
24.4.1	CreatePipeHandles	516
24.4.2	CreatePipeStreams	517
24.5	EPipeCreation	517
24.5.1	Description	517

24.6	EPipeError	517
24.6.1	Description	517
24.7	EPipeSeek	517
24.7.1	Description	517
24.8	TInputPipeStream	517
24.8.1	Description	517
24.8.2	Method overview	518
24.8.3	Property overview	518
24.8.4	TInputPipeStream.Destroy	518
24.8.5	TInputPipeStream.Write	518
24.8.6	TInputPipeStream.Seek	518
24.8.7	TInputPipeStream.Read	519
24.8.8	TInputPipeStream.NumBytesAvailable	519
24.9	TOutputPipeStream	519
24.9.1	Description	519
24.9.2	Method overview	519
24.9.3	TOutputPipeStream.Destroy	520
24.9.4	TOutputPipeStream.Seek	520
24.9.5	TOutputPipeStream.Read	520
25	Reference for unit 'pooledmm'	521
25.1	Used units	521
25.2	Overview	521
25.3	Constants, types and variables	521
25.3.1	Types	521
25.4	TNonFreePooledMemManager	522
25.4.1	Description	522
25.4.2	Method overview	522
25.4.3	Property overview	522
25.4.4	TNonFreePooledMemManager.Clear	522
25.4.5	TNonFreePooledMemManager.Create	522
25.4.6	TNonFreePooledMemManager.Destroy	523
25.4.7	TNonFreePooledMemManager.NewItem	523
25.4.8	TNonFreePooledMemManager.EnumerateItems	523
25.4.9	TNonFreePooledMemManager.ItemSize	523
25.5	TPooledMemManager	524
25.5.1	Description	524
25.5.2	Method overview	524
25.5.3	Property overview	524
25.5.4	TPooledMemManager.Clear	524

25.5.5	TPooledMemManager.Create	524
25.5.6	TPooledMemManager.Destroy	525
25.5.7	TPooledMemManager.MinimumFreeCount	525
25.5.8	TPooledMemManager.MaximumFreeCountRatio	525
25.5.9	TPooledMemManager.Count	525
25.5.10	TPooledMemManager.FreeCount	526
25.5.11	TPooledMemManager.AllocatedCount	526
25.5.12	TPooledMemManager.FreedCount	526
26	Reference for unit 'process'	527
26.1	Used units	527
26.2	Overview	527
26.3	Constants, types and variables	527
26.3.1	Types	527
26.3.2	Variables	529
26.4	Procedures and functions	530
26.4.1	CommandToList	530
26.4.2	DetectXTerm	530
26.4.3	RunCommand	530
26.4.4	RunCommandIndir	530
26.5	EProcess	531
26.5.1	Description	531
26.6	TProcess	531
26.6.1	Description	531
26.6.2	Method overview	531
26.6.3	Property overview	532
26.6.4	TProcess.Create	532
26.6.5	TProcess.Destroy	533
26.6.6	TProcess.Execute	533
26.6.7	TProcess.CloseInput	533
26.6.8	TProcess.CloseOutput	534
26.6.9	TProcess.CloseStderr	534
26.6.10	TProcess.Resume	534
26.6.11	TProcess.Suspend	534
26.6.12	TProcess.Terminate	535
26.6.13	TProcess.WaitOnExit	535
26.6.14	TProcess.WindowRect	535
26.6.15	TProcess.Handle	535
26.6.16	TProcess.ProcessHandle	536
26.6.17	TProcess.ThreadHandle	536

26.6.18 TProcess.ProcessID	536
26.6.19 TProcess.ThreadID	537
26.6.20 TProcess.Input	537
26.6.21 TProcess.Output	537
26.6.22 TProcess.Stderr	538
26.6.23 TProcess.ExitStatus	538
26.6.24 TProcess.InheritHandles	538
26.6.25 TProcess.OnForkEvent	539
26.6.26 TProcess.PipeBufferSize	539
26.6.27 TProcess.Active	539
26.6.28 TProcess.ApplicationName	539
26.6.29 TProcess.CommandLine	540
26.6.30 TProcess.Executable	540
26.6.31 TProcess.Parameters	540
26.6.32 TProcess.ConsoleTitle	541
26.6.33 TProcess.CurrentDirectory	541
26.6.34 TProcess.Desktop	542
26.6.35 TProcess.Environment	542
26.6.36 TProcess.Options	542
26.6.37 TProcess.Priority	543
26.6.38 TProcess.StartupOptions	544
26.6.39 TProcess.Running	544
26.6.40 TProcess.ShowWindow	544
26.6.41 TProcess.WindowColumns	545
26.6.42 TProcess.WindowHeight	545
26.6.43 TProcess.WindowLeft	546
26.6.44 TProcess.WindowRows	546
26.6.45 TProcess.WindowTop	546
26.6.46 TProcess.WindowWidth	547
26.6.47 TProcess.FillAttribute	547
26.6.48 TProcess.XTermProgram	547
27 Reference for unit 'rttiutils'	548
27.1 Used units	548
27.2 Overview	548
27.3 Constants, types and variables	548
27.3.1 Constants	548
27.3.2 Types	548
27.3.3 Variables	549
27.4 Procedures and functions	549

27.4.1	CreateStoredItem	549
27.4.2	ParseStoredItem	550
27.4.3	UpdateStoredList	550
27.5	TPropInfoList	550
27.5.1	Description	550
27.5.2	Method overview	551
27.5.3	Property overview	551
27.5.4	TPropInfoList.Create	551
27.5.5	TPropInfoList.Destroy	551
27.5.6	TPropInfoList.Contains	551
27.5.7	TPropInfoList.Find	552
27.5.8	TPropInfoList.Delete	552
27.5.9	TPropInfoList.Intersect	552
27.5.10	TPropInfoList.Count	552
27.5.11	TPropInfoList.Items	553
27.6	TPropsStorage	553
27.6.1	Description	553
27.6.2	Method overview	553
27.6.3	Property overview	553
27.6.4	TPropsStorage.StoreAnyProperty	553
27.6.5	TPropsStorage.LoadAnyProperty	554
27.6.6	TPropsStorage.StoreProperties	554
27.6.7	TPropsStorage.LoadProperties	554
27.6.8	TPropsStorage.LoadObjectsProps	555
27.6.9	TPropsStorage.StoreObjectsProps	555
27.6.10	TPropsStorage.AObject	556
27.6.11	TPropsStorage.Prefix	556
27.6.12	TPropsStorage.Section	556
27.6.13	TPropsStorage.OnReadString	557
27.6.14	TPropsStorage.OnWriteString	557
27.6.15	TPropsStorage.OnEraseSection	557
28	Reference for unit 'simpleipc'	558
28.1	Used units	558
28.2	Overview	558
28.3	Constants, types and variables	558
28.3.1	Resource strings	558
28.3.2	Constants	559
28.3.3	Types	559
28.3.4	Variables	560

28.4	EIPCErrror	560
28.4.1	Description	560
28.5	TIPCCliientComm	560
28.5.1	Description	560
28.5.2	Method overview	560
28.5.3	Property overview	560
28.5.4	TIPCCliientComm.Create	561
28.5.5	TIPCCliientComm.Connect	561
28.5.6	TIPCCliientComm.Disconnect	561
28.5.7	TIPCCliientComm.ServerRunning	562
28.5.8	TIPCCliientComm.SendMessage	562
28.5.9	TIPCCliientComm.Owner	562
28.6	TIPCServerComm	562
28.6.1	Description	562
28.6.2	Method overview	563
28.6.3	Property overview	563
28.6.4	TIPCServerComm.Create	563
28.6.5	TIPCServerComm.StartServer	563
28.6.6	TIPCServerComm.StopServer	563
28.6.7	TIPCServerComm.PeekMessage	564
28.6.8	TIPCServerComm.ReadMessage	564
28.6.9	TIPCServerComm.Owner	564
28.6.10	TIPCServerComm.InstanceID	565
28.7	TSimpleIPC	565
28.7.1	Description	565
28.7.2	Property overview	565
28.7.3	TSimpleIPC.Active	565
28.7.4	TSimpleIPC.ServerID	565
28.8	TSimpleIPCCliient	566
28.8.1	Description	566
28.8.2	Method overview	566
28.8.3	Property overview	566
28.8.4	TSimpleIPCCliient.Create	566
28.8.5	TSimpleIPCCliient.Destroy	566
28.8.6	TSimpleIPCCliient.Connect	567
28.8.7	TSimpleIPCCliient.Disconnect	567
28.8.8	TSimpleIPCCliient.ServerRunning	567
28.8.9	TSimpleIPCCliient.SendMessage	568
28.8.10	TSimpleIPCCliient.SendStringMessage	568
28.8.11	TSimpleIPCCliient.SendStringMessageFmt	568

28.8.12 TSimpleIPCClient.ServerInstance	568
28.9 TSimpleIPCServer	569
28.9.1 Description	569
28.9.2 Method overview	569
28.9.3 Property overview	569
28.9.4 TSimpleIPCServer.Create	569
28.9.5 TSimpleIPCServer.Destroy	570
28.9.6 TSimpleIPCServer.StartServer	570
28.9.7 TSimpleIPCServer.StopServer	570
28.9.8 TSimpleIPCServer.PeekMessage	570
28.9.9 TSimpleIPCServer.GetMessageData	571
28.9.10 TSimpleIPCServer.StringMessage	571
28.9.11 TSimpleIPCServer.MsgType	571
28.9.12 TSimpleIPCServer.MsgData	572
28.9.13 TSimpleIPCServer.InstanceID	572
28.9.14 TSimpleIPCServer.Global	572
28.9.15 TSimpleIPCServer.OnMessage	572
29 Reference for unit 'sqldb'	574
29.1 Used units	574
29.2 Overview	574
29.3 Using SQLDB to access databases	575
29.4 Using the universal TSQLConnector type	577
29.5 Retrieving Schema Information	578
29.6 Automatic generation of update SQL statements	578
29.7 Using parameters	579
29.8 Constants, types and variables	580
29.8.1 Constants	580
29.8.2 Types	581
29.8.3 Variables	584
29.9 Procedures and functions	584
29.9.1 GetConnectionDef	584
29.9.2 GetConnectionList	584
29.9.3 RegisterConnection	585
29.9.4 UnRegisterConnection	585
29.10 TConnectionDef	585
29.10.1 Description	585
29.10.2 Method overview	586
29.10.3 TConnectionDef.TypeName	586
29.10.4 TConnectionDef.ConnectionClass	586

29.10.5 TConnectionDef.Description	586
29.10.6 TConnectionDef.DefaultLibraryName	587
29.10.7 TConnectionDef.LoadFunction	587
29.10.8 TConnectionDef.UnLoadFunction	587
29.10.9 TConnectionDef.LoadedLibraryName	587
29.10.10 TConnectionDef.ApplyParams	588
29.11 TCustomSQLQuery	588
29.11.1 Description	588
29.11.2 Method overview	588
29.11.3 Property overview	588
29.11.4 TCustomSQLQuery.Prepare	588
29.11.5 TCustomSQLQuery.UnPrepare	589
29.11.6 TCustomSQLQuery.ExecSQL	589
29.11.7 TCustomSQLQuery.Create	590
29.11.8 TCustomSQLQuery.Destroy	590
29.11.9 TCustomSQLQuery.SetSchemaInfo	590
29.11.10 TCustomSQLQuery.RowsAffected	591
29.11.11 TCustomSQLQuery.ParamByName	591
29.11.12 TCustomSQLQuery.Prepared	591
29.12 TCustomSQLStatement	592
29.12.1 Method overview	592
29.12.2 Property overview	592
29.12.3 TCustomSQLStatement.Create	592
29.12.4 TCustomSQLStatement.Destroy	592
29.12.5 TCustomSQLStatement.Prepare	592
29.12.6 TCustomSQLStatement.Execute	592
29.12.7 TCustomSQLStatement.Unprepare	592
29.12.8 TCustomSQLStatement.ParamByName	592
29.12.9 TCustomSQLStatement.RowsAffected	593
29.12.10 TCustomSQLStatement.Prepared	593
29.13 TServerIndexDefs	593
29.13.1 Description	593
29.13.2 Method overview	593
29.13.3 TServerIndexDefs.Create	593
29.13.4 TServerIndexDefs.Update	593
29.14 TSQLConnection	594
29.14.1 Description	594
29.14.2 Method overview	594
29.14.3 Property overview	595
29.14.4 TSQLConnection.Create	595

29.14.5 TSQLConnection.Destroy	595
29.14.6 TSQLConnection.StartTransaction	595
29.14.7 TSQLConnection.EndTransaction	596
29.14.8 TSQLConnection.ExecuteDirect	596
29.14.9 TSQLConnection.GetTableNames	597
29.14.10 TSQLConnection.GetProcedureNames	597
29.14.11 TSQLConnection.GetFieldNames	597
29.14.12 TSQLConnection.GetSchemaNames	597
29.14.13 TSQLConnection.GetConnectionInfo	598
29.14.14 TSQLConnection.CreateDB	598
29.14.15 TSQLConnection.DropDB	598
29.14.16 TSQLConnection.Handle	599
29.14.17 TSQLConnection.FieldNameQuoteChars	599
29.14.18 TSQLConnection.ConnOptions	599
29.14.19 TSQLConnection.Password	599
29.14.20 TSQLConnection.Transaction	600
29.14.21 TSQLConnection.UserName	600
29.14.22 TSQLConnection.CharSet	600
29.14.23 TSQLConnection.HostName	601
29.14.24 TSQLConnection.OnLog	601
29.14.25 TSQLConnection.LogEvents	601
29.14.26 TSQLConnection.Connected	602
29.14.27 TSQLConnection.Role	602
29.14.28 TSQLConnection.DatabaseName	602
29.14.29 TSQLConnection.KeepConnection	603
29.14.30 TSQLConnection.LoginPrompt	603
29.14.31 TSQLConnection.Params	603
29.14.32 TSQLConnection.OnLogin	603
29.15 TSQLConnector	604
29.15.1 Description	604
29.15.2 Property overview	604
29.15.3 TSQLConnector.ConnectorType	604
29.16 TSQLCursor	604
29.16.1 Description	604
29.17 TSQLHandle	605
29.17.1 Description	605
29.18 TSQLQuery	605
29.18.1 Description	605
29.18.2 Property overview	606
29.18.3 TSQLQuery.SchemaType	607

29.18.4 TSQLQuery.StatementType	607
29.18.5 TSQLQuery.MaxIndexesCount	607
29.18.6 TSQLQuery.FieldDefs	607
29.18.7 TSQLQuery.Active	608
29.18.8 TSQLQuery.AutoCalcFields	608
29.18.9 TSQLQuery.Filter	608
29.18.10 TSQLQuery.Filtered	608
29.18.11 TSQLQuery.AfterCancel	608
29.18.12 TSQLQuery.AfterClose	608
29.18.13 TSQLQuery.AfterDelete	608
29.18.14 TSQLQuery.AfterEdit	609
29.18.15 TSQLQuery.AfterInsert	609
29.18.16 TSQLQuery.AfterOpen	609
29.18.17 TSQLQuery.AfterPost	609
29.18.18 TSQLQuery.AfterScroll	609
29.18.19 TSQLQuery.BeforeCancel	609
29.18.20 TSQLQuery.BeforeClose	609
29.18.21 TSQLQuery.BeforeDelete	610
29.18.22 TSQLQuery.BeforeEdit	610
29.18.23 TSQLQuery.BeforeInsert	610
29.18.24 TSQLQuery.BeforeOpen	610
29.18.25 TSQLQuery.BeforePost	610
29.18.26 TSQLQuery.BeforeScroll	610
29.18.27 TSQLQuery.OnCalcFields	610
29.18.28 TSQLQuery.OnDeleteError	611
29.18.29 TSQLQuery.OnEditError	611
29.18.30 TSQLQuery.OnFilterRecord	611
29.18.31 TSQLQuery.OnNewRecord	611
29.18.32 TSQLQuery.OnPostError	611
29.18.33 TSQLQuery.Database	611
29.18.34 TSQLQuery.Transaction	612
29.18.35 TSQLQuery.ReadOnly	612
29.18.36 TSQLQuery.SQL	612
29.18.37 TSQLQuery.UpdateSQL	612
29.18.38 TSQLQuery.InsertSQL	613
29.18.39 TSQLQuery.DeleteSQL	613
29.18.40 TSQLQuery.IndexDefs	614
29.18.41 TSQLQuery.Params	614
29.18.42 TSQLQuery.ParamCheck	614
29.18.43 TSQLQuery.ParseSQL	614

29.18.44	TSQLQuery.UpdateMode	615
29.18.45	TSQLQuery.UsePrimaryKeyAsKey	615
29.18.46	TSQLQuery.DataSource	616
29.18.47	TSQLQuery.ServerFilter	616
29.18.48	TSQLQuery.ServerFiltered	616
29.18.49	TSQLQuery.ServerIndexDefs	617
29.19	TSQLScript	617
29.19.1	Description	617
29.19.2	Method overview	617
29.19.3	Property overview	617
29.19.4	TSQLScript.Create	617
29.19.5	TSQLScript.Destroy	618
29.19.6	TSQLScript.Execute	618
29.19.7	TSQLScript.ExecuteScript	618
29.19.8	TSQLScript.DataBase	619
29.19.9	TSQLScript.Transaction	619
29.19.10	TSQLScript.OnDirective	619
29.19.11	TSQLScript.Directives	619
29.19.12	TSQLScript.Defines	620
29.19.13	TSQLScript.Script	620
29.19.14	TSQLScript.Terminator	620
29.19.15	TSQLScript.CommentsinSQL	621
29.19.16	TSQLScript.UseSetTerm	621
29.19.17	TSQLScript.UseCommit	621
29.19.18	TSQLScript.UseDefines	622
29.19.19	TSQLScript.OnException	622
29.20	TSQLStatement	623
29.20.1	Property overview	623
29.20.2	TSQLStatement.Database	623
29.20.3	TSQLStatement.DataSource	623
29.20.4	TSQLStatement.ParamCheck	623
29.20.5	TSQLStatement.Params	623
29.20.6	TSQLStatement.ParseSQL	623
29.20.7	TSQLStatement.SQL	624
29.20.8	TSQLStatement.Transaction	624
29.21	TSQLTransaction	624
29.21.1	Description	624
29.21.2	Method overview	624
29.21.3	Property overview	624
29.21.4	TSQLTransaction.Commit	624

29.21.5 TSQLTransaction.CommitRetaining	625
29.21.6 TSQLTransaction.Rollback	625
29.21.7 TSQLTransaction.RollbackRetaining	626
29.21.8 TSQLTransaction.StartTransaction	626
29.21.9 TSQLTransaction.Create	626
29.21.10 TSQLTransaction.Destroy	626
29.21.11 TSQLTransaction.EndTransaction	627
29.21.12 TSQLTransaction.Handle	627
29.21.13 TSQLTransaction.Action	627
29.21.14 TSQLTransaction.Database	627
29.21.15 TSQLTransaction.Params	628
30 Reference for unit 'streamcoll'	629
30.1 Used units	629
30.2 Overview	629
30.3 Procedures and functions	629
30.3.1 ColReadBoolean	629
30.3.2 ColReadCurrency	630
30.3.3 ColReadDateTime	630
30.3.4 ColReadFloat	630
30.3.5 ColReadInteger	630
30.3.6 ColReadString	631
30.3.7 ColWriteBoolean	631
30.3.8 ColWriteCurrency	631
30.3.9 ColWriteDateTime	631
30.3.10 ColWriteFloat	632
30.3.11 ColWriteInteger	632
30.3.12 ColWriteString	632
30.4 EStreamColl	632
30.4.1 Description	632
30.5 TStreamCollection	632
30.5.1 Description	632
30.5.2 Method overview	633
30.5.3 Property overview	633
30.5.4 TStreamCollection.LoadFromStream	633
30.5.5 TStreamCollection.SaveToStream	633
30.5.6 TStreamCollection.Streaming	633
30.6 TStreamCollectionItem	634
30.6.1 Description	634
31 Reference for unit 'streamex'	635

31.1	Used units	635
31.2	Overview	635
31.3	TBidirBinaryObjectReader	635
31.3.1	Description	635
31.3.2	Property overview	635
31.3.3	TBidirBinaryObjectReader.Position	635
31.4	TBidirBinaryObjectWriter	636
31.4.1	Description	636
31.4.2	Property overview	636
31.4.3	TBidirBinaryObjectWriter.Position	636
31.5	TDelphiReader	636
31.5.1	Description	636
31.5.2	Method overview	636
31.5.3	Property overview	637
31.5.4	TDelphiReader.GetDriver	637
31.5.5	TDelphiReader.ReadStr	637
31.5.6	TDelphiReader.Read	637
31.5.7	TDelphiReader.Position	637
31.6	TDelphiWriter	638
31.6.1	Description	638
31.6.2	Method overview	638
31.6.3	Property overview	638
31.6.4	TDelphiWriter.GetDriver	638
31.6.5	TDelphiWriter.FlushBuffer	638
31.6.6	TDelphiWriter.Write	638
31.6.7	TDelphiWriter.WriteStr	639
31.6.8	TDelphiWriter.WriteValue	639
31.6.9	TDelphiWriter.Position	639
31.7	TStreamHelper	639
31.7.1	Method overview	639
31.7.2	TStreamHelper.ReadWordLE	640
31.7.3	TStreamHelper.ReadDWordLE	640
31.7.4	TStreamHelper.ReadQWordLE	640
31.7.5	TStreamHelper.WriteWordLE	640
31.7.6	TStreamHelper.WriteDWordLE	640
31.7.7	TStreamHelper.WriteQWordLE	640
31.7.8	TStreamHelper.ReadWordBE	640
31.7.9	TStreamHelper.ReadDWordBE	640
31.7.10	TStreamHelper.ReadQWordBE	640
31.7.11	TStreamHelper.WriteWordBE	641

31.7.12 TStreamHelper.WriteDWordBE	641
31.7.13 TStreamHelper.WriteQWordBE	641
32 Reference for unit 'StreamIO'	642
32.1 Used units	642
32.2 Overview	642
32.3 Procedures and functions	642
32.3.1 AssignStream	642
32.3.2 GetStream	643
33 Reference for unit 'syncobjs'	644
33.1 Used units	644
33.2 Overview	644
33.3 Constants, types and variables	644
33.3.1 Constants	644
33.3.2 Types	644
33.4 TCriticalSection	645
33.4.1 Description	645
33.4.2 Method overview	645
33.4.3 TCriticalSection.Acquire	646
33.4.4 TCriticalSection.Release	646
33.4.5 TCriticalSection.Enter	646
33.4.6 TCriticalSection.TryEnter	646
33.4.7 TCriticalSection.Leave	647
33.4.8 TCriticalSection.Create	647
33.4.9 TCriticalSection.Destroy	647
33.5 TEventObject	647
33.5.1 Description	647
33.5.2 Method overview	648
33.5.3 Property overview	648
33.5.4 TEventObject.Create	648
33.5.5 TEventObject.destroy	648
33.5.6 TEventObject.ResetEvent	648
33.5.7 TEventObject.SetEvent	649
33.5.8 TEventObject.WaitFor	649
33.5.9 TEventObject.ManualReset	649
33.6 THandleObject	649
33.6.1 Description	649
33.6.2 Method overview	650
33.6.3 Property overview	650
33.6.4 THandleObject.destroy	650

33.6.5	THandleObject.Handle	650
33.6.6	THandleObject.LastError	650
33.7	TSimpleEvent	650
33.7.1	Description	650
33.7.2	Method overview	651
33.7.3	TSimpleEvent.Create	651
33.8	TSynchroObject	651
33.8.1	Description	651
33.8.2	Method overview	651
33.8.3	TSynchroObject.Acquire	651
33.8.4	TSynchroObject.Release	651
34	Reference for unit 'URIParser'	653
34.1	Overview	653
34.2	Constants, types and variables	653
34.2.1	Types	653
34.3	Procedures and functions	653
34.3.1	EncodeURI	653
34.3.2	FilenameToURI	654
34.3.3	IsAbsoluteURI	654
34.3.4	ParseURI	654
34.3.5	ResolveRelativeURI	655
34.3.6	URIToFilename	655
35	Reference for unit 'zipper'	656
35.1	Used units	656
35.2	Overview	656
35.3	Constants, types and variables	656
35.3.1	Constants	656
35.3.2	Types	657
35.4	EZipError	659
35.4.1	Description	659
35.5	TCompressor	659
35.5.1	Description	659
35.5.2	Method overview	659
35.5.3	Property overview	659
35.5.4	TCompressor.Create	659
35.5.5	TCompressor.Compress	660
35.5.6	TCompressor.ZipID	660
35.5.7	TCompressor.ZipVersionReqd	660
35.5.8	TCompressor.ZipBitFlag	660

35.5.9	TCompressor.BufferSize	660
35.5.10	TCompressor.OnPercent	660
35.5.11	TCompressor.OnProgress	660
35.5.12	TCompressor.Crc32Val	661
35.6	TDeCompressor	661
35.6.1	Description	661
35.6.2	Method overview	661
35.6.3	Property overview	661
35.6.4	TDeCompressor.Create	661
35.6.5	TDeCompressor.DeCompress	661
35.6.6	TDeCompressor.ZipID	662
35.6.7	TDeCompressor.BufferSize	662
35.6.8	TDeCompressor.OnPercent	662
35.6.9	TDeCompressor.OnProgress	662
35.6.10	TDeCompressor.Crc32Val	662
35.7	TDeflater	662
35.7.1	Description	662
35.7.2	Method overview	663
35.7.3	Property overview	663
35.7.4	TDeflater.Create	663
35.7.5	TDeflater.Compress	663
35.7.6	TDeflater.ZipID	663
35.7.7	TDeflater.ZipVersionReqd	663
35.7.8	TDeflater.ZipBitFlag	663
35.7.9	TDeflater.CompressionLevel	663
35.8	TFullZipFileEntries	664
35.8.1	Property overview	664
35.8.2	TFullZipFileEntries.FullEntries	664
35.9	TFullZipFileEntry	664
35.9.1	Property overview	664
35.9.2	TFullZipFileEntry.CompressMethod	664
35.9.3	TFullZipFileEntry.CompressedSize	664
35.9.4	TFullZipFileEntry.CRC32	664
35.10	TInflater	664
35.10.1	Description	664
35.10.2	Method overview	665
35.10.3	TInflater.Create	665
35.10.4	TInflater.DeCompress	665
35.10.5	TInflater.ZipID	665
35.11	TShrinker	665

35.11.1 Description	665
35.11.2 Method overview	665
35.11.3 TShrinker.Create	665
35.11.4 TShrinker.Destroy	666
35.11.5 TShrinker.Compress	666
35.11.6 TShrinker.ZipID	666
35.11.7 TShrinker.ZipVersionReqd	666
35.11.8 TShrinker.ZipBitFlag	666
35.12TUnZipper	666
35.12.1 Method overview	666
35.12.2 Property overview	667
35.12.3 TUnZipper.Create	667
35.12.4 TUnZipper.Destroy	667
35.12.5 TUnZipper.UnZipAllFiles	667
35.12.6 TUnZipper.UnZipFiles	668
35.12.7 TUnZipper.Clear	668
35.12.8 TUnZipper.Examine	668
35.12.9 TUnZipper.BufferSize	668
35.12.10TUnZipper.OnOpenInputStream	668
35.12.11TUnZipper.OnCloseInputStream	668
35.12.12TUnZipper.OnCreateStream	669
35.12.13TUnZipper.OnDoneStream	669
35.12.14TUnZipper.OnPercent	669
35.12.15TUnZipper.OnProgress	669
35.12.16TUnZipper.OnStartFile	669
35.12.17TUnZipper.OnEndFile	669
35.12.18TUnZipper.FileName	670
35.12.19TUnZipper.OutputPath	670
35.12.20TUnZipper.FileComment	670
35.12.21TUnZipper.Files	670
35.12.22TUnZipper.Entries	670
35.13TZipFileEntries	670
35.13.1 Description	670
35.13.2 Method overview	671
35.13.3 Property overview	671
35.13.4 TZipFileEntries.AddFileEntry	671
35.13.5 TZipFileEntries.AddFileEntries	671
35.13.6 TZipFileEntries.Entries	671
35.14TZipFileEntry	671
35.14.1 Method overview	671

35.14.2	Property overview	672
35.14.3	TZipFileEntry.Create	672
35.14.4	TZipFileEntry.IsDirectory	672
35.14.5	TZipFileEntry.IsLink	672
35.14.6	TZipFileEntry.Assign	672
35.14.7	TZipFileEntry.Stream	672
35.14.8	TZipFileEntry.ArchiveFileName	672
35.14.9	TZipFileEntry.DiskFileName	673
35.14.10	TZipFileEntry.Size	673
35.14.11	TZipFileEntry.DateTime	673
35.14.12	TZipFileEntry.OS	673
35.14.13	TZipFileEntry.Attributes	673
35.14.14	TZipFileEntry.CompressionLevel	673
35.15	TZipper	674
35.15.1	Method overview	674
35.15.2	Property overview	674
35.15.3	TZipper.Create	674
35.15.4	TZipper.Destroy	674
35.15.5	TZipper.ZipAllFiles	674
35.15.6	TZipper.SaveToFile	675
35.15.7	TZipper.SaveToStream	675
35.15.8	TZipper.ZipFiles	675
35.15.9	TZipper.Clear	675
35.15.10	TZipper.BufferSize	675
35.15.11	TZipper.OnPercent	675
35.15.12	TZipper.OnProgress	676
35.15.13	TZipper.OnStartFile	676
35.15.14	TZipper.OnEndFile	676
35.15.15	TZipper.FileName	676
35.15.16	TZipper.FileComment	676
35.15.17	TZipper.Files	676
35.15.18	TZipper.InMemSize	676
35.15.19	TZipper.Entries	677
36	Reference for unit 'zstream'	678
36.1	Used units	678
36.2	Overview	678
36.3	Constants, types and variables	678
36.3.1	Types	678
36.4	Ecompressionerror	679

36.4.1 Description	679
36.5 Edecompressionerror	679
36.5.1 Description	679
36.6 Egzfileerror	679
36.6.1 Description	679
36.7 Ezliberror	679
36.7.1 Description	679
36.8 Tcompressionstream	679
36.8.1 Description	679
36.8.2 Method overview	680
36.8.3 Property overview	680
36.8.4 Tcompressionstream.create	680
36.8.5 Tcompressionstream.destroy	680
36.8.6 Tcompressionstream.write	680
36.8.7 Tcompressionstream.flush	681
36.8.8 Tcompressionstream.get_compressionrate	681
36.8.9 Tcompressionstream.OnProgress	681
36.9 Tcustomzlibstream	681
36.9.1 Description	681
36.9.2 Method overview	682
36.9.3 Tcustomzlibstream.create	682
36.9.4 Tcustomzlibstream.destroy	682
36.10 Tdecompressionstream	682
36.10.1 Description	682
36.10.2 Method overview	682
36.10.3 Property overview	683
36.10.4 Tdecompressionstream.create	683
36.10.5 Tdecompressionstream.destroy	683
36.10.6 Tdecompressionstream.read	683
36.10.7 Tdecompressionstream.seek	684
36.10.8 Tdecompressionstream.get_compressionrate	684
36.10.9 Tdecompressionstream.OnProgress	684
36.11 TGZFileStream	685
36.11.1 Description	685
36.11.2 Method overview	685
36.11.3 TGZFileStream.create	685
36.11.4 TGZFileStream.read	685
36.11.5 TGZFileStream.write	686
36.11.6 TGZFileStream.seek	686
36.11.7 TGZFileStream.destroy	686

About this guide

This document describes all constants, types, variables, functions and procedures as they are declared in the units that come standard with the FCL (Free Component Library).

Throughout this document, we will refer to functions, types and variables with `typewriter` font. Functions and procedures have their own subsections, and for each function or procedure we have the following topics:

Declaration The exact declaration of the function.

Description What does the procedure exactly do ?

Errors What errors can occur.

See Also Cross references to other related functions/commands.

0.1 Overview

The Free Component Library is a series of units that implement various classes and non-visual components for use with Free Pascal. They are building blocks for non-visual and visual programs, such as designed in Lazarus.

The `TDataset` descendents have been implemented in a way that makes them compatible to the Delphi implementation of these units. There are other units that have counterparts in Delphi, but most of them are unique to Free Pascal.

Chapter 1

Reference for unit 'ascii85'

1.1 Used units

Table 1.1: Used units by unit 'ascii85'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

1.2 Overview

The `ascii85` provides an ASCII 85 or base 85 decoding algorithm. It is class and stream based: the `TASCII85DecoderStream` (68) stream can be used to decode any stream with ASCII85 encoded data.

Currently, no ASCII85 encoder stream is available.

It's usage and purpose is similar to the IDEA (453) or base64 (89) units.

1.3 Constants, types and variables

1.3.1 Types

```
TASCII85State = (ascInitial, ascOneEncodedChar, ascTwoEncodedChars,  
                 ascThreeEncodedChars, ascFourEncodedChars,  
                 ascNoEncodedChar, ascPrefix)
```

Table 1.2: Enumeration values for type TASCII85State

Value	Explanation
ascFourEncodedChars	Four encoded characters in buffer.
ascInitial	Initial state
ascNoEncodedChar	No encoded characters in buffer.
ascOneEncodedChar	One encoded character in buffer.
ascPrefix	Prefix processing
ascThreeEncodedChars	Three encoded characters in buffer.
ascTwoEncodedChars	Two encoded characters in buffer.

TASCII85State is for internal use, it contains the current state of the decoder.

1.4 TASCII85DecoderStream

1.4.1 Description

TASCII85DecoderStream is a read-only stream: it takes an input stream with ASCII 85 encoded data, and decodes the data as it is read. To this end, it overrides the TStream.Read (??) method.

The stream cannot be written to, trying to write to the stream will result in an exception.

1.4.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
69	Close	Close decoder
69	ClosedP	Check if the state is correct
68	Create	Create new ASCII 85 decoder stream
69	Decode	Decode source byte
69	Destroy	Clean up instance
70	Read	Read data from stream
70	Seek	Set stream position

1.4.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
70	BExpectBoundary	rw	Expect character

1.4.4 TASCII85DecoderStream.Create

Synopsis: Create new ASCII 85 decoder stream

Declaration: constructor Create(aStream: TStream)

Visibility: published

Description: Create instantiates a new TASCII85DecoderStream instance, and sets aStream as the source stream.

See also: TASCII85DecoderStream.Destroy ([69](#))

1.4.5 TASCII85DecoderStream.Decode

Synopsis: Decode source byte

Declaration: `procedure Decode(aInput: Byte)`

Visibility: published

Description: `Decode` decodes a source byte, and transfers it to the buffer. It is an internal routine and should not be used directly.

See also: `TASCII85DecoderStream.Close` (69)

1.4.6 TASCII85DecoderStream.Close

Synopsis: Close decoder

Declaration: `procedure Close`

Visibility: published

Description: `Close` closes the decoder mechanism: it checks if all data was read and performs a check to see whether all input data was consumed.

Errors: If the input stream was invalid, an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

See also: `TASCII85DecoderStream.ClosedP` (69), `TASCII85DecoderStream.Read` (70), `TASCII85DecoderStream.Destroy` (69)

1.4.7 TASCII85DecoderStream.ClosedP

Synopsis: Check if the state is correct

Declaration: `function ClosedP : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Description: `ClosedP` checks if the decoder state is one of `ascInitial`, `ascNoEncodedChar`, `ascPrefix`, and returns `True` if it is.

See also: `TASCII85DecoderStream.Close` (69), `TASCII85DecoderStream.BExpectBoundary` (70)

1.4.8 TASCII85DecoderStream.Destroy

Synopsis: Clean up instance

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` closes the input stream using `Close` (69) and cleans up the `TASCII85DecoderStream` instance from memory.

Errors: In case the input stream was invalid, an exception may occur.

See also: `TASCII85DecoderStream.Close` (69)

1.4.9 TASCII85DecoderStream.Read

Synopsis: Read data from stream

Declaration: `function Read(var aBuffer;aCount: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Read attempts to read `aCount` bytes from the stream and places them in `aBuffer`. It reads only as much data as is available. The actual number of read bytes is returned.

The read method reads as much data from the input stream as needed to get to `aCount` bytes, in general this will be `aCount*5/4` bytes.

1.4.10 TASCII85DecoderStream.Seek

Synopsis: Set stream position

Declaration: `function Seek(aOffset: LongInt;aOrigin: Word) : LongInt; Override`
`function Seek(const aOffset: Int64;aOrigin: TSeekOrigin) : Int64`
`; Override; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: Seek sets the stream position. It only allows to set the position to the current position of this file, and returns then the current position. All other arguments will result in an `EReadError` exception.

Errors: In case the arguments are different from `soCurrent` and 0, an `EReadError` exception will be raised.

See also: `TASCII85DecoderStream.Read` ([70](#))

1.4.11 TASCII85DecoderStream.BExpectBoundary

Synopsis: Expect character

Declaration: `Property BExpectBoundary : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `BExpectBoundary` is `True` if a encoded data boundary is to be expected (">").

See also: `ClosedP` ([69](#))

1.5 TASCII85EncoderStream

1.5.1 Description

`TASCII85EncoderStream` is the counterpart to the `TASCII85DecoderStream` ([68](#)) decoder stream: what `TASCII85EncoderStream` encodes, can be decoded by `TASCII85DecoderStream` ([68](#)).

The encoder stream works using a destination stream: whatever data is written to the encoder stream is encoded and written to the destination stream. The stream must be passed on in the constructor.

Note that all encoded data is only written to the destination stream when the encoder stream is destroyed.

See also: `TASCII85EncoderStream.create` ([71](#)), `TASCII85DecoderStream` ([68](#))

1.5.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
71	Create	Create a new instance of <code>TASCII85EncoderStream</code>
71	Destroy	Flushed the data to the output stream and cleans up the encoder instance.
71	Write	Write data encoded to the destination stream

1.5.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
72	Boundary	r	Is a boundary delineator written before and after the data
72	Width	r	Width of the lines written to the data stream

1.5.4 TASCII85EncoderStream.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TASCII85EncoderStream`

Declaration: `constructor Create(ADest: TStream; AWidth: Integer; ABoundary: Boolean)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of `TASCII85EncoderStream`. It stores `ADest` as the destination stream for the encoded data. The `Width` parameter indicates the width of the lines that are written by the encoder: after this amount of characters, a linefeed is put in the data stream. If `ABoundary` is `True` then a boundary delineator is written to the stream before and after the data.

See also: `TASCII85EncoderStream` ([70](#)), `Width` ([72](#)), `Boundary` ([72](#))

1.5.5 TASCII85EncoderStream.Destroy

Synopsis: Flushed the data to the output stream and cleans up the encoder instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` writes the data remaining in the internal buffer to the destination stream (possibly followed by a boundary delineator) and then destroys the encoder instance.

See also: `TASCII85EncoderStream.Write` ([71](#)), `TASCII85EncoderStream.Boundary` ([72](#))

1.5.6 TASCII85EncoderStream.Write

Synopsis: Write data encoded to the destination stream

Declaration: `function Write(const aBuffer; aCount: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Write` encodes the `aCount` bytes of data in `aBuffer` and writes the encoded data to the destination stream.

Not all data is written immediatly to the destination stream. Only after the encoding stream is destroyed will the destination stream contain the full data.

See also: `TASCII85EncoderStream.Destroy` ([71](#))

1.5.7 TASCII85EncoderStream.Width

Synopsis: Width of the lines written to the data stream

Declaration: `Property Width : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Width` is the width of the lines of encoded data written to the stream. After `Width` lines, a line ending will be written to the stream. The value is passed to the constructor and cannot be changed afterwards.

See also: [Boundary \(72\)](#), [Create \(71\)](#)

1.5.8 TASCII85EncoderStream.Boundary

Synopsis: Is a boundary delineator written before and after the data

Declaration: `Property Boundary : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Boundary` indicates whether the stream will write a boundary delineator before and after the encoded data. It is passed to the constructor and cannot be changed.

See also: [Width \(72\)](#), [Create \(71\)](#)

1.6 TASCII85RingBuffer

1.6.1 Description

`TASCII85RingBuffer` is an internal buffer class: it maintains a memory buffer of 1Kb, for faster reading of the stream. It should not be necessary to instantiate an instance of this class, the `TASCII85DecoderStream` ([68](#)) decoder stream will create an instance of this class automatically.

See also: `TASCII85DecoderStream` ([68](#))

1.6.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
73	<code>Read</code>	Read data from the internal buffer
73	<code>Write</code>	Write data to the internal buffer

1.6.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
73	<code>FillCount</code>	<code>r</code>	Number of bytes in buffer
73	<code>Size</code>	<code>r</code>	Size of buffer

1.6.4 TASCII85RingBuffer.Write

Synopsis: Write data to the internal buffer

Declaration: `procedure Write(const aBuffer; aSize: Cardinal)`

Visibility: published

Description: `Write` writes `aSize` bytes from `aBuffer` to the internal memory buffer. Only as much bytes are written as will fit in the buffer.

See also: `TASCII85RingBuffer.FillCount` ([73](#)), `TASCII85RingBuffer.Read` ([73](#)), `TASCII85RingBuffer.Size` ([73](#))

1.6.5 TASCII85RingBuffer.Read

Synopsis: Read data from the internal buffer

Declaration: `function Read(var aBuffer; aSize: Cardinal) : Cardinal`

Visibility: published

Description: `Read` will read `aSize` bytes from the internal buffer and writes them to `aBuffer`. If not enough bytes are available, only as much bytes as available will be written. The function returns the number of bytes transferred.

See also: `TASCII85RingBuffer.FillCount` ([73](#)), `TASCII85RingBuffer.Write` ([73](#)), `TASCII85RingBuffer.Size` ([73](#))

1.6.6 TASCII85RingBuffer.FillCount

Synopsis: Number of bytes in buffer

Declaration: `Property FillCount : Cardinal`

Visibility: published

Access: Read

Description: `FillCount` is the available amount of bytes in the buffer.

See also: `TASCII85RingBuffer.Write` ([73](#)), `TASCII85RingBuffer.Read` ([73](#)), `TASCII85RingBuffer.Size` ([73](#))

1.6.7 TASCII85RingBuffer.Size

Synopsis: Size of buffer

Declaration: `Property Size : Cardinal`

Visibility: published

Access: Read

Description: `Size` is the total size of the memory buffer. This is currently hardcoded to 1024Kb.

See also: `TASCII85RingBuffer.FillCount` ([73](#))

Chapter 2

Reference for unit 'AVL_Tree'

2.1 Used units

Table 2.1: Used units by unit 'AVL_Tree'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

2.2 Overview

The `avl_tree` unit implements a general-purpose AVL (balanced) tree class: the `TAVLTree` (74) class and it's associated data node class `TAVLTreeNode` (83).

2.3 TAVLTree

2.3.1 Description

`TAVLTree` maintains a balanced AVL tree. The tree consists of `TAVLTreeNode` (83) nodes, each of which has a `Data` pointer associated with it. The `TAVLTree` component offers methods to balance and search the tree.

By default, the list is searched with a simple pointer comparison algorithm, but a custom search mechanism can be specified in the `OnCompare` (83) property.

See also: `TAVLTreeNode` (83)

2.3.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
79	Add	Add a new node to the tree
80	Clear	Clears the tree
81	ConsistencyCheck	Check the consistency of the tree
82	Create	Create a new instance of <code>TAVLTree</code>
79	Delete	Delete a node from the tree
82	Destroy	Destroy the <code>TAVLTree</code> instance
75	Find	Find a data item in the tree.
77	FindHighest	Find the highest (rightmost) node in the tree.
76	FindKey	Find a data item in the tree using alternate compare mechanism
77	FindLeftMost	Find the node most left to a specified data node
78	FindLeftMostKey	Find the node most left to a specified key node
78	FindLeftMostSameKey	Find the node most left to a specified node with the same data
76	FindLowest	Find the lowest (leftmost) node in the tree.
77	FindNearest	Find the node closest to the data in the tree
77	FindPointer	Search for a data pointer
76	FindPrecessor	
78	FindRightMost	Find the node most right to a specified node
78	FindRightMostKey	Find the node most right to a specified key node
79	FindRightMostSameKey	Find the node most right of a specified node with the same data
76	FindSuccessor	Find successor to node
81	FreeAndClear	Clears the tree and frees nodes
81	FreeAndDelete	Delete a node from the tree and destroy it
83	GetEnumerator	Get an enumerator for the tree.
80	MoveDataLeftMost	Move data to the nearest left element
80	MoveDataRightMost	Move data to the nearest right element
79	Remove	Remove a data item from the list.
80	RemovePointer	Remove a pointer item from the list.
82	ReportAsString	Return the tree report as a string
82	SetNodeManager	Set the node instance manager to use
81	WriteReportToStream	Write the contents of the tree consistency check to the stream

2.3.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
83	Count	r	Number of nodes in the tree.
83	OnCompare	rw	Compare function used when comparing nodes

2.3.4 TAVLTree.Find

Synopsis: Find a data item in the tree.

Declaration: `function Find(Data: Pointer) : TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: public

Description: `Find` uses the default `OnCompare` ([83](#)) comparing function to find the `Data` pointer in the tree. It returns the `TAVLTreeNode` instance that results in a successful compare with the `Data` pointer, or `Nil` if none is found.

The default `OnCompare` function compares the actual pointers, which means that by default `Find` will give the same result as `FindPointer` ([77](#)).

See also: [OnCompare \(83\)](#), [FindKey \(76\)](#)

2.3.5 TAVLTree.FindKey

Synopsis: Find a data item in the tree using alternate compare mechanism

Declaration: `function FindKey(Key: Pointer; OnCompareKeyWithData: TListSortCompare)
: TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindKey` uses the specified `OnCompareKeyWithData` comparing function to find the `Key` pointer in the tree. It returns the `TAVLTreeNode` instance that matches the `Data` pointer, or `Nil` if none is found.

See also: [OnCompare \(83\)](#), [Find \(75\)](#)

2.3.6 TAVLTree.FindSuccessor

Synopsis: Find successor to node

Declaration: `function FindSuccessor(ANode: TAVLTreeNode) : TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindSuccessor` returns the successor to `ANode`: this is the leftmost node in the right subtree, or the leftmost node above the node `ANode`. This can of course be `Nil`.

This method is used when a node must be inserted at the rightmost position.

See also: [TAVLTree.FindPrecessor \(76\)](#), [TAVLTree.MoveDataRightMost \(80\)](#)

2.3.7 TAVLTree.FindPrecessor

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function FindPrecessor(ANode: TAVLTreeNode) : TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindPrecessor` returns the successor to `ANode`: this is the rightmost node in the left subtree, or the rightmost node above the node `ANode`. This can of course be `Nil`.

This method is used when a node must be inserted at the leftmost position.

See also: [TAVLTree.FindSuccessor \(76\)](#), [TAVLTree.MoveDataLeftMost \(80\)](#)

2.3.8 TAVLTree.FindLowest

Synopsis: Find the lowest (leftmost) node in the tree.

Declaration: `function FindLowest : TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindLowest` returns the leftmost node in the tree, i.e. the node which is reached when descending from the rootnode via the left (??) subtrees.

See also: [FindHighest \(77\)](#)

2.3.9 TAVLTree.FindHighest

Synopsis: Find the highest (rightmost) node in the tree.

Declaration: `function FindHighest : TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindHighest` returns the rightmost node in the tree, i.e. the node which is reached when descending from the rootnode via the Right (??) subtrees.

See also: `FindLowest` (76)

2.3.10 TAVLTree.FindNearest

Synopsis: Find the node closest to the data in the tree

Declaration: `function FindNearest(Data: Pointer) : TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindNearest` searches the node in the data tree that is closest to the specified `Data`. If `Data` appears in the tree, then its node is returned.

See also: `FindHighest` (77), `FindLowest` (76), `Find` (75), `FindKey` (76)

2.3.11 TAVLTree.FindPointer

Synopsis: Search for a data pointer

Declaration: `function FindPointer(Data: Pointer) : TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindPointer` searches for a node where the actual data pointer equals `Data`. This is a more fine search than `find` (75), where a custom compare function can be used.

The default `OnCompare` (83) compares the data pointers, so the default `Find` will return the same node as `FindPointer`

See also: `TAVLTree.Find` (75), `TAVLTree.FindKey` (76)

2.3.12 TAVLTree.FindLeftMost

Synopsis: Find the node most left to a specified data node

Declaration: `function FindLeftMost(Data: Pointer) : TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindLeftMost` finds the node most left from the `Data` node. It starts at the preceding node for `Data` and tries to move as far right in the tree as possible.

This operation corresponds to finding the previous item in a list.

See also: `TAVLTree.FindRightMost` (78), `TAVLTree.FindLeftMostKey` (78), `TAVLTree.FindRightMostKey` (78)

2.3.13 TAVLTree.FindRightMost

Synopsis: Find the node most right to a specified node

Declaration: `function FindRightMost (Data: Pointer) : TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindRightMost` finds the node most right from the `Data` node. It starts at the succeeding node for `Data` and tries to move as far left in the tree as possible.

This operation corresponds to finding the next item in a list.

See also: `TAVLTree.FindLeftMost` (77), `TAVLTree.FindLeftMostKey` (78), `TAVLTree.FindRightMostKey` (78)

2.3.14 TAVLTree.FindLeftMostKey

Synopsis: Find the node most left to a specified key node

Declaration: `function FindLeftMostKey (Key: Pointer;
OnCompareKeyWithData: TListSortCompare)
: TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindLeftMostKey` finds the node most left from the node associated with `Key`. It starts at the preceding node for `Key` and tries to move as far left in the tree as possible.

See also: `TAVLTree.FindLeftMost` (77), `TAVLTree.FindRightMost` (78), `TAVLTree.FindRightMostKey` (78)

2.3.15 TAVLTree.FindRightMostKey

Synopsis: Find the node most right to a specified key node

Declaration: `function FindRightMostKey (Key: Pointer;
OnCompareKeyWithData: TListSortCompare)
: TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindRightMostKey` finds the node most left from the node associated with `Key`. It starts at the succeeding node for `Key` and tries to move as far right in the tree as possible.

See also: `TAVLTree.FindLeftMost` (77), `TAVLTree.FindRightMost` (78), `TAVLTree.FindLeftMostKey` (78)

2.3.16 TAVLTree.FindLeftMostSameKey

Synopsis: Find the node most left to a specified node with the same data

Declaration: `function FindLeftMostSameKey (ANode: TAVLTreeNode) : TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindLeftMostSameKey` finds the node most left from and with the same data as the specified node `ANode`.

See also: `TAVLTree.FindLeftMost` (77), `TAVLTree.FindLeftMostKey` (78), `TAVLTree.FindRightMostSameKey` (79)

2.3.17 TAVLTree.FindRightMostSameKey

Synopsis: Find the node most right of a specified node with the same data

Declaration: `function FindRightMostSameKey (ANode: TAVLTreeNode) : TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindRightMostSameKey` finds the node most right from and with the same data as the specified node `ANode`.

See also: `TAVLTree.FindRightMost` (78), `TAVLTree.FindRightMostKey` (78), `TAVLTree.FindLeftMostSameKey` (78)

2.3.18 TAVLTree.Add

Synopsis: Add a new node to the tree

Declaration: `procedure Add (ANode: TAVLTreeNode)`
`function Add (Data: Pointer) : TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: public

Description: `Add` adds a new `Data` or `Node` to the tree. It inserts the node so that the tree is maximally balanced by rebalancing the tree after the insert. In case a data pointer is added to the tree, then the node that was created is returned.

See also: `TAVLTree.Delete` (79), `TAVLTree.Remove` (79)

2.3.19 TAVLTree.Delete

Synopsis: Delete a node from the tree

Declaration: `procedure Delete (ANode: TAVLTreeNode)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Delete` removes the node from the tree. The node is not freed, but is passed to a `TAVLTreeNode-MemManager` (85) instance for future reuse. The data that the node represents is also not freed. The tree is rebalanced after the node was deleted.

See also: `TAVLTree.Remove` (79), `TAVLTree.RemovePointer` (80), `TAVLTree.Clear` (80)

2.3.20 TAVLTree.Remove

Synopsis: Remove a data item from the list.

Declaration: `procedure Remove (Data: Pointer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Remove` finds the node associated with `Data` using `find` (75) and, if found, deletes it from the tree. Only the first occurrence of `Data` will be removed.

See also: `TAVLTree.Delete` (79), `TAVLTree.RemovePointer` (80), `TAVLTree.Clear` (80), `TAVLTree.Find` (75)

2.3.21 TAVLTree.RemovePointer

Synopsis: Remove a pointer item from the list.

Declaration: `procedure RemovePointer(Data: Pointer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Remove` uses `FindPointer` (77) to find the node associated with the pointer `Data` and, if found, deletes it from the tree. Only the first occurrence of `Data` will be removed.

See also: `TAVLTree.Remove` (79), `TAVLTree.Delete` (79), `TAVLTree.Clear` (80)

2.3.22 TAVLTree.MoveDataLeftMost

Synopsis: Move data to the nearest left element

Declaration: `procedure MoveDataLeftMost(var ANode: TAVLTreeNode)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `MoveDataLeftMost` moves the data from the node `ANode` to the nearest left location relative to `ANode`. It returns the new node where the data is positioned. The data from the former left node will be switched to `ANode`.

This operation corresponds to switching the current with the previous element in a list.

See also: `TAVLTree.MoveDataRightMost` (80)

2.3.23 TAVLTree.MoveDataRightMost

Synopsis: Move data to the nearest right element

Declaration: `procedure MoveDataRightMost(var ANode: TAVLTreeNode)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `MoveDataRightMost` moves the data from the node `ANode` to the rightmost location relative to `ANode`. It returns the new node where the data is positioned. The data from the former rightmost node will be switched to `ANode`.

This operation corresponds to switching the current with the next element in a list.

See also: `TAVLTree.MoveDataLeftMost` (80)

2.3.24 TAVLTree.Clear

Synopsis: Clears the tree

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` deletes all nodes from the tree. The nodes themselves are not freed, and the data pointer in the nodes is also not freed.

If the node's data must be freed as well, use `TAVLTree.FreeAndClear` (81) instead.

See also: `TAVLTree.FreeAndClear` (81), `TAVLTree.Delete` (79)

2.3.25 TAVLTree.FreeAndClear

Synopsis: Clears the tree and frees nodes

Declaration: `procedure FreeAndClear`

Visibility: public

Description: `FreeAndClear` deletes all nodes from the tree. The data pointer in the nodes is assumed to be an object, and is freed prior to deleting the node from the tree.

See also: `TAVLTree.Clear` (80), `TAVLTree.Delete` (79), `TAVLTree.FreeAndDelete` (81)

2.3.26 TAVLTree.FreeAndDelete

Synopsis: Delete a node from the tree and destroy it

Declaration: `procedure FreeAndDelete (ANode: TAVLTreeNode)`

Visibility: public

Description: `FreeAndDelete` deletes a node from the tree, and destroys the data pointer: The data pointer in the nodes is assumed to be an object, and is freed by calling its destructor.

See also: `TAVLTree.Clear` (80), `TAVLTree.Delete` (79), `TAVLTree.FreeAndClear` (81)

2.3.27 TAVLTree.ConsistencyCheck

Synopsis: Check the consistency of the tree

Declaration: `function ConsistencyCheck : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `ConsistencyCheck` checks the correctness of the tree. It returns 0 if the tree is internally consistent, and a negative number if the tree contains an error somewhere.

- 1The Count property doesn't match the actual node count
- 2A left node does not point to the correct parent
- 3A left node is larger than parent node
- 4A right node does not point to the correct parent
- 5A right node is less than parent node
- 6The balance of a node is not calculated correctly

See also: `TAVLTree.WriteReportToStream` (81)

2.3.28 TAVLTree.WriteReportToStream

Synopsis: Write the contents of the tree consistency check to the stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteReportToStream (s: TStream; var StreamSize: Int64)`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteReportToStream` writes a visual representation of the tree to the stream S. The total number of written bytes is returned in `StreamSize`. This method is only useful for debugging purposes.

See also: `TAVLTree.ConsistencyCheck` (81)

2.3.29 TAVLTree.ReportAsString

Synopsis: Return the tree report as a string

Declaration: `function ReportAsString : string`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReportAsString` calls `WriteReportToStream` (81) and returns the stream data as a string.

See also: `TAVLTree.WriteReportToStream` (81)

2.3.30 TAVLTree.SetNodeManager

Synopsis: Set the node instance manager to use

Declaration: `procedure SetNodeManager (NewMgr: TBaseAVLTreeNodeManager;
AutoFree: Boolean)`

Visibility: public

Description: `SetNodeManager` sets the node manager instance used by the tree to `newmgr`. It should be called before any nodes are added to the tree. The `TAVLTree` instance will not destroy the nodemanager, thus the same instance of the tree node manager can be used to manager the nodes of multiple `TAVLTree` instances.

By default, a single instance of `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager` (85) is used to manage the nodes of all `TAVLTree` instances.

See also: `TBaseAVLTreeNodeManager` (87), `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager` (85)

2.3.31 TAVLTree.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TAVLTree`

Declaration: `constructor Create (OnCompareMethod: TListSortCompare)`
`constructor Create`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of `TAVLTree` (74). An alternate `OnCompare` (83) can be provided: the default `OnCompare` method compares the 2 data pointers of a node.

See also: `OnCompare` (83)

2.3.32 TAVLTree.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroy the `TAVLTree` instance

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` clears the nodes (the node data is not freed) and then destroys the `TAVLTree` instance.

See also: `TAVLTree.Create` (82), `TAVLTree.Clean` (74)

2.3.33 TAVLTree.GetEnumerator

Synopsis: Get an enumerator for the tree.

Declaration: `function GetEnumerator : TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetEnumerator` returns an instance of the standard tree node enumerator `TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator` (84).

See also: `TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator` (84)

2.3.34 TAVLTree.OnCompare

Synopsis: Compare function used when comparing nodes

Declaration: `Property OnCompare : TListSortCompare`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnCompare` is the comparing function used when the data of 2 nodes must be compared. By default, the function simply compares the 2 data pointers. A different function can be specified on creation.

See also: `TAVLTree.Create` (82)

2.3.35 TAVLTree.Count

Synopsis: Number of nodes in the tree.

Declaration: `Property Count : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Count` is the number of nodes in the tree.

2.4 TAVLTreeNode

2.4.1 Description

`TAVLTreeNode` represents a single node in the AVL tree. It contains references to the other nodes in the tree, and provides a `Data (??)` pointer which can be used to store the data, associated with the node.

See also: `TAVLTree` (74), `TAVLTreeNode.Data (??)`

2.4.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
84	<code>Clear</code>	Clears the node's data
84	<code>TreeDepth</code>	Level of the node in the tree below

2.4.3 TAVLTreeNode.Clear

Synopsis: Clears the node's data

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` clears all pointers and references in the node. It does not free the memory pointed to by these references.

2.4.4 TAVLTreeNode.TreeDepth

Synopsis: Level of the node in the tree below

Declaration: `function TreeDepth : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `TreeDepth` is the height of the node: this is the largest height of the left or right nodes, plus 1. If no nodes appear below this node (`left` and `Right` are `Nil`), the depth is 1.

See also: `Balance` (??)

2.5 TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator

2.5.1 Description

`TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator` is a class which implements the enumerator interface for the `TAVLTree` (74). It enumerates all the nodes in the tree.

See also: `TAVLTree` (74)

2.5.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
84	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of <code>TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator</code>
85	<code>MoveNext</code>	Move to next node in the tree.

2.5.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
85	<code>Current</code>	<code>r</code>	Current node in the tree

2.5.4 TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator`

Declaration: `constructor Create (Tree: TAVLTree)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of `TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator` and saves the `Tree` argument for later use in the enumerator.

2.5.5 TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator.MoveNext

Synopsis: Move to next node in the tree.

Declaration: `function MoveNext : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `MoveNext` will return the lowest node in the tree to start with, and for all other calls returns the successor node of the current node with `TAVLTree.FindSuccessor` (76).

See also: `TAVLTree.FindSuccessor` (76)

2.5.6 TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator.Current

Synopsis: Current node in the tree

Declaration: `Property Current : TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Current` is the current node in the enumeration.

See also: `TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator.MoveNext` (85)

2.6 TAVLTreeNodeMemManager

2.6.1 Description

`TAVLTreeNodeMemManager` is an internal object used by the `avl_tree` unit. Normally, no instance of this object should be created: An instance is created by the unit initialization code, and freed when the unit is finalized.

See also: `TAVLTreeNode` (83), `TAVLTree` (74)

2.6.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
86	<code>Clear</code>	Frees all unused nodes
86	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of <code>TAVLTreeNodeMemManager</code>
86	<code>Destroy</code>	
86	<code>DisposeNode</code>	Return a node to the free list
86	<code>NewNode</code>	Create a new <code>TAVLTreeNode</code> instance

2.6.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
87	<code>Count</code>	r	Number of nodes in the list.
87	<code>MaximumFreeNodeRatio</code>	rw	Maximum amount of free nodes in the list
87	<code>MinimumFreeNode</code>	rw	Minimum amount of free nodes to be kept.

2.6.4 TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.DisposeNode

Synopsis: Return a node to the free list

Declaration: `procedure DisposeNode (ANode: TAVLTreeNode); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `DisposeNode` is used to put the node `ANode` in the list of free nodes, or optionally destroy it if the free list is full. After a call to `DisposeNode`, `ANode` must be considered invalid.

See also: `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.NewNode` (86)

2.6.5 TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.NewNode

Synopsis: Create a new `TAVLTreeNode` instance

Declaration: `function NewNode : TAVLTreeNode; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `NewNode` returns a new `TAVLTreeNode` (83) instance. If there is a node in the free list, it are returned. If no more free nodes are present, a new node is created.

See also: `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.DisposeNode` (86)

2.6.6 TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.Clear

Synopsis: Frees all unused nodes

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` removes all unused nodes from the list and frees them.

See also: `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.MinimumFreeNode` (87), `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.MaximumFreeNodeRatio` (87)

2.6.7 TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager`

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager`.

See also: `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.Destroy` (86)

2.6.8 TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.Destroy

Synopsis:

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` calls `clear` to clean up the free node list and then calls the inherited `destroy`.

See also: `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.Create` (86)

2.6.9 TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.MinimumFreeNode

Synopsis: Minimum amount of free nodes to be kept.

Declaration: `Property MinimumFreeNode : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `MinimumFreeNode` is the minimum amount of nodes that must be kept in the free nodes list.

See also: `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.MaximumFreeNodeRatio` (87)

2.6.10 TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.MaximumFreeNodeRatio

Synopsis: Maximum amount of free nodes in the list

Declaration: `Property MaximumFreeNodeRatio : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `MaximumFreeNodeRatio` is the maximum amount of free nodes that should be kept in the list: if a node is disposed of, then the ratio of the free nodes versus the total amount of nodes is checked, and if it is less than the `MaximumFreeNodeRatio` ratio but larger than the minimum amount of free nodes, then the node is disposed of instead of added to the free list.

See also: `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.Count` (87), `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.MinimumFreeNode` (87)

2.6.11 TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.Count

Synopsis: Number of nodes in the list.

Declaration: `Property Count : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read

Description: `Count` is the total number of nodes in the list, used or not.

See also: `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.MinimumFreeNode` (87), `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.MaximumFreeNodeRatio` (87)

2.7 TBaseAVLTreeNodeManager

2.7.1 Description

`TBaseAVLTreeNodeManager` is an abstract class from which a descendent can be created that manages creating and disposing of tree nodes (instances of `TAVLTreeNode` (83)) for a `TAVLTree` (74) tree instance. No instance of this class should be created, it is a purely abstract class. The default descendant of this class used by an `TAVLTree` instance is `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager` (85).

The `TAVLTree.SetNodeManager` (82) method can be used to set the node manager that a `TAVLTree` instance should use.

See also: `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager` (85), `TAVLTree.SetNodeManager` (82), `TAVLTreeNode` (83)

2.7.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
88	DisposeNode	Called when the AVL tree no longer needs node
88	NewNode	Called when the AVL tree needs a new node

2.7.3 TBaseAVLTreeNodeManager.DisposeNode

Synopsis: Called when the AVL tree no longer needs node

Declaration: `procedure DisposeNode (ANode: TAVLTreeNode); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `DisposeNode` is called by `TAVLTree` ([74](#)) when it no longer needs a `TAVLTreeNode` ([83](#)) instance. The manager may decide to re-use the instance for later use instead of destroying it.

See also: `TBaseAVLTreeNodeManager.NewNode` ([88](#)), `TAVLTree.Delete` ([79](#)), `TAVLTreeNode` ([83](#))

2.7.4 TBaseAVLTreeNodeManager.NewNode

Synopsis: Called when the AVL tree needs a new node

Declaration: `function NewNode : TAVLTreeNode; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `NewNode` is called by `TAVLTree` ([74](#)) when it needs a new node in `TAVLTree.Add` ([79](#)). It must be implemented by descendants to return a new `TAVLTreeNode` ([83](#)) instance.

See also: `TBaseAVLTreeNodeManager.DisposeNode` ([88](#)), `TAVLTree.Add` ([79](#)), `TAVLTreeNode` ([83](#))

Chapter 3

Reference for unit 'base64'

3.1 Used units

Table 3.1: Used units by unit 'base64'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

3.2 Overview

`base64` implements base64 encoding (as used for instance in MIME encoding) based on streams. It implements 2 streams which encode or decode anything written or read from it. The source or the destination of the encoded data is another stream. 2 classes are implemented for this: `TBase64EncodingStream` (93) for encoding, and `TBase64DecodingStream` (90) for decoding.

The streams are designed as plug-in streams, which can be placed between other streams, to provide base64 encoding and decoding on-the-fly...

3.3 Constants, types and variables

3.3.1 Types

```
TBase64DecodingMode = (bdmStrict, bdmMIME)
```

Table 3.2: Enumeration values for type `TBase64DecodingMode`

Value	Explanation
<code>bdmMIME</code>	MIME encoding
<code>bdmStrict</code>	Strict encoding

`TBase64DecodingMode` determines the decoding algorithm used by `TBase64DecodingStream` (90). There are 2 modes:

bdmStrict Strict mode, which follows RFC3548 and rejects any characters outside of base64 alphabet. In this mode only up to two '=' characters are accepted at the end. It requires the input to have a `Size` being a multiple of 4, otherwise an `EBase64DecodingException` (90) exception is raised.

bdmMime MIME mode, which follows RFC2045 and ignores any characters outside of base64 alphabet. In this mode any '=' is seen as the end of string, it handles apparently truncated input streams gracefully.

3.4 Procedures and functions

3.4.1 DecodeStringBase64

Synopsis: Decodes a Base64 encoded string and returns the decoded data as a string.

Declaration: `function DecodeStringBase64(const s: string; strict: Boolean) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `DecodeStringBase64` decodes the string `s` (containing Base 64 encoded data) returns the decoded data as a string. It uses a `TBase64DecodingStream` (90) to do this.

See also: `DecodeStringBase64` (90), `TBase64DecodingStream` (90)

3.4.2 EncodeStringBase64

Synopsis: Encode a string with Base64 encoding and return the result as a string.

Declaration: `function EncodeStringBase64(const s: string) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `EncodeStringBase64` encodes the string `s` using Base 64 encoding and returns the result. It uses a `TBase64EncodingStream` (93) to do this.

See also: `DecodeStringBase64` (90), `TBase64EncodingStream` (93)

3.5 EBase64DecodingException

3.5.1 Description

`EBase64DecodeException` is raised when the stream contains errors against the encoding format. Whether or not this exception is raised depends on the mode in which the stream is decoded.

3.6 TBase64DecodingStream

3.6.1 Description

`TBase64DecodingStream` can be used to read data from a stream (the source stream) that contains Base64 encoded data. The data is read and decoded on-the-fly.

The decoding stream is read-only, and provides a limited forward-seeking capability.

See also: [TBase64EncodingStream \(93\)](#)

3.6.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
91	Create	Create a new instance of the <code>TBase64DecodingStream</code> class
91	Read	Read and decrypt data from the source stream
91	Reset	Reset the stream
92	Seek	Set stream position.

3.6.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
92	EOF	r	
92	Mode	rw	Decoding mode

3.6.4 TBase64DecodingStream.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TBase64DecodingStream` class

Declaration: `constructor Create (ASource: TStream)`
`constructor Create (ASource: TStream; AMode: TBase64DecodingMode)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of the `TBase64DecodingStream` class. It stores the source stream `ASource` for reading the data from.

The optional `AMode` parameter determines the mode in which the decoding will be done. If omitted, `bdmMIME` is used.

See also: [TBase64EncodingStream.Create \(93\)](#), [TBase64DecodingMode \(89\)](#)

3.6.5 TBase64DecodingStream.Reset

Synopsis: Reset the stream

Declaration: `procedure Reset`

Visibility: public

Description: `Reset` resets the data as if it was again on the start of the decoding stream.

Errors: None.

See also: [TBase64DecodingStream.EOF \(92\)](#), [TBase64DecodingStream.Read \(91\)](#)

3.6.6 TBase64DecodingStream.Read

Synopsis: Read and decrypt data from the source stream

Declaration: `function Read (var Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Read reads encrypted data from the source stream and stores this data in `Buffer`. At most `Count` bytes will be stored in the buffer, but more bytes will be read from the source stream: the encoding algorithm multiplies the number of bytes.

The function returns the number of bytes stored in the buffer.

Errors: If an error occurs during the read from the source stream, an exception may occur.

See also: `TBase64DecodingStream.Write` (90), `TBase64DecodingStream.Seek` (92), `TStream.Read` (??)

3.6.7 TBase64DecodingStream.Seek

Synopsis: Set stream position.

Declaration: `function Seek(Offset: LongInt; Origin: Word) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Seek` sets the position of the stream. In the `TBase64DecodingStream` class, the seek operation is forward only, it does not support backward seeks. The forward seek is emulated by reading and discarding data till the desired position is reached.

For an explanation of the parameters, see `TStream.Seek` (??)

Errors: In case of an unsupported operation, an `EStreamError` exception is raised.

See also: `TBase64DecodingStream.Read` (91), `TBase64DecodingStream.Write` (90), `TBase64EncodingStream.Seek` (94), `TStream.Seek` (??)

3.6.8 TBase64DecodingStream.EOF

Synopsis:

Declaration: `Property EOF : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description:

3.6.9 TBase64DecodingStream.Mode

Synopsis: Decoding mode

Declaration: `Property Mode : TBase64DecodingMode`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: `Mode` is the mode in which the stream is read. It can be set when creating the stream or at any time afterwards.

See also: `TBase64DecodingStream` (90)

3.7 TBase64EncodingStream

3.7.1 Description

TBase64EncodingStream can be used to encode data using the base64 algorithm. At creation time, a destination stream is specified. Any data written to the TBase64EncodingStream instance will be base64 encoded, and subsequently written to the destination stream.

The TBase64EncodingStream stream is a write-only stream. Obviously it is also not seekable. It is meant to be included in a chain of streams.

By the nature of base64 encoding, when a buffer is written to the stream, the output stream does not yet contain all output: input must be a multiple of 3. In order to be sure that the output contains all encoded bytes, the Flush (93) method can be used. The destructor will automatically call Flush, so all data is written to the destination stream when the decodes is destroyed.

See also: TBase64DecodingStream (90)

3.7.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
93	Destroy	Remove a TBase64EncodingStream instance from memory
93	Flush	Flush the remaining bytes to the output stream.
94	Seek	Position the stream
94	Write	Write data to the stream.

3.7.3 TBase64EncodingStream.Destroy

Synopsis: Remove a TBase64EncodingStream instance from memory

Declaration: destructor Destroy; Override

Visibility: public

Description: Destroy flushes any remaining output and then removes the TBase64EncodingStream instance from memory by calling the inherited destructor.

Errors: An exception may be raised if the destination stream no longer exists or is closed.

See also: TBase64EncodingStream.Create (93)

3.7.4 TBase64EncodingStream.Flush

Synopsis: Flush the remaining bytes to the output stream.

Declaration: function Flush : Boolean

Visibility: public

Description: Flush writes the remaining bytes from the internal encoding buffer to the output stream and pads the output with "=" signs. It returns True if padding was necessary, and False if not.

See also: TBase64EncodingStream.Destroy (93)

3.7.5 TBase64EncodingStream.Write

Synopsis: Write data to the stream.

Declaration: `function Write(const Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Write` encodes `Count` bytes from `Buffer` using the Base64 mechanism, and then writes the encoded data to the destination stream. It returns the number of bytes from `Buffer` that were actually written. Note that this is not the number of bytes written to the destination stream: the base64 mechanism writes more bytes to the destination stream.

Errors: If there is an error writing to the destination stream, an error may occur.

See also: `TBase64EncodingStream.Seek` (94), `TBase64EncodingStream.Read` (93), `TBase64DecodingStream.Write` (90), `TStream.Write` (??)

3.7.6 TBase64EncodingStream.Seek

Synopsis: Position the stream

Declaration: `function Seek(Offset: LongInt; Origin: Word) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Seek` always raises an `EStreamError` exception unless the arguments it received it don't change the current file pointer position. The encryption stream is not seekable.

Errors: An `EStreamError` error is raised.

See also: `TBase64EncodingStream.Read` (93), `TBase64EncodingStream.Write` (94), `TStream.Seek` (??)

Chapter 4

Reference for unit 'BlowFish'

4.1 Used units

Table 4.1: Used units by unit 'BlowFish'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

4.2 Overview

The BlowFish implements a class TBlowFish (96) to handle blowfish encryption/decryption of memory buffers, and 2 TStream (??) descendents TBlowFishDeCryptStream (97) which decrypts any data that is read from it on the fly, as well as TBlowFishEnCryptStream (98) which encrypts the data that is written to it on the fly.

4.3 Constants, types and variables

4.3.1 Constants

BFRounds = 16

Number of rounds in blowfish encryption.

4.3.2 Types

PBlowFishKey = ^TBlowFishKey

PBlowFishKey is a simple pointer to a TBlowFishKey (96) array.

TBFBlock = Array[0..1] of LongInt

TBFBlock is the basic data structure used by the encrypting/decrypting routines in TBlowFish (96), TBlowFishDeCryptStream (97) and TBlowFishEnCryptStream (98). It is the basic encryption/decryption block for all encrypting/decrypting: all encrypting/decrypting happens on a TBFBlock structure.

TBlowFishKey = Array[0..55] of Byte

TBlowFishKey is a data structure which keeps the encryption or decryption key for the TBlowFish (96), TBlowFishDeCryptStream (97) and TBlowFishEnCryptStream (98) classes. It should be filled with the encryption key and passed to the constructor of one of these classes.

4.4 EBlowFishError

4.4.1 Description

EBlowFishError is used by the TBlowFishStream (100), TBlowFishEncryptStream (98) and TBlowFishDecryptStream (97) classes to report errors.

See also: TBlowFishStream (100), TBlowFishEncryptStream (98), TBlowFishDecryptStream (97)

4.5 TBlowFish

4.5.1 Description

TBlowFish is a simple class that can be used to encrypt/decrypt a single TBFBlock (96) data block with the Encrypt (97) and Decrypt (97) calls. It is used internally by the TBlowFishEnCryptStream (98) and TBlowFishDeCryptStream (97) classes to encrypt or decrypt the actual data.

See also: TBlowFishEnCryptStream (98), TBlowFishDeCryptStream (97)

4.5.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
96	Create	Create a new instance of the TBlowFish class
97	Decrypt	Decrypt a block
97	Encrypt	Encrypt a block

4.5.3 TBlowFish.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the TBlowFish class

Declaration: constructor Create(Key: TBlowFishKey; KeySize: Integer)

Visibility: public

Description: Create initializes a new instance of the TBlowFish class: it stores the key Key in the internal data structures so it can be used in later calls to Encrypt (97) and Decrypt (97).

See also: Encrypt (97), Decrypt (97)

4.5.4 TBlowFish.Encrypt

Synopsis: Encrypt a block

Declaration: `procedure Encrypt (var Block: TBFBlock)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Encrypt` encrypts the data in `Block` (always 8 bytes) using the key (96) specified when the `TBlowFish` instance was created.

See also: `TBlowFishKey` (96), `Decrypt` (97), `Create` (96)

4.5.5 TBlowFish.Decrypt

Synopsis: Decrypt a block

Declaration: `procedure Decrypt (var Block: TBFBlock)`

Visibility: public

Description: `decrypt` decrypts the data in `Block` (always 8 bytes) using the key (96) specified when the `TBlowFish` instance was created. The data must have been encrypted with the same key and the `Encrypt` (97) call.

See also: `TBlowFishKey` (96), `Encrypt` (97), `Create` (96)

4.6 TBlowFishDeCryptStream

4.6.1 Description

The `TBlowFishDecryptStream` provides On-the-fly Blowfish decryption: all data that is read from the source stream is decrypted before it is placed in the output buffer. The source stream must be specified when the `TBlowFishDecryptStream` instance is created. The Decryption key must also be created when the stream instance is created, and must be the same key as the one used when encrypting the data.

This is a read-only stream: it is seekable only in a forward direction, and data can only be read from it, writing is not possible. For writing data so it is encrypted, the `TBlowFishEncryptStream` (98) stream must be used.

See also: `Create` (100), `TBlowFishEncryptStream` (98)

4.6.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
97	Read	Read data from the stream
98	Seek	Set the stream position.

4.6.3 TBlowFishDeCryptStream.Read

Synopsis: Read data from the stream

Declaration: `function Read (var Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Read reads `Count` bytes from the source stream, decrypts them using the key provided when the `TBlowFishDeCryptStream` instance was created, and writes the decrypted data to `Buffer`

See also: [Create \(100\)](#), [TBlowFishEncryptStream \(98\)](#)

4.6.4 TBlowFishDeCryptStream.Seek

Synopsis: Set the stream position.

Declaration: `function Seek(const Offset: Int64;Origin: TSeekOrigin) : Int64; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Seek` emulates a forward seek by reading and discarding data. The discarded data is lost. Since it is a forward seek, this means that only `soFromCurrent` can be specified for `Origin` with a positive (or zero) `Offset` value. All other values will result in an exception. The function returns the new position in the stream.

Errors: If any other combination of `Offset` and `Origin` than the allowed combination is specified, then an `EBlowFishError (96)` exception will be raised.

See also: [Read \(97\)](#), [EBlowFishError \(96\)](#)

4.7 TBlowFishEncryptStream

4.7.1 Description

The `TBlowFishEncryptStream` provides On-the-fly Blowfish encryption: all data that is written to it is encrypted and then written to a destination stream, which must be specified when the `TBlowFishEncryptStream` instance is created. The encryption key must also be created when the stream instance is created.

This is a write-only stream: it is not seekable, and data can only be written to it, reading is not possible. For reading encrypted data, the `TBlowFishDeCryptStream (97)` stream must be used.

See also: [Create \(100\)](#), [TBlowFishDeCryptStream \(97\)](#)

4.7.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
98	<code>Destroy</code>	Free the <code>TBlowFishEncryptStream</code>
99	<code>Flush</code>	Flush the encryption buffer
99	<code>Seek</code>	Set the position in the stream
99	<code>Write</code>	Write data to the stream

4.7.3 TBlowFishEncryptStream.Destroy

Synopsis: Free the `TBlowFishEncryptStream`

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` flushes the encryption buffer, and writes it to the destination stream. After that the inherited destructor is called to clean up the `TBlowFishEncryptStream` instance.

See also: [Flush \(99\)](#), [Create \(100\)](#)

4.7.4 TBlowFishEncryptStream.Write

Synopsis: Write data to the stream

Declaration: `function Write(const Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Write` will encrypt and write `Count` bytes from `Buffer` to the destination stream. The function returns the actual number of bytes written. The data is not encrypted in-place, but placed in a special buffer for encryption.

Data is always written 4 bytes at a time, since this is the amount of bytes required by the Blowfish algorithm. If no multiple of 4 was written to the destination stream, the [Flush \(99\)](#) mechanism can be used to write the remaining bytes.

See also: `TBlowFishEncryptStream.Read` ([98](#))

4.7.5 TBlowFishEncryptStream.Seek

Synopsis: Set the position in the stream

Declaration: `function Seek(const Offset: Int64; Origin: TSeekOrigin) : Int64; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Read` will raise an `EBlowFishError` exception: `TBlowFishEncryptStream` is a write-only stream, and cannot be positioned.

Errors: Calling this function always results in an `EBlowFishError` ([96](#)) exception.

See also: `TBlowFishEncryptStream.Write` ([99](#))

4.7.6 TBlowFishEncryptStream.Flush

Synopsis: Flush the encryption buffer

Declaration: `procedure Flush`

Visibility: public

Description: `Flush` writes the remaining data in the encryption buffer to the destination stream.

For efficiency, data is always written 4 bytes at a time, since this is the amount of bytes required by the Blowfish algorithm. If no multiple of 4 was written to the destination stream, the `Flush` mechanism can be used to write the remaining bytes.

`Flush` is called automatically when the stream is destroyed, so there is no need to call it after all data was written and the stream is no longer needed.

See also: `Write` ([99](#)), `TBFBlock` ([96](#))

4.8 TBlowFishStream

4.8.1 Description

TBlowFishStream is an abstract class which is used as a parent class for TBlowFishEncryptStream (98) and TBlowFishDecryptStream (97). It simply provides a constructor and storage for a TBlowFish (96) instance and for the source or destination stream.

Do not create an instance of TBlowFishStream directly. Instead create one of the descendent classes TBlowFishEncryptStream or TBlowFishDecryptStream.

See also: TBlowFishEncryptStream (98), TBlowFishDecryptStream (97), TBlowFish (96)

4.8.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
100	Create	Create a new instance of the TBlowFishStream class
100	Destroy	Destroy the TBlowFishStream instance.

4.8.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
101	BlowFish	r	Blowfish instance used when encrypting/decrypting

4.8.4 TBlowFishStream.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the TBlowFishStream class

Declaration: constructor Create(AKey: TBlowFishKey; AKeySize: Byte; Dest: TStream)
 constructor Create(const KeyPhrase: string; Dest: TStream)

Visibility: public

Description: Create initializes a new instance of TBlowFishStream, and creates an internal instance of TBlowFish (96) using AKey and AKeySize. The Dest stream is stored so the descendent classes can refer to it.

Do not create an instance of TBlowFishStream directly. Instead create one of the descendent classes TBlowFishEncryptStream or TBlowFishDecryptStream.

The overloaded version with the KeyPhrase string argument is used for easy access: it computes the blowfish key from the given string.

See also: TBlowFishEncryptStream (98), TBlowFishDecryptStream (97), TBlowFish (96)

4.8.5 TBlowFishStream.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroy the TBlowFishStream instance.

Declaration: destructor Destroy; Override

Visibility: public

Description: Destroy cleans up the internal TBlowFish (96) instance.

See also: Create (100), TBlowFish (96)

4.8.6 TBlowFishStream.BlowFish

Synopsis: Blowfish instance used when encrypting/decrypting

Declaration: `Property BlowFish : TBlowFish`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `BlowFish` is the `TBlowFish` (96) instance which is created when the `TBlowFishStream` class is initialized. Normally it should not be used directly, it's intended for access by the descendent classes `TBlowFishEncryptStream` (98) and `TBlowFishDecryptStream` (97).

See also: `TBlowFishEncryptStream` (98), `TBlowFishDecryptStream` (97), `TBlowFish` (96)

Chapter 5

Reference for unit 'bufstream'

5.1 Used units

Table 5.1: Used units by unit 'bufstream'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

5.2 Overview

BufStream implements two one-way buffered streams: the streams store all data from (or for) the source stream in a memory buffer, and only flush the buffer when it's full (or refill it when it's empty). The buffer size can be specified at creation time. 2 streams are implemented: TReadBufStream (105) which is for reading only, and TWriteBufStream (106) which is for writing only.

Buffered streams can help in speeding up read or write operations, especially when a lot of small read/write operations are done: it avoids doing a lot of operating system calls.

5.3 Constants, types and variables

5.3.1 Constants

`DefaultBufferCapacity : Integer = 16`

If no buffer size is specified when the stream is created, then this size is used.

5.4 TBufStream

5.4.1 Description

TBufStream is the common ancestor for the TReadBufStream (105) and TWriteBufStream (106) streams. It completely handles the buffer memory management and position management. An in-

stance of `TBufStream` should never be created directly. It also keeps the instance of the source stream.

See also: `TReadBufStream` (105), `TWriteBufStream` (106)

5.4.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
103	Create	Create a new <code>TBufStream</code> instance.
103	Destroy	Destroys the <code>TBufStream</code> instance

5.4.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
104	Buffer	r	The current buffer
104	BufferPos	r	Current buffer position.
104	BufferSize	r	Amount of data in the buffer
104	Capacity	rw	Current buffer capacity

5.4.4 TBufStream.Create

Synopsis: Create a new `TBufStream` instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create(ASource: TStream; ACapacity: Integer)`
`constructor Create(ASource: TStream)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` creates a new `TBufStream` instance. A buffer of size `ACapacity` is allocated, and the `ASource` source (or destination) stream is stored. If no capacity is specified, then `DefaultBufferCapacity` (102) is used as the capacity.

An instance of `TBufStream` should never be instantiated directly. Instead, an instance of `TReadBufStream` (105) or `TWriteBufStream` (106) should be created.

Errors: If not enough memory is available for the buffer, then an exception may be raised.

See also: `TBufStream.Destroy` (103), `TReadBufStream` (105), `TWriteBufStream` (106)

5.4.5 TBufStream.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the `TBufStream` instance

Declaration: `destructor Destroy;` `Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` destroys the instance of `TBufStream`. It flushes the buffer, deallocates it, and then destroys the `TBufStream` instance.

See also: `TBufStream.Create` (103), `TReadBufStream` (105), `TWriteBufStream` (106)

5.4.6 TBufStream.Buffer

Synopsis: The current buffer

Declaration: `Property Buffer : Pointer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Buffer` is a pointer to the actual buffer in use.

See also: `TBufStream.Create` (103), `TBufStream.Capacity` (104), `TBufStream.BufferSize` (104)

5.4.7 TBufStream.Capacity

Synopsis: Current buffer capacity

Declaration: `Property Capacity : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: `Capacity` is the amount of memory the buffer occupies. To change the buffer size, the capacity can be set. Note that the capacity cannot be set to a value that is less than the current buffer size, i.e. the current amount of data in the buffer.

See also: `TBufStream.Create` (103), `TBufStream.Buffer` (104), `TBufStream.BufferSize` (104), `TBufStream.BufferPos` (104)

5.4.8 TBufStream.BufferPos

Synopsis: Current buffer position.

Declaration: `Property BufferPos : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `BufPos` is the current stream position in the buffer. Depending on whether the stream is used for reading or writing, data will be read from this position, or will be written at this position in the buffer.

See also: `TBufStream.Create` (103), `TBufStream.Buffer` (104), `TBufStream.BufferSize` (104), `TBufStream.Capacity` (104)

5.4.9 TBufStream.BufferSize

Synopsis: Amount of data in the buffer

Declaration: `Property BufferSize : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `BufferSize` is the actual amount of data in the buffer. This is always less than or equal to the `Capacity` (104).

See also: `TBufStream.Create` (103), `TBufStream.Buffer` (104), `TBufStream.BufferPos` (104), `TBufStream.Capacity` (104)

5.5 TReadBufStream

5.5.1 Description

`TReadBufStream` is a read-only buffered stream. It implements the needed methods to read data from the buffer and fill the buffer with additional data when needed.

The stream provides limited forward-seek possibilities.

See also: `TBufStream` ([102](#)), `TWriteBufStream` ([106](#))

5.5.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
105	Read	Reads data from the stream
105	Seek	Set location in the buffer

5.5.3 TReadBufStream.Seek

Synopsis: Set location in the buffer

Declaration: `function Seek(const Offset: Int64; Origin: TSeekOrigin) : Int64; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Seek` sets the location in the buffer. Currently, only a forward seek is allowed. It is emulated by reading and discarding data. For an explanation of the parameters, see `TStream.Seek`" ([??](#))

The seek method needs enhancement to enable it to do a full-featured seek. This may be implemented in a future release of Free Pascal.

Errors: In case an illegal seek operation is attempted, an exception is raised.

See also: `TWriteBufStream.Seek` ([106](#)), `TReadBufStream.Read` ([105](#)), `TReadBufStream.Write` ([105](#))

5.5.4 TReadBufStream.Read

Synopsis: Reads data from the stream

Declaration: `function Read(var ABuffer; ACount: LongInt) : Integer; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Read` reads at most `ACount` bytes from the stream and places them in `Buffer`. The number of actually read bytes is returned.

`TReadBufStream` first reads whatever data is still available in the buffer, and then refills the buffer, after which it continues to read data from the buffer. This is repeated until `ACount` bytes are read, or no more data is available.

See also: `TReadBufStream.Seek` ([105](#)), `TReadBufStream.Read` ([105](#))

5.6 TWriteBufStream

5.6.1 Description

`TWriteBufStream` is a write-only buffered stream. It implements the needed methods to write data to the buffer and flush the buffer (i.e., write its contents to the source stream) when needed.

See also: `TBufStream` ([102](#)), `TReadBufStream` ([105](#))

5.6.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
106	<code>Destroy</code>	Remove the <code>TWriteBufStream</code> instance from memory
106	<code>Seek</code>	Set stream position.
106	<code>Write</code>	Write data to the stream

5.6.3 TWriteBufStream.Destroy

Synopsis: Remove the `TWriteBufStream` instance from memory

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` flushes the buffer and then calls the inherited `Destroy` ([103](#)).

Errors: If an error occurs during flushing of the buffer, an exception may be raised.

See also: `Create` ([103](#)), `TBufStream.Destroy` ([103](#))

5.6.4 TWriteBufStream.Seek

Synopsis: Set stream position.

Declaration: `function Seek(const Offset: Int64; Origin: TSeekOrigin) : Int64; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Seek` always raises an `EStreamError` exception, except when the seek operation would not alter the current position.

A later implementation may perform a proper seek operation by flushing the buffer and doing a seek on the source stream.

See also: `TWriteBufStream.Write` ([106](#)), `TWriteBufStream.Read` ([106](#)), `TReadBufStream.Seek` ([105](#))

5.6.5 TWriteBufStream.Write

Synopsis: Write data to the stream

Declaration: `function Write(const ABuffer; ACount: LongInt) : Integer; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Write` writes at most `ACount` bytes from `ABuffer` to the stream. The data is written to the internal buffer first. As soon as the internal buffer is full, it is flushed to the destination stream, and the internal buffer is filled again. This process continues till all data is written (or an error occurs).

Errors: An exception may occur if the destination stream has problems writing.

See also: `TWriteBufStream.Seek` ([106](#)), `TWriteBufStream.Read` ([106](#)), `TReadBufStream.Write` ([105](#))

Chapter 6

Reference for unit 'CacheCls'

6.1 Used units

Table 6.1: Used units by unit 'CacheCls'

Name	Page
System	??
sysutils	??

6.2 Overview

The `CacheCls` unit implements a caching class: similar to a hash class, it can be used to cache data, associated with string values (keys). The class is called `TCache`

6.3 Constants, types and variables

6.3.1 Resource strings

```
SInvalidIndex = 'Invalid index %i'
```

Message shown when an invalid index is passed.

6.3.2 Types

```
PCacheSlot = ^TCacheSlot
```

Pointer to `TCacheSlot` (109) record.

```
PCacheSlotArray = ^TCacheSlotArray
```

Pointer to `TCacheSlotArray` (109) array

```
TCacheSlot = record
```

```

Prev : PCacheSlot;
Next : PCacheSlot;
Data : Pointer;
Index : Integer;
end

```

TCacheSlot is internally used by the TCache (109) class. It represents 1 element in the linked list.

```
TCacheSlotArray = Array[0..MaxIntdivSizeOf(TCacheSlot)-1] of TCacheSlot
```

TCacheSlotArray is an array of TCacheSlot items. Do not use TCacheSlotArray directly, instead, use PCacheSlotArray (108) and allocate memory dynamically.

```
TOnFreeSlot = procedure(ACache: TCache; SlotIndex: Integer) of object
```

TOnFreeSlot is a callback prototype used when not enough slots are free, and a slot must be freed.

```

TOnIsDataEqual = function(ACache: TCache; AData1: Pointer;
                          AData2: Pointer) : Boolean of object

```

TOnIsDataEqual is a callback prototype; It is used by the TCache.Add (110) call to determine whether the item to be added is a new item or not. The function returns True if the 2 data pointers AData1 and AData2 should be considered equal, or False when they are not.

For most purposes, comparing the pointers will be enough, but if the pointers are ansistrings, then the contents should be compared.

6.4 ECacheError

6.4.1 Description

Exception class used in the cachecls unit.

6.5 TCache

6.5.1 Description

TCache implements a cache class: it is a list-like class, but which uses a counting mechanism, and keeps a Most-Recent-Used list; this list represents the 'cache'. The list is internally kept as a doubly-linked list.

The Data (112) property offers indexed access to the array of items. When accessing the array through this property, the MRUSlot (112) property is updated.

6.5.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
110	Add	Add a data element to the list.
111	AddNew	Add a new item to the list.
110	Create	Create a new cache class.
110	Destroy	Free the TCache class from memory
111	FindSlot	Find data pointer in the list
111	IndexOf	Return index of a data pointer in the list.
112	Remove	Remove a data item from the list.

6.5.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
112	Data	rw	Indexed access to data items
113	LRUSlot	r	Last used item
112	MRUSlot	rw	Most recent item slot.
114	OnFreeSlot	rw	Event called when a slot is freed
113	OnIsDataEqual	rw	Event to compare 2 items.
113	SlotCount	rw	Number of slots in the list
113	Slots	r	Indexed array to the slots

6.5.4 TCache.Create

Synopsis: Create a new cache class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(ASlotCount: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new instance of `TCache`. It allocates room for `ASlotCount` entries in the list. The number of slots can be increased later.

See also: `TCache.SlotCount` ([113](#))

6.5.5 TCache.Destroy

Synopsis: Free the TCache class from memory

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the array for the elements, and calls the inherited `Destroy`. The elements in the array are not freed by this action.

See also: `TCache.Create` ([110](#))

6.5.6 TCache.Add

Synopsis: Add a data element to the list.

Declaration: `function Add(AData: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Add checks whether `AData` is already in the list. If so, the item is added to the top of the MRU list. If the item is not yet in the list, then the item is added to the list and placed at the top of the MRU list using the `AddNew` (111) call.

The function returns the index at which the item was added.

If the maximum number of slots is reached, and a new item is being added, the least used item is dropped from the list.

See also: `TCache.AddNew` (111), `TCache.FindSlot` (111), `TCache.IndexOf` (111), `TCache.Data` (112), `TCache.MRUSlot` (112)

6.5.7 TCache.AddNew

Synopsis: Add a new item to the list.

Declaration: `function AddNew(AData: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddNew` adds a new item to the list: in difference with the `Add` (110) call, no checking is performed to see whether the item is already in the list.

The function returns the index at which the item was added.

If the maximum number of slots is reached, and a new item is being added, the least used item is dropped from the list.

See also: `TCache.Add` (110), `TCache.FindSlot` (111), `TCache.IndexOf` (111), `TCache.Data` (112), `TCache.MRUSlot` (112)

6.5.8 TCache.FindSlot

Synopsis: Find data pointer in the list

Declaration: `function FindSlot(AData: Pointer) : PCacheSlot`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindSlot` checks all items in the list, and returns the slot which contains a data pointer that matches the pointer `AData`.

If no item with data pointer that matches `AData` is found, `Nil` is returned.

For this function to work correctly, the `OnIsDataEqual` (113) event must be set.

Errors: If `OnIsDataEqual` is not set, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TCache.IndexOf` (111), `TCache.Add` (110), `TCache.OnIsDataEqual` (113)

6.5.9 TCache.IndexOf

Synopsis: Return index of a data pointer in the list.

Declaration: `function IndexOf(AData: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` searches in the list for a slot with data pointer that matches `AData` and returns the index of the slot.

If no item with data pointer that matches `AData` is found, `-1` is returned.

For this function to work correctly, the `OnIsDataEqual` (113) event must be set.

Errors: If `OnIsDataEqual` is not set, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TCache.FindSlot` (111), `TCache.Add` (110), `TCache.OnIsDataEqual` (113)

6.5.10 `TCache.Remove`

Synopsis: Remove a data item from the list.

Declaration: `procedure Remove(AData: Pointer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Remove` searches the slot which matches `AData` and if it is found, sets the data pointer to `Nil`, thus effectively removing the pointer from the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCache.FindSlot` (111)

6.5.11 `TCache.Data`

Synopsis: Indexed access to data items

Declaration: `Property Data[SlotIndex: Integer]: Pointer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Data` offers index-based access to the data pointers in the cache. By accessing an item in the list in this manner, the item is moved to the front of the MRU list, i.e. `MRUSlot` (112) will point to the accessed item. The access is both read and write.

The index is zero-based and can maximally be `SlotCount-1` (113). Providing an invalid index will result in an exception.

See also: `TCache.MRUSlot` (112)

6.5.12 `TCache.MRUSlot`

Synopsis: Most recent item slot.

Declaration: `Property MRUSlot : PCacheSlot`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `MRUSlot` points to the most recent used slot. The most recent used slot is updated when the list is accessed through the `Data` (112) property, or when an item is added to the list with `Add` (110) or `AddNew` (111)

See also: `TCache.Add` (110), `TCache.AddNew` (111), `TCache.Data` (112), `TCache.LRUSlot` (113)

6.5.13 TCache.LRUSlot

Synopsis: Last used item

Declaration: Property LRUSlot : PCacheSlot

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: LRUSlot points to the least recent used slot. It is the last item in the chain of slots.

See also: TCache.Add (110), TCache.AddNew (111), TCache.Data (112), TCache.MRUSlot (112)

6.5.14 TCache.SlotCount

Synopsis: Number of slots in the list

Declaration: Property SlotCount : Integer

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: SlotCount is the number of slots in the list. Its initial value is set when the TCache instance is created, but this can be changed at any time. If items are added to the list and the list is full, then the number of slots is not increased, but the least used item is dropped from the list. In that case OnFreeSlot (114) is called.

See also: TCache.Create (110), TCache.Data (112), TCache.Slots (113)

6.5.15 TCache.Slots

Synopsis: Indexed array to the slots

Declaration: Property Slots[SlotIndex: Integer]: PCacheSlot

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Slots provides index-based access to the TCacheSlot records in the list. Accessing the records directly does not change their position in the MRU list.

The index is zero-based and can maximally be SlotCount-1 (113). Providing an invalid index will result in an exception.

See also: TCache.Data (112), TCache.SlotCount (113)

6.5.16 TCache.OnIsDataEqual

Synopsis: Event to compare 2 items.

Declaration: Property OnIsDataEqual : TOnIsDataEqual

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnIsDataEqual` is used by `FindSlot` (111) and `IndexOf` (111) to compare items when looking for a particular item. These functions are called by the `Add` (110) method. Failing to set this event will result in an exception. The function should return `True` if the 2 data pointers should be considered equal.

See also: `TCache.FindSlot` (111), `TCache.IndexOf` (111), `TCache.Add` (110)

6.5.17 TCache.OnFreeSlot

Synopsis: Event called when a slot is freed

Declaration: `Property OnFreeSlot : TOnFreeSlot`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnFreeSlot` is called when an item needs to be freed, i.e. when a new item is added to a full list, and the least recent used item needs to be dropped from the list.

The cache class instance and the index of the item to be removed are passed to the callback.

See also: `TCache.Add` (110), `TCache.AddNew` (111), `TCache.SlotCount` (113)

Chapter 7

Reference for unit 'contrns'

7.1 Used units

Table 7.1: Used units by unit 'contrns'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

7.2 Overview

The `contrns` unit implements various general-purpose classes:

Object lists lists that manage objects instead of pointers, and which automatically dispose of the objects.

Component lists lists that manage components instead of pointers, and which automatically dispose the components.

Class lists lists that manage class pointers instead of pointers.

Stacks Stack classes to push/pop pointers or objects

Queues Classes to manage a FIFO list of pointers or objects

Hash lists General-purpose Hash lists.

7.3 Constants, types and variables

7.3.1 Constants

`MaxHashListSize = Maxint div 16`

`MaxHashListSize` is the maximum number of elements a hash list can contain.

```
MaxHashStrSize = Maxint
```

MaxHashStrSize is the maximum amount of data for the key string values. The key strings are kept in a continuous memory area. This constant determines the maximum size of this memory area.

```
MaxHashTableSize = Maxint div 4
```

MaxHashTableSize is the maximum number of elements in the hash.

```
MaxItemsPerHash = 3
```

MaxItemsPerHash is the threshold above which the hash is expanded. If the number of elements in a hash bucket becomes larger than this value, the hash size is increased.

7.3.2 Types

```
PBucket = ^TBucket
```

Pointer to TBucket (116)" type.

```
PHashItem = ^THashItem
```

PHashItem is a pointer type, pointing to the THashItem (118) record.

```
PHashItemList = ^THashItemList
```

PHashItemList is a pointer to the THashItemList (118). It's used in the TFPHashList (135) as a pointer to the memory area containing the hash item records.

```
PHashTable = ^THashTable
```

PHashTable is a pointer to the THashTable (118). It's used in the TFPHashList (135) as a pointer to the memory area containing the hash values.

```
TBucket = record
  Count : Integer;
  Items : TBucketItemArray;
end
```

TBucket describes 1 bucket in the TCustomBucketList (126) class. It is a container for TBucketItem (117) records. It should never be used directly.

```
TBucketArray = Array of TBucket
```

Array of TBucket (116) records.

```
TBucketItem = record
  Item : Pointer;
  Data : Pointer;
end
```

TBucketItem is a record used for internal use in TCustomBucketList (126). It should not be necessary to use it directly.

TBucketItemArray = Array of TBucketItem

Array of TBucketItem records

TBucketListSizes = (bl2,bl4,bl8,bl16,bl32,bl64,bl128,bl256)

Table 7.2: Enumeration values for type TBucketListSizes

Value	Explanation
bl128	List with 128 buckets
bl16	List with 16 buckets
bl2	List with 2 buckets
bl256	List with 256 buckets
bl32	List with 32 buckets
bl4	List with 4 buckets
bl64	List with 64 buckets
bl8	List with 8 buckets

TBucketListSizes is used to set the bucket list size: It specified the number of buckets created by TBucketList (119).

TBucketProc = procedure(AInfo: Pointer;AItem: Pointer;AData: Pointer;
out AContinue: Boolean)

TBucketProc is the prototype for the TCustomBucketList.Foreach (128) call. It is the plain procedural form. The Continue parameter can be set to False to indicate that the Foreach call should stop the iteration.

For a procedure of object (a method) callback, see the TBucketProcObject (117) prototype.

TBucketProcObject = procedure(AItem: Pointer;AData: Pointer;
out AContinue: Boolean) of object

TBucketProcObject is the prototype for the TCustomBucketList.Foreach (128) call. It is the method (procedure of object) form. The Continue parameter can be set to False to indicate that the Foreach call should stop the iteration.

For a plain procedural callback, see the TBucketProc (117) prototype.

TDataIteratorMethod = procedure(Item: Pointer;const Key: string;
var Continue: Boolean) of object

TDataIteratorMethod is a callback prototype for the TFPDataHashTable.Iterate (134) method. It is called for each data pointer in the hash list, passing the key (key) and data pointer (item) for each item in the list. If Continue is set to false, the iteration stops.

THashFunction = function(const S: string;const TableSize: LongWord)
: LongWord

THashFunction is the prototype for a hash calculation function. It should calculate a hash of string S, where the hash table size is TableSize. The return value should be the hash value.

```
THashItem = record
  HashValue : LongWord;
  StrIndex : Integer;
  NextIndex : Integer;
  Data : Pointer;
end
```

THashItem is used internally in the hash list. It should never be used directly.

```
THashItemList = Array[0..MaxHashListSize-1] of THashItem
```

THashItemList is an array type, primarily used to be able to define the PHashItemList (116) type. It's used in the TFPHashList (135) class.

```
THashTable = Array[0..MaxHashTableSize-1] of Integer
```

THashTable defines an array of integers, used to hold hash values. It's mainly used to define the PHashTable (116) class.

```
THTCustomNodeClass = Class of THTCustomNode
```

THTCustomNodeClass was used by TFPCustomHashTable (128) to decide which class should be created for elements in the list.

```
THTNode = THTDataNode
```

THTNode is provided for backwards compatibility.

```
TIteratorMethod = TDataIteratorMethod
```

TIteratorMethod is used in an internal TFPDataHashTable (134) method.

```
TObjectIteratorMethod = procedure(Item: TObject;const Key: string;
                                   var Continue: Boolean) of object
```

TObjectIteratorMethod is the iterator callback prototype. It is used to iterate over all items in the hash table, and is called with each key value (Key) and associated object (Item). If Continue is set to false, the iteration stops.

```
TObjectListCallback = procedure(data: TObject;arg: pointer) of object
```

TObjectListCallback is used as the prototype for the TFPObjectList.ForEachCall (160) link call when a method should be called. The Data argument will contain each of the objects in the list in turn, and the Data argument will contain the data passed to the ForEachCall call.

```
TObjectListStaticCallback = procedure(data: TObject;arg: pointer)
```

`TObjectListCallback` is used as the prototype for the `TFPObjectList.ForEachCall` (160) link call when a plain procedure should be called. The `Data` argument will contain each of the objects in the list in turn, and the `Data` argument will contain the data passed to the `ForEachCall` call.

```
TStringIteratorMethod = procedure(Item: string;const Key: string;
                                var Continue: Boolean) of object
```

`TStringIteratorMethod` is the callback prototype for the `Iterate` (128) method. It is called for each element in the hash table, with the string. If `Continue` is set to `false`, the iteration stops.

7.4 Procedures and functions

7.4.1 RSHash

Synopsis: Standard hash value calculating function.

Declaration: `function RSHash(const S: string;const TableSize: LongWord) : LongWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `RSHash` is the standard hash calculating function used in the `TFPCustomHashTable` (128) hash class. It's Robert Sedgwick's "Algorithms in C" hash function.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPCustomHashTable` (128)

7.5 EDuplicate

7.5.1 Description

Exception raised when a key is stored twice in a hash table.

See also: `TFPCustomHashTable.Add` (128)

7.6 EKeyNotFound

7.6.1 Description

Exception raised when a key is not found.

See also: `TFPCustomHashTable.Delete` (131)

7.7 TBucketList

7.7.1 Description

`TBucketList` is a descendent of `TCustomBucketList` which allows to specify a bucket count which is a multiple of 2, up to 256 buckets. The size is passed to the constructor and cannot be changed in the lifetime of the bucket list instance.

The buckets for an item is determined by looking at the last bits of the item pointer: For 2 buckets, the last bit is examined, for 4 buckets, the last 2 bits are taken and so on. The algorithm takes into account the average granularity (4) of heap pointers.

See also: [TCustomBucketList \(126\)](#)

7.7.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
120	Create	Create a new <code>TBucketList</code> instance.

7.7.3 TBucketList.Create

Synopsis: Create a new `TBucketList` instance.

Declaration: constructor `Create (ABuckets: TBucketListSizes)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` instantiates a new bucketlist instance with a number of buckets determined by `ABuckets`. After creation, the number of buckets can no longer be changed.

Errors: If not enough memory is available to create the instance, an exception may be raised.

See also: [TBucketListSizes \(117\)](#)

7.8 TClassList

7.8.1 Description

`TClassList` is a `Tlist` (??) descendent which stores class references instead of pointers. It introduces no new behaviour other than ensuring all stored pointers are class pointers.

The `OwnsObjects` property as found in `TComponentList` and `TObjectList` is not implemented as there are no actual instances.

See also: [#rtl.classes.tlist \(??\)](#), [TComponentList \(123\)](#), [TObjectList \(167\)](#)

7.8.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
121	Add	Add a new class pointer to the list.
121	Extract	Extract a class pointer from the list.
122	First	Return first non-nil class pointer
121	IndexOf	Search for a class pointer in the list.
122	Insert	Insert a new class pointer in the list.
122	Last	Return last non- <code>Nil</code> class pointer
121	Remove	Remove a class pointer from the list.

7.8.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
122	Items	rw	Index based access to class pointers.

7.8.4 TClassList.Add

Synopsis: Add a new class pointer to the list.

Declaration: `function Add(AClass: TClass) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: Add adds AClass to the list, and returns the position at which it was added. It simply overrides the TList (??) behaviour, and introduces no new functionality.

Errors: If not enough memory is available to expand the list, an exception may be raised.

See also: TClassList.Extract (121), #rtl.classes.tlist.add (??)

7.8.5 TClassList.Extract

Synopsis: Extract a class pointer from the list.

Declaration: `function Extract(Item: TClass) : TClass`

Visibility: public

Description: Extract extracts a class pointer Item from the list, if it is present in the list. It returns the extracted class pointer, or Nil if the class pointer was not present in the list. It simply overrides the implementation in TList so it accepts a class pointer instead of a simple pointer. No new behaviour is introduced.

Errors: None.

See also: TClassList.Remove (121), #rtl.classes.Tlist.Extract (??)

7.8.6 TClassList.Remove

Synopsis: Remove a class pointer from the list.

Declaration: `function Remove(AClass: TClass) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: Remove removes a class pointer Item from the list, if it is present in the list. It returns the index of the removed class pointer, or -1 if the class pointer was not present in the list. It simply overrides the implementation in TList so it accepts a class pointer instead of a simple pointer. No new behaviour is introduced.

Errors: None.

See also: TClassList.Extract (121), #rtl.classes.Tlist.Remove (??)

7.8.7 TClassList.IndexOf

Synopsis: Search for a class pointer in the list.

Declaration: `function IndexOf(AClass: TClass) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: IndexOf searches for AClass in the list, and returns it's position if it was found, or -1 if it was not found in the list.

Errors: None.

See also: #rtl.classes.tlist.indexof (??)

7.8.8 TClassList.First

Synopsis: Return first non-nil class pointer

Declaration: `function First : TClass`

Visibility: public

Description: `First` returns a reference to the first non-`Nil` class pointer in the list. If no non-`Nil` element is found, `Nil` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TClassList.Last` ([122](#)), `TClassList.Pack` ([120](#))

7.8.9 TClassList.Last

Synopsis: Return last non-`Nil` class pointer

Declaration: `function Last : TClass`

Visibility: public

Description: `Last` returns a reference to the last non-`Nil` class pointer in the list. If no non-`Nil` element is found, `Nil` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TClassList.First` ([122](#)), `TClassList.Pack` ([120](#))

7.8.10 TClassList.Insert

Synopsis: Insert a new class pointer in the list.

Declaration: `procedure Insert (Index: Integer; AClass: TClass)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Insert` inserts a class pointer in the list at position `Index`. It simply overrides the parent implementation so it only accepts class pointers. It introduces no new behaviour.

Errors: None.

See also: `#rtl.classes.TList.Insert` ([??](#)), `TClassList.Add` ([121](#)), `TClassList.Remove` ([121](#))

7.8.11 TClassList.Items

Synopsis: Index based access to class pointers.

Declaration: `Property Items [Index: Integer]: TClass; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: `Items` provides index-based access to the class pointers in the list. `TClassList` overrides the default `Items` implementation of `TList` so it returns class pointers instead of pointers.

See also: `#rtl.classes.TList.Items` ([??](#)), `#rtl.classes.TList.Count` ([??](#))

7.9 TComponentList

7.9.1 Description

`TComponentList` is a `TObjectList` (167) descendent which has as the default array property `TComponents` (??) instead of objects. It overrides some methods so only components can be added.

In difference with `TObjectList` (167), `TComponentList` removes any `TComponent` from the list if the `TComponent` instance was freed externally. It uses the `FreeNotification` mechanism for this.

See also: `#rtl.classes.TList` (??), `TFPObjectList` (154), `TObjectList` (167), `TClassList` (120)

7.9.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
123	Add	Add a component to the list.
123	Destroy	Destroys the instance
124	Extract	Remove a component from the list without destroying it.
125	First	First non-nil instance in the list.
124	IndexOf	Search for an instance in the list
125	Insert	Insert a new component in the list
125	Last	Last non-nil instance in the list.
124	Remove	Remove a component from the list, possibly destroying it.

7.9.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
125	Items	rw	Index-based access to the elements in the list.

7.9.4 TComponentList.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the instance

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` unhooks the free notification handler and then calls the inherited `destroy` to clean up the `TComponentList` instance.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObjectList` (167), `#rtl.classes.TComponent` (??)

7.9.5 TComponentList.Add

Synopsis: Add a component to the list.

Declaration: `function Add(AComponent: TComponent) : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Add` overrides the `Add` operation of it's ancestors, so it only accepts `TComponent` instances. It introduces no new behaviour.

The function returns the index at which the component was added.

Errors: If not enough memory is available to expand the list, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TObjectList.Add` ([168](#))

7.9.6 TComponentList.Extract

Synopsis: Remove a component from the list without destroying it.

Declaration: `function Extract (Item: TComponent) : TComponent`

Visibility: public

Description: `Extract` removes a component (`Item`) from the list, without destroying it. It overrides the implementation of `TObjectList` ([167](#)) so only `TComponent` descendents can be extracted. It introduces no new behaviour.

`Extract` returns the instance that was extracted, or `Nil` if no instance was found.

See also: `TComponentList.Remove` ([124](#)), `TObjectList.Extract` ([168](#))

7.9.7 TComponentList.Remove

Synopsis: Remove a component from the list, possibly destroying it.

Declaration: `function Remove (AComponent: TComponent) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Remove` removes `item` from the list, and if the list owns it's items, it also destroys it. It returns the index of the item that was removed, or -1 if no item was removed.

`Remove` simply overrides the implementation in `TObjectList` ([167](#)) so it only accepts `TComponent` descendents. It introduces no new behaviour.

Errors: None.

See also: `TComponentList.Extract` ([124](#)), `TObjectList.Remove` ([168](#))

7.9.8 TComponentList.IndexOf

Synopsis: Search for an instance in the list

Declaration: `function IndexOf (AComponent: TComponent) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` searches for an instance in the list and returns it's position in the list. The position is zero-based. If no instance is found, -1 is returned.

`IndexOf` just overrides the implementation of the parent class so it accepts only `TComponent` instances. It introduces no new behaviour.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObjectList.IndexOf` ([169](#))

7.9.9 TComponentList.First

Synopsis: First non-nil instance in the list.

Declaration: `function First : TComponent`

Visibility: public

Description: `First` overrides the implementation of it's ancestors to return the first non-nil instance of `TComponent` in the list. If no non-nil instance is found, `Nil` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TComponentList.Last` ([125](#)), `TObjectList.First` ([169](#))

7.9.10 TComponentList.Last

Synopsis: Last non-nil instance in the list.

Declaration: `function Last : TComponent`

Visibility: public

Description: `Last` overrides the implementation of it's ancestors to return the last non-nil instance of `TComponent` in the list. If no non-nil instance is found, `Nil` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TComponentList.First` ([125](#)), `TObjectList.Last` ([170](#))

7.9.11 TComponentList.Insert

Synopsis: Insert a new component in the list

Declaration: `procedure Insert (Index: Integer; AComponent: TComponent)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Insert` inserts a `TComponent` instance (`AComponent`) in the list at position `Index`. It simply overrides the parent implementation so it only accepts `TComponent` instances. It introduces no new behaviour.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObjectList.Insert` ([169](#)), `TComponentList.Add` ([123](#)), `TComponentList.Remove` ([124](#))

7.9.12 TComponentList.Items

Synopsis: Index-based access to the elements in the list.

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: TComponent; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Items` provides access to the components in the list using an index. It simply overrides the default property of the parent classes so it returns/accepts `TComponent` instances only. Note that the index is zero based.

See also: `TObjectList.Items` ([170](#))

7.10 TCustomBucketList

7.10.1 Description

TCustomBucketList is an associative list using buckets for storage. It scales better than a regular TList (??) list class, especially when an item must be searched in the list.

Since the list associates a data pointer with each item pointer, it follows that each item pointer must be unique, and can be added to the list only once.

The TCustomBucketList class does not determine the number of buckets or the bucket hash mechanism, this must be done by descendent classes such as TBucketList (119). TCustomBucketList only takes care of storage and retrieval of items in the various buckets.

Because TCustomBucketList is an abstract class - it does not determine the number of buckets - one should never instantiate an instance of TCustomBucketList, but always use a descendent class such as TCustomBucketList (126).

See also: TBucketList (119)

7.10.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
127	Add	Add an item to the list
127	Assign	Assign one bucket list to another
126	Clear	Clear the list
126	Destroy	Frees the bucketlist from memory
127	Exists	Check if an item exists in the list.
127	Find	Find an item in the list
128	ForEach	Loop over all items.
128	Remove	Remove an item from the list.

7.10.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
128	Data	rw	Associative array for data pointers

7.10.4 TCustomBucketList.Destroy

Synopsis: Frees the bucketlist from memory

Declaration: `destructor Destroy;` Override

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` frees all storage for the buckets from memory. The items themselves are not freed from memory.

7.10.5 TCustomBucketList.Clear

Synopsis: Clear the list

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: public

Description: `Clear` clears the list. The items and their data themselves are not disposed of, this must be done separately. `Clear` only removes all references to the items from the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCustomBucketList.Add` ([127](#))

7.10.6 TCustomBucketList.Add

Synopsis: Add an item to the list

Declaration: `function Add(AItem: Pointer; AData: Pointer) : Pointer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Add` adds `AItem` with it's associated `AData` to the list and returns `AData`.

Errors: If `AItem` is already in the list, an `EListError` exception will be raised.

See also: `TCustomBucketList.Exists` ([127](#)), `TCustomBucketList.Clear` ([126](#))

7.10.7 TCustomBucketList.Assign

Synopsis: Assign one bucket list to another

Declaration: `procedure Assign(AList: TCustomBucketList)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Assign` is implemented by `TCustomBucketList` to copy the contents of another bucket list to the bucket list. It clears the contents prior to the copy operation.

See also: `TCustomBucketList.Add` ([127](#)), `TCustomBucketList.Clear` ([126](#))

7.10.8 TCustomBucketList.Exists

Synopsis: Check if an item exists in the list.

Declaration: `function Exists(AItem: Pointer) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Exists` searches the list and returns `True` if the `AItem` is already present in the list. If the item is not yet in the list, `False` is returned.

If the data pointer associated with `AItem` is also needed, then it is better to use `Find` ([127](#)).

See also: `TCustomBucketList.Find` ([127](#))

7.10.9 TCustomBucketList.Find

Synopsis: Find an item in the list

Declaration: `function Find(AItem: Pointer; out AData: Pointer) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Find` searches for `AItem` in the list and returns the data pointer associated with it in `AData` if the item was found. In that case the return value is `True`. If `AItem` is not found in the list, `False` is returned.

See also: `TCustomBucketList.Exists` ([127](#))

7.10.10 TCustomBucketList.ForEach

Synopsis: Loop over all items.

Declaration: `function ForEach(AProc: TBucketProc; AInfo: Pointer) : Boolean`
`function ForEach(AProc: TBucketProcObject) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: Foreach loops over all items in the list and calls AProc, passing it in turn each item in the list.

AProc exists in 2 variants: one which is a simple procedure, and one which is a method. In the case of the simple procedure, the AInfo argument is passed as well in each call to AProc.

The loop stops when all items have been processed, or when the AContinue argument of AProc contains False on return.

The result of the function is True if all items were processed, or False if the loop was interrupted with a AContinue return of False.

Errors: None.

See also: TCustomBucketList.Data ([128](#))

7.10.11 TCustomBucketList.Remove

Synopsis: Remove an item from the list.

Declaration: `function Remove(AItem: Pointer) : Pointer`

Visibility: public

Description: Remove removes AItem from the list, and returns the associated data pointer of the removed item. If the item was not in the list, then Nil is returned.

See also: Find ([127](#))

7.10.12 TCustomBucketList.Data

Synopsis: Associative array for data pointers

Declaration: `Property Data[AItem: Pointer]: Pointer; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: Data provides direct access to the Data pointers associated with the AItem pointers. If AItem is not in the list of pointers, an EListError exception will be raised.

See also: TCustomBucketList.Find ([127](#)), TCustomBucketList.Exists ([127](#))

7.11 TFPCustomHashTable

7.11.1 Description

TFPCustomHashTable is a general-purpose hashing class. It can store string keys and pointers associated with these strings. The hash mechanism is configurable and can be optionally be specified

when a new instance of the class is created; A default hash mechanism is implemented in `RSHash` (119).

A `TFPHasList` should be used when fast lookup of data based on some key is required. The other container objects only offer linear search methods, while the hash list offers faster search mechanisms.

See also: `THTCustomNode` (162), `TFPObjectList` (154), `RSHash` (119)

7.11.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
130	<code>ChangeTableSize</code>	Change the table size of the hash table.
130	<code>Clear</code>	Clear the hash table.
129	<code>Create</code>	Instantiate a new <code>TFPCustomHashTable</code> instance using the default hash mechanism
130	<code>CreateWith</code>	Instantiate a new <code>TFPCustomHashTable</code> instance with given algorithm and size
131	<code>Delete</code>	Delete a key from the hash list.
130	<code>Destroy</code>	Free the hash table.
131	<code>Find</code>	Search for an item with a certain key value.
131	<code>IsEmpty</code>	Check if the hash table is empty.

7.11.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
133	<code>AVGChainLen</code>	r	Average chain length
132	<code>Count</code>	r	Number of items in the hash table.
134	<code>Density</code>	r	Number of filled slots
131	<code>HashFunction</code>	rw	Hash function currently in use
132	<code>HashTable</code>	r	Hash table instance
132	<code>HashTableSize</code>	rw	Size of the hash table
133	<code>LoadFactor</code>	r	Fraction of count versus size
133	<code>MaxChainLength</code>	r	Maximum chain length
133	<code>NumberOfCollisions</code>	r	Number of extra items
132	<code>VoidSlots</code>	r	Number of empty slots in the hash table.

7.11.4 `TFPCustomHashTable.Create`

Synopsis: Instantiate a new `TFPCustomHashTable` instance using the default hash mechanism

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of `TFPCustomHashTable` with hash size 196613 and hash algorithm `RSHash` (119)

Errors: If no memory is available, an exception may be raised.

See also: `CreateWith` (130)

7.11.5 TFPCustomHashTable.CreateWith

Synopsis: Instantiate a new `TFPCustomHashTable` instance with given algorithm and size

Declaration: constructor `CreateWith(AHashTableSize: LongWord;
aHashFunc: THashFunction)`

Visibility: public

Description: `CreateWith` creates a new instance of `TFPCustomHashTable` with hash size `AHashTableSize` and hash calculating algorithm `aHashFunc`.

Errors: If no memory is available, an exception may be raised.

See also: `Create` ([129](#))

7.11.6 TFPCustomHashTable.Destroy

Synopsis: Free the hash table.

Declaration: destructor `Destroy`; `Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` removes the hash table from memory. If any data was associated with the keys in the hash table, then this data is not freed. This must be done by the programmer.

Errors: None.

See also: `Destroy` ([130](#)), `Create` ([129](#)), `Create` ([130](#)), `THTCustomNode.Data` ([162](#))

7.11.7 TFPCustomHashTable.ChangeTableSize

Synopsis: Change the table size of the hash table.

Declaration: procedure `ChangeTableSize(const ANewSize: LongWord); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `ChangeTableSize` changes the size of the hash table: it recomputes the hash value for all of the keys in the table, so this is an expensive operation.

Errors: If no memory is available, an exception may be raised.

See also: `HashTableSize` ([132](#))

7.11.8 TFPCustomHashTable.Clear

Synopsis: Clear the hash table.

Declaration: procedure `Clear`; `Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Clear` removes all keys and their associated data from the hash table. The data itself is not freed from memory, this should be done by the programmer.

Errors: None.

See also: `Destroy` ([130](#))

7.11.9 TFPCustomHashTable.Delete

Synopsis: Delete a key from the hash list.

Declaration: `procedure Delete(const aKey: string); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Delete` deletes all keys with value `AKey` from the hash table. It does not free the data associated with key. If `AKey` is not in the list, nothing is removed.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPCustomHashTable.Find` (131), `TFPCustomHashTable.Add` (128)

7.11.10 TFPCustomHashTable.Find

Synopsis: Search for an item with a certain key value.

Declaration: `function Find(const aKey: string) : THTCustomNode`

Visibility: public

Description: `Find` searches for the `THTCustomNode` (162) instance with key value equal to `Akey` and if it finds it, it returns the instance. If no matching value is found, `Nil` is returned.

Note that the instance returned by this function cannot be freed; If it should be removed from the hash table, the `Delete` (131) method should be used instead.

Errors: None.

See also: `Add` (128), `Delete` (131)

7.11.11 TFPCustomHashTable.IsEmpty

Synopsis: Check if the hash table is empty.

Declaration: `function IsEmpty : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `IsEmpty` returns `True` if the hash table contains no elements, or `False` if there are still elements in the hash table.

See also: `TFPCustomHashTable.Count` (132), `TFPCustomHashTable.HashTableSize` (132), `TFPCustomHashTable.AVGChainLen` (133), `TFPCustomHashTable.MaxChainLength` (133)

7.11.12 TFPCustomHashTable.HashFunction

Synopsis: Hash function currently in use

Declaration: `Property HashFunction : THashFunction`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `HashFunction` is the hash function currently in use to calculate hash values from keys. The property can be set, this simply calls `SetHashFunction` (128). Note that setting the hash function does NOT the hash value of all keys to be recomputed, so changing the value while there are still keys in the table is not a good idea.

See also: `SetHashFunction` (128), `HashTableSize` (132)

7.11.13 TFPCustomHashTable.Count

Synopsis: Number of items in the hash table.

Declaration: `Property Count : LongWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Count` is the number of items in the hash table.

See also: `TFPCustomHashTable.IsEmpty` (131), `TFPCustomHashTable.HashTableSize` (132), `TFPCustomHashTable.AVGChainLen` (133), `TFPCustomHashTable.MaxChainLength` (133)

7.11.14 TFPCustomHashTable.HashTableSize

Synopsis: Size of the hash table

Declaration: `Property HashTableSize : LongWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: `HashTableSize` is the size of the hash table. It can be set, in which case it will be rounded to the nearest prime number suitable for RSHash.

See also: `TFPCustomHashTable.IsEmpty` (131), `TFPCustomHashTable.Count` (132), `TFPCustomHashTable.AVGChainLen` (133), `TFPCustomHashTable.MaxChainLength` (133), `TFPCustomHashTable.VoidSlots` (132), `TFPCustomHashTable.Density` (134)

7.11.15 TFPCustomHashTable.HashTable

Synopsis: Hash table instance

Declaration: `Property HashTable : TFPObjectList`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `TFPCustomHashTable` is the internal list object (`TFPObjectList` (154)) used for the hash table. Each element in this table is again a `TFPObjectList` (154) instance or `Nil`.

7.11.16 TFPCustomHashTable.VoidSlots

Synopsis: Number of empty slots in the hash table.

Declaration: `Property VoidSlots : LongWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `VoidSlots` is the number of empty slots in the hash table. Calculating this is an expensive operation.

See also: `TFPCustomHashTable.IsEmpty` (131), `TFPCustomHashTable.Count` (132), `TFPCustomHashTable.AVGChainLen` (133), `TFPCustomHashTable.MaxChainLength` (133), `TFPCustomHashTable.LoadFactor` (133), `TFPCustomHashTable.Density` (134), `TFPCustomHashTable.NumberOfCollisions` (133)

7.11.17 TFPCustomHashTable.LoadFactor

Synopsis: Fraction of count versus size

Declaration: Property LoadFactor : Double

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: LoadFactor is the ratio of elements in the table versus table size. Ideally, this should be as small as possible.

See also: TFPCustomHashTable.IsEmpty ([131](#)), TFPCustomHashTable.Count ([132](#)), TFPCustomHashTable.AVGChainLen ([133](#)), TFPCustomHashTable.MaxChainLength ([133](#)), TFPCustomHashTable.VoidSlots ([132](#)), TFPCustomHashTable.Density ([134](#)), TFPCustomHashTable.NumberOfCollisions ([133](#))

7.11.18 TFPCustomHashTable.AVGChainLen

Synopsis: Average chain length

Declaration: Property AVGChainLen : Double

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: AVGChainLen is the average chain length, i.e. the ratio of elements in the table versus the number of filled slots. Calculating this is an expensive operation.

See also: TFPCustomHashTable.IsEmpty ([131](#)), TFPCustomHashTable.Count ([132](#)), TFPCustomHashTable.LoadFactor ([133](#)), TFPCustomHashTable.MaxChainLength ([133](#)), TFPCustomHashTable.VoidSlots ([132](#)), TFPCustomHashTable.Density ([134](#)), TFPCustomHashTable.NumberOfCollisions ([133](#))

7.11.19 TFPCustomHashTable.MaxChainLength

Synopsis: Maximum chain length

Declaration: Property MaxChainLength : LongWord

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: MaxChainLength is the length of the longest chain in the hash table. Calculating this is an expensive operation.

See also: TFPCustomHashTable.IsEmpty ([131](#)), TFPCustomHashTable.Count ([132](#)), TFPCustomHashTable.LoadFactor ([133](#)), TFPCustomHashTable.AvgChainLength ([128](#)), TFPCustomHashTable.VoidSlots ([132](#)), TFPCustomHashTable.Density ([134](#)), TFPCustomHashTable.NumberOfCollisions ([133](#))

7.11.20 TFPCustomHashTable.NumberOfCollisions

Synopsis: Number of extra items

Declaration: Property NumberOfCollisions : LongWord

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `NumberOfCollisions` is the number of items which are not the first item in a chain. If this number is too big, the hash size may be too small.

See also: `TFPCustomHashTable.IsEmpty` (131), `TFPCustomHashTable.Count` (132), `TFPCustomHashTable.LoadFactor` (133), `TFPCustomHashTable.AvgChainLength` (128), `TFPCustomHashTable.VoidSlots` (132), `TFPCustomHashTable.Density` (134)

7.11.21 `TFPCustomHashTable.Density`

Synopsis: Number of filled slots

Declaration: `Property Density : LongWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Density` is the number of filled slots in the hash table.

See also: `TFPCustomHashTable.IsEmpty` (131), `TFPCustomHashTable.Count` (132), `TFPCustomHashTable.LoadFactor` (133), `TFPCustomHashTable.AvgChainLength` (128), `TFPCustomHashTable.VoidSlots` (132), `TFPCustomHashTable.Density` (134)

7.12 `TFPDataHashTable`

7.12.1 Description

`TFPDataHashTable` is a `TFPCustomHashTable` (128) descendent which stores simple data pointers together with the keys. In case the data associated with the keys are objects, it's better to use `TFPObjectHashTable` (152), or for string data, `TFPStringHashTable` (161) is more suitable. The data pointers are exposed with their keys through the `Items` (135) property.

See also: `TFPObjectHashTable` (152), `TFPStringHashTable` (161), `Items` (135)

7.12.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
135	Add	Add a data pointer to the list.
134	Iterate	

7.12.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
135	Items	rw	Key-based access to the items in the table

7.12.4 `TFPDataHashTable.Iterate`

Declaration: `function Iterate(aMethod: TDataIteratorMethod) : Pointer; Virtual`

Visibility: public

7.12.5 TFPDataHashTable.Add

Synopsis: Add a data pointer to the list.

Declaration: `procedure Add(const aKey: string; AItem: pointer); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Add adds a data pointer (AItem) to the list with key AKey.

Errors: If AKey already exists in the table, an exception is raised.

See also: TFPDataHashTable.Items ([135](#))

7.12.6 TFPDataHashTable.Items

Synopsis: Key-based access to the items in the table

Declaration: `Property Items[index: string]: Pointer; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read, Write

Description: Items provides access to the items in the hash table using their key: the array index Index is the key. A key which is not present will result in an Nil pointer.

See also: TFPStringHashTable.Add ([162](#))

7.13 TFPHashList

7.13.1 Description

TFPHashList implements a fast hash class. The class is built for speed, therefore the key values can be shortstrings only, and the data can only be pointers.

if a base class for an own hash class is wanted, the TFPCustomHashTable ([128](#)) class can be used. If a hash class for objects is needed instead of pointers, the TFPHashObjectList ([145](#)) class can be used.

See also: TFPCustomHashTable ([128](#)), TFPHashObjectList ([145](#)), TFPDataHashTable ([134](#)), TFPStringHashTable ([161](#))

7.13.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
137	Add	Add a new key/data pair to the list
137	Clear	Clear the list
136	Create	Create a new instance of the hashlist
138	Delete	Delete an item from the list.
136	Destroy	Removes an instance of the hashlist from the heap
138	Error	Raise an error
138	Expand	Expand the list
139	Extract	Extract a pointer from the list
139	Find	Find data associated with key
139	FindIndexOf	Return index of named item.
140	FindWithHash	Find first element with given name and hash value
141	ForEachCall	Call a procedure for each element in the list
138	GetNextCollision	Get next collision number
137	HashOfIndex	Return the hash value of an item by index
139	IndexOf	Return the index of the data pointer
137	NameOfIndex	Returns the key name of an item by index
140	Pack	Remove nil pointers from the list
140	Remove	Remove first instance of a pointer
140	Rename	Rename a key
141	ShowStatistics	Return some statistics for the list.

7.13.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
141	Capacity	rw	Capacity of the list.
141	Count	rw	Current number of elements in the list.
142	Items	rw	Indexed array with pointers
142	List	r	Low-level hash list
142	Strs	r	Low-level memory area with strings.

7.13.4 TFPHashList.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the hashlist

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of `TFPHashList` on the heap and sets the hash capacity to 1.

See also: `TFPHashList.Destroy` ([136](#))

7.13.5 TFPHashList.Destroy

Synopsis: Removes an instance of the hashlist from the heap

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the memory structures maintained by the hashlist and removes the `TFPHashList` instance from the heap.

`Destroy` should not be called directly, it's better to use `Free` or `FreeAndNil` instead.

See also: `TFPHashList.Create` ([136](#)), `TFPHashList.Clear` ([137](#))

7.13.6 TFPHashList.Add

Synopsis: Add a new key/data pair to the list

Declaration: `function Add(const AName: shortstring; Item: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Add` adds a new data pointer (`Item`) with key `AName` to the list. It returns the position of the item in the list.

Errors: If not enough memory is available to hold the key and data, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TFPHashList.Extract` ([139](#)), `TFPHashList.Remove` ([140](#)), `TFPHashList.Delete` ([138](#))

7.13.7 TFPHashList.Clear

Synopsis: Clear the list

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: public

Description: `Clear` removes all items from the list. It does not free the data items themselves. It frees all memory needed to contain the items.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPHashList.Extract` ([139](#)), `TFPHashList.Remove` ([140](#)), `TFPHashList.Delete` ([138](#)), `TFPHashList.Add` ([137](#))

7.13.8 TFPHashList.NameOfIndex

Synopsis: Returns the key name of an item by index

Declaration: `function NameOfIndex(Index: Integer) : ShortString`

Visibility: public

Description: `NameOfIndex` returns the key name of the item at position `Index`.

Errors: If `Index` is out of the valid range, an exception is raised.

See also: `TFPHashList.HashOfIndex` ([137](#)), `TFPHashList.Find` ([139](#)), `TFPHashList.FindIndexOf` ([139](#)), `TFPHashList.FindWithHash` ([140](#))

7.13.9 TFPHashList.HashOfIndex

Synopsis: Return the hash value of an item by index

Declaration: `function HashOfIndex(Index: Integer) : LongWord`

Visibility: public

Description: `HashOfIndex` returns the hash value of the item at position `Index`.

Errors: If `Index` is out of the valid range, an exception is raised.

See also: `TFPHashList.HashOfName` ([135](#)), `TFPHashList.Find` ([139](#)), `TFPHashList.FindIndexOf` ([139](#)), `TFPHashList.FindWithHash` ([140](#))

7.13.10 TFPHashList.GetNextCollision

Synopsis: Get next collision number

Declaration: `function GetNextCollision(Index: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetNextCollision` returns the next collision in hash item `Index`. This is the count of items with the same hash.means that the next it

7.13.11 TFPHashList.Delete

Synopsis: Delete an item from the list.

Declaration: `procedure Delete(Index: Integer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Delete` deletes the item at position `Index`. The data to which it points is not freed from memory.

Errors: `TFPHashList.Extract` ([139](#))`TFPHashList.Remove` ([140](#))`TFPHashList.Add` ([137](#))

7.13.12 TFPHashList.Error

Synopsis: Raise an error

Declaration: `class procedure Error(const Msg: string;Data: PtrInt)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Error` raises an `EListError` exception, with message `Msg`. The `Data` pointer is used to format the message.

7.13.13 TFPHashList.Expand

Synopsis: Expand the list

Declaration: `function Expand : TFPHashList`

Visibility: public

Description: `Expand` enlarges the capacity of the list if the maximum capacity was reached. It returns itself.

Errors: If not enough memory is available, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TFPHashList.Clear` ([137](#))

7.13.14 TFPHashList.Extract

Synopsis: Extract a pointer from the list

Declaration: `function Extract(item: Pointer) : Pointer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Extract` removes the data item from the list, if it is in the list. It returns the pointer if it was removed from the list, `Nil` otherwise.

`Extract` does a linear search, and is not very efficient.

See also: `TFPHashList.Delete` (138), `TFPHashList.Remove` (140), `TFPHashList.Clear` (137)

7.13.15 TFPHashList.IndexOf

Synopsis: Return the index of the data pointer

Declaration: `function IndexOf(Item: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` returns the index of the first occurrence of pointer `Item`. If the item is not in the list, -1 is returned.

The performed search is linear, and not very efficient.

See also: `TFPHashList.HashOfIndex` (137), `TFPHashList.NameOfIndex` (137), `TFPHashList.Find` (139), `TFPHashList.FindIndexOf` (139), `TFPHashList.FindWithHash` (140)

7.13.16 TFPHashList.Find

Synopsis: Find data associated with key

Declaration: `function Find(const AName: shortstring) : Pointer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Find` searches (using the hash) for the data item associated with item `AName` and returns the data pointer associated with it. If the item is not found, `Nil` is returned. It uses the hash value of the key to perform the search.

See also: `TFPHashList.HashOfIndex` (137), `TFPHashList.NameOfIndex` (137), `TFPHashList.IndexOf` (139), `TFPHashList.FindIndexOf` (139), `TFPHashList.FindWithHash` (140)

7.13.17 TFPHashList.FindIndexOf

Synopsis: Return index of named item.

Declaration: `function FindIndexOf(const AName: shortstring) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindIndexOf` returns the index of the key `AName`, or -1 if the key does not exist in the list. It uses the hash value to search for the key.

See also: `TFPHashList.HashOfIndex` (137), `TFPHashList.NameOfIndex` (137), `TFPHashList.IndexOf` (139), `TFPHashList.Find` (139), `TFPHashList.FindWithHash` (140)

7.13.18 TFPHashList.FindWithHash

Synopsis: Find first element with given name and hash value

Declaration: `function FindWithHash(const AName: shortstring; AHash: LongWord)
: Pointer`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindWithHash` searches for the item with key `AName`. It uses the provided hash value `AHash` to perform the search. If the item exists, the data pointer is returned, if not, the result is `Nil`.

See also: `TFPHashList.HashOfIndex` ([137](#)), `TFPHashList.NameOfIndex` ([137](#)), `TFPHashList.IndexOf` ([139](#)), `TFPHashList.Find` ([139](#)), `TFPHashList.FindIndexOf` ([139](#))

7.13.19 TFPHashList.Rename

Synopsis: Rename a key

Declaration: `function Rename(const AOldName: shortstring; const ANewName: shortstring)
: Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Rename` renames key `AOldname` to `ANewName`. The hash value is recomputed and the item is moved in the list to it's new position.

Errors: If an item with `ANewName` already exists, an exception will be raised.

7.13.20 TFPHashList.Remove

Synopsis: Remove first instance of a pointer

Declaration: `function Remove(Item: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Remove` removes the first occurrence of the data pointer `Item` in the list, if it is present. The return value is the removed data pointer, or `Nil` if no data pointer was removed.

See also: `TFPHashList.Delete` ([138](#)), `TFPHashList.Clear` ([137](#)), `TFPHashList.Extract` ([139](#))

7.13.21 TFPHashList.Pack

Synopsis: Remove nil pointers from the list

Declaration: `procedure Pack`

Visibility: public

Description: `Pack` removes all `Nil` items from the list, and frees all unused memory.

See also: `TFPHashList.Clear` ([137](#))

7.13.22 TFPHashList.ShowStatistics

Synopsis: Return some statistics for the list.

Declaration: `procedure ShowStatistics`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ShowStatistics` prints some information about the hash list to standard output. It prints the following values:

HashSizeSize of the hash table

HashMeanMean hash value

HashStdDevStandard deviation of hash values

ListSizeSize and capacity of the list

StringSizeSize and capacity of key strings

7.13.23 TFPHashList.ForEachCall

Synopsis: Call a procedure for each element in the list

Declaration: `procedure ForEachCall (proc2call: TListCallback; arg: pointer)`
`procedure ForEachCall (proc2call: TListStaticCallback; arg: pointer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ForEachCall` loops over the items in the list and calls `proc2call`, passing it the item and `arg`.

7.13.24 TFPHashList.Capacity

Synopsis: Capacity of the list.

Declaration: `Property Capacity : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read, Write

Description: `Capacity` returns the current capacity of the list. The capacity is expanded as more elements are added to the list. If a good estimate of the number of elements that will be added to the list, the property can be set to a sufficiently large value to avoid reallocation of memory each time the list needs to grow.

See also: [Count \(141\)](#), [Items \(142\)](#)

7.13.25 TFPHashList.Count

Synopsis: Current number of elements in the list.

Declaration: `Property Count : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read, Write

Description: `Count` is the current number of elements in the list.

See also: [Capacity \(141\)](#), [Items \(142\)](#)

7.13.26 TFPHashList.Items

Synopsis: Indexed array with pointers

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: Pointer; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Items` provides indexed access to the pointers, the index runs from 0 to Count-1 (141).

Errors: Specifying an invalid index will result in an exception.

See also: Capacity (141), Count (141)

7.13.27 TFPHashList.List

Synopsis: Low-level hash list

Declaration: `Property List : PHashItemList`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `List` exposes the low-level item list (118). It should not be used directly.

See also: `Strs` (142), `THashItemList` (118)

7.13.28 TFPHashList.Strs

Synopsis: Low-level memory area with strings.

Declaration: `Property Strs : PChar`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Strs` exposes the raw memory area with the strings.

See also: `List` (142)

7.14 TFPHashObject

7.14.1 Description

`TFPHashObject` is a `TObject` descendent which is aware of the `TFPHashObjectList` (145) class. It has a name property and an owning list: if the name is changed, it will reposition itself in the list which owns it. It offers methods to change the owning list: the object will correctly remove itself from the list which currently owns it, and insert itself in the new list.

See also: `TFPHashObject.Name` (144), `TFPHashObject.ChangeOwner` (143), `TFPHashObject.ChangeOwnerAndName` (144)

7.14.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
143	<code>ChangeOwner</code>	Change the list owning the object.
144	<code>ChangeOwnerAndName</code>	Simultaneously change the list owning the object and the name of the object.
143	<code>Create</code>	Create a named instance, and insert in a hash list.
143	<code>CreateNotOwned</code>	Create an instance not owned by any list.
144	<code>Rename</code>	Rename the object

7.14.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
144	<code>Hash</code>	<code>r</code>	Hash value
144	<code>Name</code>	<code>r</code>	Current name of the object

7.14.4 `TFPHashObject.CreateNotOwned`

Synopsis: Create an instance not owned by any list.

Declaration: `constructor CreateNotOwned`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CreateNotOwned` creates an instance of `TFPHashObject` which is not owned by any `TFPHashObjectList` ([145](#)) hash list. It also has no name when created in this way.

See also: `TFPHashObject.Name` ([144](#)), `TFPHashObject.ChangeOwner` ([143](#)), `TFPHashObject.ChangeOwnerAndName` ([144](#))

7.14.5 `TFPHashObject.Create`

Synopsis: Create a named instance, and insert in a hash list.

Declaration: `constructor Create (HashObjectList: TFPHashObjectList;
const s: shortstring)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates an instance of `TFPHashObject`, gives it the name `s` and inserts it in the hash list `HashObjectList` ([145](#)).

See also: `CreateNotOwned` ([143](#)), `TFPHashObject.ChangeOwner` ([143](#)), `TFPHashObject.Name` ([144](#))

7.14.6 `TFPHashObject.ChangeOwner`

Synopsis: Change the list owning the object.

Declaration: `procedure ChangeOwner (HashObjectList: TFPHashObjectList)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ChangeOwner` can be used to move the object between hash lists: The object will be removed correctly from the hash list that currently owns it, and will be inserted in the list `HashObjectList`.

Errors: If an object with the same name already is present in the new hash list, an exception will be raised.

See also: `ChangeOwnerAndName` ([144](#)), `Name` ([144](#))

7.14.7 TFPHashObject.ChangeOwnerAndName

Synopsis: Simultaneously change the list owning the object and the name of the object.

Declaration: `procedure ChangeOwnerAndName (HashObjectList: TFPHashObjectList;
const s: shortstring)`

Visibility: public

Description: `ChangeOwnerAndName` can be used to move the object between hash lists: The object will be removed correctly from the hash list that currently owns it (using the current name), and will be inserted in the list `HashObjectList` with the new name `S`.

Errors: If the new name already is present in the new hash list, an exception will be raised.

See also: `ChangeOwner` ([143](#)), `Name` ([144](#))

7.14.8 TFPHashObject.Rename

Synopsis: Rename the object

Declaration: `procedure Rename (const ANewName: shortstring)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Rename` changes the name of the object, and notifies the hash list of this change.

Errors: If the new name already is present in the hash list, an exception will be raised.

See also: `ChangeOwner` ([143](#)), `ChangeOwnerAndName` ([144](#)), `Name` ([144](#))

7.14.9 TFPHashObject.Name

Synopsis: Current name of the object

Declaration: `Property Name : shortstring`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Name` is the name of the object, it is stored in the hash list using this name as the key.

See also: `Rename` ([144](#)), `ChangeOwnerAndName` ([144](#))

7.14.10 TFPHashObject.Hash

Synopsis: Hash value

Declaration: `Property Hash : LongWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Hash` is the hash value of the object in the hash list that owns it.

See also: `Name` ([144](#))

7.15 TFPHashObjectList

7.15.1 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
146	Add	Add a new key/data pair to the list
146	Clear	Clear the list
145	Create	Create a new instance of the hashlist
147	Delete	Delete an object from the list.
145	Destroy	Removes an instance of the hashlist from the heap
147	Expand	Expand the list
148	Extract	Extract a object instance from the list
148	Find	Find data associated with key
149	FindIndexOf	Return index of named object.
149	FindInstanceOf	Search an instance of a certain class
149	FindWithHash	Find first element with given name and hash value
150	ForEachCall	Call a procedure for each object in the list
147	GetNextCollision	Get next collision number
147	HashOfIndex	Return the hash valye of an object by index
148	IndexOf	Return the index of the object instance
146	NameOfIndex	Returns the key name of an object by index
150	Pack	Remove nil object instances from the list
148	Remove	Remove first occurrence of a object instance
149	Rename	Rename a key
150	ShowStatistics	Return some statistics for the list.

7.15.2 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
150	Capacity	rw	Capacity of the list.
151	Count	rw	Current number of elements in the list.
151	Items	rw	Indexed array with object instances
151	List	r	Low-level hash list
151	OwnsObjects	rw	Does the list own the objects it contains

7.15.3 TFPHashObjectList.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the hashlist

Declaration: constructor `Create (FreeObjects: Boolean)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of `TFPHashObjectList` on the heap and sets the hash capacity to 1.

If `FreeObjects` is `True` (the default), then the list owns the objects: when an object is removed from the list, it is destroyed (freed from memory). Clearing the list will free all objects in the list.

See also: `TFPHashObjectList.Destroy` ([145](#)), `TFPHashObjectList.OwnsObjects` ([151](#))

7.15.4 TFPHashObjectList.Destroy

Synopsis: Removes an instance of the hashlist from the heap

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the memory structures maintained by the hashlist and removes the `TFPHashObjectList` instance from the heap. If the list owns its objects, they are freed from memory as well.

`Destroy` should not be called directly, it's better to use `Free` or `FreeAndNil` instead.

See also: `TFPHashObjectList.Create` (145), `TFPHashObjectList.Clear` (146)

7.15.5 TFPHashObjectList.Clear

Synopsis: Clear the list

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` removes all objects from the list. It does not free the objects themselves, unless `OwnsObjects` (151) is `True`. It always frees all memory needed to contain the objects.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPHashObjectList.Extract` (148), `TFPHashObjectList.Remove` (148), `TFPHashObjectList.Delete` (147), `TFPHashObjectList.Add` (146)

7.15.6 TFPHashObjectList.Add

Synopsis: Add a new key/data pair to the list

Declaration: `function Add(const AName: shortstring; AObject: TObject) : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Add` adds a new object instance (`AObject`) with key `AName` to the list. It returns the position of the object in the list.

Errors: If not enough memory is available to hold the key and data, an exception may be raised. If an object with this name already exists in the list, an exception is raised.

See also: `TFPHashObjectList.Extract` (148), `TFPHashObjectList.Remove` (148), `TFPHashObjectList.Delete` (147)

7.15.7 TFPHashObjectList.NameOfIndex

Synopsis: Returns the key name of an object by index

Declaration: `function NameOfIndex(Index: Integer) : ShortString`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `NameOfIndex` returns the key name of the object at position `Index`.

Errors: If `Index` is out of the valid range, an exception is raised.

See also: `TFPHashObjectList.HashOfIndex` (147), `TFPHashObjectList.Find` (148), `TFPHashObjectList.FindIndexOf` (149), `TFPHashObjectList.FindWithHash` (149)

7.15.8 TFPHashObjectList.HashOfIndex

Synopsis: Return the hash value of an object by index

Declaration: `function HashOfIndex(Index: Integer) : LongWord`

Visibility: public

Description: `HashOfIndex` returns the hash value of the object at position `Index`.

Errors: If `Index` is out of the valid range, an exception is raised.

See also: `TFPHashObjectList.HashOfName` (145), `TFPHashObjectList.Find` (148), `TFPHashObjectList.FindIndexOf` (149), `TFPHashObjectList.FindWithHash` (149)

7.15.9 TFPHashObjectList.GetNextCollision

Synopsis: Get next collision number

Declaration: `function GetNextCollision(Index: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: Get next collision number

7.15.10 TFPHashObjectList.Delete

Synopsis: Delete an object from the list.

Declaration: `procedure Delete(Index: Integer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Delete` deletes the object at position `Index`. If `OwnsObjects` (151) is `True`, then the object itself is also freed from memory.

See also: `TFPHashObjectList.Extract` (148), `TFPHashObjectList.Remove` (148), `TFPHashObjectList.Add` (146), `OwnsObjects` (151)

7.15.11 TFPHashObjectList.Expand

Synopsis: Expand the list

Declaration: `function Expand : TFPHashObjectList`

Visibility: public

Description: `Expand` enlarges the capacity of the list if the maximum capacity was reached. It returns itself.

Errors: If not enough memory is available, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TFPHashObjectList.Clear` (146)

7.15.12 TFPHashObjectList.Extract

Synopsis: Extract a object instance from the list

Declaration: `function Extract (Item: TObject) : TObject`

Visibility: public

Description: `Extract` removes the data object from the list, if it is in the list. It returns the object instance if it was removed from the list, `Nil` otherwise. The object is *not* freed from memory, regardless of the value of `OwnsObjects` (151).

`Extract` does a linear search, and is not very efficient.

See also: `TFPHashObjectList.Delete` (147), `TFPHashObjectList.Remove` (148), `TFPHashObjectList.Clear` (146)

7.15.13 TFPHashObjectList.Remove

Synopsis: Remove first occurrence of a object instance

Declaration: `function Remove (AObject: TObject) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Remove` removes the first occurrence of the object instance `Item` in the list, if it is present. The return value is the location of the removed object instance, or `-1` if no object instance was removed.

If `OwnsObjects` (151) is `True`, then the object itself is also freed from memory.

See also: `TFPHashObjectList.Delete` (147), `TFPHashObjectList.Clear` (146), `TFPHashObjectList.Extract` (148)

7.15.14 TFPHashObjectList.IndexOf

Synopsis: Return the index of the object instance

Declaration: `function IndexOf (AObject: TObject) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` returns the index of the first occurrence of object instance `AObject`. If the object is not in the list, `-1` is returned.

The performed search is linear, and not very efficient.

See also: `TFPHashObjectList.HashOfIndex` (147), `TFPHashObjectList.NameOfIndex` (146), `TFPHashObjectList.Find` (148), `TFPHashObjectList.FindIndexOf` (149), `TFPHashObjectList.FindWithHash` (149)

7.15.15 TFPHashObjectList.Find

Synopsis: Find data associated with key

Declaration: `function Find (const s: shortstring) : TObject`

Visibility: public

Description: `Find` searches (using the hash) for the data object associated with key `AName` and returns the data object instance associated with it. If the object is not found, `Nil` is returned. It uses the hash value of the key to perform the search.

See also: `TFPHashObjectList.HashOfIndex` (147), `TFPHashObjectList.NameOfIndex` (146), `TFPHashObjectList.IndexOf` (148), `TFPHashObjectList.FindIndexOf` (149), `TFPHashObjectList.FindWithHash` (149)

7.15.16 TFPHashObjectList.FindIndexOf

Synopsis: Return index of named object.

Declaration: `function FindIndexOf(const s: shortstring) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindIndexOf` returns the index of the key `AName`, or -1 if the key does not exist in the list. It uses the hash value to search for the key.

See also: `TFPHashObjectList.HashOfIndex` (147), `TFPHashObjectList.NameOfIndex` (146), `TFPHashObjectList.IndexOf` (148), `TFPHashObjectList.Find` (148), `TFPHashObjectList.FindWithHash` (149)

7.15.17 TFPHashObjectList.FindWithHash

Synopsis: Find first element with given name and hash value

Declaration: `function FindWithHash(const AName: shortstring; AHash: LongWord)
: Pointer`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindWithHash` searches for the object with key `AName`. It uses the provided hash value `AHash` to perform the search. If the object exists, the data object instance is returned, if not, the result is `Nil`.

See also: `TFPHashObjectList.HashOfIndex` (147), `TFPHashObjectList.NameOfIndex` (146), `TFPHashObjectList.IndexOf` (148), `TFPHashObjectList.Find` (148), `TFPHashObjectList.FindIndexOf` (149)

7.15.18 TFPHashObjectList.Rename

Synopsis: Rename a key

Declaration: `function Rename(const AOldName: shortstring; const ANewName: shortstring)
: Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Rename` renames key `AOldname` to `ANewName`. The hash value is recomputed and the object is moved in the list to it's new position.

Errors: If an object with `ANewName` already exists, an exception will be raised.

7.15.19 TFPHashObjectList.FindInstanceOf

Synopsis: Search an instance of a certain class

Declaration: `function FindInstanceOf(AClass: TClass; AExact: Boolean;
AStartAt: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindInstanceOf` searches the list for an instance of class `AClass`. It starts searching at position `AStartAt`. If `AExact` is `True`, only instances of class `AClass` are considered. If `AExact` is `False`, then descendent classes of `AClass` are also taken into account when searching. If no instance is found, `Nil` is returned.

7.15.20 TFPHashObjectList.Pack

Synopsis: Remove nil object instances from the list

Declaration: `procedure Pack`

Visibility: public

Description: `Pack` removes all `Nil` objects from the list, and frees all unused memory.

See also: `TFPHashObjectList.Clear` ([146](#))

7.15.21 TFPHashObjectList.ShowStatistics

Synopsis: Return some statistics for the list.

Declaration: `procedure ShowStatistics`

Visibility: public

Description: `ShowStatistics` prints some information about the hash list to standard output. It prints the following values:

HashSizeSize of the hash table

HashMeanMean hash value

HashStdDevStandard deviation of hash values

ListSizeSize and capacity of the list

StringSizeSize and capacity of key strings

7.15.22 TFPHashObjectList.ForEachCall

Synopsis: Call a procedure for each object in the list

Declaration: `procedure ForEachCall(proc2call: TObjectListCallback;arg: pointer)`
`procedure ForEachCall(proc2call: TObjectListStaticCallback;arg: pointer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `ForEachCall` loops over the objects in the list and calls `proc2call`, passing it the object and `arg`.

7.15.23 TFPHashObjectList.Capacity

Synopsis: Capacity of the list.

Declaration: `Property Capacity : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Capacity` returns the current capacity of the list. The capacity is expanded as more elements are added to the list. If a good estimate of the number of elements that will be added to the list, the property can be set to a sufficiently large value to avoid reallocation of memory each time the list needs to grow.

See also: `Count` ([151](#)), `Items` ([151](#))

7.15.24 TFPHashObjectList.Count

Synopsis: Current number of elements in the list.

Declaration: `Property Count : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Count` is the current number of elements in the list.

See also: [Capacity \(150\)](#), [Items \(151\)](#)

7.15.25 TFPHashObjectList.OwnsObjects

Synopsis: Does the list own the objects it contains

Declaration: `Property OwnsObjects : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OwnsObjects` determines what to do when an object is removed from the list: if it is `True` (the default), then the list owns the objects: when an object is removed from the list, it is destroyed (freed from memory). Clearing the list will free all objects in the list.

The value of `OwnsObjects` is set when the hash list is created, and cannot be changed during the lifetime of the hash list.

See also: [TFPHashObjectList.Create \(145\)](#)

7.15.26 TFPHashObjectList.Items

Synopsis: Indexed array with object instances

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: TObject; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Items` provides indexed access to the object instances, the index runs from 0 to `Count-1` ([151](#)).

Errors: Specifying an invalid index will result in an exception.

See also: [Capacity \(150\)](#), [Count \(151\)](#)

7.15.27 TFPHashObjectList.List

Synopsis: Low-level hash list

Declaration: `Property List : TFPHashList`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `List` exposes the low-level hash list ([135](#)). It should not be used directly.

See also: [TFPHashList \(135\)](#)

7.16 TFPObjectHashTable

7.16.1 Description

TFPStringHashTable is a TFPCustomHashTable (128) descendent which stores object instances together with the keys. In case the data associated with the keys are strings themselves, it's better to use TFPStringHashTable (161), or for arbitrary pointer data, TFPDataHashTable (134) is more suitable. The objects are exposed with their keys through the Items (153) property.

See also: TFPStringHashTable (161), TFPDataHashTable (134), TFPObjectHashTable.Items (153)

7.16.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
153	Add	Add a new object to the hash table
152	Create	Create a new instance of TFPObjectHashTable
152	CreateWith	Create a new hash table with given size and hash function
153	Iterate	

7.16.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
153	Items	rw	Key-based access to the objects
153	OwnsObjects	rw	Does the hash table own the objects ?

7.16.4 TFPObjectHashTable.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of TFPObjectHashTable

Declaration: constructor Create(AOwnsObjects: Boolean)

Visibility: public

Description: Create creates a new instance of TFPObjectHashTable on the heap. It sets the OwnsObjects (153) property to AOwnsObjects, and then calls the inherited Create. If AOwnsObjects is set to True, then the hash table owns the objects: whenever an object is removed from the list, it is automatically freed.

Errors: If not enough memory is available on the heap, an exception may be raised.

See also: TFPObjectHashTable.OwnsObjects (153), TFPObjectHashTable.CreateWith (152), TFPObjectHashTable.Items (153)

7.16.5 TFPObjectHashTable.CreateWith

Synopsis: Create a new hash table with given size and hash function

Declaration: constructor CreateWith(AHashTableSize: LongWord;
aHashFunc: THashFunction; AOwnsObjects: Boolean)

Visibility: public

Description: CreateWith sets the OwnsObjects (153) property to AOwnsObjects, and then calls the inherited CreateWith. If AOwnsObjects is set to True, then the hash table owns the objects: whenever an object is removed from the list, it is automatically freed.

This constructor should be used when a table size and hash algorithm should be specified that differ from the default table size and hash algorithm.

Errors: If not enough memory is available on the heap, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TFPObjectHashTable.OwnsObjects` ([153](#)), `TFPObjectHashTable.Create` ([152](#)), `TFPObjectHashTable.Items` ([153](#))

7.16.6 TFPObjectHashTable.Iterate

Declaration: `function Iterate(aMethod: TObjectIteratorMethod) : TObject; Virtual`

Visibility: public

7.16.7 TFPObjectHashTable.Add

Synopsis: Add a new object to the hash table

Declaration: `procedure Add(const aKey: string; AItem: TObject); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Add` adds the object `AItem` to the hash table, and associates it with key `aKey`.

Errors: If the key `aKey` is already in the hash table, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TFPObjectHashTable.Items` ([153](#))

7.16.8 TFPObjectHashTable.Items

Synopsis: Key-based access to the objects

Declaration: `Property Items[index: string]: TObject; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Items` provides access to the objects in the hash table using their key: the array index `Index` is the key. A key which is not present will result in an `Nil` instance.

See also: `TFPObjectHashTable.Add` ([153](#))

7.16.9 TFPObjectHashTable.OwnsObjects

Synopsis: Does the hash table own the objects ?

Declaration: `Property OwnsObjects : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OwnsObjects` determines what happens with objects which are removed from the hash table: if `True`, then removing an object from the hash list will free the object. If `False`, the object is not freed. Note that way in which the object is removed is not relevant: be it `Delete`, `Remove` or `Clear`.

See also: `TFPObjectHashTable.Create` ([152](#)), `TFPObjectHashTable.Items` ([153](#))

7.17 TFObjectList

7.17.1 Description

`TFObjectList` is a `TFPList` (??) based list which has as the default array property `TObjects` (??) instead of pointers. By default it also manages the objects: when an object is deleted or removed from the list, it is automatically freed. This behaviour can be disabled when the list is created.

In difference with `TObjectList` (167), `TFObjectList` offers no notification mechanism of list operations, allowing it to be faster than `TObjectList`. For the same reason, it is also not a descendent of `TFPList` (although it uses one internally).

See also: `#rtl.classes.TFPList` (??), `TObjectList` (167)

7.17.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
155	Add	Add an object to the list.
159	Assign	Copy the contents of a list.
155	Clear	Clear all elements in the list.
154	Create	Create a new object list
156	Delete	Delete an element from the list.
155	Destroy	Clears the list and destroys the list instance
156	Exchange	Exchange the location of two objects
156	Expand	Expand the capacity of the list.
156	Extract	Extract an object from the list
157	FindInstanceOf	Search for an instance of a certain class
158	First	Return the first non-nil object in the list
160	ForEachCall	For each object in the list, call a method or procedure, passing it the object.
157	IndexOf	Search for an object in the list
158	Insert	Insert a new object in the list
158	Last	Return the last non-nil object in the list.
158	Move	Move an object to another location in the list.
159	Pack	Remove all <code>Nil</code> references from the list
157	Remove	Remove an item from the list.
159	Sort	Sort the list of objects

7.17.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
160	Capacity	rw	Capacity of the list
160	Count	rw	Number of elements in the list.
161	Items	rw	Indexed access to the elements of the list.
161	List	r	Internal list used to keep the objects.
160	OwnsObjects	rw	Should the list free elements when they are removed.

7.17.4 TFObjectList.Create

Synopsis: Create a new object list

Declaration: `constructor Create`
`constructor Create(FreeObjects: Boolean)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` instantiates a new object list. The `FreeObjects` parameter determines whether objects that are removed from the list should also be freed from memory. By default this is `True`. This behaviour can be changed after the list was instantiated.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPObjectList.Destroy` (155), `TFPObjectList.OwnsObjects` (160), `TObjectList` (167)

7.17.5 TFPObjectList.Destroy

Synopsis: Clears the list and destroys the list instance

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` clears the list, freeing all objects in the list if `OwnsObjects` (160) is `True`.

See also: `TFPObjectList.OwnsObjects` (160), `TObjectList.Create` (167)

7.17.6 TFPObjectList.Clear

Synopsis: Clear all elements in the list.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: public

Description: Removes all objects from the list, freeing all objects in the list if `OwnsObjects` (160) is `True`.

See also: `TObjectList.Destroy` (167)

7.17.7 TFPObjectList.Add

Synopsis: Add an object to the list.

Declaration: `function Add(AObject: TObject) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Add` adds `AObject` to the list and returns the index of the object in the list.

Note that when `OwnsObjects` (160) is `True`, an object should not be added twice to the list: this will result in memory corruption when the object is freed (as it will be freed twice). The `Add` method does not check this, however.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPObjectList.OwnsObjects` (160), `TFPObjectList.Delete` (156)

7.17.8 TFObjectList.Delete

Synopsis: Delete an element from the list.

Declaration: `procedure Delete(Index: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Delete` removes the object at index `Index` from the list. When `OwnsObjects` (160) is `True`, the object is also freed.

Errors: An access violation may occur when `OwnsObjects` (160) is `True` and either the object was freed externally, or when the same object is in the same list twice.

See also: `TFObjectList.Remove` (157), `TFObjectList.Extract` (156), `TFObjectList.OwnsObjects` (160), `TFObjectList.Add` (155), `TFObjectList.Clear` (155)

7.17.9 TFObjectList.Exchange

Synopsis: Exchange the location of two objects

Declaration: `procedure Exchange(Index1: Integer; Index2: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Exchange` exchanges the objects at indexes `Index1` and `Index2` in a direct operation (i.e. no delete/add is performed).

Errors: If either `Index1` or `Index2` is invalid, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TFObjectList.Add` (155), `TFObjectList.Delete` (156)

7.17.10 TFObjectList.Expand

Synopsis: Expand the capacity of the list.

Declaration: `function Expand : TFObjectList`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Expand` increases the capacity of the list. It calls `#rtl.classes.tfplist.expand` (??) and then returns a reference to itself.

Errors: If there is not enough memory to expand the list, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TFObjectList.Pack` (159), `TFObjectList.Clear` (155), `#rtl.classes.tfplist.expand` (??)

7.17.11 TFObjectList.Extract

Synopsis: Extract an object from the list

Declaration: `function Extract(Item: TObject) : TObject`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Extract` removes `Item` from the list, if it is present in the list. It returns `Item` if it was found, `Nil` if item was not present in the list.

Note that the object is not freed, and that only the first found object is removed from the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFObjectList.Pack` ([159](#)), `TFObjectList.Clear` ([155](#)), `TFObjectList.Remove` ([157](#)), `TFObjectList.Delete` ([156](#))

7.17.12 TFObjectList.Remove

Synopsis: Remove an item from the list.

Declaration: `function Remove(AObject: TObject) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Remove` removes `Item` from the list, if it is present in the list. It frees `Item` if `OwnsObjects` ([160](#)) is `True`, and returns the index of the object that was found in the list, or -1 if the object was not found.

Note that only the first found object is removed from the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFObjectList.Pack` ([159](#)), `TFObjectList.Clear` ([155](#)), `TFObjectList.Delete` ([156](#)), `TFObjectList.Extract` ([156](#))

7.17.13 TFObjectList.IndexOf

Synopsis: Search for an object in the list

Declaration: `function IndexOf(AObject: TObject) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` searches for the presence of `AObject` in the list, and returns the location (index) in the list. The index is 0-based, and -1 is returned if `AObject` was not found in the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFObjectList.Items` ([161](#)), `TFObjectList.Remove` ([157](#)), `TFObjectList.Extract` ([156](#))

7.17.14 TFObjectList.FindInstanceOf

Synopsis: Search for an instance of a certain class

Declaration: `function FindInstanceOf(AClass: TClass; AExact: Boolean;
AStartAt: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindInstanceOf` will look through the instances in the list and will return the first instance which is a descendent of class `AClass` if `AExact` is `False`. If `AExact` is `true`, then the instance should be of class `AClass`.

If no instance of the requested class is found, `Nil` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFObjectList.IndexOf` ([157](#))

7.17.15 TFObjectList.Insert

Synopsis: Insert a new object in the list

Declaration: `procedure Insert (Index: Integer; AObject: TObject)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Insert` inserts `AObject` at position `Index` in the list. All elements in the list after this position are shifted. The index is zero based, i.e. an insert at position 0 will insert an object at the first position of the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFObjectList.Add` ([155](#)), `TFObjectList.Delete` ([156](#))

7.17.16 TFObjectList.First

Synopsis: Return the first non-nil object in the list

Declaration: `function First : TObject`

Visibility: public

Description: `First` returns a reference to the first non-`Nil` element in the list. If no non-`Nil` element is found, `Nil` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFObjectList.Last` ([158](#)), `TFObjectList.Pack` ([159](#))

7.17.17 TFObjectList.Last

Synopsis: Return the last non-nil object in the list.

Declaration: `function Last : TObject`

Visibility: public

Description: `Last` returns a reference to the last non-`Nil` element in the list. If no non-`Nil` element is found, `Nil` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFObjectList.First` ([158](#)), `TFObjectList.Pack` ([159](#))

7.17.18 TFObjectList.Move

Synopsis: Move an object to another location in the list.

Declaration: `procedure Move (CurIndex: Integer; NewIndex: Integer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Move` moves the object at current location `CurIndex` to location `NewIndex`. Note that the `NewIndex` is determined *after* the object was removed from location `CurIndex`, and can hence be shifted with 1 position if `CurIndex` is less than `NewIndex`.

Contrary to `exchange` ([156](#)), the move operation is done by extracting the object from it's current location and inserting it at the new location.

Errors: If either `CurIndex` or `NewIndex` is out of range, an exception may occur.

See also: `TFPObjectList.Exchange` ([156](#)), `TFPObjectList.Delete` ([156](#)), `TFPObjectList.Insert` ([158](#))

7.17.19 TFPObjectList.Assign

Synopsis: Copy the contents of a list.

Declaration: `procedure Assign(Obj: TFPObjectList)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Assign` copies the contents of `Obj` if `Obj` is of type `TFPObjectList`

Errors: None.

7.17.20 TFPObjectList.Pack

Synopsis: Remove all `Nil` references from the list

Declaration: `procedure Pack`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Pack` removes all `Nil` elements from the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPObjectList.First` ([158](#)), `TFPObjectList.Last` ([158](#))

7.17.21 TFPObjectList.Sort

Synopsis: Sort the list of objects

Declaration: `procedure Sort(Compare: TListSortCompare)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Sort` will perform a quick-sort on the list, using `Compare` as the compare algorithm. This function should accept 2 pointers and should return the following result:

less than 0 If the first pointer comes before the second.

equal to 0 If the pointers have the same value.

larger than 0 If the first pointer comes after the second.

The function should be able to deal with `Nil` values.

Errors: None.

See also: `#rtl.classes.TList.Sort` (??)

7.17.22 TFObjectList.ForEachCall

Synopsis: For each object in the list, call a method or procedure, passing it the object.

Declaration: `procedure ForEachCall(proc2call: TObjectListCallback;arg: pointer)`
`procedure ForEachCall(proc2call: TObjectListStaticCallback;arg: pointer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `ForEachCall` loops through all objects in the list, and calls `proc2call`, passing it the object in the list. Additionally, `arg` is also passed to the procedure. `Proc2call` can be a plain procedure or can be a method of a class.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObjectListStaticCallback` (119), `TObjectListCallback` (118)

7.17.23 TFObjectList.Capacity

Synopsis: Capacity of the list

Declaration: `Property Capacity : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Capacity` is the number of elements that the list can contain before it needs to expand itself, i.e., reserve more memory for pointers. It is always equal or larger than `Count` (160).

See also: `TFObjectList.Count` (160)

7.17.24 TFObjectList.Count

Synopsis: Number of elements in the list.

Declaration: `Property Count : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Count` is the number of elements in the list. Note that this includes `Nil` elements.

See also: `TFObjectList.Capacity` (160)

7.17.25 TFObjectList.OwnsObjects

Synopsis: Should the list free elements when they are removed.

Declaration: `Property OwnsObjects : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OwnsObjects` determines whether the objects in the list should be freed when they are removed (not extracted) from the list, or when the list is cleared. If the property is `True` then they are freed. If the property is `False` the elements are not freed.

The value is usually set in the constructor, and is seldom changed during the lifetime of the list. It defaults to `True`.

See also: `TFPObjectList.Create` (154), `TFPObjectList.Delete` (156), `TFPObjectList.Remove` (157), `TFPObjectList.Clear` (155)

7.17.26 TFPObjectList.Items

Synopsis: Indexed access to the elements of the list.

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: TObject; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Items` is the default property of the list. It provides indexed access to the elements in the list. The index `Index` is zero based, i.e., runs from 0 (zero) to `Count-1`.

See also: `TFPObjectList.Count` (160)

7.17.27 TFPObjectList.List

Synopsis: Internal list used to keep the objects.

Declaration: `Property List : TFPList`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `List` is a reference to the `TFPList` (??) instance used to manage the elements in the list.

See also: `#rtl.classes.tfplist` (??)

7.18 TFPStringHashTable

7.18.1 Description

`TFPStringHashTable` is a `TFPCustomHashTable` (128) descendent which stores simple strings together with the keys. In case the data associated with the keys are objects, it's better to use `TFPObjectHashTable` (152), or for arbitrary pointer data, `TFPDataHashTable` (134) is more suitable. The strings are exposed with their keys through the `Items` (162) property.

See also: `TFPObjectHashTable` (152), `TFPDataHashTable` (134), `Items` (162)

7.18.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
162	Add	Add a new string to the hash list
162	Iterate	

7.18.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
162	Items	rw	Key based access to the strings in the hash table

7.18.4 TFPStringHashTable.Iterate

Declaration: `function Iterate(aMethod: TStringIteratorMethod) : string; Virtual`

Visibility: public

7.18.5 TFPStringHashTable.Add

Synopsis: Add a new string to the hash list

Declaration: `procedure Add(const aKey: string; const aItem: string); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: Add adds a new string `AItem` to the hash list with key `AKey`.

Errors: If a string with key `Akey` already exists in the hash table, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TFPStringHashTable.Items` ([162](#))

7.18.6 TFPStringHashTable.Items

Synopsis: Key based access to the strings in the hash table

Declaration: `Property Items[index: string]: string; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: `Items` provides access to the strings in the hash table using their key: the array index `Index` is the key. A key which is not present will result in an empty string.

See also: `TFPStringHashTable.Add` ([162](#))

7.19 THTCustomNode

7.19.1 Description

`THTCustomNode` is used by the `TFPCustomHashTable` ([128](#)) class to store the keys and associated values.

See also: `TFPCustomHashTable` ([128](#))

7.19.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
163	CreateWith	Create a new instance of <code>THTCustomNode</code>
163	HasKey	Check whether this node matches the given key.

7.19.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
163	Key	r	Key value associated with this hash item.

7.19.4 THTCustomNode.CreateWith

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `THTCustomNode`

Declaration: `constructor CreateWith(const AString: string)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CreateWith` creates a new instance of `THTCustomNode` and stores the string `AString` in it. It should never be necessary to call this method directly, it will be called by the `TFPCustomHashTable` ([128](#)) class when needed.

Errors: If no more memory is available, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TFPCustomHashTable` ([128](#))

7.19.5 THTCustomNode.HasKey

Synopsis: Check whether this node matches the given key.

Declaration: `function HasKey(const AKey: string) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `HasKey` checks whether this node matches the given key `AKey`, by comparing it with the stored key. It returns `True` if it does, `False` if not.

Errors: None.

See also: `THTCustomNode.Key` ([163](#))

7.19.6 THTCustomNode.Key

Synopsis: Key value associated with this hash item.

Declaration: `Property Key : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Key` is the key value associated with this hash item. It is stored when the item is created, and is read-only.

See also: `THTCustomNode.CreateWith` ([163](#))

7.20 THTDataNode

7.20.1 Description

THTDataNode is used by TFPDataHashTable (134) to store the hash items in. It simply holds the data pointer.

It should not be necessary to use THTDataNode directly, it's only for inner use by TFPDataHashTable

See also: TFPDataHashTable (134), THTObjectNode (164), THTStringNode (165)

7.20.2 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
164	Data	rw	Data pointer

7.20.3 THTDataNode.Data

Synopsis: Data pointer

Declaration: `Property Data : pointer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Pointer containing the user data associated with the hash value.

7.21 THTObjectNode

7.21.1 Description

THTObjectNode is a THTCustomNode (162) descendent which holds the data in the TFPObjectHashTable (152) hash table. It exposes a data string.

It should not be necessary to use THTObjectNode directly, it's only for inner use by TFPObjectHashTable

See also: TFPObjectHashTable (152)

7.21.2 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
164	Data	rw	Object instance

7.21.3 THTObjectNode.Data

Synopsis: Object instance

Declaration: `Property Data : TObject`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Data` is the object instance associated with the key value. It is exposed in `TFPObjectHashTable.Items` ([153](#))

See also: `TFPObjectHashTable` ([152](#)), `TFPObjectHashTable.Items` ([153](#)), `THTOwnedObjectNode` ([165](#))

7.22 THTOwnedObjectNode

7.22.1 Description

`THTOwnedObjectNode` is used instead of `THTObjectNode` ([164](#)) in case `TFPObjectHashTable` ([152](#)) owns it's objects. When this object is destroyed, the associated data object is also destroyed.

See also: `TFPObjectHashTable` ([152](#)), `THTObjectNode` ([164](#)), `TFPObjectHashTable.OwnsObjects` ([153](#))

7.22.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
165	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroys the node and the object.

7.22.3 THTOwnedObjectNode.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the node and the object.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` first frees the data object, and then only frees itself.

See also: `THTOwnedObjectNode` ([165](#)), `TFPObjectHashTable.OwnsObjects` ([153](#))

7.23 THTStringNode

7.23.1 Description

`THTStringNode` is a `THTCustomNode` ([162](#)) descendent which holds the data in the `TFPStringHashTable` ([161](#)) hash table. It exposes a data string.

It should not be necessary to use `THTStringNode` directly, it's only for inner use by `TFPStringHashTable`

See also: `TFPStringHashTable` ([161](#))

7.23.2 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
165	<code>Data</code>	<code>rw</code>	String data

7.23.3 THTStringNode.Data

Synopsis: String data

Declaration: `Property Data : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Data` is the data of this has node. The data is a string, associated with the key. It is also exposed in `TFPStringHashTable.Items` (162)

See also: `TFPStringHashTable` (161)

7.24 TObjectBucketList

7.24.1 Description

`TObjectBucketList` is a class that redefines the associative `Data` array using `TObject` instead of `Pointer`. It also adds some overloaded versions of the `Add` and `Remove` calls using `TObject` instead of `Pointer` for the argument and result types.

See also: `TObjectBucketList` (166)

7.24.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
166	Add	Add an object to the list
166	Remove	Remove an object from the list

7.24.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
167	Data	rw	Associative array of data items

7.24.4 TObjectBucketList.Add

Synopsis: Add an object to the list

Declaration: `function Add(AItem: TObject; AData: TObject) : TObject`

Visibility: public

Description: `Add` adds `AItem` to the list and associated `AData` with it.

See also: `TObjectBucketList.Data` (167), `TObjectBucketList.Remove` (166)

7.24.5 TObjectBucketList.Remove

Synopsis: Remove an object from the list

Declaration: `function Remove(AItem: TObject) : TObject`

Visibility: public

Description: `Remove` removes the object `AItem` from the list. It returns the `Data` object which was associated with the item. If `AItem` was not in the list, then `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TObjectBucketList.Add` (166), `TObjectBucketList.Data` (167)

7.24.6 TObjectBucketList.Data

Synopsis: Associative array of data items

Declaration: `Property Data[AItem: TObject]: TObject; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Data` provides associative access to the data in the list: it returns the data object associated with the `AItem` object. If the `AItem` object is not in the list, an `EListError` exception is raised.

See also: `TObjectBucketList.Add` (166)

7.25 TObjectList

7.25.1 Description

`TObjectList` is a `TList` (??) descendent which has as the default array property `TObjects` (??) instead of pointers. By default it also manages the objects: when an object is deleted or removed from the list, it is automatically freed. This behaviour can be disabled when the list is created.

In difference with `TFPObjectList` (154), `TObjectList` offers a notification mechanism of list change operations: insert, delete. This slows down bulk operations, so if the notifications are not needed, `TFPObjectList` may be more appropriate.

See also: `#rtl.classes.TList` (??), `TFPObjectList` (154), `TComponentList` (123), `TClassList` (120)

7.25.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
168	<code>Add</code>	Add an object to the list.
167	<code>create</code>	Create a new object list.
168	<code>Extract</code>	Extract an object from the list.
169	<code>FindInstanceOf</code>	Search for an instance of a certain class
169	<code>First</code>	Return the first non-nil object in the list
169	<code>IndexOf</code>	Search for an object in the list
169	<code>Insert</code>	Insert an object in the list.
170	<code>Last</code>	Return the last non-nil object in the list.
168	<code>Remove</code>	Remove (and possibly free) an element from the list.

7.25.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
170	<code>Items</code>	rw	Indexed access to the elements of the list.
170	<code>OwnsObjects</code>	rw	Should the list free elements when they are removed.

7.25.4 TObjectList.create

Synopsis: Create a new object list.

Declaration: `constructor create`
`constructor create(freeobjects: Boolean)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` instantiates a new object list. The `FreeObjects` parameter determines whether objects that are removed from the list should also be freed from memory. By default this is `True`. This behaviour can be changed after the list was instantiated.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObjectList.Destroy` (167), `TObjectList.OwnsObjects` (170), `TFPObjectList` (154)

7.25.5 TObjectList.Add

Synopsis: Add an object to the list.

Declaration: `function Add(AObject: TObject) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Add` overrides the `TList` (??) implementation to accept objects (`AObject`) instead of pointers.

The function returns the index of the position where the object was added.

Errors: If the list must be expanded, and not enough memory is available, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TObjectList.Insert` (169), `#rtl.classes.TList.Delete` (??), `TObjectList.Extract` (168), `TObjectList.Remove` (168)

7.25.6 TObjectList.Extract

Synopsis: Extract an object from the list.

Declaration: `function Extract(Item: TObject) : TObject`

Visibility: public

Description: `Extract` removes the object `Item` from the list if it is present in the list. Contrary to `Remove` (168), `Extract` does not free the extracted element if `OwnsObjects` (170) is `True`

The function returns a reference to the item which was removed from the list, or `Nil` if no element was removed.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObjectList.Remove` (168)

7.25.7 TObjectList.Remove

Synopsis: Remove (and possibly free) an element from the list.

Declaration: `function Remove(AObject: TObject) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Remove` removes `Item` from the list, if it is present in the list. It frees `Item` if `OwnsObjects` (170) is `True`, and returns the index of the object that was found in the list, or -1 if the object was not found.

Note that only the first found object is removed from the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObjectList.Extract` (168)

7.25.8 TObjectList.IndexOf

Synopsis: Search for an object in the list

Declaration: `function IndexOf(AObject: TObject) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` overrides the `TList` (??) implementation to accept an object instance instead of a pointer.

The function returns the index of the first match for `AObject` in the list, or -1 if no match was found.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObjectList.FindInstanceOf` ([169](#))

7.25.9 TObjectList.FindInstanceOf

Synopsis: Search for an instance of a certain class

Declaration: `function FindInstanceOf(AClass: TClass; AExact: Boolean;
AStartAt: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindInstanceOf` will look through the instances in the list and will return the first instance which is a descendent of class `AClass` if `AExact` is `False`. If `AExact` is `true`, then the instance should be of class `AClass`.

If no instance of the requested class is found, `Nil` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObjectList.IndexOf` ([169](#))

7.25.10 TObjectList.Insert

Synopsis: Insert an object in the list.

Declaration: `procedure Insert(Index: Integer; AObject: TObject)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Insert` inserts `AObject` in the list at position `Index`. The index is zero-based. This method overrides the implementation in `TList` (??) to accept objects instead of pointers.

Errors: If an invalid `Index` is specified, an exception is raised.

See also: `TObjectList.Add` ([168](#)), `TObjectList.Remove` ([168](#))

7.25.11 TObjectList.First

Synopsis: Return the first non-nil object in the list

Declaration: `function First : TObject`

Visibility: public

Description: `First` returns a reference to the first non-`Nil` element in the list. If no non-`Nil` element is found, `Nil` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObjectList.Last` ([170](#)), `TObjectList.Pack` ([167](#))

7.25.12 TObjectList.Last

Synopsis: Return the last non-nil object in the list.

Declaration: `function Last : TObject`

Visibility: public

Description: `Last` returns a reference to the last non-`Nil` element in the list. If no non-`Nil` element is found, `Nil` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObjectList.First` (169), `TObjectList.Pack` (167)

7.25.13 TObjectList.OwnsObjects

Synopsis: Should the list free elements when they are removed.

Declaration: `Property OwnsObjects : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OwnsObjects` determines whether the objects in the list should be freed when they are removed (not extracted) from the list, or when the list is cleared. If the property is `True` then they are freed. If the property is `False` the elements are not freed.

The value is usually set in the constructor, and is seldom changed during the lifetime of the list. It defaults to `True`.

See also: `TObjectList.Create` (167), `TObjectList.Delete` (167), `TObjectList.Remove` (168), `TObjectList.Clear` (167)

7.25.14 TObjectList.Items

Synopsis: Indexed access to the elements of the list.

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: TObject; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Items` is the default property of the list. It provides indexed access to the elements in the list. The index `Index` is zero based, i.e., runs from 0 (zero) to `Count-1`.

See also: `#rtl.classes.TList.Count` (??)

7.26 TObjectQueue

7.26.1 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
171	<code>Peek</code>	Look at the first object in the queue.
171	<code>Pop</code>	Pop the first element off the queue
171	<code>Push</code>	Push an object on the queue

7.26.2 TObjectQueue.Push

Synopsis: Push an object on the queue

Declaration: `function Push(AObject: TObject) : TObject`

Visibility: public

Description: `Push` pushes another object on the queue. It overrides the `Push` method as implemented in `TQueue` so it accepts only objects as arguments.

Errors: If not enough memory is available to expand the queue, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TObjectQueue.Pop` ([171](#)), `TObjectQueue.Peek` ([171](#))

7.26.3 TObjectQueue.Pop

Synopsis: Pop the first element off the queue

Declaration: `function Pop : TObject`

Visibility: public

Description: `Pop` removes the first element in the queue, and returns a reference to the instance. If the queue is empty, `Nil` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObjectQueue.Push` ([171](#)), `TObjectQueue.Peek` ([171](#))

7.26.4 TObjectQueue.Peek

Synopsis: Look at the first object in the queue.

Declaration: `function Peek : TObject`

Visibility: public

Description: `Peek` returns the first object in the queue, without removing it from the queue. If there are no more objects in the queue, `Nil` is returned.

Errors: None

See also: `TObjectQueue.Push` ([171](#)), `TObjectQueue.Pop` ([171](#))

7.27 TObjectStack

7.27.1 Description

`TObjectStack` is a stack implementation which manages pointers only.

`TObjectStack` introduces no new behaviour, it simply overrides some methods to accept and/or return `TObject` instances instead of pointers.

See also: `TOrderedList` ([173](#)), `TStack` ([175](#)), `TQueue` ([175](#)), `TObjectQueue` ([170](#))

7.27.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
172	Peek	Look at the top object in the stack.
172	Pop	Pop the top object of the stack.
172	Push	Push an object on the stack.

7.27.3 TObjectStack.Push

Synopsis: Push an object on the stack.

Declaration: `function Push(AObject: TObject) : TObject`

Visibility: public

Description: `Push` pushes another object on the stack. It overrides the `Push` method as implemented in `TStack` so it accepts only objects as arguments.

Errors: If not enough memory is available to expand the stack, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TObjectStack.Pop` ([172](#)), `TObjectStack.Peek` ([172](#))

7.27.4 TObjectStack.Pop

Synopsis: Pop the top object of the stack.

Declaration: `function Pop : TObject`

Visibility: public

Description: `Pop` pops the top object of the stack, and returns the object instance. If there are no more objects on the stack, `Nil` is returned.

Errors: None

See also: `TObjectStack.Push` ([172](#)), `TObjectStack.Peek` ([172](#))

7.27.5 TObjectStack.Peek

Synopsis: Look at the top object in the stack.

Declaration: `function Peek : TObject`

Visibility: public

Description: `Peek` returns the top object of the stack, without removing it from the stack. If there are no more objects on the stack, `Nil` is returned.

Errors: None

See also: `TObjectStack.Push` ([172](#)), `TObjectStack.Pop` ([172](#))

7.28 TOrderedList

7.28.1 Description

TOrderedList provides the base class for TQueue (175) and TStack (175). It provides an interface for pushing and popping elements on or off the list, and manages the internal list of pointers.

Note that TOrderedList does not manage objects on the stack, i.e. objects are not freed when the ordered list is destroyed.

See also: TQueue (175), TStack (175)

7.28.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
174	AtLeast	Check whether the list contains a certain number of elements.
174	Count	Number of elements on the list.
173	Create	Create a new ordered list
173	Destroy	Free an ordered list
175	Peek	Return the next element to be popped from the list.
174	Pop	Remove an element from the list.
174	Push	Push another element on the list.

7.28.3 TOrderedList.Create

Synopsis: Create a new ordered list

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new ordered list. It initializes the internal pointer list.

Errors: None.

See also: TOrderedList.Destroy (173)

7.28.4 TOrderedList.Destroy

Synopsis: Free an ordered list

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the internal pointer list, and removes the TOrderedList instance from memory.

Errors: None.

See also: TOrderedList.Create (173)

7.28.5 TOrderedList.Count

Synopsis: Number of elements on the list.

Declaration: `function Count : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Count` is the number of pointers in the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TOrderedList.AtLeast` ([174](#))

7.28.6 TOrderedList.AtLeast

Synopsis: Check whether the list contains a certain number of elements.

Declaration: `function AtLeast (ACount: Integer) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `AtLeast` returns `True` if the number of elements in the list is equal to or bigger than `ACount`. It returns `False` otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: `TOrderedList.Count` ([174](#))

7.28.7 TOrderedList.Push

Synopsis: Push another element on the list.

Declaration: `function Push (AItem: Pointer) : Pointer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Push` adds `AItem` to the list, and returns `AItem`.

Errors: If not enough memory is available to expand the list, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TOrderedList.Pop` ([174](#)), `TOrderedList.Peek` ([175](#))

7.28.8 TOrderedList.Pop

Synopsis: Remove an element from the list.

Declaration: `function Pop : Pointer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Pop` removes an element from the list, and returns the element that was removed from the list. If no element is on the list, `Nil` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TOrderedList.Peek` ([175](#)), `TOrderedList.Push` ([174](#))

7.28.9 TOrderedList.Peek

Synopsis: Return the next element to be popped from the list.

Declaration: `function Peek : Pointer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Peek` returns the element that will be popped from the list at the next call to `Pop` (174), without actually popping it from the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TOrderedList.Pop` (174), `TOrderedList.Push` (174)

7.29 TQueue

7.29.1 Description

`TQueue` is a descendent of `TOrderedList` (173) which implements `Push` (174) and `Pop` (174) behaviour as a queue: what is first pushed on the queue, is popped of first (FIFO: First in, first out).

`TQueue` offers no new methods, it merely implements some abstract methods introduced by `TOrderedList` (173)

See also: `TOrderedList` (173), `TObjectQueue` (170), `TStack` (175)

7.30 TStack

7.30.1 Description

`TStack` is a descendent of `TOrderedList` (173) which implements `Push` (174) and `Pop` (174) behaviour as a stack: what is last pushed on the stack, is popped of first (LIFO: Last in, first out).

`TStack` offers no new methods, it merely implements some abstract methods introduced by `TOrderedList` (173)

See also: `TOrderedList` (173), `TObjectStack` (171), `TQueue` (175)

Chapter 8

Reference for unit 'CustApp'

8.1 Used units

Table 8.1: Used units by unit 'CustApp'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

8.2 Overview

The `CustApp` unit implements the `TCustomApplication` ([177](#)) class, which serves as the common ancestor to many kinds of `TApplication` classes: a GUI application in the LCL, a CGI application in FPCGI, a daemon application in `daemonapp`. It introduces some properties to describe the environment in which the application is running (environment variables, program command-line parameters) and introduces some methods to initialize and run a program, as well as functionality to handle exceptions.

Typical use of a descendent class is to introduce a global variable `Application` and use the following code:

```
Application.Initialize;  
Application.Run;
```

Since normally only a single instance of this class is created, and it is a `TComponent` descendent, it can be used as an owner for many components, doing so will ensure these components will be freed when the application terminates.

8.3 Constants, types and variables

8.3.1 Types

```
TEventLogTypes = Set of TEventType
```

`TEventLogTypes` is a set of `TEventType` (??), used in `TCustomApplication.EventLogFilter` (186) to filter events that are sent to the system log.

`TExceptionEvent` = procedure (Sender: TObject; E: Exception) of object

`TExceptionEvent` is the prototype for the exception handling events in `TCustomApplication`.

8.3.2 Variables

`CustomApplication` : `TCustomApplication` = Nil

`CustomApplication` contains the global application instance. All descendents of `TCustomApplication` (177) should, in addition to storing an instance pointer in some variable (most likely called "Application") store the instance pointer in this variable. This ensures that, whatever kind of application is being created, user code can access the application object.

8.4 TCustomApplication

8.4.1 Description

`TCustomApplication` is the ancestor class for classes that wish to implement a global application class instance. It introduces several application-wide functionalities.

- Exception handling in `HandleException` (178), `ShowException` (179), `OnException` (184) and `StopOnException` (186).
- Command-line parameter parsing in `FindOptionIndex` (180), `GetOptionValue` (180), `CheckOptions` (181) and `HasOption` (181)
- Environment variable handling in `GetEnvironmentList` (182) and `EnvironmentVariable` (185).

Descendent classes need to override the `DoRun` protected method to implement the functionality of the program.

8.4.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
181	<code>CheckOptions</code>	Check whether all given options on the command-line are valid.
178	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of the <code>TCustomApplication</code> class
178	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroys the <code>TCustomApplication</code> instance.
180	<code>FindOptionIndex</code>	Return the index of an option.
182	<code>GetEnvironmentList</code>	Return a list of environment variables.
180	<code>GetOptionValue</code>	Return the value of a command-line option.
178	<code>HandleException</code>	Handle an exception.
181	<code>HasOption</code>	Check whether an option was specified.
179	<code>Initialize</code>	Initialize the application
182	<code>Log</code>	Write a message to the event log
179	<code>Run</code>	Runs the application.
179	<code>ShowException</code>	Show an exception to the user
180	<code>Terminate</code>	Terminate the application.

8.4.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
186	CaseSensitiveOptions	rw	Are options interpreted case sensitive or not
184	ConsoleApplication	r	Is the application a console application or not
185	EnvironmentVariable	r	Environment variable access
186	EventLogFilter	rw	Event to filter events, before they are sent to the system log
182	ExeName	r	Name of the executable.
183	HelpFile	rw	Location of the application help file.
184	Location	r	Application location
184	OnException	rw	Exception handling event
185	OptionChar	rw	Command-line switch character
185	ParamCount	r	Number of command-line parameters
184	Params	r	Command-line parameters
186	StopOnException	rw	Should the program loop stop on an exception
183	Terminated	r	Was <code>Terminate</code> called or not
183	Title	rw	Application title

8.4.4 TCustomApplication.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TCustomApplication` class

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of the `TCustomApplication` class. It sets some defaults for the various properties, and then calls the inherited `Create`.

See also: `TCustomApplication.Destroy` ([178](#))

8.4.5 TCustomApplication.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the `TCustomApplication` instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` simply calls the inherited `Destroy`.

See also: `TCustomApplication.Create` ([178](#))

8.4.6 TCustomApplication.HandleException

Synopsis: Handle an exception.

Declaration: `procedure HandleException(Sender: TObject); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `HandleException` is called (or can be called) to handle the exception `Sender`. If the exception is not of class `Exception` then the default handling of exceptions in the `SysUtils` unit is called.

If the exception is of class `Exception` and the `OnException` ([184](#)) handler is set, the handler is called with the exception object and `Sender` argument.

If the `OnException` handler is not set, then the exception is passed to the `ShowException` (179) routine, which can be overridden by descendent application classes to show the exception in a way that is fit for the particular class of application. (a GUI application might show the exception in a message dialog.

When the exception is handled in the above manner, and the `StopOnException` (186) property is set to `True`, the `Terminated` (183) property is set to `True`, which will cause the `Run` (179) loop to stop, and the application will exit.

See also: `ShowException` (179), `StopOnException` (186), `Terminated` (183), `Run` (179)

8.4.7 TCustomApplication.Initialize

Synopsis: Initialize the application

Declaration: `procedure Initialize; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Initialize` can be overridden by descendent applications to perform any initialization after the class was created. It can be used to react to properties being set at program startup. End-user code should call `Initialize` prior to calling `Run`

In `TCustomApplication`, `Initialize` sets `Terminated` to `False`.

See also: `TCustomApplication.Run` (179), `TCustomApplication.Terminated` (183)

8.4.8 TCustomApplication.Run

Synopsis: Runs the application.

Declaration: `procedure Run`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Run` is the start of the user code: when called, it starts a loop and repeatedly calls `DoRun` until `Terminated` is set to `True`. If an exception is raised during the execution of `DoRun`, it is caught and handled to `TCustomApplication.HandleException` (178). If `TCustomApplication.StopOnException` (186) is set to `True` (which is *not* the default), `Run` will exit, and the application will then terminate. The default is to call `DoRun` again, which is useful for applications running a message loop such as services and GUI applications.

See also: `TCustomApplication.HandleException` (178), `TCustomApplication.StopException` (177)

8.4.9 TCustomApplication.ShowException

Synopsis: Show an exception to the user

Declaration: `procedure ShowException(E: Exception); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ShowException` should be overridden by descendent classes to show an exception message to the user. The default behaviour is to call the `ShowException` (??) procedure in the `SysUtils` unit.

Descendent classes should do something appropriate for their context: GUI applications can show a message box, daemon applications can write the exception message to the system log, web applications can send a 500 error response code.

Errors: None.

See also: [ShowException \(??\)](#), [TCustomApplication.HandleException \(178\)](#), [TCustomApplication.StopException \(177\)](#)

8.4.10 TCustomApplication.Terminate

Synopsis: Terminate the application.

Declaration: `procedure Terminate; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Terminate` sets the `Terminated` property to `True`. By itself, this does not terminate the application. Instead, descendent classes should in their `DoRun` method, check the value of the `Terminated` ([183](#)) property and properly shut down the application if it is set to `True`.

See also: [TCustomApplication.Terminated \(183\)](#), [TCustomApplication.Run \(179\)](#)

8.4.11 TCustomApplication.FindOptionIndex

Synopsis: Return the index of an option.

Declaration: `function FindOptionIndex(const S: string; var Longopt: Boolean) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindOptionIndex` will return the index of the option `S` or the long option `LongOpt`. Neither of them should include the switch character. If no such option was specified, -1 is returned. If either the long or short option was specified, then the position on the command-line is returned.

Depending on the value of the `CaseSensitiveOptions` ([186](#)) property, the search is performed case sensitive or case insensitive.

Options are identified as command-line parameters which start with `OptionChar` ([185](#)) (by default the dash ('-') character).

See also: [HasOption \(181\)](#), [GetOptionValue \(180\)](#), [CheckOptions \(181\)](#), [CaseSensitiveOptions \(186\)](#), [OptionChar \(185\)](#)

8.4.12 TCustomApplication.GetOptionValue

Synopsis: Return the value of a command-line option.

Declaration: `function GetOptionValue(const S: string) : string`
`function GetOptionValue(const C: Char; const S: string) : string`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetOptionValue` returns the value of an option. Values are specified in the usual GNU option format, either of

`--longopt=Value`

or

`-c Value`

is supported.

The function returns the specified value, or the empty string if none was specified.

Depending on the value of the `CaseSensitiveOptions` (186) property, the search is performed case sensitive or case insensitive.

Options are identified as command-line parameters which start with `OptionChar` (185) (by default the dash ('-') character).

See also: `FindOptionIndex` (180), `HasOption` (181), `CheckOptions` (181), `CaseSensitiveOptions` (186), `OptionChar` (185)

8.4.13 TCustomApplication.HasOption

Synopsis: Check whether an option was specified.

Declaration: `function HasOption(const S: string) : Boolean`
`function HasOption(const C: Char;const S: string) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `HasOption` returns `True` if the specified option was given on the command line. Either the short option character `C` or the long option `S` may be used. Note that both options (requiring a value) and switches can be specified.

Depending on the value of the `CaseSensitiveOptions` (186) property, the search is performed case sensitive or case insensitive.

Options are identified as command-line parameters which start with `OptionChar` (185) (by default the dash ('-') character).

See also: `FindOptionIndex` (180), `GetOptionValue` (180), `CheckOptions` (181), `CaseSensitiveOptions` (186), `OptionChar` (185)

8.4.14 TCustomApplication.CheckOptions

Synopsis: Check whether all given options on the command-line are valid.

Declaration: `function CheckOptions(const ShortOptions: string;`
`const Longopts: TStrings;Opts: TStrings;`
`NonOpts: TStrings;AllErrors: Boolean) : string`
`function CheckOptions(const ShortOptions: string;`
`const Longopts: TStrings;AllErrors: Boolean)`
`: string`
`function CheckOptions(const ShortOptions: string;`
`const LongOpts: Array of string;AllErrors: Boolean)`
`: string`
`function CheckOptions(const ShortOptions: string;const LongOpts: string;`
`AllErrors: Boolean) : string`

Visibility: public

Description: `CheckOptions` scans the command-line and checks whether the options given are valid options. It also checks whether options that require a value are indeed specified with a value.

The `ShortOptions` contains a string with valid short option characters. Each character in the string is a valid option character. If a character is followed by a colon (:), then a value must be specified. If it is followed by 2 colon characters (::) then the value is optional.

`LongOpts` is a list of strings (which can be specified as an array, a `TStrings` instance or a string with whitespace-separated values) of valid long options.

When the function returns, if `Opts` is non-`Nil`, the `Opts` stringlist is filled with the passed valid options. If `NonOpts` is non-`nil`, it is filled with any non-option strings that were passed on the command-line.

The function returns an empty string if all specified options were valid options, and whether options requiring a value have a value. If an error was found during the check, the return value is a string describing the error.

Options are identified as command-line parameters which start with `OptionChar` (185) (by default the dash ('-') character).

Errors: if an error was found during the check, the return value is a string describing the error.

See also: `FindOptionIndex` (180), `GetOptionValue` (180), `HasOption` (181), `CaseSensitiveOptions` (186), `OptionChar` (185)

8.4.15 TCustomApplication.GetEnvironmentList

Synopsis: Return a list of environment variables.

Declaration: `procedure GetEnvironmentList(List: TStrings; NamesOnly: Boolean)`
`procedure GetEnvironmentList(List: TStrings)`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetEnvironmentList` returns a list of environment variables in `List`. They are in the form `Name=Value`, one per item in list. If `NamesOnly` is `True`, then only the names are returned.

See also: `EnvironmentVariable` (185)

8.4.16 TCustomApplication.Log

Synopsis: Write a message to the event log

Declaration: `procedure Log(EventType: TEventType; const Msg: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Log` is meant for all applications to have a default logging mechanism. By default it does not do anything, descendent classes should override this method to provide appropriate logging: they should write the message `Msg` with type `EventType` to some log mechanism such as `#fcl.eventlog.TEventLog` (422)

Errors: None.

See also: `#rtl.sysutils.TEventType` (??)

8.4.17 TCustomApplication.ExeName

Synopsis: Name of the executable.

Declaration: `Property ExeName : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `ExeName` returns the full name of the executable binary (path+filename). This is equivalent to `ParamStr(0)`

Note that some operating systems do not return the full pathname of the binary.

See also: `ParamStr` (??)

8.4.18 TCustomApplication.HelpFile

Synopsis: Location of the application help file.

Declaration: `Property HelpFile : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `HelpFile` is the location of the application help file. It is a simple string property which can be set by an IDE such as Lazarus, and is mainly provided for compatibility with Delphi's `TApplication` implementation.

See also: `TCustomApplication.Title` ([183](#))

8.4.19 TCustomApplication.Terminated

Synopsis: Was `Terminate` called or not

Declaration: `Property Terminated : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Terminated` indicates whether `Terminate` ([180](#)) was called or not. Descendent classes should check `Terminated` at regular intervals in their implementation of `DoRun`, and if it is set to `True`, should exit gracefully the `DoRun` method.

See also: `Terminate` ([180](#))

8.4.20 TCustomApplication.Title

Synopsis: Application title

Declaration: `Property Title : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Title` is a simple string property which can be set to any string describing the application. It does nothing by itself, and is mainly introduced for compatibility with Delphi's `TApplication` implementation.

See also: `HelpFile` ([183](#))

8.4.21 TCustomApplication.OnException

Synopsis: Exception handling event

Declaration: `Property OnException : TExceptionEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: `OnException` can be set to provide custom handling of events, instead of the default action, which is simply to show the event using `ShowEvent` (177).

If set, `OnException` is called by the `HandleEvent` (177) routine. Do not use the `OnException` event directly, instead call `HandleEvent`

See also: `ShowEvent` (177)

8.4.22 TCustomApplication.ConsoleApplication

Synopsis: Is the application a console application or not

Declaration: `Property ConsoleApplication : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `ConsoleApplication` returns `True` if the application is compiled as a console application (the default) or `False` if not. The result of this property is determined at compile-time by the settings of the compiler: it returns the value of the `IsConsole` (??) constant.

See also: `IsConsole` (??)

8.4.23 TCustomApplication.Location

Synopsis: Application location

Declaration: `Property Location : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Location` returns the directory part of the application binary. This property works on most platforms, although some platforms do not allow to retrieve this information (Mac OS under certain circumstances). See the discussion of `Paramstr` (??) in the RTL documentation.

See also: `Paramstr` (??), `Params` (184)

8.4.24 TCustomApplication.Params

Synopsis: Command-line parameters

Declaration: `Property Params[Index: Integer]: string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Params` gives access to the command-line parameters. They contain the value of the `Index`-th parameter, where `Index` runs from 0 to `ParamCount` (185). It is equivalent to calling `ParamStr` (??).

See also: `ParamCount` (185), `Paramstr` (??)

8.4.25 TCustomApplication.ParamCount

Synopsis: Number of command-line parameters

Declaration: `Property ParamCount : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `ParamCount` returns the number of command-line parameters that were passed to the program. The actual parameters can be retrieved with the `Params` (184) property.

See also: `Params` (184), `Paramstr` (??), `ParamCount` (??)

8.4.26 TCustomApplication.EnvironmentVariable

Synopsis: Environment variable access

Declaration: `Property EnvironmentVariable[envName: string]: string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `EnvironmentVariable` gives access to the environment variables of the application: It returns the value of the environment variable `EnvName`, or an empty string if no such value is available.

To use this property, the name of the environment variable must be known. To get a list of available names (and values), `GetEnvironmentList` (182) can be used.

See also: `GetEnvironmentList` (182), `TCustomApplication.Params` (184)

8.4.27 TCustomApplication.OptionChar

Synopsis: Command-line switch character

Declaration: `Property OptionChar : Char`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OptionChar` is the character used for command line switches. By default, this is the dash ('-') character, but it can be set to any other non-alphanumeric character (although no check is performed on this).

See also: `FindOptionIndex` (180), `GetOptionValue` (180), `HasOption` (181), `CaseSensitiveOptions` (186), `CheckOptions` (181)

8.4.28 TCustomApplication.CaseSensitiveOptions

Synopsis: Are options interpreted case sensitive or not

Declaration: Property CaseSensitiveOptions : Boolean

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: CaseSensitiveOptions determines whether FindOptionIndex (180) and CheckOptions (181) perform searches in a case sensitive manner or not. By default, the search is case-sensitive. Setting this property to False makes the search case-insensitive.

See also: FindOptionIndex (180), GetOptionValue (180), HasOption (181), OptionChar (185), CheckOptions (181)

8.4.29 TCustomApplication.StopOnException

Synopsis: Should the program loop stop on an exception

Declaration: Property StopOnException : Boolean

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: StopOnException controls the behaviour of the Run (179) and HandleException (178) procedures in case of an unhandled exception in the DoRun code. If StopOnException is True then Terminate (180) will be called after the exception was handled.

See also: Run (179), HandleException (178), Terminate (180)

8.4.30 TCustomApplication.EventLogFilter

Synopsis: Event to filter events, before they are sent to the system log

Declaration: Property EventLogFilter : TEventLogTypes

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: EventLogFilter can be set to a set of event types that should be logged to the system log. If the set is empty, all event types are sent to the system log. If the set is non-empty, the TCustomApplication.Log (182) routine will check if the log event type is in the set, and if not, will not send the message to the system log.

See also: TCustomApplication.Log (182)

Chapter 9

Reference for unit 'daemonapp'

9.1 Used units

Table 9.1: Used units by unit 'daemonapp'

Name	Page
Classes	??
CustApp	176
eventlog	420
rtlconsts	??
System	??
sysutils	??

9.2 Overview

The `daemonapp` unit implements a `TApplication` class which encapsulates a daemon or service application. It handles installation where this is necessary, and does instantiation of the various daemons where necessary.

The unit consists of 3 separate classes which cooperate tightly:

TDaemon This is a class that implements the daemon's functionality. One or more descendents of this class can be implemented and instantiated in a single daemon application. For more information, see `TDaemon` ([203](#)).

TDaemonApplication This is the actual daemon application class. A global instance of this class is instantiated. It handles the command-line arguments, and instantiates the various daemons. For more information, see `TDaemonApplication` ([208](#)).

TDaemonDef This class defines the daemon in the operation system. The `TDaemonApplication` class has a collection of `TDaemonDef` instances, which it uses to start the various daemons. For more information, see `TDaemonDef` ([211](#)).

As can be seen, a single application can implement one or more daemons (services). Each daemon will be run in a separate thread which is controlled by the application class.

The classes take care of logging through the `TEventLog` ([422](#)) class.

Many options are needed only to make the application behave as a windows service application on windows. These options are ignored in unix-like environment. The documentation will mention this.

9.3 Daemon application architecture

[Still needs to be completed]

9.4 Constants, types and variables

9.4.1 Resource strings

`SControlFailed = 'Control code %s handling failed: %s'`

The control code was not handled correctly

`SCustomCode = '[Custom code %d]'`

A custom code was received

`SDaemonStatus = 'Daemon %s current status: %s'`

Daemon status report log message

`SErrApplicationAlreadyCreated = 'An application instance of class %s was already created'`

A second application instance is created

`SErrDaemonStartFailed = 'Failed to start daemon %s : %s'`

The application failed to start the daemon

`SErrDuplicateName = 'Duplicate daemon name: %s'`

Duplicate service name

`SErrNoDaemonDefForStatus = '%s: No daemon definition for status report'`

Internal error: no daemon definition to report status for

`SErrNoDaemonForStatus = '%s: No daemon for status report'`

Internal error: no daemon to report status for

`SErrNoServiceMapper = 'No daemon mapper class registered.'`

No service mapper was found.

`SErrNothingToDo = 'No command given, use ''%s -h'' for usage.'`

No operation can be performed

`SErrOnlyOneMapperAllowed = 'Not changing daemon mapper class %s with %s: Only 1 mapper allowed'`

An attempt was made to install a second service mapper

```
SErrServiceManagerStartFailed = 'Failed to start service manager: %s'
```

Unable to start or contact the service manager

```
SErrUnknownDaemonClass = 'Unknown daemon class name: %s'
```

Unknown daemon class requested

```
SErrWindowClass = 'Could not register window class'
```

Could not register window class

```
SHelpCommand = 'Where command is one of the following:'
```

Options message displayed when writing help to the console

```
SHelpInstall = 'To install the program as a service'
```

Install option message displayed when writing help to the console

```
SHelpRun = 'To run the service'
```

Run option message displayed when writing help to the console

```
SHelpUnInstall = 'To uninstall the service'
```

Uninstall option message displayed when writing help to the console

```
SHelpUsage = 'Usage: %s [command]'
```

Usage message displayed when writing help to the console

9.4.2 Types

```
TCurrentStatus = (csStopped, csStartPending, csStopPending, csRunning,
                  csContinuePending, csPausePending, csPaused)
```

Table 9.2: Enumeration values for type TCurrentStatus

Value	Explanation
csContinuePending	The daemon is continuing, but not yet running
csPaused	The daemon is paused: running but not active.
csPausePending	The daemon is about to be paused.
csRunning	The daemon is running (it is operational).
csStartPending	The daemon is starting, but not yet fully running.
csStopped	The daemon is stopped, i.e. inactive.
csStopPending	The daemon is stopping, but not yet fully stopped.

TCurrentStatus indicates the current state of the daemon. It changes from one state to the next during the time the instance is active. The daemon application changes the state of the daemon, depending on signals it gets from the operating system, by calling the appropriate methods.

```
TCustomControlCodeEvent = procedure(Sender: TCustomDaemon; ACode: DWord;
                                     var Handled: Boolean) of object
```

In case the system sends a non-standard control code to the daemon, an event handler is executed with this prototype.

```
TCustomDaemonApplicationClass = Class of TCustomDaemonApplication
```

Class pointer for TCustomDaemonApplication

```
TCustomDaemonClass = Class of TCustomDaemon
```

The class type is needed in the TDaemonDef (211) definition.

```
TCustomDaemonMapperClass = Class of TCustomDaemonMapper
```

TCustomDaemonMapperClass is the class of TCustomDaemonMapper. It is used in the RegisterDaemonMapper (193) call.

```
TDaemonClass = Class of TDaemon
```

Class type of TDaemon

```
TDaemonEvent = procedure(Sender: TCustomDaemon) of object
```

TDaemonEvent is used in event handling. The Sender is the TCustomDaemon (194) instance that has initiated the event.

```
TDaemonOKEvent = procedure(Sender: TCustomDaemon; var OK: Boolean)
                  of object
```

TDaemonOKEvent is used in event handling, when a boolean result must be obtained, for instance, to see if an operation was performed successfully.

```
TDaemonOption = (doAllowStop, doAllowPause, doInteractive)
```

Table 9.3: Enumeration values for type TDaemonOption

Value	Explanation
doAllowPause	The daemon can be paused.
doAllowStop	The daemon can be stopped.
doInteractive	The daemon interacts with the desktop.

Enumerated that enumerates the various daemon operation options.

```
TDaemonOptions = Set of TDaemonOption
```

TDaemonOption enumerates the various options a daemon can have.

`TDaemonRunMode = (drmUnknown, drmInstall, drmUninstall, drmRun)`

Table 9.4: Enumeration values for type `TDaemonRunMode`

Value	Explanation
<code>drmInstall</code>	Daemon install mode (windows only)
<code>drmRun</code>	Daemon is running normally
<code>drmUninstall</code>	Daemon uninstall mode (windows only)
<code>drmUnknown</code>	Unknown mode

`TDaemonRunMode` indicates in what mode the daemon application (as a whole) is currently running.

`TErrorSeverity = (esIgnore, esNormal, esSevere, esCritical)`

Table 9.5: Enumeration values for type `TErrorSeverity`

Value	Explanation
<code>esCritical</code>	Error is logged, and startup is stopped if last known good configuration is active, or system is restarted using last known good configuration
<code>esIgnore</code>	Ignore startup errors
<code>esNormal</code>	Error is logged, but startup continues
<code>esSevere</code>	Error is logged, and startup is continued if last known good configuration is active, or system is restarted using last known good configuration

`TErrorSeverity` determines what action windows takes when the daemon fails to start. It is used on windows only, and is ignored on other platforms.

`TGuiLoopEvent = procedure of object`

`TGuiLoopEvent` is the main GUI loop event procedure prototype. It is called by the application instance in case the daemon has a visual part, which needs to handle visual events. It is run in the main application thread.

`TServiceType = (stWin32, stDevice, stFileSystem)`

Table 9.6: Enumeration values for type `TServiceType`

Value	Explanation
<code>stDevice</code>	Device driver
<code>stFileSystem</code>	File system driver
<code>stWin32</code>	Regular win32 service

The type of service. This type is used on windows only, to signal the operating system what kind of service is being installed or run.

`TStartType = (stBoot, stSystem, stAuto, stManual, stDisabled)`

Table 9.7: Enumeration values for type TStartType

Value	Explanation
stAuto	Started automatically by service manager during system startup
stBoot	During system boot
stDisabled	Service is not started, it is disabled
stManual	Started manually by the user or other processes.
stSystem	During load of device drivers

TStartType can be used to define when the service must be started on windows. This type is not used on other platforms.

9.4.3 Variables

`AppClass` : TCustomDaemonApplicationClass

`AppClass` can be set to the class of a TCustomDaemonApplication (196) descendant. When the `Application` (192) function needs to create an application instance, this class will be used. If `Application` was already called, the value of `AppClass` will be ignored.

`CurrentStatusNames` : Array[TCurrentStatus] of string = ('Stopped', 'Start Pending',

Names for various service statuses

`DefaultDaemonOptions` : TDaemonOptions = [doAllowStop, doAllowPause]

`DefaultDaemonOptions` are the default options with which a daemon definition (TDaemonDef (211)) is created.

`SStatus` : Array[1..5] of string = ('Stop', 'Pause', 'Continue', 'Interrogate', 'Shut

Status message

9.5 Procedures and functions

9.5.1 Application

Synopsis: Application instance

Declaration: function `Application` : TCustomDaemonApplication

Visibility: default

Description: `Application` is the TCustomDaemonApplication (196) instance used by this application. The instance is created at the first invocation of this function, so it is possible to use `RegisterDaemonApplicationClass` (193) to register an alternative TCustomDaemonApplication class to run the application.

See also: TCustomDaemonApplication (196), RegisterDaemonApplicationClass (193)

9.5.2 DaemonError

Synopsis: Raise an EDaemon exception

Declaration: `procedure DaemonError(Msg: string)`
`procedure DaemonError(Fmt: string; Args: Array of const)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DemonError` raises an EDaemon (194) exception with message `Msg` or it formats the message using `Fmt` and `Args`.

See also: EDaemon (194)

9.5.3 RegisterDaemonApplicationClass

Synopsis: Register alternative TCustomDaemonApplication class.

Declaration: `procedure RegisterDaemonApplicationClass`
`(AClass: TCustomDaemonApplicationClass)`

Visibility: default

Description: `RegisterDaemonApplicationClass` can be used to register an alternative TCustomDaemonApplication (196) descendent which will be used when creating the global Application (192) instance. Only the last registered class pointer will be used.

See also: TCustomDaemonApplication (196), Application (192)

9.5.4 RegisterDaemonClass

Synopsis: Register daemon

Declaration: `procedure RegisterDaemonClass(AClass: TCustomDaemonClass)`

Visibility: default

Description: `RegisterDaemonClass` must be called for each TCustomDaemon (194) descendent that is used in the class: the class pointer and class name are used by the TCustomDaemonMapperClass (190) class to create a TCustomDaemon instance when a daemon is required.

See also: TCustomDaemonMapperClass (190), TCustomDaemon (194)

9.5.5 RegisterDaemonMapper

Synopsis: Register a daemon mapper class

Declaration: `procedure RegisterDaemonMapper(AMapperClass: TCustomDaemonMapperClass)`

Visibility: default

Description: `RegisterDaemonMapper` can be used to register an alternative class for the global daemon-mapper. The daemonmapper will be used only when the application is being run, by the TCustomDaemonApplication (196) code, so registering an alternative mapping class should happen in the initialization section of the application units.

See also: TCustomDaemonApplication (196), TCustomDaemonMapperClass (190)

9.6 EDaemon

9.6.1 Description

EDaemon is the exception class used by all code in the DaemonApp unit.

See also: DaemonError ([193](#))

9.7 TCustomDaemon

9.7.1 Description

TCustomDaemon implements all the basic calls that are needed for a daemon to function. Descendents of TCustomDaemon can override these calls to implement the daemon-specific behaviour.

TCustomDaemon is an abstract class, it should never be instantiated. Either a descendent of it must be created and instantiated, or a descendent of TDaemon ([203](#)) can be designed to implement the behaviour of the daemon.

See also: TDaemon ([203](#)), TDaemonDef ([211](#)), TDaemonController ([208](#)), TDaemonApplication ([208](#))

9.7.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
194	LogMessage	Log a message to the system log
195	ReportStatus	Report the current status to the operating system

9.7.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
196	Controller	r	TDaemonController instance controlling this daemon instance
195	DaemonThread	r	Thread in which daemon is running
195	Definition	r	The definition used to instantiate this daemon instance
196	Logger	r	TEventLog instance used to send messages to the system log
196	Status	rw	Current status of the daemon

9.7.4 TCustomDaemon.LogMessage

Synopsis: Log a message to the system log

Declaration: `procedure LogMessage(const Msg: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: LogMessage can be used to send a message Msg to the system log. A TEventLog ([422](#)) instance is used to actually send messages to the system log.

The message is sent with an 'error' flag (using TEventLog.Error ([425](#))).

Errors: None.

See also: ReportStatus ([195](#))

9.7.5 TCustomDaemon.ReportStatus

Synopsis: Report the current status to the operating system

Declaration: `procedure ReportStatus`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReportStatus` can be used to report the current status to the operating system. The start and stop or pause and continue operations can be slow to start up. This call can (and should) be used to report the current status to the operating system during such lengthy operations, or else it may conclude that the daemon has died.

This call is mostly important on windows operating systems, to notify the service manager that the operation is still in progress.

The implementation of `ReportStatus` simply calls `ReportStatus` in the controller.

Errors: None.

See also: `LogMessage` ([194](#))

9.7.6 TCustomDaemon.Definition

Synopsis: The definition used to instantiate this daemon instance

Declaration: `Property Definition : TDaemonDef`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Definition` is the `TDaemonDef` ([211](#)) definition that was used to start the daemon instance. It can be used to retrieve additional information about the intended behaviour of the daemon.

See also: `TDaemonDef` ([211](#))

9.7.7 TCustomDaemon.DaemonThread

Synopsis: Thread in which daemon is running

Declaration: `Property DaemonThread : TThread`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `DaemonThread` is the thread in which the daemon instance is running. Each daemon instance in the application runs in it's own thread, none of which are the main thread of the application. The application main thread is used to handle control messages coming from the operating system.

See also: `Controller` ([196](#))

9.7.8 TCustomDaemon.Controller

Synopsis: TDaemonController instance controlling this daemon instance

Declaration: Property Controller : TDaemonController

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Controller points to the TDaemonController instance that was created by the application instance to control this daemon.

See also: DaemonThread ([195](#))

9.7.9 TCustomDaemon.Status

Synopsis: Current status of the daemon

Declaration: Property Status : TCurrentStatus

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Status indicates the current status of the daemon. It is set by the various operations that the controller operates on the daemon, and should not be set manually.

Status is the value which ReportStatus will send to the operating system.

See also: ReportStatus ([195](#))

9.7.10 TCustomDaemon.Logger

Synopsis: TEventLog instance used to send messages to the system log

Declaration: Property Logger : TEventLog

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Logger is the TEventLog ([422](#)) instance used to send messages to the system log. It is used by the LogMessage ([194](#)) call, but is accessible through the Logger property in case more configurable logging is needed than offered by LogMessage.

See also: LogMessage ([194](#)), TEventLog ([422](#))

9.8 TCustomDaemonApplication

9.8.1 Description

TCustomDaemonApplication is a TCustomApplication ([177](#)) descendent which is the main application instance for a daemon. It handles the command-line and decides what to do when the application is started, depending on the command-line options given to the application, by calling the various methods.

It creates the necessary TDaemon ([203](#)) instances by checking the TCustomDaemonMapperClass ([190](#)) instance that contains the daemon maps.

See also: TCustomApplication ([177](#)), TCustomDaemonMapperClass ([190](#))

9.8.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
197	Create	
198	CreateDaemon	Create daemon instance
199	CreateForm	Create a component
197	Destroy	Clean up the TCustomDaemonApplication instance
198	InstallDaemons	Install all daemons.
198	RunDaemons	Run all daemons.
197	ShowException	Show an exception
199	ShowHelp	Display a help message
198	StopDaemons	Stop all daemons
199	UnInstallDaemons	Uninstall all daemons

9.8.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
201	AutoRegisterMessageFile	rw	
200	EventLog	r	Event logger instance
200	GuiHandle	rw	Handle of GUI loop main application window handle
200	GUIMainLoop	rw	GUI main loop callback
199	OnRun	rw	Event executed when the daemon is run.
200	RunMode	r	Application mode

9.8.4 TCustomDaemonApplication.Create

Declaration: constructor `Create(AOwner: TComponent);` Override

Visibility: public

9.8.5 TCustomDaemonApplication.Destroy

Synopsis: Clean up the TCustomDaemonApplication instance

Declaration: destructor `Destroy;` Override

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the event log instance and then calls the inherited destroy.

See also: `TCustomDaemonApplication.EventLog` ([200](#))

9.8.6 TCustomDaemonApplication.ShowException

Synopsis: Show an exception

Declaration: procedure `ShowException(E: Exception);` Override

Visibility: public

Description: `ShowException` is overridden by `TCustomDaemonApplication`, it sends the exception message to the system log.

9.8.7 TCustomDaemonApplication.CreateDaemon

Synopsis: Create daemon instance

Declaration: `function CreateDaemon (DaemonDef: TDaemonDef) : TCustomDaemon`

Visibility: public

Description: `CreateDaemon` is called whenever a `TCustomDaemon` (194) instance must be created from a `TDaemonDef` (211) daemon definition, passed in `DemonDef`. It initializes the `TCustomDaemon` instance, and creates a controller instance of type `TDaemonController` (208) to control the daemon. Finally, it assigns the created daemon to the `TDaemonDef.Instance` (212) property.

Errors: In case of an error, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TDaemonController` (208), `TCustomDaemon` (194), `TDaemonDef` (211), `TDaemonDef.Instance` (212)

9.8.8 TCustomDaemonApplication.StopDaemons

Synopsis: Stop all daemons

Declaration: `procedure StopDaemons (Force: Boolean)`

Visibility: public

Description: `StopDaemons` sends the `STOP` control code to all daemons, or the `SHUTDOWN` control code in case `Force` is `True`.

See also: `TDaemonController.Controller` (209), `TCustomDaemonApplication.UnInstallDaemons` (199), `TCustomDaemonApplication.RunDaemons` (198)

9.8.9 TCustomDaemonApplication.InstallDaemons

Synopsis: Install all daemons.

Declaration: `procedure InstallDaemons`

Visibility: public

Description: `InstallDaemons` installs all known daemons, i.e. registers them with the service manager on Windows. This method is called if the application is run with the `-i` or `-install` or `/install` command-line option.

See also: `TCustomDaemonApplication.UnInstallDaemons` (199), `TCustomDaemonApplication.RunDaemons` (198), `TCustomDaemonApplication.StopDaemons` (198)

9.8.10 TCustomDaemonApplication.RunDaemons

Synopsis: Run all daemons.

Declaration: `procedure RunDaemons`

Visibility: public

Description: `RunDaemons` runs (starts) all known daemons. This method is called if the application is run with the `-r` or `-run` methods.

See also: `TCustomDaemonApplication.UnInstallDaemons` (199), `TCustomDaemonApplication.InstallDaemons` (198), `TCustomDaemonApplication.StopDaemons` (198)

9.8.11 TCustomDaemonApplication.UnInstallDaemons

Synopsis: Uninstall all daemons

Declaration: `procedure UnInstallDaemons`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `UnInstallDaemons` uninstalls all known daemons, i.e. deregisters them with the service manager on Windows. This method is called if the application is run with the `-u` or `-uninstall` or `/uninstall` command-line option.

See also: `TCustomDaemonApplication.RunDaemons` ([198](#)), `TCustomDaemonApplication.InstallDaemons` ([198](#)), `TCustomDaemonApplication.StopDaemons` ([198](#))

9.8.12 TCustomDaemonApplication.ShowHelp

Synopsis: Display a help message

Declaration: `procedure ShowHelp`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ShowHelp` displays a help message explaining the command-line options on standard output.

9.8.13 TCustomDaemonApplication.CreateForm

Synopsis: Create a component

Declaration: `procedure CreateForm(InstanceClass: TComponentClass; var Reference) ; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CreateForm` creates an instance of `InstanceClass` and fills `Reference` with the class instance pointer. It's main purpose is to give an IDE a means of assuring that forms or datamodules are created on application startup: the IDE will generate calls for all modules that are auto-created.

Errors: An exception may arise if the instance wants to stream itself from resources, but no resources are found.

See also: `TCustomDaemonApplication.CreateDaemon` ([198](#))

9.8.14 TCustomDaemonApplication.OnRun

Synopsis: Event executed when the daemon is run.

Declaration: `Property OnRun : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read, Write

Description: `OnRun` is triggered when the daemon application is run and no appropriate options (one of install, uninstall or run) was given.

See also: `TCustomDaemonApplication.RunDaemons` ([198](#)), `TCustomDaemonApplication.InstallDaemons` ([198](#)), `TCustomDaemonApplication.UnInstallDaemons` ([199](#))

9.8.15 TCustomDaemonApplication.EventLog

Synopsis: Event logger instance

Declaration: `Property EventLog : TEventLog`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `EventLog` is the `TEventLog` (422) instance which is used to log events to the system log with the `Log` (196) method. It is created when the application instance is created, and destroyed when the application is destroyed.

See also: `TEventLog` (422), `Log` (196)

9.8.16 TCustomDaemonApplication.GUIMainLoop

Synopsis: GUI main loop callback

Declaration: `Property GUIMainLoop : TGuiLoopEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `GUIMainLoop` contains a reference to a method that can be called to process a main GUI loop. The procedure should return only when the main GUI has finished and the application should exit. It is called when the daemons are running.

See also: `TCustomDaemonApplication.GuiHandle` (200)

9.8.17 TCustomDaemonApplication.GuiHandle

Synopsis: Handle of GUI loop main application window handle

Declaration: `Property GuiHandle : THandle`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `GuiHandle` is the handle of a GUI window which can be used to run a message handling loop on. It is created when no `GUIMainLoop` (200) procedure exists, and the application creates and runs a message loop by itself.

See also: `GUIMainLoop` (200)

9.8.18 TCustomDaemonApplication.RunMode

Synopsis: Application mode

Declaration: `Property RunMode : TDaemonRunMode`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `RunMode` indicates in which mode the application is running currently. It is set automatically by examining the command-line, and when set, one of `InstallDaemons` (198), `RunDaemons` (198) or `UnInstallDaemons` (199) is called.

See also: `InstallDaemons` (198), `RunDaemons` (198), `UnInstallDaemons` (199)

9.8.19 TCustomDaemonApplication.AutoRegisterMessageFile

Declaration: Property AutoRegisterMessageFile : Boolean

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

9.9 TCustomDaemonMapper

9.9.1 Description

The TCustomDaemonMapper class is responsible for mapping a daemon definition to an actual TDaemon instance. It maintains a TDaemonDefs (215) collection with daemon definitions, which can be used to map the definition of a daemon to a TDaemon descendent class.

An IDE such as Lazarus can design a TCustomDaemonMapper instance visually, to help establish the relationship between various TDaemonDef (211) definitions and the actual TDaemon (203) instances that will be used to run the daemons.

The TCustomDaemonMapper class has no support for streaming. The TDaemonMapper (217) class has support for streaming (and hence visual designing).

See also: TDaemon (203), TDaemonDef (211), TDaemonDefs (215), TDaemonMapper (217)

9.9.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
201	Create	Create a new instance of TCustomDaemonMapper
202	Destroy	Clean up and destroy a TCustomDaemonMapper instance.

9.9.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
202	DaemonDefs	rw	Collection of daemons
202	OnCreate	rw	Event called when the daemon mapper is created
202	OnDestroy	rw	Event called when the daemon mapper is freed.
203	OnInstall	rw	Event called when the daemons are installed
203	OnRun	rw	Event called when the daemons are executed.
203	OnUnInstall	rw	Event called when the daemons are uninstalled

9.9.4 TCustomDaemonMapper.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of TCustomDaemonMapper

Declaration: constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override

Visibility: public

Description: Create creates a new instance of a TCustomDaemonMapper. It creates the TDaemonDefs (215) collection and then calls the inherited constructor. It should never be necessary to create a daemon mapper manually, the application will create a global TCustomDaemonMapper instance.

See also: TDaemonDefs (215), TCustomDaemonApplication (196), TCustomDaemonMapper.Destroy (202)

9.9.5 TCustomDaemonMapper.Destroy

Synopsis: Clean up and destroy a TCustomDaemonMapper instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` frees the `DaemonDefs` (202) collection and calls the inherited destructor.

See also: `TDaemonDefs` (215), `TCustomDaemonMapper.Create` (201)

9.9.6 TCustomDaemonMapper.DaemonDefs

Synopsis: Collection of daemons

Declaration: `Property DaemonDefs : TDaemonDefs`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `DaemonDefs` is the application's global collection of daemon definitions. This collection will be used to decide at runtime which `TDaemon` class must be created to run or install a daemon.

See also: `TCustomDaemonApplication` (196)

9.9.7 TCustomDaemonMapper.OnCreate

Synopsis: Event called when the daemon mapper is created

Declaration: `Property OnCreate : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnCreate` is an event that is called when the `TCustomDaemonMapper` instance is created. It can for instance be used to dynamically create daemon definitions at runtime.

See also: `OnDestroy` (202), `OnUnInstall` (203), `OnCreate` (202), `OnDestroy` (202)

9.9.8 TCustomDaemonMapper.OnDestroy

Synopsis: Event called when the daemon mapper is freed.

Declaration: `Property OnDestroy : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnDestroy` is called when the global daemon mapper instance is destroyed. it can be used to release up any resources that were allocated when the instance was created, in the `OnCreate` (202) event.

See also: `OnCreate` (202), `OnInstall` (203), `OnUnInstall` (203), `OnCreate` (202)

9.9.9 TCustomDaemonMapper.OnRun

Synopsis: Event called when the daemons are executed.

Declaration: `Property OnRun : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnRun` is the event called when the daemon application is executed to run the daemons (with command-line parameter '-r'). it is called exactly once.

See also: `OnInstall` (203), `OnUnInstall` (203), `OnCreate` (202), `OnDestroy` (202)

9.9.10 TCustomDaemonMapper.OnInstall

Synopsis: Event called when the daemons are installed

Declaration: `Property OnInstall : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnInstall` is the event called when the daemon application is executed to install the daemons (with command-line parameter '-i' or '/install'). it is called exactly once.

See also: `OnRun` (203), `OnUnInstall` (203), `OnCreate` (202), `OnDestroy` (202)

9.9.11 TCustomDaemonMapper.OnUnInstall

Synopsis: Event called when the daemons are uninstalled

Declaration: `Property OnUnInstall : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnUnInstall` is the event called when the daemon application is executed to uninstall the daemons (with command-line parameter '-u' or '/uninstall'). it is called exactly once.

See also: `OnRun` (203), `OnInstall` (203), `OnCreate` (202), `OnDestroy` (202)

9.10 TDaemon

9.10.1 Description

`TDaemon` is a `TCustomDaemon` (194) descendent which is meant for development in a visual environment: it contains event handlers for all major operations. Whenever a `TCustomDaemon` method is executed, it's execution is shunted to the event handler, which can be filled with code in the IDE.

All the events of the daemon are executed in the thread in which the daemon's controller is running (as given by `DaemonThread` (195)), which is not the main program thread.

See also: `TCustomDaemon` (194), `TDaemonController` (208)

9.10.2 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
207	AfterInstall	rw	Called after the daemon was installed
207	AfterUnInstall	rw	Called after the daemon is uninstalled
206	BeforeInstall	rw	Called before the daemon will be installed
207	BeforeUnInstall	rw	Called before the daemon is uninstalled
204	Definition		
205	OnContinue	rw	Daemon continue
207	OnControlCode	rw	Called when a control code is received for the daemon
206	OnExecute	rw	Daemon execute event
205	OnPause	rw	Daemon pause event
206	OnShutDown	rw	Daemon shutdown
204	OnStart	rw	Daemon start event
205	OnStop	rw	Daemon stop event
204	Status		

9.10.3 TDaemon.Definition

Declaration: `Property Definition :`

Visibility: public

Access:

9.10.4 TDaemon.Status

Declaration: `Property Status :`

Visibility: public

Access:

9.10.5 TDaemon.OnStart

Synopsis: Daemon start event

Declaration: `Property OnStart : TDaemonOKEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnStart` is the event called when the daemon must be started. This event handler should return as quickly as possible. If it must perform lengthy operations, it is best to report the status to the operating system at regular intervals using the `ReportStatus` ([195](#)) method.

If the start of the daemon should do some continuous action, then this action should be performed in a new thread: this thread should then be created and started in the `OnExecute` ([206](#)) event handler, so the event handler can return at once.

See also: `TDaemon.OnStop` ([205](#)), `TDaemon.OnExecute` ([206](#)), `TDaemon.OnContinue` ([205](#)), `ReportStatus` ([195](#))

9.10.6 TDaemon.OnStop

Synopsis: Daemon stop event

Declaration: `Property OnStop : TDaemonOKEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnStart` is the event called when the daemon must be stopped. This event handler should return as quickly as possible. If it must perform lengthy operations, it is best to report the status to the operating system at regular intervals using the `ReportStatus` (195) method.

If a thread was started in the `OnExecute` (206) event, this is the place where the thread should be stopped.

See also: `TDaemon.OnStart` (204), `TDaemon.OnPause` (205), `ReportStatus` (195)

9.10.7 TDaemon.OnPause

Synopsis: Daemon pause event

Declaration: `Property OnPause : TDaemonOKEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnPause` is the event called when the daemon must be stopped. This event handler should return as quickly as possible. If it must perform lengthy operations, it is best to report the status to the operating system at regular intervals using the `ReportStatus` (195) method.

If a thread was started in the `OnExecute` (206) event, this is the place where the thread's execution should be suspended.

See also: `TDaemon.OnStop` (205), `TDaemon.OnContinue` (205), `ReportStatus` (195)

9.10.8 TDaemon.OnContinue

Synopsis: Daemon continue

Declaration: `Property OnContinue : TDaemonOKEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnPause` is the event called when the daemon must be stopped. This event handler should return as quickly as possible. If it must perform lengthy operations, it is best to report the status to the operating system at regular intervals using the `ReportStatus` (195) method.

If a thread was started in the `OnExecute` (206) event and it was suspended in a `OnPause` (204) event, this is the place where the thread's executed should be resumed.

See also: `TDaemon.OnStart` (204), `TDaemon.OnPause` (205), `ReportStatus` (195)

9.10.9 TDaemon.OnShutDown

Synopsis: Daemon shutdown

Declaration: `Property OnShutDown : TDaemonEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnShutDown` is the event called when the daemon must be shut down. When the system is being shut down and the daemon does not respond to stop signals, then a shutdown message is sent to the daemon. This event can be used to respond to such a message. The daemon process will simply be stopped after this event.

If a thread was started in the `OnExecute` (206), this is the place where the thread's executed should be stopped or the thread freed from memory.

See also: `TDaemon.OnStart` (204), `TDaemon.OnPause` (205), `ReportStatus` (195)

9.10.10 TDaemon.OnExecute

Synopsis: Daemon execute event

Declaration: `Property OnExecute : TDaemonEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnExecute` is executed once after the daemon was started. If assigned, it should perform whatever operation the daemon is designed.

If the daemon's action is event based, then no `OnExecute` handler is needed, and the events will control the daemon's execution: the daemon thread will then go in a loop, passing control messages to the daemon.

If an `OnExecute` event handler is present, the checking for control messages must be done by the implementation of the `OnExecute` handler.

See also: `TDaemon.OnStart` (204), `TDaemon.OnStop` (205)

9.10.11 TDaemon.BeforeInstall

Synopsis: Called before the daemon will be installed

Declaration: `Property BeforeInstall : TDaemonEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `BeforeInstall` is called before the daemon is installed. It can be done to specify extra dependencies, or change the daemon description etc.

See also: `AfterInstall` (207), `BeforeUnInstall` (207), `AfterUnInstall` (207)

9.10.12 TDaemon.AfterInstall

Synopsis: Called after the daemon was installed

Declaration: `Property AfterInstall : TDaemonEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AfterInstall` is called after the daemon was successfully installed.

See also: [BeforeInstall \(206\)](#), [BeforeUnInstall \(207\)](#), [AfterUnInstall \(207\)](#)

9.10.13 TDaemon.BeforeUnInstall

Synopsis: Called before the daemon is uninstalled

Declaration: `Property BeforeUnInstall : TDaemonEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `BeforeUnInstall` is called before the daemon is uninstalled.

See also: [BeforeInstall \(206\)](#), [AfterInstall \(207\)](#), [AfterUnInstall \(207\)](#)

9.10.14 TDaemon.AfterUnInstall

Synopsis: Called after the daemon is uninstalled

Declaration: `Property AfterUnInstall : TDaemonEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AfterUnInstall` is called after the daemon is successfully uninstalled.

See also: [BeforeInstall \(206\)](#), [AfterInstall \(207\)](#), [BeforeUnInstall \(207\)](#)

9.10.15 TDaemon.OnControlCode

Synopsis: Called when a control code is received for the daemon

Declaration: `Property OnControlCode : TCustomControlCodeEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnControlCode` is called when the daemon receives a control code. If the daemon has not handled the control code, it should set the `Handled` parameter to `False`. By default it is set to `True`.

See also: [Architecture \(188\)](#)

9.11 TDaemonApplication

9.11.1 Description

`TDaemonApplication` is the default `TCustomDaemonApplication` (196) descendent that is used to run the daemon application. It is possible to register an alternative `TCustomDaemonApplication` class (using `RegisterDaemonApplicationClass` (193)) to run the application in a different manner.

See also: `TCustomDaemonApplication` (196), `RegisterDaemonApplicationClass` (193)

9.12 TDaemonController

9.12.1 Description

`TDaemonController` is a class that is used by the `TDaemonApplication` (208) class to control the daemon during runtime. The `TDaemonApplication` class instantiates an instance of `TDaemonController` for each daemon in the application and communicates with the daemon through the `TDaemonController` instance. It should rarely be necessary to access or use this class.

See also: `TCustomDaemon` (194), `TDaemonApplication` (208)

9.12.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
209	Controller	Controller
208	Create	Create a new instance of the <code>TDaemonController</code> class
209	Destroy	Free a <code>TDaemonController</code> instance.
209	Main	Daemon main entry point
210	ReportStatus	Report the status to the operating system.
209	StartService	Start the service

9.12.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
211	CheckPoint		Send checkpoint signal to the operating system
210	Daemon	r	Daemon instance this controller controls.
210	LastStatus	r	Last reported status
210	Params	r	Parameters passed to the daemon

9.12.4 TDaemonController.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TDaemonController` class

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of the `TDaemonController` class. It should never be necessary to create a new instance manually, because the controllers are created by the global `TDaemonApplication` (208) instance, and `AOwner` will be set to the global `TDaemonApplication` (208) instance.

See also: `TDaemonApplication` (208), `Destroy` (209)

9.12.5 TDaemonController.Destroy

Synopsis: Free a TDaemonController instance.

Declaration: destructor Destroy; Override

Visibility: public

Description: Destroy deallocates some resources allocated when the instance was created.

See also: Create ([208](#))

9.12.6 TDaemonController.StartService

Synopsis: Start the service

Declaration: procedure StartService; Virtual

Visibility: public

Description: StartService starts the service controlled by this instance.

Errors: None.

See also: TDaemonController.Main ([209](#))

9.12.7 TDaemonController.Main

Synopsis: Daemon main entry point

Declaration: procedure Main(Argc: DWord; Args: PPChar); Virtual

Visibility: public

Description: Main is the service's main entry point, called when the system wants to start the service. The global application will call this function whenever required, with the appropriate arguments.

The standard implementation starts the daemon thread, and waits for it to stop. All other daemon action - such as responding to control code events - is handled by the thread.

Errors: If the daemon thread cannot be created, an exception is raised.

See also: TDaemonThread ([218](#))

9.12.8 TDaemonController.Controller

Synopsis: Controller

Declaration: procedure Controller(ControlCode: DWord; EventType: DWord;
EventData: Pointer); Virtual

Visibility: public

Description: Controller is responsible for sending the control code to the daemon thread so it can be processed.

This routine is currently only used on windows, as there is no service manager on linux. Later on this may be changed to respond to signals on linux as well.

See also: TDaemon.OnControlCode ([207](#))

9.12.9 TDaemonController.ReportStatus

Synopsis: Report the status to the operating system.

Declaration: `function ReportStatus : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReportStatus` reports the status of the daemon to the operating system. On windows, this sends the current service status to the service manager. On other operating systems, this sends a message to the system log.

Errors: If an error occurs, an error message is sent to the system log.

See also: `TDaemon.ReportStatus` (203), `TDaemonController.LastStatus` (210)

9.12.10 TDaemonController.Daemon

Synopsis: Daemon instance this controller controls.

Declaration: `Property Daemon : TCustomDaemon`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Daemon` is the daemon instance that is controller by this instance of the `TDaemonController` class.

9.12.11 TDaemonController.Params

Synopsis: Parameters passed to the daemon

Declaration: `Property Params : TStrings`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Params` contains the parameters passed to the daemon application by the operating system, comparable to the application's command-line parameters. The property is set by the `Main` (209) method.

9.12.12 TDaemonController.LastStatus

Synopsis: Last reported status

Declaration: `Property LastStatus : TCurrentStatus`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `LastStatus` is the last status reported to the operating system.

See also: `ReportStatus` (210)

9.12.13 TDaemonController.CheckPoint

Synopsis: Send checkpoint signal to the operating system

Declaration: `Property CheckPoint : DWord`

Visibility: public

Access:

Description: `CheckPoint` can be used to send a checkpoint signal during lengthy operations, to signal that a lengthy operation is in progress. This should be used mainly on windows, to signal the service manager that the service is alive.

See also: `ReportStatus` (210)

9.13 TDaemonDef

9.13.1 Description

`TDaemonDef` contains the definition of a daemon in the application: The name of the daemon, which `TCustomDaemon` (194) descendent should be started to run the daemon, a description, and various other options should be set in this class. The global `TDaemonApplication` instance maintains a collection of `TDaemonDef` instances and will use these definitions to install or start the various daemons.

See also: `TDaemonApplication` (208), `TDaemon` (203)

9.13.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
211	Create	Create a new <code>TDaemonDef</code> instance
212	Destroy	Free a <code>TDaemonDef</code> from memory

9.13.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
212	<code>DaemonClass</code>	r	<code>TDaemon</code> class to use for this daemon
212	<code>DaemonClassName</code>	rw	Name of the <code>TDaemon</code> class to use for this daemon
213	<code>Description</code>	rw	Description of the daemon
213	<code>DisplayName</code>	rw	Displayed name of the daemon (service)
214	<code>Enabled</code>	rw	Is the daemon enabled or not
212	<code>Instance</code>	rw	Instance of the daemon class
215	<code>LogStatusReport</code>	rw	Log the status report to the system log
213	<code>Name</code>	rw	Name of the daemon (service)
214	<code>OnCreateInstance</code>	rw	Event called when a daemon is instantiated
214	<code>Options</code>	rw	Service options
213	<code>RunArguments</code>	rw	Additional command-line arguments when running daemon.
214	<code>WinBindings</code>	rw	Windows-specific bindings (windows only)

9.13.4 TDaemonDef.Create

Synopsis: Create a new `TDaemonDef` instance

Declaration: `constructor Create(ACollection: TCollection); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new `TDaemonDef` instance. It should not be necessary to instantiate a definition manually, it is handled by the collection.

See also: `TDaemonDefs` ([215](#))

9.13.5 TDaemonDef.Destroy

Synopsis: Free a `TDaemonDef` from memory

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` removes the `TDaemonDef` from memory.

9.13.6 TDaemonDef.DaemonClass

Synopsis: `TDaemon` class to use for this daemon

Declaration: `Property DaemonClass : TCustomDaemonClass`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `DaemonClass` is the `TDaemon` class that is used when this service is requested. It is looked up in the application's global daemon mapper by it's name in `DaemonClassName` ([212](#)).

See also: `DaemonClassName` ([212](#)), `TDaemonMapper` ([217](#))

9.13.7 TDaemonDef.Instance

Synopsis: Instance of the daemon class

Declaration: `Property Instance : TCustomDaemon`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Instance` points to the `TDaemon` ([203](#)) instance that is used when the service is in operation at runtime.

See also: `TDaemonDef.DaemonClass` ([212](#))

9.13.8 TDaemonDef.DaemonClassName

Synopsis: Name of the `TDaemon` class to use for this daemon

Declaration: `Property DaemonClassName : string`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `DaemonClassName` is the name of the `TDaemon` class that will be used whenever the service is needed. The name is used to look up the class pointer registered in the daemon mapper, when `TCustomDaemonApplication.CreateDaemonInstance` ([196](#)) creates an instance of the daemon.

See also: `TDaemonDef.Instance` ([212](#)), `TDaemonDef.DaemonClass` ([212](#)), `RegisterDaemonClass` ([193](#))

9.13.9 TDaemonDef.Name

Synopsis: Name of the daemon (service)

Declaration: `Property Name : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Name` is the internal name of the daemon as it is known to the operating system.

See also: `TDaemonDef.DisplayName` ([213](#))

9.13.10 TDaemonDef.Description

Synopsis: Description of the daemon

Declaration: `Property Description : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Description` is the description shown in the Windows service manager when managing this service. It is supplied to the windows service manager when the daemon is installed.

9.13.11 TDaemonDef.DisplayName

Synopsis: Displayed name of the daemon (service)

Declaration: `Property DisplayName : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `DisplayName` is the displayed name of the daemon as it is known to the operating system.

See also: `TDaemonDef.Name` ([213](#))

9.13.12 TDaemonDef.RunArguments

Synopsis: Additional command-line arguments when running daemon.

Declaration: `Property RunArguments : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `RunArguments` specifies any additional command-line arguments that should be specified when running the daemon: these arguments will be passed to the service manager when registering the service on windows.

9.13.13 TDaemonDef.Options

Synopsis: Service options

Declaration: `Property Options : TDaemonOptions`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Options` tells the operating system which operations can be performed on the daemon while it is running.

This option is only used during the installation of the daemon.

9.13.14 TDaemonDef.Enabled

Synopsis: Is the daemon enabled or not

Declaration: `Property Enabled : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Enabled` specifies whether a daemon should be installed, run or uninstalled. Disabled daemons are not installed, run or uninstalled.

9.13.15 TDaemonDef.WinBindings

Synopsis: Windows-specific bindings (windows only)

Declaration: `Property WinBindings : TWinBindings`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `WinBindings` is used to group together the windows-specific properties of the daemon. This property is totally ignored on other platforms.

See also: `TWinBindings` ([222](#))

9.13.16 TDaemonDef.OnCreateInstance

Synopsis: Event called when a daemon is instantiated

Declaration: `Property OnCreateInstance : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnCreateInstance` is called whenever an instance of the daemon is created. This can be used for instance when a single `TDaemon` class is used to run several services, to correctly initialize the `TDaemon`.

9.13.17 TDaemonDef.LogStatusReport

Synopsis: Log the status report to the system log

Declaration: `Property LogStatusReport : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `LogStatusReport` can be set to `True` to send the status reports also to the system log. This can be used to track the progress of the daemon.

See also: `TDaemon.ReportStatus` (203)

9.14 TDaemonDefs

9.14.1 Description

`TDaemonDefs` is the class of the global list of daemon definitions. It contains an item for each daemon in the application.

Normally it is not necessary to create an instance of `TDaemonDefs` manually. The global `TCustomDaemonMapper` (201) instance will create a collection and maintain it.

See also: `TCustomDaemonMapper` (201), `TDaemonDef` (211)

9.14.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
215	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of a <code>TDaemonDefs</code> collection.
216	<code>DaemonDefByName</code>	Find and return instance of daemon definition with given name.
216	<code>FindDaemonDef</code>	Find and return instance of daemon definition with given name.
216	<code>IndexOfDaemonDef</code>	Return index of daemon definition

9.14.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
216	<code>Daemons</code>	<code>rw</code>	Indexed access to <code>TDaemonDef</code> instances

9.14.4 TDaemonDefs.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of a `TDaemonDefs` collection.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TPersistent; AClass: TCollectionItemClass)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of the `TDaemonDefs` collection. It keeps the `AOwner` parameter for future reference and calls the inherited constructor.

Normally it is not necessary to create an instance of `TDaemonDefs` manually. The global `TCustomDaemonMapper` (201) instance will create a collection and maintain it.

See also: `TDaemonDef` (211)

9.14.5 TDaemonDefs.IndexOfDaemonDef

Synopsis: Return index of daemon definition

Declaration: `function IndexOfDaemonDef(const DaemonName: string) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOfDaemonDef` searches the collection for a `TDaemonDef` (211) instance with a name equal to `DemonName`, and returns it's index. It returns -1 if no definition was found with this name. The search is case insensitive.

See also: `TDaemonDefs.FindDaemonDef` (216), `TDaemonDefs.DaemonDefByName` (216)

9.14.6 TDaemonDefs.FindDaemonDef

Synopsis: Find and return instance of daemon definition with given name.

Declaration: `function FindDaemonDef(const DaemonName: string) : TDaemonDef`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindDaemonDef` searches the list of daemon definitions and returns the `TDaemonDef` (211) instance whose name matches `DemonName`. If no definition is found, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TDaemonDefs.IndexOfDaemonDef` (216), `TDaemonDefs.DaemonDefByName` (216)

9.14.7 TDaemonDefs.DaemonDefByName

Synopsis: Find and return instance of daemon definition with given name.

Declaration: `function DaemonDefByName(const DaemonName: string) : TDaemonDef`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindDaemonDef` searches the list of daemon definitions and returns the `TDaemonDef` (211) instance whose name matches `DemonName`. If no definition is found, an `EDaemon` (194) exception is raised.

The `FindDaemonDef` (216) call does not raise an error, but returns `Nil` instead.

Errors: If no definition is found, an `EDaemon` (194) exception is raised.

See also: `TDaemonDefs.IndexOfDaemonDef` (216), `TDaemonDefs.FindDaemonDef` (216)

9.14.8 TDaemonDefs.Daemons

Synopsis: Indexed access to `TDaemonDef` instances

Declaration: `Property Daemons[Index: Integer]: TDaemonDef; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Daemons` is the default property of `TDaemonDefs`, it gives access to the `TDaemonDef` instances in the collection.

See also: `TDaemonDef` (211)

9.15 TDaemonMapper

9.15.1 Description

`TDaemonMapper` is a direct descendent of `TCustomDaemonMapper` (201), but introduces no new functionality. It's sole purpose is to make it possible for an IDE to stream the `TDaemonMapper` instance.

For this purpose, it overrides the `Create` constructor and tries to find a resource with the same name as the class name, and tries to stream the instance from this resource.

If the instance should not be streamed, the `CreateNew` (217) constructor can be used instead.

See also: `CreateNew` (217), `Create` (217)

9.15.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
217	<code>Create</code>	Create a new <code>TDaemonMapper</code> instance and initializes it from streamed resources.
217	<code>CreateNew</code>	Create a new <code>TDaemonMapper</code> instance without initialization

9.15.3 TDaemonMapper.Create

Synopsis: Create a new `TDaemonMapper` instance and initializes it from streamed resources.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: default

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of `TDaemonMapper` and attempts to read the component from resources compiled in the application.

If the instance should not be streamed, the `CreateNew` (217) constructor can be used instead.

Errors: If no streaming system is found, or no resource exists for the class, an exception is raised.

See also: `CreateNew` (217)

9.15.4 TDaemonMapper.CreateNew

Synopsis: Create a new `TDaemonMapper` instance without initialization

Declaration: `constructor CreateNew(AOwner: TComponent; Dummy: Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `CreateNew` initializes a new instance of `TDaemonMapper`. In difference with the `Create` constructor, it does not attempt to read the component from a stream.

See also: `Create` (217)

9.16 TDaemonThread

9.16.1 Description

TDaemonThread is the thread in which the daemons in the application are run. Each daemon is run in it's own thread.

It should not be necessary to create these threads manually, the TDaemonController (208) class will take care of this.

See also: TDaemonController (208), TDaemon (203)

9.16.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
219	CheckControlMessage	Check if a control message has arrived
219	ContinueDaemon	Continue the daemon
218	Create	Create a new thread
218	Execute	Run the daemon
220	InterrogateDaemon	Report the daemon status
219	PauseDaemon	Pause the daemon
220	ShutDownDaemon	Shut down daemon
219	StopDaemon	Stops the daemon

9.16.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
220	Daemon	r	Daemon instance

9.16.4 TDaemonThread.Create

Synopsis: Create a new thread

Declaration: `constructor Create (ADaemon: TCustomDaemon)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` creates a new thread instance. It initializes the `Daemon` property with the passed `ADaemon`. The thread is created suspended.

See also: TDaemonThread.Daemon (220)

9.16.5 TDaemonThread.Execute

Synopsis: Run the daemon

Declaration: `procedure Execute; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Execute` starts executing the daemon and waits till the daemon stops. It also listens for control codes for the daemon.

See also: TDaemon.Execute (203)

9.16.6 TDaemonThread.CheckControlMessage

Synopsis: Check if a control message has arrived

Declaration: `procedure CheckControlMessage (WaitForMessage: Boolean)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CheckControlMessage` checks if a control message has arrived for the daemon and executes the appropriate daemon message. If the parameter `WaitForMessage` is `True`, then the routine waits for the message to arrive. If it is `False` and no message is present, it returns at once.

9.16.7 TDaemonThread.StopDaemon

Synopsis: Stops the daemon

Declaration: `function StopDaemon : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `StopDaemon` attempts to stop the daemon using its `TDaemon.Stop` (203) method, and terminates the thread.

See also: `TDaemon.Stop` (203), `TDaemonThread.PauseDaemon` (219), `TDaemonThread.ShutDownDaemon` (220)

9.16.8 TDaemonThread.PauseDaemon

Synopsis: Pause the daemon

Declaration: `function PauseDaemon : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `PauseDaemon` attempts to stop the daemon using its `TDaemon.Pause` (203) method, and suspends the thread. It returns `True` if the attempt was successful.

See also: `TDaemon.Pause` (203), `TDaemonThread.StopDaemon` (219), `TDaemonThread.ContinueDaemon` (219), `TDaemonThread.ShutDownDaemon` (220)

9.16.9 TDaemonThread.ContinueDaemon

Synopsis: Continue the daemon

Declaration: `function ContinueDaemon : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ContinueDaemon` attempts to stop the daemon using its `TDaemon.Continue` (203) method. It returns `True` if the attempt was successful.

See also: `TDaemon.Continue` (203), `TDaemonThread.StopDaemon` (219), `TDaemonThread.PauseDaemon` (219), `TDaemonThread.ShutDownDaemon` (220)

9.16.10 TDaemonThread.ShutDownDaemon

Synopsis: Shut down daemon

Declaration: `function ShutDownDaemon : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `ShutDownDaemon` shuts down the daemon. This happens normally only when the system is shut down and the daemon didn't respond to the stop request. The return result is the result of the `TDaemon.Shutdown` (203) function. The thread is terminated by this method.

See also: `TDaemon.Shutdown` (203), `TDaemonThread.StopDaemon` (219), `TDaemonThread.PauseDaemon` (219), `TDaemonThread.ContinueDaemon` (219)

9.16.11 TDaemonThread.InterrogateDaemon

Synopsis: Report the daemon status

Declaration: `function InterrogateDaemon : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `InterrogateDaemon` simply calls `TDaemon.ReportStatus` (203) for the daemon that is running in this thread. It always returns `True`.

See also: `TDaemon.ReportStatus` (203)

9.16.12 TDaemonThread.Daemon

Synopsis: Daemon instance

Declaration: `Property Daemon : TCustomDaemon`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Daemon` is the daemon instance which is running in this thread.

See also: `TDaemon` (203)

9.17 TDependencies

9.17.1 Description

`TDependencies` is just a descendent of `TCollection` which contains a series of dependencies on other services. It overrides the default property of `TCollection` to return `TDependency` (221) instances.

See also: `TDependency` (221)

9.17.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
221	Create	Create a new instance of a <code>TDependencies</code> collection.

9.17.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
221	Items	rw	Default property override

9.17.4 TDependencies.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of a `TDependencies` collection.

Declaration: constructor `Create(AOwner: TPersistent)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` Create a new instance of a `TDependencies` collection.

9.17.5 TDependencies.Items

Synopsis: Default property override

Declaration: Property `Items[Index: Integer]: TDependency; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Items` overrides the default property of `TCollection` so the items are of type `TDependency` ([221](#)).

See also: `TDependency` ([221](#))

9.18 TDependency

9.18.1 Description

`TDependency` is a collection item used to specify dependencies on other daemons (services) in windows. It is used only on windows and when installing the daemon: changing the dependencies of a running daemon has no effect.

See also: `TDependencies` ([220](#)), `TDaemonDef` ([211](#))

9.18.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
222	Assign	Assign <code>TDependency</code> instance to another

9.18.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
222	IsGroup	rw	Name refers to a service group
222	Name	rw	Name of the service

9.18.4 TDependency.Assign

Synopsis: Assign TDependency instance to another

Declaration: `procedure Assign(Source: TPersistent); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Assign is overridden by TDependency to copy all properties from one instance to another.

9.18.5 TDependency.Name

Synopsis: Name of the service

Declaration: `Property Name : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: Name is the name of a service or service group that the current daemon depends on.

See also: TDependency.IsGroup ([222](#))

9.18.6 TDependency.IsGroup

Synopsis: Name refers to a service group

Declaration: `Property IsGroup : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: IsGroup can be set to True to indicate that Name refers to the name of a service group.

See also: TDependency.Name ([222](#))

9.19 TWinBindings

9.19.1 Description

TWinBindings contains windows-specific properties for the daemon definition (in TDaemonDef.WinBindings ([214](#))). If the daemon should not run on Windows, then the properties can be ignored.

See also: TDaemonDef ([211](#)), TDaemonDef.WinBindings ([214](#))

9.19.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
223	Assign	Copies all properties
223	Create	Create a new TWinBindings instance
223	Destroy	Remove a TWinBindings instance from memory

9.19.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
224	Dependencies	rw	Service dependencies
223	ErrCode	rw	Service specific error code
226	ErrorSeverity	rw	Error severity in case of startup failure
224	GroupName	rw	Service group name
226	IDTag	rw	Location in the service group
225	Password	rw	Password for service startup
226	ServiceType	rw	Type of service
225	StartType	rw	Service startup type.
225	UserName	rw	Username to run service as
225	WaitHint	rw	Timeout wait hint
224	Win32ErrCode	rw	General windows error code

9.19.4 TWinBindings.Create

Synopsis: Create a new TWinBindings instance

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes various properties such as the dependencies.

See also: `TDaemonDef` ([211](#)), `TDaemonDef.WinBindings` ([214](#)), `TWinBindings.Dependencies` ([224](#))

9.19.5 TWinBindings.Destroy

Synopsis: Remove a TWinBindings instance from memory

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the TWinBindings instance.

See also: `TWinBindings.Dependencies` ([224](#)), `TWinBindings.Create` ([223](#))

9.19.6 TWinBindings.Assign

Synopsis: Copies all properties

Declaration: `procedure Assign(Source: TPersistent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Assign` is overridden by `TWinBindings` so all properties are copied from `Source` to the `TWinBindings` instance.

9.19.7 TWinBindings.ErrCode

Synopsis: Service specific error code

Declaration: `Property ErrCode : DWord`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ErrCode` contains a service specific error code that is reported with `TDaemon.ReportStatus` (203) to the windows service manager. If it is zero, then the contents of `Win32ErrCode` (224) are reported. If it is nonzero, then the windows-errorcode is set to `ERROR_SERVICE_SPECIFIC_ERROR`.

See also: `TWinBindings.Win32ErrCode` (224)

9.19.8 `TWinBindings.Win32ErrCode`

Synopsis: General windows error code

Declaration: `Property Win32ErrCode : DWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Win32ErrCode` is a general windows service error code that can be reported with `TDaemon.ReportStatus` (203) to the windows service manager. It is sent if `ErrCode` (223) is zero.

See also: `ErrCode` (223)

9.19.9 `TWinBindings.Dependencies`

Synopsis: Service dependencies

Declaration: `Property Dependencies : TDependencies`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Dependencies` contains the list of other services (or service groups) that this service depends on. Windows will first attempt to start these services prior to starting this service. If they cannot be started, then the service will not be started either.

This property is only used during installation of the service.

9.19.10 `TWinBindings.GroupName`

Synopsis: Service group name

Declaration: `Property GroupName : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `GroupName` specifies the name of a service group that the service belongs to. If it is empty, then the service does not belong to any group.

This property is only used during installation of the service.

See also: `TDependency.IsGroup` (222)

9.19.11 `TWinBindings.Password`

Synopsis: Password for service startup

Declaration: `Property Password : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Password` contains the service password: if the service is started with credentials other than one of the system users, then the password for the user must be entered here.

This property is only used during installation of the service.

See also: `UserName` ([225](#))

9.19.12 `TWinBindings.UserName`

Synopsis: Username to run service as

Declaration: `Property UserName : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `UserName` specifies the name of a user whose credentials should be used to run the service. If it is left empty, the service is run as the system user. The password can be set in the `Password` ([225](#)) property.

This property is only used during installation of the service.

See also: `Password` ([225](#))

9.19.13 `TWinBindings.StartType`

Synopsis: Service startup type.

Declaration: `Property StartType : TStartType`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `StartType` specifies when the service should be started during system startup.

This property is only used during installation of the service.

9.19.14 `TWinBindings.WaitHint`

Synopsis: Timeout wait hint

Declaration: `Property WaitHint : Integer`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `WaitHint` specifies the estimated time for a start/stop/pause or continue operation (in milliseconds). `ReportStatus` should be called prior to this time to report the next status.

See also: `TDaemon.ReportStatus` ([203](#))

9.19.15 TWinBindings.IDTag

Synopsis: Location in the service group

Declaration: `Property IDTag : DWord`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `IDTag` contains the location of the service in the service group after installation of the service. It should not be set, it is reported by the service manager.

This property is only used during installation of the service.

9.19.16 TWinBindings.ServiceType

Synopsis: Type of service

Declaration: `Property ServiceType : TServiceType`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ServiceType` specifies what kind of service is being installed.

This property is only used during installation of the service.

9.19.17 TWinBindings.ErrorSeverity

Synopsis: Error severity in case of startup failure

Declaration: `Property ErrorSeverity : TErrorSeverity`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ErrorSeverity` can be used at installation time to tell the windows service manager how to behave when the service fails to start during system startup.

This property is only used during installation of the service.

Chapter 10

Reference for unit 'db'

10.1 Used units

Table 10.1: Used units by unit 'db'

Name	Page
Classes	??
FmtBCD	??
MaskUtils	??
System	??
sysutils	??
Variants	??

10.2 Overview

The `db` unit provides the basis for all database access mechanisms. It introduces abstract classes, on which all database access mechanisms are based: `TDataset` (277) representing a set of records from a database, `TField` (325) which represents the contents of a field in a record, `TDataSource` (313) which acts as an event distributor on behalf of a dataset and `TParams` (397) which can be used to parametrize queries. The databases connections themselves are abstracted in the `TDatabase` (267) class.

10.3 Constants, types and variables

10.3.1 Constants

```
DefaultFieldClasses : Array[TFieldType] of TFieldClass = (Tfield, TStringField, TSma
```

`DefaultFieldClasses` contains the `TField` (325) descendent class to use when a `TDataset` instance needs to create fields based on the `TFieldDefs` (353) field definitions when opening the dataset. The entries can be set to create customized `TField` descendents for certain field datatypes in all datasets.

```
dsEditModes = [dsEdit, dsInsert, dsSetKey]
```

`dsEditModes` contains the various values of `TDataset.State` (302) for which the dataset is in edit mode, i.e. states in which it is possible to set field values for that dataset.

```
dsMaxBufferCount = MAXINT div 8
```

Maximum data buffers count for dataset

```
dsMaxStringSize = 8192
```

Maximum size of string fields

```
dsWriteModes = [dsEdit, dsInsert, dsSetKey, dsCalcFields, dsFilter, dsNewValue, dsIn
```

`dsWriteModes` contains the various values of `TDataset.State` (302) for which data can be written to the dataset buffer.

```
FieldTypeNames : Array[TFieldType] of string = ('Unknown', 'String', 'Smallint', 'In
```

`FieldTypeNames` contains the names (in english) for the various field data types.

```
FieldTypetoVariantMap : Array[TFieldType] of Integer = (varError, varOleStr, varSma
```

`FieldTypetoVariantMap` contains for each field datatype the variant value type that corresponds to it. If a field type cannot be expressed by a variant type, then `varError` is stored in the variant value.

```
SQLDelimiterCharacters = [';', ' ', ' ', ' ', ' ', '(', ')', #13, #10, #9]
```

SQL statement delimiter token characters

```
YesNoChars : Array[Boolean] of Char = ('N', 'Y')
```

Array of characters mapping a boolean to Y/N

10.3.2 Types

```
LargeInt = Int64
```

Large (64-bit) integer

```
PBookmarkFlag = ^TBookmarkFlag
```

`PBookmarkFlag` is a convenience type, defined for internal use in `TDataset` (277) or one of its descendents.

```
PBufferList = ^TBufferList
```

`PBufferList` is a pointer to a structure of type `TBufferList` (230). It is an internal type, and should not be used in end-user code.

```
PDateTimeRec = ^TdateTimeRec
```

Pointer to TDateTimeRec record

PLargeInt = ^LargeInt

Pointer to Large (64-bit) integer

PLookupListRec = ^TLookupListRec

Pointer to TLookupListRec record

TBlobData = AnsiString

TBlobData should never be used directly in application code.

TBlobStreamMode = (bmRead, bmWrite, bmReadWrite)

Table 10.2: Enumeration values for type TBlobStreamMode

Value	Explanation
bmRead	Read blob data
bmReadWrite	Read and write blob data
bmWrite	Write blob data

TBlobStramMode is used when creating a stream for redaing BLOB data. It indicates what the data will be used for: reading, writing or both.

TBlobType = ftBlob..ftWideMemo

TBlobType is a subrange type, indicating the various datatypes of BLOB fields.

TBookmark = Pointer

TBookMark is the type used by the TDataset.SetBookMark (277) method. It is an opaque type, and should not be used any more, it is superseded by the TBookmarkStr (230) type.

TBookmarkFlag = (bfCurrent, bfBOF, bfEOF, bfInserted)

Table 10.3: Enumeration values for type TBookmarkFlag

Value	Explanation
bfBOF	First record in the dataset.
bfCurrent	Buffer used for the current record
bfEOF	Last record in the dataset
bfInserted	Buffer used for insert

TBookmarkFlag is used internally by TDataset (277) and it's descendent types to mark the internal memory buffers. It should not be used in end-user applications.

`TBookmarkStr = String` deprecated

`TBookmarkStr` is the type used by the `TDataset.Bookmark` (297) property. It can be used as a string, but should in fact be considered an opaque type.

`TBufferArray = ^TRecordBuffer`

`TBufferArray` is an internally used type. It can change in future implementations, and should not be used in application code.

`TBufferList = Array[0..dsMaxBufferCount-1] of TRecordBuffer`

`TBufferList` is used internally by the `TDataset` (277) class to manage the memory buffers for the data. It should not be necessary to use this type in end-user applications.

`TDataAction = (daFail, daAbort, daRetry)`

Table 10.4: Enumeration values for type `TDataAction`

Value	Explanation
<code>daAbort</code>	The operation should be aborted (edits are undone, and an <code>EAbort</code> exception is raised)
<code>daFail</code>	The operation should fail (an exception will be raised)
<code>daRetry</code>	Retry the operation.

`TDataAction` is used by the `TDataSetErrorEvent` (231) event handler prototype. The parameter `Action` of this event handler is of `TDataAction` type, and should indicate what action must be taken by the dataset.

`TDatabaseClass = Class of TDataBase`

`TDatabaseClass` is the class pointer for the `TDatabase` (267) class.

`TDataChangeEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject; Field: TField) of object`

`TDataChangeEvent` is the event handler prototype for the `TDatasource.OnDataChange` (316) event. The sender parameter is the `TDatasource` instance that triggered the event, and the `Field` parameter is the field whose data has changed. If the dataset has scrolled, then the `Field` parameter is `Nil`.

`TDataEvent = (deFieldChange, deRecordChange, deDataSetChange, deDataSetScroll, deLayoutChange, deUpdateRecord, deUpdateState, deCheckBrowseMode, dePropertyChange, deFieldListChange, deFocusControl, deParentScroll, deConnectChange, deReconcileError, deDisabledStateChange)`

Table 10.5: Enumeration values for type TDataEvent

Value	Explanation
deCheckBrowseMode	The browse mode is being checked
deConnectChange	Unused
deDataSetChange	The dataset property changed
deDataSetScroll	The dataset scrolled to another record
deDisabledStateChange	Unused
deFieldChange	A field value changed
deFieldListChange	Event sent when the list of fields of a dataset changes
deFocusControl	Event sent whenever a control connected to a field should be focused
deLayoutChange	The layout properties of one of the fields changed
deParentScroll	Unused
dePropertyChange	Unused
deReconcileError	Unused
deRecordChange	The current record changed
deUpdateRecord	The record is being updated
deUpdateState	The dataset state is updated

TDataEvent describes the various events that can be sent to TDataSource (313) instances connected to a TDataSet (277) instance.

TDataOperation = procedure of object

TDataOperation is a prototype handler used internally in TDataSet. It can be changed at any time, so it should not be used in end-user code.

TDatasetClass = Class of TDataSet

TDatasetClass is the class type for the TDataSet (277) class. It is currently unused in the DB unit and is defined for the benefit of other units.

TDatasetErrorEvent = procedure (DataSet: TDataSet; E: EDatabaseError;
var DataAction: TDataAction) of object

TDatasetErrorEvent is used by the TDataSet.OnEditError (312), TDataSet.OnPostError (313) and TDataSet.OnDeleteError (311) event handlers to allow the programmer to specify what should be done if an update operation fails with an exception: The DataSet parameter indicates what dataset triggered the event, the E parameter contains the exception object. The DataAction must be set by the event handler, and based on its return value, the dataset instance will take appropriate action. The default value is daFail, i.e. the exception will be raised again. For a list of available return values, see TDataAction (230).

TDatasetNotifyEvent = procedure (DataSet: TDataSet) of object

TDatasetNotifyEvent is used in most of the TDataSet (277) event handlers. It differs from the more general TNotifyEvent (defined in the Classes unit) in that the Sender parameter of the latter is replaced with the DataSet parameter. This avoids typecasts, the available TDataSet methods can be used directly.

TDatasetState = (dsInactive, dsBrowse, dsEdit, dsInsert, dsSetKey,
dsCalcFields, dsFilter, dsNewValue, dsOldValue, dsCurValue,
dsBlockRead, dsInternalCalc, dsOpening)

Table 10.6: Enumeration values for type TDataSetState

Value	Explanation
dsBlockRead	The dataset is open, but no events are transferred to datasources.
dsBrowse	The dataset is active, and the cursor can be used to navigate the data.
dsCalcFields	The dataset is calculating it's calculated fields.
dsCurValue	The dataset is showing the current values of a record.
dsEdit	The dataset is in editing mode: the current record can be modified.
dsFilter	The dataset is filtering records.
dsInactive	The dataset is not active. No data is available.
dsInsert	The dataset is in insert mode: the current record is a new record which can be edited.
dsInternalCalc	The dataset is calculating it's internally calculated fields.
dsNewValue	The dataset is showing the new values of a record.
dsOldValue	The dataset is showing the old values of a record.
dsOpening	The dataset is currently opening, but is not yet completely open.
dsSetKey	The dataset is calculating the primary key.

TDataSetState describes the current state of the dataset. During it's lifetime, the dataset's state is described by these enumerated values.

Some state are not used in the default TDataset implementation, and are only used by certain descendants.

```
TDateTimeAlias = TDateTime
```

TDateTimeAlias is no longer used.

```
TDateTimeRec = record
end
```

TDateTimeRec was used by older TDataset (277) implementations to store date/time values. Newer implementations use the TDateTime. This type should no longer be used.

```
TDBDatasetClass = Class of TDBDataset
```

TDBDatasetClass is the class pointer for TDBDataset (319)

```
TDBTransactionClass = Class of TDBTransaction
```

TDBTransactionClass is the class pointer for the TDBTransaction (320) class.

```
TFieldAttribute = (faHiddenCol, faReadOnly, faRequired, faLink, faUnNamed,
faFixed)
```

Table 10.7: Enumeration values for type TFieldAttribute

Value	Explanation
faFixed	Fixed length field
faHiddenCol	Field is a hidden column (used to construct a unique key)
faLink	Field is a link field for other datasets
faReadOnly	Field is read-only
faRequired	Field is required
faUnNamed	Field has no original name

TFieldAttribute is used to denote some attributes of a field in a database. It is used in the Attributes (352) property of TFieldDef (349).

TFieldAttributes = Set of TFieldAttribute

TFieldAttributes is used in the TFieldDef.Attributes (352) property to denote additional attributes of the underlying field.

TFieldChars = Set of Char

TFieldChars is a type used in the TField.ValidChars (340) property. It's a simple set of characters.

TFieldClass = Class of TField

TFieldGetTextEvent = procedure(Sender: TField; var aText: string;
DisplayText: Boolean) of object

TFieldGetTextEvent is the prototype for the TField.OnGetText (348) event handler. It should be used when the text of a field requires special formatting. The event handler should return the contents of the field in formatted form in the AText parameter. The DisplayText is True if the text is used for displaying purposes or is False if it will be used for editing purposes.

TFieldKind = (fkData, fkCalculated, fkLookup, fkInternalCalc)

Table 10.8: Enumeration values for type TFieldKind

Value	Explanation
fkCalculated	The field is calculated on the fly.
fkData	Field represents actual data in the underlying data structure.
fkInternalCalc	Field is calculated but stored in an underlying buffer.
fkLookup	The field is a lookup field.

TFieldKind indicates the type of a TField instance. Besides TField instances that represent fields present in the underlying data records, there can also be calculated or lookup fields. To distinguish between these kind of fields, TFieldKind is introduced.

TFieldKinds = Set of TFieldKind

TFieldKinds is a set of TFieldKind (233) values. It is used internally by the classes of the DB unit.

TFieldMap = Array[TFieldType] of Byte

TFieldMap is no longer used.

TFieldNotifyEvent = procedure(Sender: TField) of object

TFieldNotifyEvent is a prototype for the event handlers in the TField (325) class. Its Sender parameter is the field instance that triggered the event.

TFieldRef = ^TField

Pointer to a TField instance

TFieldSetTextEvent = procedure(Sender: TField; const aText: string)
of object

TFieldSetTextEvent is the prototype for an event handler used to set the contents of a field based on a user-edited text. It should be used when the text of a field is entered with special formatting. The event handler should set the contents of the field based on the formatted text in the AText parameter.

TFieldType = (ftUnknown, ftString, ftSmallint, ftInteger, ftWord, ftBoolean,
ftFloat, ftCurrency, ftBCD, ftDate, ftTime, ftDateTime, ftBytes,
ftVarBytes, ftAutoInc, ftBlob, ftMemo, ftGraphic, ftFmtMemo,
ftParadoxOle, ftDBaseOle, ftTypedBinary, ftCursor,
ftFixedChar, ftWideString, ftLargeint, ftADT, ftArray,
ftReference, ftDataSet, ftOraBlob, ftOraClob, ftVariant,
ftInterface, ftIDispatch, ftGuid, ftTimeStamp, ftFMTBcd,
ftFixedWideChar, ftWideMemo)

Table 10.9: Enumeration values for type TFieldType

Value	Explanation
ftADT	ADT value
ftArray	Array data
ftAutoInc	Auto-increment integer value (4 bytes)
ftBCD	Binary Coded Decimal value (DECIMAL and NUMERIC SQL types)
ftBlob	Binary data value (no type, no size)
ftBoolean	Boolean value
ftBytes	Array of bytes value, fixed size (untyped)
ftCurrency	Currency value (4 decimal points)
ftCursor	Cursor data value (no size)
ftDataSet	Dataset data (blob)
ftDate	Date value
ftDateTime	Date/Time (timestamp) value
ftDBaseOle	Paradox OLE field data
ftFixedChar	Fixed character array (string)
ftFixedWideChar	Fixed wide character data (2 bytes per character)
ftFloat	Floating point value (double)
ftFMTBcd	Formatted BCD (Binary Coded Decimal) value.
ftFmtMemo	Formatted memo ata value (no size)
ftGraphic	Graphical data value (no size)
ftGuid	GUID data value
ftIDispatch	Dispatch data value
ftInteger	Regular integer value (4 bytes, signed)
ftInterface	interface data value
ftLargeint	Large integer value (8-byte)
ftMemo	Binary text data (no size)
ftOraBlob	Oracle BLOB data
ftOraClob	Oracle CLOB data
ftParadoxOle	Paradox OLE field data (no size)
ftReference	Reference data
ftSmallint	Small integer value(1 byte, signed)
ftString	String data value (ansistring)
ftTime	Time value
ftTimeStamp	Timestamp data value
ftTypedBinary	Binary typed data (no size)
ftUnknown	Unknown data type
ftVarBytes	Array of bytes value, variable size (untyped)
ftVariant	Variant data value
ftWideMemo	Widestring memo data
ftWideString	Widestring (2 bytes per character)
ftWord	Word-sized value(2 bytes, unsigned)

TFieldType indicates the type of a TField (325) underlying data, in the DataType (337) property.

TFilterOption = (foCaseInsensitive, foNoPartialCompare)

Table 10.10: Enumeration values for type TFilterOption

Value	Explanation
foCaseInsensitive	Filter case insensitively.
foNoPartialCompare	Do not compare values partially, always compare completely.

TFilterOption enumerates the various options available when filtering a dataset. The TFilterOptions (236) set is used in the TDataset.FilterOptions (304) property to indicate which of the options should be used when filtering the data.

TFilterOptions = Set of TFilterOption

TFilterOption is the set of filter options to use when filtering a dataset. This set type is used in the TDataset.FilterOptions (304) property. The available values are described in the TFilterOption (235) type.

TFilterRecordEvent = procedure (DataSet: TDataSet; var Accept: Boolean) of object

TFilterRecordEvent is the prototype for the TDataset.OnFilterRecord (312) event handler. The DataSet parameter indicates which dataset triggered the event, and the Accept parameter must be set to true if the current record should be shown, False should be used when the record should be hidden.

TGetMode = (gmCurrent, gmNext, gmPrior)

Table 10.11: Enumeration values for type TGetMode

Value	Explanation
gmCurrent	Retrieve the current record
gmNext	Retrieve the next record.
gmPrior	Retrieve the previous record.

TGetMode is used internally by TDataset (277) when it needs to fetch more data for its buffers (using GetRecord). It tells the descendent dataset what operation must be performed.

TGetResult = (grOK, grBOF, grEOF, grError)

Table 10.12: Enumeration values for type TGetResult

Value	Explanation
grBOF	The beginning of the recordset is reached
grEOF	The end of the recordset is reached.
grError	An error occurred
grOK	The operation was completed successfully

TGetResult is used by descendents of TDataset (277) when they have to communicate the result of the GetRecord operation back to the TDataset record.

```
TIndexOption = (ixPrimary, ixUnique, ixDescending, ixCaseInsensitive,
                ixExpression, ixNonMaintained)
```

Table 10.13: Enumeration values for type TIndexOption

Value	Explanation
ixCaseInsensitive	The values in the index are sorted case-insensitively
ixDescending	The values in the index are sorted descending.
ixExpression	The values in the index are based on a calculated expression.
ixNonMaintained	The index is non-maintained, i.e. changing the data will not update the index.
ixPrimary	The index is the primary index for the data
ixUnique	The index is a unique index, i.e. each index value can occur only once

TIndexOption describes the various properties that an index can have. It is used in the TIndexOptions (237) set type to describe all properties of an index definition as in TIndexDef (367).

```
TIndexOptions = Set of TIndexOption
```

TIndexOptions contains the set of properties that an index can have. It is used in the TIndexDef.Options (369) property to describe all properties of an index definition as in TIndexDef (367).

```
TLocateOption = (loCaseInsensitive, loPartialKey)
```

Table 10.14: Enumeration values for type TLocateOption

Value	Explanation
loCaseInsensitive	Perform a case-insensitive search
loPartialKey	Accept partial key matches for string fields

TLocateOption is used in the TDataset.Locate (292) call to enumerate the possible options available when locating a record in the dataset.

For string-type fields, this option indicates that fields starting with the search value are considered a match. For other fields (e.g. integer, date/time), this option is ignored and only equal field values are considered a match.

```
TLocateOptions = Set of TLocateOption
```

TLocateOptions is used in the TDataset.Locate (292) call: It should contain the actual options to use when locating a record in the dataset.

```
TLoginEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject; Username: string;
                        Password: string) of object
```

TLoginEvent is the prototype for a the the TCustomConnection.OnLogin (267) event handler. It gets passed the TCustomConnection instance that is trying to login, and the initial username and password.

```

TLookupListRec = record
  Key : Variant;
  Value : Variant;
end

```

TLookupListRec is used by lookup fields to store lookup results, if the results should be cached. Its two fields keep the key value and associated lookup value.

```
TParamBinding = Array of Integer
```

TParamBinding is an auxiliary type used when parsing and binding parameters in SQL statements. It should never be used directly in application code.

```
TParamStyle = (psInterbase, psPostgreSQL, psSimulated)
```

Table 10.15: Enumeration values for type TParamStyle

Value	Explanation
psInterbase	Parameters are specified by a ? character
psPostgreSQL	Parameters are specified by a \$N character.
psSimulated	Parameters are specified by a \$N character.

TParamStyle denotes the style in which parameters are specified in a query. It is used in the TParams.ParseSQL (400) method, and can have the following values:

psInterbase Parameters are specified by a ? character

psPostgreSQL Parameters are specified by a \$N character.

psSimulated Parameters are specified by a \$N character.

```
TParamType = (ptUnknown, ptInput, ptOutput, ptInputOutput, ptResult)
```

Table 10.16: Enumeration values for type TParamType

Value	Explanation
ptInput	Input parameter
ptInputOutput	Input/output parameter
ptOutput	Output parameter, filled on result
ptResult	Result parameter
ptUnknown	Unknown type

TParamType indicates the kind of parameter represented by a TParam (385) instance. it has one of the following values:

ptUnknown Unknown type

ptInput Input parameter

ptOutput Output paramete, filled on result

ptInputOutput Input/output parameter

ptResult Result parameter

`TParamTypes = Set of TParamType`

`TParamTypes` is defined for completeness: a set of `TParamType` (238) values.

`TProviderFlag = (pfInUpdate, pfInWhere, pfInKey, pfHidden)`

Table 10.17: Enumeration values for type `TProviderFlag`

Value	Explanation
<code>pfHidden</code>	
<code>pfInKey</code>	Field is a key field and used in the WHERE clause of an update statement
<code>pfInUpdate</code>	Changes to the field should be propagated to the database.
<code>pfInWhere</code>	Field should be used in the WHERE clause of an update statement in case of <code>upWhereChanged</code> .

`TProviderFlag` describes how the field should be used when applying updates from a dataset to the database. Each field of a `TDataset` (277) has one or more of these flags.

`TProviderFlags = Set of TProviderFlag`

`TProviderFlags` is used for the `TField.ProviderFlags` (346) property to describe the role of the field when applying updates to a database.

`TPSCommandType = (ctUnknown, ctQuery, ctTable, ctStoredProc, ctSelect, ctInsert, ctUpdate, ctDelete, ctDDL)`

Table 10.18: Enumeration values for type `TPSCommandType`

Value	Explanation
<code>ctDDL</code>	
<code>ctDelete</code>	
<code>ctInsert</code>	
<code>ctQuery</code>	
<code>ctSelect</code>	
<code>ctStoredProc</code>	
<code>ctTable</code>	
<code>ctUnknown</code>	
<code>ctUpdate</code>	

`TRecordBuffer = PAnsiChar`

`TRecordBufferBaseType = AnsiChar`


```
TResolverResponse = (rrSkip, rrAbort, rrMerge, rrApply, rrIgnore)
```

Table 10.19: Enumeration values for type TResolverResponse

Value	Explanation
rrAbort	Abor the whole update process
rrApply	Replace the update with new values applied by the event handler
rrIgnore	Ignore the error and remove update from change log
rrMerge	Merge the update with existing changes on the server
rrSkip	Skip the current update, leave it in the change log

TResolverResponse is used to indicate what should happen to a pending change that could not be resolved. It is used in callbacks.

```
TResyncMode= Set of (rmExact, rmCenter)
```

Table 10.20: Enumeration values for type

Value	Explanation
rmCenter	Try to position the cursor in the middle of the buffer
rmExact	Reposition at exact the same location in the buffer

TResyncMode is used internally by various TDataset (277) navigation and data manipulation methods such as the TDataset.Refresh (295) method when they need to reset the cursor position in the dataset's buffer.

```
TStringFieldBuffer = Array[0..dsMaxStringSize] of Char
```

Type to access string field content buffers as an array of characters

```
TUpdateAction = (uaFail, uaAbort, uaSkip, uaRetry, uaApplied)
```

Table 10.21: Enumeration values for type TUpdateAction

Value	Explanation
uaAbort	The whole update operation should abort
uaApplied	Consider the update as applied
uaFail	Update operation should fail
uaRetry	Retry the update operation
uaSkip	The update of the current record should be skipped. (but not discarded)

TUpdateAction indicates what action must be taken in case the applying of updates on the underlying database fails. This type is not used in the TDataset (277) class, but is defined on behalf of TDataset descendents that implement caching of updates: It indicates what should be done when the (delayed) applying of the updates fails. This event occurs long after the actual post or delete operation.

TUpdateKind = (ukModify, ukInsert, ukDelete)

Table 10.22: Enumeration values for type TUpdateKind

Value	Explanation
ukDelete	Delete a record in the database.
ukInsert	insert a new record in the database.
ukModify	Modify an existing record in the database.

TUpdateKind indicates what kind of update operation is in progress when applying updates.

TUpdateMode = (upWhereAll, upWhereChanged, upWhereKeyOnly)

Table 10.23: Enumeration values for type TUpdateMode

Value	Explanation
upWhereAll	Use all old field values
upWhereChanged	Use only old field values of modified fields
upWhereKeyOnly	Only use key fields in the where clause.

TUpdateMode determines how the WHERE clause of update queries for SQL databases should be constructed.

TUpdateStatus = (usUnmodified, usModified, usInserted, usDeleted)

Table 10.24: Enumeration values for type TUpdateStatus

Value	Explanation
usDeleted	Record exists in the database, but is locally deleted.
usInserted	Record does not yet exist in the database, but is locally inserted
usModified	Record exists in the database but is locally modified
usUnmodified	Record is unmodified

TUpdateStatus determines the current state of the record buffer, if updates have not yet been applied to the database.

TUpdateStatusSet = Set of TUpdateStatus

TUpdateStatusSet is a set of TUpdateStatus (241) values.

10.4 Procedures and functions

10.4.1 BuffersEqual

Synopsis: Check whether 2 memory buffers are equal

Declaration: `function BuffersEqual (Buf1: Pointer; Buf2: Pointer; Size: Integer)
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `BuffersEqual` compares the memory areas pointed to by the `Buf1` and `Buf2` pointers and returns `True` if the contents are equal. The memory areas are compared for the first `Size` bytes. If all bytes in the indicated areas are equal, then `True` is returned, otherwise `False` is returned.

Errors: If `Buf1` or `Buf2` do not point to a valid memory area or `Size` is too large, then an exception may occur

See also: `#rtl.sysutils.Comparemem` (??)

10.4.2 DatabaseError

Synopsis: Raise an `EDatabaseError` exception.

Declaration: `procedure DatabaseError (const Msg: string); Overload
procedure DatabaseError (const Msg: string; Comp: TComponent); Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `DatabaseError` raises an `EDatabaseError` (244) exception, passing it `Msg`. If `Comp` is specified, the name of the component is prepended to the message.

See also: `DatabaseErrorFmt` (242), `EDatabaseError` (244)

10.4.3 DatabaseErrorFmt

Synopsis: Raise an `EDatabaseError` exception with a formatted message

Declaration: `procedure DatabaseErrorFmt (const Fmt: string; Args: Array of const)
; Overload
procedure DatabaseErrorFmt (const Fmt: string; Args: Array of const;
Comp: TComponent); Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `DatabaseErrorFmt` raises an `EDatabaseError` (244) exception, passing it a message made by calling `#rtl.sysutils.format` (??) with the `fmt` and `Args` arguments. If `Comp` is specified, the name of the component is prepended to the message.

See also: `DatabaseError` (242), `EDatabaseError` (244)

10.4.4 DateTimeRecToDateTime

Synopsis: Convert `TDateTimeRec` record to a `TDateTime` value.

Declaration: `function DateTimeRecToDateTime (DT: TFieldType; Data: TDateTimeRec)
: TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `DateTimeRecToDateTime` examines `Data` and `Dt` and uses `dt` to convert the timestamp in `Data` to a `TDateTime` value.

See also: `TFieldType` (234), `TDateTimeRec` (232), `DateTimeToDateTimeRec` (243)

10.4.5 DateTimeToDateTimeRec

Synopsis: Convert `TDateTime` value to a `TDateTimeRec` record.

Declaration: `function DateTimeToDateTimeRec(DT: TFieldType; Data: TDateTime)
: TDateTimeRec`

Visibility: default

Description: `DateTimeToDateTimeRec` examines `Data` and `Dt` and uses `dt` to convert the date/time value in `Data` to a `TDateTimeRec` record.

See also: `TFieldType` (234), `TDateTimeRec` (232), `DateTimeRecToDateTime` (242)

10.4.6 DisposeMem

Synopsis: Dispose of a heap memory block and `Nil` the pointer (deprecated)

Declaration: `procedure DisposeMem(var Buffer; Size: Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DisposeMem` disposes of the heap memory area pointed to by `Buffer` (`Buffer` must be of type `Pointer`). The `Size` parameter indicates the size of the memory area (it is, in fact, ignored by the heap manager). The pointer `Buffer` is set to `Nil`. If `Buffer` is `Nil`, then nothing happens. Do not use `DisposeMem` on objects, because their destructor will not be called.

Errors: If `Buffer` is not pointing to a valid heap memory block, then memory corruption may occur.

See also: `#rtl.system.FreeMem` (??), `#rtl.sysutils.freeandnil` (??)

10.4.7 ExtractFieldName

Synopsis: Extract the field name at position

Declaration: `function ExtractFieldName(const Fields: string; var Pos: Integer)
: string`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExtractFieldName` returns the string starting at position `Pos` till the next semicolon (;) character or the end of the string. On return, `Pos` contains the position of the first character after the semicolon character (or one more than the length of the string).

See also: `TFields.GetFieldList` (355)

10.4.8 SkipComments

Synopsis: Skip SQL comments

Declaration: `function SkipComments(var p: PChar; EscapeSlash: Boolean;
EscapeRepeat: Boolean) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SkipComments` examines the null-terminated string in `P` and skips any SQL comment or string literal found at the start. It returns `P` the first non-comment or non-string literal position. The `EscapeSlash` parameter determines whether the backslash character (`\`) functions as an escape character (i.e. the following character is not considered a delimiter). `EscapeRepeat` must be set to `True` if the quote character is repeated to indicate itself.

The function returns `True` if a comment was found and skipped, `False` otherwise.

Errors: No checks are done on the validity of `P`.

See also: `TParams.ParseSQL` ([400](#))

10.5 EDatabaseError

10.5.1 Description

`EDatabaseError` is the base class from which database-related exception classes should derive. It is raised by the `DatabaseError` ([242](#)) call.

See also: `DatabaseError` ([242](#)), `DatabaseErrorFmt` ([242](#))

10.6 EUpdateError

10.6.1 Description

`EupdateError` is an exception used by the `TProvider` database support. It should never be raised directly.

See also: `EDatabaseError` ([244](#))

10.6.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
244	Create	Create a new <code>EUpdateError</code> instance
245	Destroy	Free the <code>EupdateError</code> instance

10.6.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
245	Context	r	Context in which exception occurred.
245	ErrorCode	r	Numerical error code.
245	OriginalException	r	
246	PreviousError	r	Previous error number

10.6.4 EUpdateError.Create

Synopsis: Create a new `EUpdateError` instance

Declaration: `constructor Create(NativeError: string; Context: string; ErrCode: Integer; PrevError: Integer; E: Exception)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Create instantiates a new `EUpdateError` object and populates the various properties with the `NativeError`, `Context`, `ErrCode` and `PrevError` parameters. The `E` parameter is the actual exception that occurred while the update operation was attempted. The exception object `E` will be freed if the `EUpdateError` instance is freed.

See also: `EDatabaseError` ([244](#))

10.6.5 `EUpdateError.Destroy`

Synopsis: Free the `EupdateError` instance

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` frees the original exception object (if there was one) and then calls the inherited destructor.

Errors: If the original exception object was already freed, an error will occur.

See also: `EUpdateError.OriginalException` ([245](#))

10.6.6 `EUpdateError.Context`

Synopsis: Context in which exception occurred.

Declaration: `Property Context : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: A description of the context in which the original exception was raised.

See also: `EUpdateError.OriginalException` ([245](#)), `EUpdateError.ErrorCode` ([245](#)), `EUpdateError.PreviousError` ([246](#))

10.6.7 `EUpdateError.ErrorCode`

Synopsis: Numerical error code.

Declaration: `Property ErrorCode : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `ErrorCode` is a numerical error code, provided by the native data access layer, to describe the error. It may or not be filled.

See also: `EUpdateError.OriginalException` ([245](#)), `EUpdateError.Context` ([245](#)), `EUpdateError.PreviousError` ([246](#))

10.6.8 `EUpdateError.OriginalException`

Declaration: `Property OriginalException : Exception`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

10.6.9 EUpdateError.PreviousError

Synopsis: Previous error number

Declaration: `Property PreviousError : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `PreviousError` is used to order the errors which occurred during an update operation.

See also: `EUpdateError.ErrorCode` (245), `EUpdateError.Context` (245), `EUpdateError.OriginalException` (245)

10.7 IProviderSupport

10.7.1 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
246	<code>PSEndTransaction</code>	
246	<code>PSExecute</code>	
247	<code>PSExecuteStatement</code>	
247	<code>PSGetAttributes</code>	
247	<code>PSGetCommandText</code>	
247	<code>PSGetCommandType</code>	
247	<code>PSGetDefaultOrder</code>	
247	<code>PSGetIndexDefs</code>	
247	<code>PSGetKeyFields</code>	
247	<code>PSGetParams</code>	
247	<code>PSGetQuoteChar</code>	
248	<code>PSGetTableName</code>	
248	<code>PSGetUpdateException</code>	
248	<code>PSInTransaction</code>	
248	<code>PSIsSQLBased</code>	
248	<code>PSIsSQLSupported</code>	
248	<code>PSReset</code>	
248	<code>PSSetCommandText</code>	
248	<code>PSSetParams</code>	
248	<code>PSStartTransaction</code>	
249	<code>PSUpdateRecord</code>	

10.7.2 IProviderSupport.PSEndTransaction

Declaration: `procedure PSEndTransaction(ACommit: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

10.7.3 IProviderSupport.PSExecute

Declaration: `procedure PSExecute`

Visibility: default

10.7.4 IProviderSupport.PSExecuteStatement

Declaration: `function PSExecuteStatement(const ASQL: string; AParams: TParams;
ResultSet: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

10.7.5 IProviderSupport.PSGetAttributes

Declaration: `procedure PSGetAttributes(List: TList)`

Visibility: default

10.7.6 IProviderSupport.PSGetCommandText

Declaration: `function PSGetCommandText : string`

Visibility: default

10.7.7 IProviderSupport.PSGetCommandType

Declaration: `function PSGetCommandType : TPSCommandType`

Visibility: default

10.7.8 IProviderSupport.PSGetDefaultOrder

Declaration: `function PSGetDefaultOrder : TIndexDef`

Visibility: default

10.7.9 IProviderSupport.PSGetIndexDefs

Declaration: `function PSGetIndexDefs(IndexTypes: TIndexOptions) : TIndexDefs`

Visibility: default

10.7.10 IProviderSupport.PSGetKeyFields

Declaration: `function PSGetKeyFields : string`

Visibility: default

10.7.11 IProviderSupport.PSGetParams

Declaration: `function PSGetParams : TParams`

Visibility: default

10.7.12 IProviderSupport.PSGetQuoteChar

Declaration: `function PSGetQuoteChar : string`

Visibility: default

10.7.13 IProviderSupport.PSGetTableName

Declaration: `function PSGetTableName : string`

Visibility: default

10.7.14 IProviderSupport.PSGetUpdateException

Declaration: `function PSGetUpdateException(E: Exception; Prev: EUpdateError)
: EUpdateError`

Visibility: default

10.7.15 IProviderSupport.PSInTransaction

Declaration: `function PSInTransaction : Boolean`

Visibility: default

10.7.16 IProviderSupport.PSIsSQLBased

Declaration: `function PSIsSQLBased : Boolean`

Visibility: default

10.7.17 IProviderSupport.PSIsSQLSupported

Declaration: `function PSIsSQLSupported : Boolean`

Visibility: default

10.7.18 IProviderSupport.PSReset

Declaration: `procedure PSReset`

Visibility: default

10.7.19 IProviderSupport.PSSetCommandText

Declaration: `procedure PSSetCommandText(const CommandText: string)`

Visibility: default

10.7.20 IProviderSupport.PSSetParams

Declaration: `procedure PSSetParams(AParams: TParams)`

Visibility: default

10.7.21 IProviderSupport.PSStartTransaction

Declaration: `procedure PSStartTransaction`

Visibility: default

10.7.22 IProviderSupport.PSUpdateRecord

Declaration: `function PSUpdateRecord(UpdateKind: TUpdateKind; Delta: TDataSet)
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

10.8 TAutoIncField

10.8.1 Description

`TAutoIncField` is the class created when a dataset must manage 32-bit signed integer data, of datatype `ftAutoInc`. This field gets its data automatically by the database engine. It exposes no new properties, but simply overrides some methods to manage 32-bit signed integer data.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TAutoIncField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each auto-incremental field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TField` ([325](#))

10.8.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
249	Create	Create a new instance of the <code>TAutoIncField</code> class.

10.8.3 TAutoIncField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TAutoIncField` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TAutoIncField` class. It simply calls the inherited constructor and then sets up some of the `TField` ([325](#)) class' fields.

See also: `TField` ([325](#))

10.9 TBCDField

10.9.1 Description

`TBCDField` is the class used when a dataset must manage data of Binary Coded Decimal type. (`TField.DataType` ([337](#)) equals `ftBCD`). It initializes some of the properties of the `TField` ([325](#)) class, and overrides some of its methods to be able to work with BCD fields.

`TBCDField` assumes that the field's contents can be stored in a currency type, i.e. the maximum number of decimals after the decimal separator that can be stored in a `TBCDField` is 4. Fields that need to store a larger amount of decimals should be represented by a `TFMTBCDField` ([364](#)) instance.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TBCDField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each BCD field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TDataSet` ([277](#)), `TField` ([325](#)), `TFMTBCDField` ([364](#))

10.9.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
250	CheckRange	Check whether a values falls within the allowed range
250	Create	Create a new instance of a <code>TBCDField</code> class.

10.9.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
251	Currency	rw	Does the field represent a currency amount
251	MaxValue	rw	Maximum value for the field
252	MinValue	rw	Minimum value for the field
251	Precision	rw	Precision of the BCD field
252	Size		Number of decimals after the decimal separator
250	Value	rw	Value of the field contents as a Currency type

10.9.4 TBCDField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of a `TBCDField` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TBCDField` class. It calls the inherited destructor, and then sets some `TField` ([325](#)) properties to configure the instance for working with BCD data values.

See also: `TField` ([325](#))

10.9.5 TBCDField.CheckRange

Synopsis: Check whether a values falls within the allowed range

Declaration: `function CheckRange(AValue: Currency) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CheckRange` returns `True` if `AValue` lies within the range defined by the `MinValue` ([252](#)) and `MaxValue` ([251](#)) properties. If the value lies outside of the allowed range, then `False` is returned.

See also: `MaxValue` ([251](#)), `MinValue` ([252](#))

10.9.6 TBCDField.Value

Synopsis: Value of the field contents as a Currency type

Declaration: `Property Value : Currency`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Value` is overridden from the `TField.Value` ([341](#)) property to a currency type field. It returns the same value as the `TField.AsCurrency` ([332](#)) field.

See also: `TField.Value` ([341](#)), `TField.AsCurrency` ([332](#))

10.9.7 TBCDField.Precision

Synopsis: Precision of the BCD field

Declaration: `Property Precision : LongInt`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Precision` is the total number of decimals in the BCD value. It is not the same as `TBCDField.Size` (252), which is the number of decimals after the decimal point. The `Precision` property should be set by the descendent classes when they initialize the field, and should be considered read-only. Changing the value will influence the values returned by the various `AsXXX` properties.

See also: `TBCDField.Size` (252), `TBCDField.Value` (250)

10.9.8 TBCDField.Currency

Synopsis: Does the field represent a currency amount

Declaration: `Property Currency : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Currency` can be set to `True` to indicate that the field contains data representing an amount of currency. This affects the way the `TField.DisplayText` (337) and `TField.Text` (340) properties format the value of the field: if the `Currency` property is `True`, then these properties will format the value as a currency value (generally appending the currency sign) and if the `Currency` property is `False`, then they will format it as a normal floating-point value.

See also: `TField.DisplayText` (337), `TField.Text` (340)

10.9.9 TBCDField.MaxValue

Synopsis: Maximum value for the field

Declaration: `Property MaxValue : Currency`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `MaxValue` can be set to a value different from zero, it is then the maximum value for the field if set to any value different from zero. When setting the field's value, the value may not be larger than `MaxValue`. Any attempt to write a larger value as the field's content will result in an exception. By default `MaxValue` equals 0, i.e. any floating-point value is allowed.

If `MaxValue` is set, `MinValue` (252) should also be set, because it will also be checked.

See also: `TBCDField.MinValue` (252), `TBCDField.CheckRange` (250)

10.9.10 TBCDField.MinValue

Synopsis: Minimum value for the field

Declaration: `Property MinValue : Currency`

Visibility: published

Access: Read, Write

Description: `MinValue` can be set to a value different from zero, then it is the minimum value for the field.

When setting the field's value, the value may not be less than `MinValue`. Any attempt to write a smaller value as the field's content will result in an exception. By default `MinValue` equals 0, i.e. any floating-point value is allowed.

If `MinValue` is set, `TBCDField.MaxValue` (251) should also be set, because it will also be checked.

See also: `TBCDField.MaxValue` (251), `TBCDField.CheckRange` (250)

10.9.11 TBCDField.Size

Synopsis: Number of decimals after the decimal separator

Declaration: `Property Size :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Size` is the number of decimals after the decimal separator. It is not the total number of decimals, which is stored in the `TBCDField.Precision` (251) field.

See also: `TBCDField.Precision` (251)

10.10 TBinaryField

10.10.1 Description

`TBinaryField` is an abstract class, designed to handle binary data of variable size. It overrides some of the properties and methods of the `TField` (325) class to be able to work with binary field data, such as retrieving the contents as a string or as a variant.

One must never create an instance of `TBinaryField` manually, it is an abstract class. Instead, a descendent class such as `TBytesField` (259) or `TVarBytesField` (406) should be created.

See also: `TDataset` (277), `TField` (325), `TBytesField` (259), `TVarBytesField` (406)

10.10.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
253	Create	Create a new instance of a <code>TBinaryField</code> class.

10.10.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
253	Size		Size of the binary data

10.10.4 TBinaryField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of a TBinaryField class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the TBinaryField class. It simply calls the inherited destructor.

See also: TField (325)

10.10.5 TBinaryField.Size

Synopsis: Size of the binary data

Declaration: `Property Size :`

Visibility: `published`

Access:

Description: `Size` is simply redeclared published with a default value of 16.

See also: TField.Size (340)

10.11 TBlobField

10.11.1 Description

TBlobField is the class used when a dataset must manage BLOB data. (TField.DataType (337) equals `ftBLOB`). It initializes some of the properties of the TField (325) class, and overrides some of its methods to be able to work with BLOB fields. It also serves as parent class for some specialized blob-like field types such as TMemoField (381), TWideMemoField (407) or TGraphicField (366)

It should never be necessary to create an instance of TBlobField manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each BLOB field when a dataset is opened.

See also: TDataSet (277), TField (325), TMemoField (381), TWideMemoField (407), TGraphicField (366)

10.11.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
254	<code>Clear</code>	Clear the BLOB field's contents
254	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of a TBlobField class.
254	<code>IsBlob</code>	Is the field a blob field
254	<code>LoadFromFile</code>	Load the contents of the field from a file
255	<code>LoadFromStream</code>	Load the field's contents from stream
255	<code>SaveToFile</code>	Save field contents to a file
255	<code>SaveToStream</code>	Save the field's contents to stream
256	<code>SetFieldType</code>	Set field type

10.11.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
256	BlobSize	r	Size of the current blob
257	BlobType	rw	Type of blob
256	Modified	rw	Has the field's contents been modified.
257	Size		Size of the blob field
257	Transliterate	rw	Should the contents of the field be transliterated
256	Value	rw	Return the field's contents as a string

10.11.4 TBlobField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of a TBlobField class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the TBlobField class. It calls the inherited destructor, and then sets some TField ([325](#)) properties to configure the instance for working with BLOB data.

See also: TField ([325](#))

10.11.5 TBlobField.Clear

Synopsis: Clear the BLOB field's contents

Declaration: `procedure Clear; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` overrides the TField implementation of TField.Clear ([329](#)). It creates and immediately releases an empty blob stream in write mode, effectively clearing the contents of the BLOB field.

See also: TField.Clear ([329](#)), TField.IsNull ([339](#))

10.11.6 TBlobField.IsBlob

Synopsis: Is the field a blob field

Declaration: `class function IsBlob; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `IsBlob` is overridden by TBlobField to return `True`

See also: TField.IsBlob ([330](#))

10.11.7 TBlobField.LoadFromFile

Synopsis: Load the contents of the field from a file

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromFile(const FileName: string)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `LoadFromFile` creates a file stream with `FileName` as the name of the file to open, en then calls `LoadFromStream` (255) to read the contents of the blob field from the file. The file is opened in read-only mode.

Errors: If the file does not exist or is nor available for reading, an exception will be raised.

See also: `LoadFromStream` (255), `SaveToFile` (255)

10.11.8 TBlobField.LoadFromStream

Synopsis: Load the field's contents from stream

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromStream(Stream: TStream)`

Visibility: public

Description: `LoadFromStream` can be used to load the contents of the field from a `TStream` (??) descendent. The entire data of the stream will be copied, and the stream will be positioned on the first byte of data, so it must be seekable.

Errors: If the stream is not seekable, an exception will be raised.

See also: `SaveToStream` (255), `LoadFromFile` (254)

10.11.9 TBlobField.SaveToFile

Synopsis: Save field contents to a file

Declaration: `procedure SaveToFile(const FileName: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: `SaveToFile` creates a file stream with `FileName` as the name of the file to open, en then calls `SaveToStream` (255) to write the contents of the blob field to the file. The file is opened in write mode and is created if it does not yet exist.

Errors: If the file cannot be created or is not available for writing, an exception will be raised.

See also: `LoadFromFile` (254), `SaveToStream` (255)

10.11.10 TBlobField.SaveToStream

Synopsis: Save the field's contents to stream

Declaration: `procedure SaveToStream(Stream: TStream)`

Visibility: public

Description: `SaveToStream` can be used to save the contents of the field to a `TStream` (??) descendent. The entire data of the field will be copied. The stream must of course support writing.

Errors: If the stream is not writable, an exception will be raised.

See also: `SaveToFile` (255), `LoadFromStream` (255)

10.11.11 TBlobField.SetFieldType

Synopsis: Set field type

Declaration: `procedure SetFieldType(AValue: TFieldType);` Override

Visibility: public

Description: `SetFieldType` is overridden by `TBlobField` to check whether a valid Blob field type is set. If so, it calls the inherited method.

See also: `TField.DataType` ([337](#))

10.11.12 TBlobField.BlobSize

Synopsis: Size of the current blob

Declaration: `Property BlobSize : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `BlobSize` is the size (in bytes) of the current contents of the field. It will vary as the dataset's current record moves from record to record.

See also: `TField.Size` ([340](#)), `TField.DataSize` ([336](#))

10.11.13 TBlobField.Modified

Synopsis: Has the field's contents been modified.

Declaration: `Property Modified : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Modified` indicates whether the field's contents have been modified for the current record.

See also: `TBlobField.LoadFromStream` ([255](#))

10.11.14 TBlobField.Value

Synopsis: Return the field's contents as a string

Declaration: `Property Value : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Value` is redefined by `TBlobField` as a string value: getting or setting this value will convert the BLOB data to a string, it will return the same value as the `TField.AsString` ([334](#)) property.

See also: `TField.Value` ([341](#)), `TField.AsString` ([334](#))

10.11.15 TBlobField.Transliterate

Synopsis: Should the contents of the field be transliterated

Declaration: `Property Transliterate : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Transliterate` indicates whether the contents of the field should be transliterated (i.e. changed from OEM to non OEM codepage and vice versa) when reading or writing the value. The actual transliteration must be done in the `TDataset.Translate` (296) method of the dataset to which the field belongs. By default this property is `False`, but it can be set to `True` for BLOB data which contains text in another codepage.

See also: `TStringField.Transliterate` (404), `TDataset.Translate` (296)

10.11.16 TBlobField.BlobType

Synopsis: Type of blob

Declaration: `Property BlobType : TBlobType`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `BlobType` is an alias for `TField.DataType` (337), but with a restricted set of values. Setting `BlobType` is equivalent to setting the `TField.DataType` (337) property.

See also: `TField.DataType` (337)

10.11.17 TBlobField.Size

Synopsis: Size of the blob field

Declaration: `Property Size :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Size` is the size of the blob in the internal memory buffer. It defaults to 0, as the BLOB data is not stored in the internal memory buffer. To get the size of the data in the current record, use the `BlobSize` (256) property instead.

See also: `BlobSize` (256)

10.12 TBooleanField

10.12.1 Description

`TBooleanField` is the field class used by `TDataset` (277) whenever it needs to manage boolean data (`TField.DataType` (337) equals `ftBoolean`). It overrides some properties and methods of `TField` (325) to be able to work with boolean data.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TBooleanField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each boolean field when a dataset is opened.

See also: [TDataSet \(277\)](#), [TField \(325\)](#)

10.12.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
258	Create	Create a new instance of the <code>TBooleanField</code> class.

10.12.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
258	DisplayValues	rw	Textual representation of the true and false values
258	Value	rw	Value of the field as a boolean value

10.12.4 TBooleanField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TBooleanField` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TBooleanField` class. It calls the inherited constructor and then sets some [TField \(325\)](#) properties to configure it for working with boolean values.

See also: [TField \(325\)](#)

10.12.5 TBooleanField.Value

Synopsis: Value of the field as a boolean value

Declaration: `Property Value : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Value` is redefined from [TField.Value \(341\)](#) by `TBooleanField` as a boolean value. It returns the same value as the [TField.AsBoolean \(332\)](#) property.

See also: [TField.AsBoolean \(332\)](#), [TField.Value \(341\)](#)

10.12.6 TBooleanField.DisplayValues

Synopsis: Textual representation of the true and false values

Declaration: `Property DisplayValues : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `DisplayValues` contains 2 strings, separated by a semicolon (;) which are used to display the `True` and `False` values of the fields. The first string is used for `True` values, the second value is used for `False` values. If only one value is given, it will serve as the representation of the `True` value, the `False` value will be represented as an empty string.

A value of `Yes`; `No` will result in `True` values being displayed as 'Yes', and `False` values as 'No'. When writing the value of the field as a string, the string will be compared (case insensitively) with the value for `True`, and if it matches, the field's value will be set to `True`. After this it will be compared to the value for `False`, and if it matches, the field's value will be set to `False`. If the text matches neither of the two values, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TField.AsString` (334), `TField.Text` (340)

10.13 TBytesField

10.13.1 Description

`TBytesField` is the class used when a dataset must manage data of fixed-size binary type. (`TField.DataType` (337) equals `ftBytes`). It initializes some of the properties of the `TField` (325) class to be able to work with fixed-size byte fields.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TBytesField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each binary data field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TDataset` (277), `TField` (325), `TVarBytesField` (406)

10.13.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
259	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of a <code>TBytesField</code> class.

10.13.3 TBytesField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of a `TBytesField` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TBytesField` class. It calls the inherited destructor, and then sets some `TField` (325) properties to configure the instance for working with binary data values.

See also: `TField` (325)

10.14 TCheckConstraint

10.14.1 Description

`TCheckConstraint` can be used to store the definition of a record-level constraint. It does not enforce the constraint, it only stores the constraint's definition. The constraint can come from several sources: an imported constraints from the database, usually stored in the `TCheckConstraint.ImportedConstraint` (261) property, or a constraint enforced by the user on a particular dataset instance stored in `TCheckConstraint.CustomConstraint` (260)

See also: `TCheckConstraints` (261), `TCheckConstraint.ImportedConstraint` (261), `TCheckConstraint.CustomConstraint` (260)

10.14.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
260	Assign	Assign one constraint to another

10.14.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
260	CustomConstraint	rw	User-defined constraint
260	ErrorMessage	rw	Message to display when the constraint is violated
261	FromDictionary	rw	True if the constraint is imported from a datadictionary
261	ImportedConstraint	rw	Constraint imported from the database engine

10.14.4 TCheckConstraint.Assign

Synopsis: Assign one constraint to another

Declaration: `procedure Assign(Source: TPersistent); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Assign is overridden by TCheckConstraint to copy all published properties if Source is also a TCheckConstraint instance.

Errors: If Source is not an instance of TCheckConstraint, an exception may be thrown.

See also: TCheckConstraint.ImportedConstraint ([261](#)), TCheckConstraint.CustomConstraint ([260](#))

10.14.5 TCheckConstraint.CustomConstraint

Synopsis: User-defined constraint

Declaration: `Property CustomConstraint : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: CustomConstraint is an SQL expression with an additional user-defined constraint. The expression should be enforced by a TDataset ([277](#)) descendent when data is posted to the dataset. If the constraint is violated, then the dataset should raise an exception, with message as specified in TCheckConstraint.ErrorMessage ([260](#))

See also: TCheckConstraint.ErrorMessage ([260](#))

10.14.6 TCheckConstraint.ErrorMessage

Synopsis: Message to display when the constraint is violated

Declaration: `Property ErrorMessage : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: ErrorMessage is used as the message when the dataset instance raises an exception if the constraint is violated.

See also: TCheckConstraint.CustomConstraint ([260](#))

10.14.7 TCheckConstraint.FromDictionary

Synopsis: True if the constraint is imported from a datadictionary

Declaration: `Property FromDictionary : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `FromDictionary` indicates whether a constraint is imported from a data dictionary. This can be set by `TDataset` (277) descendents to indicate the source of the constraint, but is otherwise ignored.

See also: `TCheckConstraint.ImportedConstraint` (261)

10.14.8 TCheckConstraint.ImportedConstraint

Synopsis: Constraint imported from the database engine

Declaration: `Property ImportedConstraint : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ImportedConstraint` is a constraint imported from the database engine: it will not be enforced locally by the `TDataset` (277) descendent.

See also: `TCheckConstraint.CustomConstraint` (260)

10.15 TCheckConstraints

10.15.1 Description

`TCheckConstraints` is a `TCollection` descendent which keeps a collection of `TCheckConstraint` (259) items. It overrides the `Add` (262) method to return a `TCheckConstraint` instance.

See also: `TCheckConstraint` (259)

10.15.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
262	Add	Add new <code>TCheckConstraint</code> item to the collection
262	Create	Create a new instance of the <code>TCheckConstraints</code> class.

10.15.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
262	Items	rw	Indexed access to the items in the collection

10.15.4 TCheckConstraints.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TCheckConstraints` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TPersistent)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TCheckConstraints` class. The `AOwner` argument is usually the `TDataset` (277) instance for which the data is managed. It is kept for future reference. After storing the owner, the inherited constructor is called with the `TCheckConstraint` (259) class pointer.

See also: `TCheckConstraint` (259), `TDataset` (277)

10.15.5 TCheckConstraints.Add

Synopsis: Add new `TCheckConstraint` item to the collection

Declaration: `function Add : TCheckConstraint`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Add` is overridden by `TCheckConstraint` to add a new `TCheckConstraint` (259) instance to the collection. it returns the newly added instance.

See also: `TCheckConstraint` (259), `#rtl.classes.TCollection.Add` (??)

10.15.6 TCheckConstraints.Items

Synopsis: Indexed access to the items in the collection

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: LongInt]: TCheckConstraint; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Items` is overridden by `TCheckConstraints` to provide type-safe access to the items in the collection. The `index` is zero-based, so it runs from 0 to `Count-1`.

See also: `#rtl.classes.TCollection.Items` (??)

10.16 TCurrencyField

10.16.1 Description

`TCurrencyField` is the field class used by `TDataset` (277) when it needs to manage currency-valued data. (`TField.Datatype` (337) equals `ftCurrency`). It simply sets some `Tfield` (325) properties to be able to work with currency data.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TCurrencyField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each currency field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TField` (325), `TDataset` (277)

10.16.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
263	Create	Create a new instance of a <code>TCurrencyField</code> .

10.16.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
263	Currency		Is the field a currency field

10.16.4 `TCurrencyField.Create`

Synopsis: Create a new instance of a `TCurrencyField`.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of `TCurrencyField`. It calls the inherited constructor and then sets some properties (`TCurrencyField.Currency` ([263](#))) to be able to work with currency data.

See also: `TField` ([325](#)), `TCurrencyField.Currency` ([263](#))

10.16.5 `TCurrencyField.Currency`

Synopsis: Is the field a currency field

Declaration: `Property Currency :`

Visibility: `published`

Access:

Description: `Currency` is inherited from `TFloatField.Currency` ([363](#)) but is initialized to `True` by the `TCurrencyField` constructor. It can be set to `False` if the contents of the field is of type currency, but does not represent an amount of currency.

See also: `TFloatField.Currency` ([363](#))

10.17 `TCustomConnection`

10.17.1 Description

`TCustomConnection` must be used for all database classes that need a connection to a server. The class introduces some methods and classes to activate the connection (`Open` ([264](#))) and to deactivate the connection (`TCustomConnection.Close` ([264](#))), plus a property to inspect the state (`Connected` ([265](#))) of the connected.

See also: `TCustomConnection.Open` ([264](#)), `TCustomConnection.Close` ([264](#)), `TCustomConnection.Connected` ([265](#))

10.17.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
264	Close	Close the connection
264	Destroy	Remove the <code>TCustomconnection</code> instance from memory
264	Open	Makes the connection to the server

10.17.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
266	AfterConnect	rw	Event triggered after a connection is made.
266	AfterDisconnect	rw	Event triggered after a connection is closed
266	BeforeConnect	rw	Event triggered before a connection is made.
267	BeforeDisconnect	rw	Event triggered before a connection is closed
265	Connected	rw	Is the connection established or not
265	DataSetCount	r	Number of datasets connected to this connection
265	DataSets	r	Datasets linked to this connection
266	LoginPrompt	rw	Should the OnLogin be triggered
267	OnLogin	rw	Event triggered when a login prompt is shown.

10.17.4 TCustomConnection.Close

Synopsis: Close the connection

Declaration: `procedure Close(ForceClose: Boolean)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Close` closes the connection with the server if it was connected. Calling this method first triggers the `BeforeDisconnect` ([267](#)) event. If an exception is raised during the execution of that event handler, the disconnect process is aborted. After calling this event, the connection is actually closed. After the connection was closed, the `AfterDisconnect` ([266](#)) event is triggered.

Calling the `Close` method is equivalent to setting the `Connected` ([265](#)) property to `False`.

Errors: If the connection cannot be broken for some reason, an `EDatabaseError` ([244](#)) exception will be raised.

See also: `TCustomConnection.BeforeDisconnect` ([267](#)), `TCustomConnection.AfterDisconnect` ([266](#)), `TCustomConnection.Open` ([264](#)), `TCustomConnection.Connected` ([265](#))

10.17.5 TCustomConnection.Destroy

Synopsis: Remove the `TCustomconnection` instance from memory

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` closes the connection, and then calls the inherited destructor.

Errors: If an exception is raised during the disconnect process, an exception will be raise, and the instance is not removed from memory.

See also: `TCustomConnection.Close` ([264](#))

10.17.6 TCustomConnection.Open

Synopsis: Makes the connection to the server

Declaration: `procedure Open`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Open` establishes the connection with the server if it was not yet connected. Calling this method first triggers the `BeforeConnect` (266) event. If an exception is raised during the execution of that event handler, the connect process is aborted. If `LoginPrompt` (266) is `True`, the `OnLogin` (267) event handler is called. Only after this event, the connection is actually established. After the connection was established, the `AfterConnect` (266) event is triggered.

Calling the `Open` method is equivalent to setting the `Connected` (265) property to `True`.

Errors: If an exception is raised during the `BeforeConnect` or `OnLogin` handlers, the connection is not actually established.

See also: `TCustomConnection.BeforeConnect` (266), `TCustomConnection.LoginPrompt` (266), `TCustomConnection.OnLogin` (267), `TCustomConnection.AfterConnect` (266), `TCustomConnection.Connected` (265)

10.17.7 TCustomConnection.DataSetCount

Synopsis: Number of datasets connected to this connection

Declaration: `Property DataSetCount : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `DataSetCount` is the number of datasets connected to this connection component. The actual datasets are available through the `Datasets` (265) array property. As implemented in `TCustomConnection`, this property is always zero. Descendent classes implement the actual count.

See also: `TDataset` (277), `TCustomConnection.Datasets` (265)

10.17.8 TCustomConnection.DataSets

Synopsis: Datasets linked to this connection

Declaration: `Property Datasets[Index: LongInt]: TDataset`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Datasets` allows indexed access to the datasets connected to this connection. `Index` is a zero-based indexed, it's maximum value is `DataSetCount-1` (265).

See also: `DataSetCount` (265)

10.17.9 TCustomConnection.Connected

Synopsis: Is the connection established or not

Declaration: `Property Connected : Boolean`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `Connected` is `True` if the connection to the server is established, `False` if it is disconnected. The property can be set to `True` to establish a connection (equivalent to calling `TCustomConnection.Open` (264), or to `False` to break it (equivalent to calling `TCustomConnection.Close` (264)).

See also: `TCustomConnection.Open` (264), `TCustomConnection.Close` (264)

10.17.10 TCustomConnection.LoginPrompt

Synopsis: Should the OnLogin be triggered

Declaration: Property LoginPrompt : Boolean

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: LoginPrompt can be set to True if the OnLogin handler should be called when the Open method is called. If it is not True, then the event handler is not called.

See also: TCustomConnection.OnLogin ([267](#))

10.17.11 TCustomConnection.AfterConnect

Synopsis: Event triggered after a connection is made.

Declaration: Property AfterConnect : TNotifyEvent

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: AfterConnect is called after a connection is successfully established in TCustomConnection.Open ([264](#)). It can be used to open datasets, or indicate a connection status change.

See also: TCustomConnection.Open ([264](#)), TCustomConnection.BeforeConnect ([266](#)), TCustomConnection.OnLogin ([267](#))

10.17.12 TCustomConnection.AfterDisconnect

Synopsis: Event triggered after a connection is closed

Declaration: Property AfterDisconnect : TNotifyEvent

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: AfterDisconnect is called after a connection is successfully closed in TCustomConnection.Close ([264](#)). It can be used for instance to indicate a connection status change.

See also: TCustomConnection.Close ([264](#)), TCustomConnection.BeforeDisconnect ([267](#))

10.17.13 TCustomConnection.BeforeConnect

Synopsis: Event triggered before a connection is made.

Declaration: Property BeforeConnect : TNotifyEvent

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: BeforeConnect is called before a connection is attempted in TCustomConnection.Open ([264](#)). It can be used to set connection parameters, or to abort the establishing of the connection: if an exception is raised during this event, the connection attempt is aborted.

See also: TCustomConnection.Open ([264](#)), TCustomConnection.AfterConnect ([266](#)), TCustomConnection.OnLogin ([267](#))

10.17.14 TCustomConnection.BeforeDisconnect

Synopsis: Event triggered before a connection is closed

Declaration: `Property BeforeDisconnect : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `BeforeDisConnect` is called before a connection is closed in `TCustomConnection.Close` (264).

It can be used for instance to check for unsaved changes, to save these changes, or to abort the disconnect operation: if an exception is raised during the event handler, the disconnect operation is aborted entirely.

See also: `TCustomConnection.Close` (264), `TCustomConnection.AfterDisconnect` (266)

10.17.15 TCustomConnection.OnLogin

Synopsis: Event triggered when a login prompt is shown.

Declaration: `Property OnLogin : TLoginEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnLogin` is triggered when the connection needs a login prompt during the call: it is triggered when the `LoginPrompt` (266) property is `True`, after the `TCustomConnection.BeforeConnect` (266) event, but before the connection is actually established.

See also: `TCustomConnection.BeforeConnect` (266), `TCustomConnection.LoginPrompt` (266), `TCustomConnection.Open` (264)

10.18 TDatabase

10.18.1 Description

`TDatabase` is a component whose purpose is to provide a connection to an external database engine, not to provide the database itself. This class provides generic methods for attachment to databases and querying their contents; the details of the actual connection are handled by database-specific components (such as `SQLDb` for SQL-based databases, or `DBA` for `DBASE/FoxPro` style databases).

Like `TDataset` (277), `TDatabase` is an abstract class. It provides methods to keep track of datasets connected to the database, and to close these datasets when the connection to the database is closed. To this end, it introduces a `Connected` (271) boolean property, which indicates whether a connection to the database is established or not. The actual logic to establish a connection to a database must be implemented by descendent classes.

See also: `TDataset` (277), `TDatabase` (267)

10.18.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
268	<code>CloseDataSets</code>	Close all connected datasets
269	<code>CloseTransactions</code>	End all transactions
268	<code>Create</code>	Initialize a new <code>TDatabase</code> class instance.
268	<code>Destroy</code>	Remove a <code>TDatabase</code> instance from memory.
269	<code>EndTransaction</code>	End an active transaction.
269	<code>StartTransaction</code>	Start a new transaction.

10.18.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
271	<code>Connected</code>	rw	Is the database connected
271	<code>DatabaseName</code>	rw	Database name or path
270	<code>Directory</code>	rw	Directory for the database
270	<code>IsSQLBased</code>	r	Is the database SQL based.
271	<code>KeepConnection</code>	rw	Should the connection be kept active
271	<code>Params</code>	rw	Connection parameters
269	<code>TransactionCount</code>	r	Number of transaction components connected to this database.
270	<code>Transactions</code>	r	Indexed access to all transaction components connected to this database.

10.18.4 TDatabase.Create

Synopsis: Initialize a new `TDatabase` class instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TDatabase` class. It allocates some resources and then calls the inherited constructor.

See also: `TDBDataset` ([319](#)), `TDBTransaction` ([320](#)), `TDatabase.Destroy` ([268](#))

10.18.5 TDatabase.Destroy

Synopsis: Remove a `TDatabase` instance from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` starts by disconnecting the database (thus closing all datasets and ending all transactions), then notifies all connected datasets and transactions that it is about to be released. After this, it releases all resources used by the `TDatabase` instance

See also: `TDatabase.CloseDataSets` ([268](#))

10.18.6 TDatabase.CloseDataSets

Synopsis: Close all connected datasets

Declaration: `procedure CloseDataSets`

Visibility: public

Description: `CloseDatasets` closes all connected datasets. It is called automatically when the connection is closed.

See also: `TCustomConnection.Close` (264), `TDatabase.CloseTransactions` (269)

10.18.7 TDatabase.CloseTransactions

Synopsis: End all transactions

Declaration: `procedure CloseTransactions`

Visibility: public

Description: `CloseTransaction` calls `TDBTransaction.EndTransaction` (320) on all connected transactions. It is called automatically when the connection is closed, after all datasets are closed.

See also: `TCustomConnection.Close` (264), `TDatabase.CloseDatasets` (268)

10.18.8 TDatabase.StartTransaction

Synopsis: Start a new transaction.

Declaration: `procedure StartTransaction; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `StartTransaction` must be implemented by descendent classes to start a new transaction. This method is provided for Delphi compatibility: new applications should use a `TDBTransaction` (320) component instead and invoke the `TDBTransaction.StartTransaction` (320) method.

See also: `TDBTransaction` (320), `TDBTransaction.StartTransaction` (320)

10.18.9 TDatabase.EndTransaction

Synopsis: End an active transaction.

Declaration: `procedure EndTransaction; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `EndTransaction` must be implemented by descendent classes to end an active transaction. This method is provided for Delphi compatibility: new applications should use a `TDBTransaction` (320) component instead and invoke the `TDBTransaction.EndTransaction` (320) method.

See also: `TDBTransaction` (320), `TDBTransaction.EndTransaction` (320)

10.18.10 TDatabase.TransactionCount

Synopsis: Number of transaction components connected to this database.

Declaration: `Property TransactionCount : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `TransactionCount` is the number of transaction components which are connected to this database instance. It is the upper bound for the `TDatabase.Transactions` (270) array property.

See also: `TDatabase.Transactions` (270)

10.18.11 TDatabase.Transactions

Synopsis: Indexed access to all transaction components connected to this database.

Declaration: `Property Transactions[Index: LongInt]: TDBTransaction`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Transactions` provides indexed access to the transaction components connected to this database. The `Index` is zero based: it runs from 0 to `TransactionCount-1`.

See also: `TDatabase.TransactionCount` (269)

10.18.12 TDatabase.Directory

Synopsis: Directory for the database

Declaration: `Property Directory : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: `Directory` is provided for Delphi compatibility: it indicates (for Paradox and dBase based databases) the directory where the database files are located. It is not used in the Free Pascal implementation of `TDatabase` (267).

See also: `TDatabase.Params` (271), `TDatabase.IsSQLBased` (270)

10.18.13 TDatabase.IsSQLBased

Synopsis: Is the database SQL based.

Declaration: `Property IsSQLBased : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `IsSQLbased` is a read-only property which indicates whether a property is SQL-Based, i.e. whether the database engine accepts SQL commands.

See also: `TDatabase.Params` (271), `TDatabase.Directory` (270)

10.18.14 TDatabase.Connected

Synopsis: Is the database connected

Declaration: `Property Connected : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Connected` is simply promoted to published property from `TCustomConnection.Connected` (265).

See also: `TCustomConnection.Connected` (265)

10.18.15 TDatabase.DatabaseName

Synopsis: Database name or path

Declaration: `Property DatabaseName : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `DatabaseName` specifies the path of the database. For directory-based databases this will be the same as the `Directory` (270) property. For other databases this will be the name of a known pre-configured connection, or the location of the database file.

See also: `TDatabase.Directory` (270), `TDatabase.Params` (271)

10.18.16 TDatabase.KeepConnection

Synopsis: Should the connection be kept active

Declaration: `Property KeepConnection : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `KeepConnection` is provided for Delphi compatibility, and is not used in the Free Pascal implementation of `TDatabase`.

See also: `TDatabase.Params` (271)

10.18.17 TDatabase.Params

Synopsis: Connection parameters

Declaration: `Property Params : TStrings`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Params` is a catch-all storage mechanism for database connection parameters. It is a list of strings in the form of `Name=Value` pairs. Which name/value pairs are supported depends on the `TDatabase` descendent, but the `user_name` and `password` parameters are commonly used to store the login credentials for the database.

See also: `TDatabase.Directory` (270), `TDatabase.DatabaseName` (271)

10.19 TDataLink

10.19.1 Description

TDataLink is used by GUI controls or datasets in a master-detail relationship to handle data events coming from a TDataSource (313) instance. It is a class that exists for component programmers, application coders should never need to use TDataLink or one of its descendents.

DB-Aware Component coders must use a TDataLink instance to handle all communication with a TDataSet (277) instance, rather than communicating directly with the dataset. TDataLink contains methods which are called by the various events triggered by the dataset. Inversely, it has some methods to trigger actions in the dataset.

TDataLink is an abstract class; it is never used directly. Instead, a descendent class is used which overrides the various methods that are called in response to the events triggered by the dataset. Examples are .

See also: TDataSet (277), TDataSource (313), TDetailDataLink (324), TMasterDataLink (378)

10.19.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
272	Create	Initialize a new instance of TDataLink
273	Destroy	Remove an instance of TDataLink from memory
273	Edit	Set the dataset in edit mode, if possible
273	ExecuteAction	Execute action
274	UpdateAction	Update handler for actions
273	UpdateRecord	Called when the data in the dataset must be updated

10.19.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
274	Active	r	Is the link active
274	ActiveRecord	rw	Currently active record
274	BOF	r	Is the dataset at the first record
275	BufferCount	rw	Set to the number of record buffers this datalink needs.
275	DataSet	r	Dataset this datalink is connected to
275	DataSource	rw	Datasource this datalink is connected to
275	DataSourceFixed	rw	Can the datasource be changed
276	Editing	r	Is the dataset in edit mode
276	Eof	r	
276	ReadOnly	rw	Is the link readonly
276	RecordCount	r	Number of records in the buffer of the dataset

10.19.4 TDataLink.Create

Synopsis: Initialize a new instance of TDataLink

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` calls the inherited constructor and then initializes some fields. In particular, it sets the `buffercount` to 1.

See also: TDataLink.Destroy ([273](#))

10.19.5 TDataLink.Destroy

Synopsis: Remove an instance of TDataLink from memory

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the TDataLink instance (in particular, it removes itself from the datasource it is coupled to), and then calls the inherited destructor.

See also: TDataLink.Destroy ([273](#))

10.19.6 TDataLink.Edit

Synopsis: Set the dataset in edit mode, if possible

Declaration: `function Edit : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Edit` attempts to put the dataset in edit mode. It returns `True` if this operation succeeded, `False` if not. To this end, it calls the `Edit` ([314](#)) method of the `DataSource` ([275](#)) to which the datalink instance is coupled. If the `TDataSource.AutoEdit` ([315](#)) property is `False` then this operation will not succeed, inless the dataset is already in edit mode. GUI controls should always respect the result of this function, and not allow the user to edit data if this function returned `false`.

See also: TDataSource ([313](#)), TDataLink.DataSource ([275](#)), TDataSource.Edit ([314](#)), TDataSource.AutoEdit ([315](#))

10.19.7 TDataLink.UpdateRecord

Synopsis: Called when the data in the dataset must be updated

Declaration: `procedure UpdateRecord`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Updaterecord` is called when the dataset expects the GUI controls to post any pending changes to the dataset. This method guards against recursive behaviour: while an `UpdateRecord` is in progress, the `TDataLink.RecordChange` ([272](#)) notification (which could result from writing data to the dataset) will be blocked.

See also: TDataLink.RecordChange ([272](#))

10.19.8 TDataLink.ExecuteAction

Synopsis: Execute action

Declaration: `function ExecuteAction(Action: TBasicAction) : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ExecuteAction` implements action support. It should never be necessary to call `ExecuteAction` from program code, as it is called automatically whenever a target control needs to handle an action. This method must be overridden in case any additional action must be taken when the action must be executed. The implementation in `TDataLink` checks if the action handles the datasource, and then calls `Action.ExecuteTarget`, passing it the datasource. If so, it returns `True`.

See also: TDataLink.UpdateAction ([274](#))

10.19.9 TDataLink.UpdateAction

Synopsis: Update handler for actions

Declaration: `function UpdateAction(Action: TBasicAction) : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `UpdateAction` implements action update support. It should never be necessary to call `UpdateAction` from program code, as it is called automatically whenever a target control needs to update an action. This method must be overridden in case any specific action must be taken when the action must be updated. The implementation in `TDatalink` checks if the action handles the datasource, and then calls `Action.UpdateTarget`, passing it the datasource. If so, it returns `True`.

See also: `TDatalink.ExecuteAction` ([273](#))

10.19.10 TDataLink.Active

Synopsis: Is the link active

Declaration: `Property Active : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Active` determines whether the events of the dataset are passed on to the control connected to the actionlink. If it is set to `False`, then no events are passed between control and dataset. It is set to `TDataset.Active` ([304](#)) whenever the `DataSource` ([275](#)) property is set.

See also: `TDatalink.DataSource` ([275](#)), `TDatalink.ReadOnly` ([276](#)), `TDataset.Active` ([304](#))

10.19.11 TDataLink.ActiveRecord

Synopsis: Currently active record

Declaration: `Property ActiveRecord : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `ActiveRecord` returns the index of the active record in the dataset's record buffer for this datalink.

See also: `TDatalink.BOF` ([274](#)), `TDatalink.EOF` ([276](#))

10.19.12 TDataLink.BOF

Synopsis: Is the dataset at the first record

Declaration: `Property BOF : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `BOF` returns `TDataset.BOF` ([297](#)) if the dataset is available, `True` otherwise.

See also: `TDatalink.EOF` ([276](#)), `TDataset.BOF` ([297](#))

10.19.13 TDataLink.BufferCount

Synopsis: Set to the number of record buffers this datalink needs.

Declaration: `Property BufferCount : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `BufferCount` can be set to the number of buffers that the dataset should manage on behalf of the control connected to this datalink. By default, this is 1. Controls that must display more than 1 buffer (such as grids) can set this to a higher value.

See also: `TDataset.ActiveBuffer` ([281](#)), `TDatalink.ActiveRecord` ([274](#))

10.19.14 TDataLink.DataSet

Synopsis: Dataset this datalink is connected to

Declaration: `Property DataSet : TDataset`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `DataSet` equals `Datasource.Dataset` if the datasource is set, or `Nil` otherwise.

See also: `TDatalink.DataSource` ([275](#)), `TDataset` ([277](#))

10.19.15 TDataLink.DataSource

Synopsis: Datasource this datalink is connected to

Declaration: `Property DataSource : TDataSource`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Datasource` should be set to a `TDatasource` ([313](#)) instance to get access to the dataset it is connected to. A datalink never points directly to a `TDataset` ([277](#)) instance, always to a datasource. When the datasource is enabled or disabled, all `TDatalink` instances connected to it are enabled or disabled at once.

See also: `TDataset` ([277](#)), `TDatasource` ([313](#))

10.19.16 TDataLink.DataSourceFixed

Synopsis: Can the datasource be changed

Declaration: `Property DataSourceFixed : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `DataSourceFixed` can be set to `True` to prevent changing of the `DataSource` ([275](#)) property. When lengthy operations are in progress, this can be done to prevent user code (e.g. event handlers) from changing the datasource property which might interfere with the operation in progress.

See also: `TDataLink.DataSource` ([275](#))

10.19.17 TDataLink.Editing

Synopsis: Is the dataset in edit mode

Declaration: `Property Editing : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Editing` determines whether the dataset is in one of the edit states (`dsEdit`, `dsInsert`). It can be set into this mode by calling the `TDatalink.Edit` (273) method. Never attempt to set the dataset in editing mode directly. The `Edit` method will perform the needed checks prior to setting the dataset in edit mode and will return `True` if the dataset was successfully set in the editing state.

See also: `TDatalink.Edit` (273), `TDataset.Edit` (286)

10.19.18 TDataLink.Eof

Synopsis:

Declaration: `Property Eof : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `EOF` returns `TDataset.EOF` (299) if the dataset is available, `True` otherwise.

See also: `TDatalink.BOF` (274), `TDataset.EOF` (299)

10.19.19 TDataLink.ReadOnly

Synopsis: Is the link readonly

Declaration: `Property ReadOnly : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `ReadOnly` can be set to `True` to indicate that the link is read-only, i.e. the connected control will not modify the dataset. Methods as `TDatalink.Edit` (273) will check this property and fail if the link is read-only. This setting has no effect on the communication of dataset events to the datalink: the `TDatalink.Active` (274) property can be used to disable delivery of events to the datalink.

See also: `TDatalink.Active` (274), `TDatalink.edit` (273)

10.19.20 TDataLink.RecordCount

Synopsis: Number of records in the buffer of the dataset

Declaration: `Property RecordCount : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `RecordCount` returns the number of records in the dataset's buffer. It is limited by the `TDatalink.BufferCount` (275) property: `RecordCount` is always less than `Buffercount`.

See also: `TDatalink.BufferCount` (275)

10.20 TDataSet

10.20.1 Description

`TDataSet` is the main class of the `db` unit. This abstract class provides all basic functionality to access data stored in tabular format: The data consists of records, and the data in each record is organised in several fields.

`TDataSet` has a buffer to cache a few records in memory, this buffer is used by `TDataSource` to create the ability to use data-aware components.

`TDataSet` is an abstract class, which provides the basic functionality to access, navigate through the data and - in case read-write access is available, edit existing or add new records.

`TDataSet` is an abstract class: it does not have the knowledge to store or load the records from whatever medium the records are stored on. Descendants add the functionality to load and save the data. Therefore `TDataSet` is never used directly, one always instantiates a descendent class.

Initially, no data is available: the dataset is inactive. The `Open` (294) method must be used to fetch data into memory. After this command, the data is available in memory for browsing or editing purposes: The dataset is active (indicated by the `TDataSet.Active` (304) property). Likewise, the `Close` (284) method can be used to remove the data from memory. Any changes not yet saved to the underlying medium will be lost.

Data is expected to be in tabular format, where each row represents a record. The dataset has an idea of a cursor: this is the current position of the data cursor in the set of rows. Only the data of the current record is available for display or editing purposes. Through the `Next` (293), `Prev` (277), `First` (289) and `Last` (292) methods, it is possible to navigate through the records. The `EOF` (299) property will be `True` if the last row has been reached. Likewise, the `BOF` (297) property will return `True` if the first record in the dataset has been reached when navigating backwards. If both properties are empty, then there is no data available. For dataset descendants that support counting the number of records, the `RecordCount` (301) will be zero.

The `Append` (282) and `Insert` (291) methods can be used to insert new records to the set of records. The `TDataSet.Delete` (285) statement is used to delete the current record, and the `Edit` (286) command must be used to set the dataset in editing mode: the contents of the current record can then be changed. Any changes made to the current record (be it a new or existing record) must be saved by the `Post` (294) method, or can be undone using the `Cancel` (283) method.

The data in the various fields properties is available through the `Fields` (303) array property, giving indexed access to all the fields in a record. The contents of a field is always readable. If the dataset is in one of the editing modes, then the fields can also be written to.

See also: `TField` (325)

10.20.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
281	ActiveBuffer	Currently active memory buffer
282	Append	Append a new record to the data
282	AppendRecord	Append a new record to the dataset and fill with data
283	BookmarkValid	Test whether ABookMark is a valid bookmark.
283	Cancel	Cancel the current editing operation
283	CheckBrowseMode	Check whether the dataset is in browse mode.
283	ClearFields	Clear the values of all fields
284	Close	Close the dataset
284	CompareBookmarks	Compare two bookmarks
284	ControlsDisabled	Check whether the controls are disabled
281	Create	Create a new TDataset instance
285	CreateBlobStream	Create blob stream
285	CursorPosChanged	Indicate a change in cursor position
285	DataConvert	Convert data from/to native format
285	Delete	Delete the current record.
281	Destroy	Free a TDataset instance
286	DisableControls	Disable event propagation of controls
286	Edit	Set the dataset in editing mode.
287	EnableControls	Enable event propagation of controls
287	FieldByName	Search a field by name
287	FindField	Find a field by name
288	FindFirst	Find the first active record (deprecated)
288	FindLast	Find the last active record (deprecated)
288	FindNext	Find the next active record (deprecated)
288	FindPrior	Find the previous active record (deprecated)
289	First	Position the dataset on the first record.
289	FreeBookmark	Free a bookmark obtained with GetBookmark (deprecated)
289	GetBookmark	Get a bookmark pointer (deprecated)
290	GetCurrentRecord	Copy the data for the current record in a memory buffer
281	GetFieldData	Get the data for a field
290	GetFieldList	Return field instances in a list
290	GetFieldNames	Return a list of all available field names
290	GotoBookmark	Jump to bookmark
291	Insert	Insert a new record at the current position.
291	InsertRecord	Insert a new record with given values.
291	IsEmpty	Check if the dataset contains no data
291	IsLinkedTo	Check whether a datasource is linked to the dataset
292	IsSequenced	Is the data sequenced
292	Last	Navigate forward to the last record
292	Locate	Locate a record based on some key values
293	Lookup	Search for a record and return matching values.
293	MoveBy	Move the cursor position
293	Next	Go to the next record in the dataset.
294	Open	Activate the dataset: Fetch data into memory.
294	Post	Post pending edits to the database.
295	Prior	Go to the previous record
295	Refresh	Refresh the records in the dataset
295	Resync	Resynchronize the data buffer
282	SetFieldData	Store the data for a field
295	SetFields	Set a number of field values at once
296	Translate	Transliterate a buffer
296	UpdateCursorPos	Update cursor position
296	UpdateRecord	Indicate that the record contents have changed
297	UpdateStatus	Get the update status for the current record

10.20.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
304	Active	rw	Is the dataset open or closed.
309	AfterCancel	rw	Event triggered after a Cancel operation.
306	AfterClose	rw	Event triggered after the dataset is closed
309	AfterDelete	rw	Event triggered after a succesful Delete operation.
307	AfterEdit	rw	Event triggered after the dataset is put in edit mode.
307	AfterInsert	rw	Event triggered after the dataset is put in insert mode.
306	AfterOpen	rw	Event triggered after the dataset is opened.
308	AfterPost	rw	Event called after changes have been posted to the underlying database
310	AfterRefresh	rw	Event triggered after the data has been refreshed.
310	AfterScroll	rw	Event triggered after the cursor has changed position.
305	AutoCalcFields	rw	How often should the value of calculated fields be calculated
308	BeforeCancel	rw	Event triggered before a Cancel operation.
306	BeforeClose	rw	Event triggered before the dataset is closed.
309	BeforeDelete	rw	Event triggered before a Delete operation.
307	BeforeEdit	rw	Event triggered before the dataset is put in edit mode.
306	BeforeInsert	rw	Event triggered before the dataset is put in insert mode.
305	BeforeOpen	rw	Event triggered before the dataset is opened.
308	BeforePost	rw	Event called before changes are posted to the underlying database
310	BeforeRefresh	rw	Event triggered before the data is refreshed.
309	BeforeScroll	rw	Event triggered before the cursor changes position.
297	BlockReadSize	rw	
297	BOF	r	Is the cursor at the beginning of the data (on the first record)
297	Bookmark	rw	Get or set the current cursor position
298	CanModify	r	Can the data in the dataset be modified
298	DataSource	r	Datasource this dataset is connected to.
299	DefaultFields	r	Is the dataset using persisten fields or not.
299	EOF	r	Indicates whether the last record has been reached.
300	FieldCount	r	Number of fields
300	FieldDefs	rw	Definitions of available fields in the underlying database
303	Fields	r	Indexed access to the fields of the dataset.
303	FieldValues	rw	Acces to field values based on the field names.
303	Filter	rw	Filter to apply to the data in memory.
304	Filtered	rw	Is the filter active or not.
304	FilterOptions	rw	Options to apply when filtering
300	Found	r	Check success of one of the Find methods
301	IsUniDirectional	r	Is the dataset unidirectional (i.e. forward scrolling only)
301	Modified	r	Was the current record modified ?
311	OnCalcFields	rw	Event triggered when values for calculated fields must be computed.
311	OnDeleteError	rw	Event triggered when a delete operation fails.
312	OnEditError	rw	Event triggered when an edit operation fails.
312	OnFilterRecord	rw	Event triggered to filter records.
312	OnNewRecord	rw	Event triggered when a new record is created.
313	OnPostError	rw	Event triggered when a post operation fails.
302	RecNo	rw	Current record number
301	RecordCount	r	Number of records in the dataset
302	RecordSize	r	Size of the record in memory
302	State	r	Current operational state of the dataset

10.20.4 TDataSet.Create

Synopsis: Create a new TDataSet instance

Declaration: constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override

Visibility: public

Description: Create initializes a new TDataSet (277) instance. It calls the inherited constructor, and then initializes the internal structures needed to manage the dataset (fielddefs, fieldlist, constraints etc.).

See also: TDataSet.Destroy (281)

10.20.5 TDataSet.Destroy

Synopsis: Free a TDataSet instance

Declaration: destructor Destroy; Override

Visibility: public

Description: Destroy removes a TDataSet instance from memory. It closes the dataset if it was open, clears all internal structures and then calls the inherited destructor.

Errors: An exception may occur during the close operation, in that case, the dataset will not be removed from memory.

See also: TDataSet.Close (284), TDataSet.Create (281)

10.20.6 TDataSet.ActiveBuffer

Synopsis: Currently active memory buffer

Declaration: function ActiveBuffer : TRecordBuffer

Visibility: public

Description: ActiveBuffer points to the currently active memory buffer. It should not be used in application code.

10.20.7 TDataSet.GetFieldData

Synopsis: Get the data for a field

```
Declaration: function GetFieldData(Field: TField; Buffer: Pointer) : Boolean; Virtual
                ; Overload
function GetFieldData(Field: TField; Buffer: Pointer;
                NativeFormat: Boolean) : Boolean; Virtual
                ; Overload
```

Visibility: public

Description: GetFieldData should copy the data for field Field from the internal dataset memory buffer into the memory pointed to by Buffer. This function is not intended for use by end-user applications, and should be used only in descendent classes, where it can be overridden. The function should return True if data was available and has been copied, or False if no data was available (in which case the field has value Null). The NativeFormat determines whether the data should be in native format (e.g. whether the date/time values should be in TDateTime format).

Errors: No checks are performed on the validity of the memory buffer

See also: `TField.DisplayText` ([337](#))

10.20.8 TDataSet.SetFieldData

Synopsis: Store the data for a field

Declaration: `procedure SetFieldData(Field: TField; Buffer: Pointer); Virtual
; Overload
procedure SetFieldData(Field: TField; Buffer: Pointer;
NativeFormat: Boolean); Virtual; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `SetFieldData` should copy the data from field `Field`, stored in the memory pointed to by `Buffer` to the dataset memory buffer for the current record. This function is not intended for use by end-user applications, and should be used only in descendent classes, where it can be overridden. The `NativeFormat` determines whether the data is in native format (e.g. whether the date/time values are in `TDateTime` format).

See also: `TField.DisplayText` ([337](#))

10.20.9 TDataSet.Append

Synopsis: Append a new record to the data

Declaration: `procedure Append`

Visibility: public

Description: `Append` appends a new record at the end of the dataset. It is functionally equal to the `TDataSet.Insert` ([291](#)) call, but the cursor is positioned at the end of the dataset prior to performing the insert operation. The same events occur as when the `Insert` call is made.

See also: `TDataSet.Insert` ([291](#)), `TDataSet.Edit` ([286](#))

10.20.10 TDataSet.AppendRecord

Synopsis: Append a new record to the dataset and fill with data

Declaration: `procedure AppendRecord(const Values: Array of const)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AppendRecord` first calls `Append` to add a new record to the dataset. It then copies the values in `Values` to the various fields (using `TDataSet.SetFields` ([295](#))) and attempts to post the record using `TDataSet.Post` ([294](#)). If all went well, the result is that the values in `Values` have been added as a new record to the dataset.

Errors: Various errors may occur (not supplying a value for all required fields, invalid values) and may cause an exception. This may leave the dataset in editing mode.

See also: `TDataSet.Append` ([282](#)), `TDataSet.SetFields` ([295](#)), `TDataSet.Post` ([294](#))

10.20.11 TDataSet.BookmarkValid

Synopsis: Test whether ABookMark is a valid bookmark.

Declaration: `function BookmarkValid(ABookmark: TBookmark) : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `BookmarkValid` returns `True` if `ABookMark` is a valid bookmark for the dataset. Various operations can render a bookmark invalid: changing the sort order, closing and re-opening the dataset. `BookmarkValid` always returns `False` in `TDataSet`. Descendent classes must override this method to do an actual test.

Errors: If the bookmark is a completely arbitrary pointer, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TDataSet.GetBookmark` (289), `TDataSet.SetBookmark` (277), `TDataSet.FreeBookmark` (289), `TDataSet.BookmarkAvailable` (277)

10.20.12 TDataSet.Cancel

Synopsis: Cancel the current editing operation

Declaration: `procedure Cancel; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Cancel` cancels the current editing operation and sets the dataset again in browse mode. This operation triggers the `TDataSet.OnBeforeCancel` (277) and `TDataSet.OnAfterCancel` (277) events. If the dataset was in insert mode, then the `TDataSet.OnBeforeScroll` (277) and `TDataSet.OnAfterScroll` (277) events are triggered after and respectively before the `OnBeforeCancel` and `OnAfterCancel` events.

If the dataset was not in one of the editing modes when `Cancel` is called, then nothing will happen.

See also: `TDataSet.State` (302), `TDataSet.Append` (282), `TDataSet.Insert` (291), `TDataSet.Edit` (286)

10.20.13 TDataSet.CheckBrowseMode

Synopsis: Check whether the dataset is in browse mode.

Declaration: `procedure CheckBrowseMode`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CheckBrowseMode` checks whether the dataset is in browse mode (`State=dsBrowse`). If it is not, an `EDatabaseError` (244) exception is raised.

See also: `TDataSet.State` (302)

10.20.14 TDataSet.ClearFields

Synopsis: Clear the values of all fields

Declaration: `procedure ClearFields`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ClearFields` clears the values of all fields.

Errors: If the dataset is not in editing mode (`State` in `dsEditmodes`), then an `EDatabaseError` (244) exception will be raised.

See also: `TDataset.State` (302), `TField.Clear` (329)

10.20.15 `TDataset.Close`

Synopsis: Close the dataset

Declaration: `procedure Close`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Close` closes the dataset if it is open (`Active=True`). This action triggers the `TDataset.OnBeforeClose` (277) and `TDataset.OnAfterClose` (277) events. If the dataset is not active, nothing happens.

Errors: If an exception occurs during the closing of the dataset, the `OnAfterClose` event will not be triggered.

See also: `TDataset.Active` (304), `TDataset.Open` (294)

10.20.16 `TDataset.ControlsDisabled`

Synopsis: Check whether the controls are disabled

Declaration: `function ControlsDisabled : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ControlsDisabled` returns `True` if the controls are disabled, i.e. no events are propagated to the controls connected to this dataset. The `TDataset.DisableControls` (286) call can be used to disable sending of data events to the controls. The sending can be re-enabled with `TDataset.EnableControls` (287). This mechanism has a counting mechanism: in order to enable sending of events to the controls, `EnableControls` must be called as much as `DisableControls` was called. The `ControlsDisabled` function will return true as long as the internal counter is not zero.

See also: `TDataset.DisableControls` (286), `TDataset.EnableControls` (287)

10.20.17 `TDataset.CompareBookmarks`

Synopsis: Compare two bookmarks

Declaration: `function CompareBookmarks(Bookmark1: TBookmark; Bookmark2: TBookmark)
: LongInt; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CompareBookmarks` can be used to compare the relative positions of 2 bookmarks. It returns a negative value if `Bookmark1` is located before `Bookmark2`, zero if they refer to the same record, and a positive value if the second bookmark appears before the first bookmark. This function must be overridden by descendent classes of `TDataset`. The implementation in `TDataset` always returns zero.

Errors: No checks are performed on the validity of the bookmarks.

See also: `TDataset.BookmarkValid` (283), `TDataset.GetBookmark` (289), `TDataset.SetBookmark` (277)

10.20.18 TDataSet.CreateBlobStream

Synopsis: Create blob stream

Declaration: `function CreateBlobStream(Field: TField; Mode: TBlobStreamMode) : TStream
; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `CreateBlobStream` is not intended for use by application programmers. It creates a stream object which can be used to read or write data from a blob field. Instead, application programmers should use the `TBlobField.LoadFromStream` (255) and `TBlobField.SaveToStream` (255) methods when reading and writing data from/to BLOB fields. Which operation must be performed on the stream is indicated in the `Mode` parameter, and the `Field` parameter contains the field whose data should be read. The caller is responsible for freeing the stream created by this function.

See also: `TBlobField.LoadFromStream` (255), `TBlobField.SaveToStream` (255)

10.20.19 TDataSet.CursorPosChanged

Synopsis: Indicate a change in cursor position

Declaration: `procedure CursorPosChanged`

Visibility: public

Description: `CursorPosChanged` is not intended for internal use only, and serves to indicate that the current cursor position has changed. (it clears the internal cursor position).

10.20.20 TDataSet.DataConvert

Synopsis: Convert data from/to native format

Declaration: `procedure DataConvert(aField: TField; aSource: Pointer; aDest: Pointer;
aToNative: Boolean); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `DataConvert` converts the data from field `AField` in buffer `ASource` to native format and puts the result in `ADest`. If the `aToNative` parameter equals `False`, then the data is converted from native format to non-native format. Currently, only date/time/datetime and BCD fields are converted from/to native data. This means the routine handles conversion between `TDateTime` (the native format) and `TDateTimeRec`, and between `TBCD` and currency (the native format) for BCD fields. `DataConvert` is used internally by `TDataset` and descendent classes. There should be no need to use this routine in application code.

Errors: No checking on the validity of the buffer pointers is performed. If an invalid pointer is passed, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TDataset.GetFieldData` (281), `TDataset.SetFieldData` (282)

10.20.21 TDataSet.Delete

Synopsis: Delete the current record.

Declaration: `procedure Delete`

Visibility: public

Description: `Delete` will delete the current record. This action will trigger the `TDataset.BeforeDelete` (309), `TDataset.BeforeScroll` (309), `TDataset.AfterDelete` (309) and `TDataset.AfterScroll` (310) events. If the dataset was in edit mode, the edits will be canceled before the delete operation starts.

Errors: If the dataset is empty or read-only, then an `EDatabaseError` (244) exception will be raised.

See also: `TDataset.Cancel` (283), `TDataset.BeforeDelete` (309), `TDataset.BeforeScroll` (309), `TDataset.AfterDelete` (309), `TDataset.AfterScroll` (310)

10.20.22 `TDataset.DisableControls`

Synopsis: Disable event propagation of controls

Declaration: `procedure DisableControls`

Visibility: public

Description: `DisableControls` tells the dataset to stop sending data-related events to the controls. This can be used before starting operations that will cause the current record to change a lot, or before any other lengthy operation that may cause a lot of events to be sent to the controls that show data from the dataset: each event will cause the control to update itself, which is a time-consuming operation that may also cause a lot of flicker on the screen.

The sending of events to the controls can be re-enabled with `Tdataset.EnableControls` (287). Note that for each call to `DisableControls`, a matching call to `EnableControls` must be made: an internal count is kept and only when the count reaches zero, the controls are again notified of changes to the dataset. It is therefore essential that the call to `EnableControls` is put in a `Finally` block:

```
MyDataset.DisableControls;
Try
    // Do some intensive stuff
Finally
    MyDataset.EnableControls
end;
```

Errors: Failure to call `enablecontrols` will prevent the controls from receiving updates. The state can be checked with `TDataset.ControlsDisabled` (284).

See also: `TDataset.EnableControls` (287), `TDataset.ControlsDisabled` (284)

10.20.23 `TDataset.Edit`

Synopsis: Set the dataset in editing mode.

Declaration: `procedure Edit`

Visibility: public

Description: `Edit` will set the dataset in edit mode: the contents of the current record can then be changed. This action will call the `TDataset.BeforeEdit` (307) and `TDataset.AfterEdit` (307) events. If the dataset was already in insert or edit mode, nothing will happen (the events will also not be triggered). If the dataset is empty, this action will execute `TDataset.Append` (282) instead.

Errors: If the dataset is read-only or not opened, then an `EDatabaseError` (244) exception will be raised.

See also: `TDataset.State` (302), `TDataset.EOF` (299), `TDataset.BOF` (297), `TDataset.Append` (282), `TDataset.BeforeEdit` (307), `TDataset.AfterEdit` (307)

10.20.24 TDataSet.EnableControls

Synopsis: Enable event propagation of controls

Declaration: `procedure EnableControls`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `EnableControls` tells the dataset to resume sending data-related events to the controls. This must be used after a call to `TDataSet.DisableControls` (286) to re-enable updating of controls.

Note that for each call to `DisableControls`, a matching call to `EnableControls` must be made: an internal count is kept and only when the count reaches zero, the controls are again notified of changes to the dataset. It is therefore essential that the call to `EnableControls` is put in a `Finally` block:

```
MyDataset.DisableControls;
Try
    // Do some intensive stuff
Finally
    MyDataset.EnableControls
end;
```

Errors: Failure to call `enablecontrols` will prevent the controls from receiving updates. The state can be checked with `TDataSet.ControlsDisabled` (284).

See also: `TDataSet.DisableControls` (286), `TDataSet.ControlsDisabled` (284)

10.20.25 TDataSet.FieldByName

Synopsis: Search a field by name

Declaration: `function FieldByName(const FieldName: string) : TField`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FieldByName` is a shortcut for `Fields.FieldByName` (358): it searches for the field with `fieldname` equalling `FieldName`. The case is performed case-insensitive. The matching field instance is returned.

Errors: If the field is not found, an `EDatabaseError` (244) exception will be raised.

See also: `TFields.FieldByName` (358), `TDataSet.FindField` (287)

10.20.26 TDataSet.FindField

Synopsis: Find a field by name

Declaration: `function FindField(const FieldName: string) : TField`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FindField` is a shortcut for `Fields.FindField` (358): it searches for the field with `fieldname` equalling `FieldName`. The case is performed case-insensitive. The matching field instance is returned, and if no match is found, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TDataSet.FieldByName` (287), `TFields.FindField` (358)

10.20.27 TDataSet.FindFirst

Synopsis: Find the first active record (deprecated)

Declaration: `function FindFirst : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FindFirst` positions the cursor on the first record (taking into account filtering), and returns `True` if the cursor position was changed. This method must be implemented by descendents of `TDataSet`: The implementation in `TDataSet` always returns `False`, indicating that the position was not changed.

This method is deprecated, use `TDataSet.First` (289) instead.

See also: `TDataSet.First` (289), `TDataSet.FindLast` (288), `TDataSet.FindNext` (288), `TDataSet.FindPrior` (288)

10.20.28 TDataSet.FindLast

Synopsis: Find the last active record (deprecated)

Declaration: `function FindLast : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FindLast` positions the cursor on the last record (taking into account filtering), and returns `True` if the cursor position was changed. This method must be implemented by descendents of `TDataSet`: The implementation in `TDataSet` always returns `False`, indicating that the position was not changed.

This method is deprecated, use `TDataSet.Last` (292) instead.

See also: `TDataSet.Last` (292), `TDataSet.FindFirst` (288), `TDataSet.FindNext` (288), `TDataSet.FindPrior` (288)

10.20.29 TDataSet.FindNext

Synopsis: Find the next active record (deprecated)

Declaration: `function FindNext : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FindNext` positions the cursor on the next record (taking into account filtering), and returns `True` if the cursor position was changed. This method must be implemented by descendents of `TDataSet`: The implementation in `TDataSet` always returns `False`, indicating that the position was not changed.

This method is deprecated, use `TDataSet.Next` (293) instead.

See also: `TDataSet.Next` (293), `TDataSet.FindFirst` (288), `TDataSet.FindLast` (288), `TDataSet.FindPrior` (288)

10.20.30 TDataSet.FindPrior

Synopsis: Find the previous active record (deprecated)

Declaration: `function FindPrior : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FindPrior` positions the cursor on the previous record (taking into account filtering), and returns `True` if the cursor position was changed. This method must be implemented by descendents of `TDataset`: The implementation in `TDataset` always returns `False`, indicating that the position was not changed.

This method is deprecated, use `TDataset.Prior` (295) instead.

See also: `TDataset.Prior` (295), `TDataset.FindFirst` (288), `TDataset.FindLast` (288), `TDataset.FindPrior` (288)

10.20.31 `TDataset.First`

Synopsis: Position the dataset on the first record.

Declaration: `procedure First`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `First` positions the dataset on the first record. This action will trigger the `TDataset.BeforeScroll` (309) and `TDataset.AfterScroll` (310) events. After the action is completed, the `TDataset.BOF` (297) property will be `True`.

Errors: If the dataset is unidirectional or is closed, an `EDatabaseError` (244) exception will be raised.

See also: `TDataset.Prior` (295), `TDataset.Last` (292), `TDataset.Next` (293), `TDataset.BOF` (297), `TDataset.BeforeScroll` (309), `TDataset.AfterScroll` (310)

10.20.32 `TDataset.FreeBookmark`

Synopsis: Free a bookmark obtained with `GetBookmark` (deprecated)

Declaration: `procedure FreeBookmark(ABookmark: TBookmark); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FreeBookmark` must be used to free a bookmark obtained by `TDataset.GetBookmark` (289). It should not be used on bookmarks obtained with the `TDataset.Bookmark` (297) property. Both `GetBookmark` and `FreeBookmark` are deprecated. Use the `Bookmark` property instead: it uses a string type, which is automatically disposed of when the string variable goes out of scope.

See also: `TDataset.GetBookmark` (289), `TDataset.Bookmark` (297)

10.20.33 `TDataset.GetBookmark`

Synopsis: Get a bookmark pointer (deprecated)

Declaration: `function GetBookmark : TBookmark; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetBookmark` gets a bookmark pointer to the current cursor location. The `TDataset.SetBookmark` (277) call can be used to return to the current record in the dataset. After use, the bookmark must be disposed of with the `TDataset.FreeBookmark` (289) call. The bookmark will be `Nil` if the dataset is empty or not active.

This call is deprecated. Use the `TDataset.Bookmark` (297) property instead to get a bookmark.

See also: `TDataset.SetBookmark` (277), `TDataset.FreeBookmark` (289), `TDataset.Bookmark` (297)

10.20.34 TDataSet.GetCurrentRecord

Synopsis: Copy the data for the current record in a memory buffer

Declaration: `function GetCurrentRecord(Buffer: TRecordBuffer) : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetCurrentRecord` can be overridden by `TDataSet` descendents to copy the data for the current record to `Buffer`. `Buffer` must point to a memory area, large enough to contain the data for the record. If the data is copied successfully to the buffer, the function returns `True`. The `TDataSet` implementation is empty, and returns `False`.

See also: `TDataSet.ActiveBuffer` (281)

10.20.35 TDataSet.GetFieldList

Synopsis: Return field instances in a list

Declaration: `procedure GetFieldList(List: TList; const FieldNames: string)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetFieldList` parses `FieldNames` for names of fields, and returns the field instances that match the names in `list`. `FieldNames` must be a list of field names, separated by semicolons. The list is cleared prior to filling with the requested field instances.

Errors: If `FieldNames` contains a name of a field that does not exist in the dataset, then an `EDatabaseError` (244) exception will be raised.

See also: `TDataSet.GetFieldNames` (290), `TDataSet.FieldByName` (287), `TDataSet.FindField` (287)

10.20.36 TDataSet.GetFieldNames

Synopsis: Return a list of all available field names

Declaration: `procedure GetFieldNames(List: TStrings)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetFieldNames` returns in `List` the names of all available fields, one field per item in the list. The dataset must be open for this function to work correctly.

See also: `TDataSet.GetFieldNameList` (277), `TDataSet.FieldByName` (287), `TDataSet.FindField` (287)

10.20.37 TDataSet.GotoBookmark

Synopsis: Jump to bookmark

Declaration: `procedure GotoBookmark(const ABookmark: TBookmark)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GotoBookmark` positions the dataset to the bookmark position indicated by `ABookmark`. `ABookmark` is a bookmark obtained by the `TDataSet.GetBookmark` (289) function.

This function is deprecated, use the `TDataSet.Bookmark` (297) property instead.

Errors: if `ABookmark` does not contain a valid bookmark, then an exception may be raised.

See also: `TDataSet.Bookmark` (297), `TDataSet.GetBookmark` (289), `TDataSet.FreeBookmark` (289)

10.20.38 TDataSet.Insert

Synopsis: Insert a new record at the current position.

Declaration: `procedure Insert`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Insert` will insert a new record at the current position. When this function is called, any pending modifications (when the dataset already is in insert or edit mode) will be posted. After that, the `BeforeInsert` (306), `BeforeScroll` (309), `OnNewRecord` (312), `AfterInsert` (307) and `AfterScroll` (310) events are triggered in the order indicated here. The dataset is in the `dsInsert` state after this method is called, and the contents of the various fields can be set. To write the new record to the underlying database `TDataSet.Post` (294) must be called.

Errors: If the dataset is read-only, calling `Insert` will result in an `EDatabaseError` (244).

See also: `BeforeInsert` (306), `BeforeScroll` (309), `OnNewRecord` (312), `AfterInsert` (307), `AfterScroll` (310), `TDataSet.Post` (294), `TDataSet.Append` (282)

10.20.39 TDataSet.InsertRecord

Synopsis: Insert a new record with given values.

Declaration: `procedure InsertRecord(const Values: Array of const)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `InsertRecord` is not yet implemented in Free Pascal. It does nothing.

See also: `TDataSet.Insert` (291), `TDataSet.SetFieldValues` (277)

10.20.40 TDataSet.IsEmpty

Synopsis: Check if the dataset contains no data

Declaration: `function IsEmpty : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `IsEmpty` returns `True` if the dataset is empty, i.e. if `EOF` (299) and `TDataSet.BOF` (297) are both `True`, and the dataset is not in insert mode.

See also: `TDataSet.EOF` (299), `TDataSet.BOF` (297), `TDataSet.State` (302)

10.20.41 TDataSet.IsLinkedTo

Synopsis: Check whether a datasource is linked to the dataset

Declaration: `function IsLinkedTo (ADatasource: TDataSource) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `IsLinkedTo` returns `True` if `ADatasource` is linked to this dataset, either directly (the `ADatasource.Dataset`" (315) points to the current dataset instance, or indirectly.

See also: `TDataSource.Dataset` (315)

10.20.42 TDataSet.IsSequenced

Synopsis: Is the data sequenced

Declaration: `function IsSequenced : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `IsSequenced` indicates whether it is safe to use the `TDataSet.RecNo` (302) property to navigate in the records of the data. By default, this property is set to `True`, but `TDataSet` descendants may set this property to `False` (for instance, unidirectional datasets), in which case `RecNo` should not be used to navigate through the data.

See also: `TDataSet.RecNo` (302)

10.20.43 TDataSet.Last

Synopsis: Navigate forward to the last record

Declaration: `procedure Last`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Last` puts the cursor at the last record in the dataset, fetching more records from the underlying database if needed. It is equivalent to moving to the last record and calling `TDataSet.Next` (293). After a call to `Last`, the `TDataSet.EOF` (299) property will be `True`.

Calling this method will trigger the `TDataSet.BeforeScroll` (309) and `TDataSet.AfterScroll` (310) events.

See also: `TDataSet.First` (289), `TDataSet.Next` (293), `TDataSet.EOF` (299), `TDataSet.BeforeScroll` (309), `TDataSet.AfterScroll` (310)

10.20.44 TDataSet.Locate

Synopsis: Locate a record based on some key values

Declaration: `function Locate(const KeyFields: string;const KeyValues: Variant;
Options: TLocateOptions) : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Locate` attempts to locate a record in the dataset. There are 2 possible cases when using `Locate`.

1. `Keyvalues` is a single value. In that case, `KeyFields` is the name of the field whose value must be matched to the value in `KeyValues`
2. `Keyvalues` is a variant array. In that case, `KeyFields` must contain a list of names of fields (separated by semicolons) whose values must be matched to the values in the `KeyValues` array

The matching always happens according to the `Options` parameter. For a description of the possible values, see `TLocateOption` (237).

If a record is found that matches the criteria, then the `locate` operation positions the cursor on this record, and returns `True`. If no record is found to match the criteria, `False` is returned, and the position of the cursor is unchanged.

The implementation in `TDataSet` always returns `False`. It is up to `TDataSet` descendants to implement this method and return an appropriate value.

See also: `TDataSet.Find` (277), `TDataSet.Lookup` (293), `TLocateOption` (237)

10.20.45 TDataSet.Lookup

Synopsis: Search for a record and return matching values.

Declaration: `function Lookup(const KeyFields: string; const KeyValues: Variant;
const ResultFields: string) : Variant; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Lookup` always returns `False` in `TDataSet`. Descendents of `TDataSet` can override this method to call `TDataSet.Locate` (292) to locate the record with fields `KeyFields` matching `KeyValues` and then to return the values of the fields in `ResultFields`. If `ResultFields` contains more than one fieldname (separated by semicolons), then the function returns an array. If there is only 1 fieldname, the value is returned directly.

Errors: If the dataset is unidirectional, then a `EDatabaseError` (244) exception will be raised.

See also: `TDataSet.Locate` (292)

10.20.46 TDataSet.MoveBy

Synopsis: Move the cursor position

Declaration: `function MoveBy(Distance: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Description: `MoveBy` moves the current record pointer with `Distance` positions. `Distance` may be a positive number, in which case the cursor is moved forward, or a negative number, in which case the cursor is moved backward. The move operation will stop as soon as the beginning or end of the data is reached. The `TDataSet.BeforeScroll` (309) and `TDataSet.AfterScroll` (310) events are triggered (once) when this method is called. The function returns the distance which was actually moved by the cursor.

Errors: A negative distance will result in an `EDatabaseError` (244) exception on unidirectional datasets.

See also: `TDataSet.RecNo` (302), `TDataSet.BeforeScroll` (309), `TDataSet.AfterScroll` (310)

10.20.47 TDataSet.Next

Synopsis: Go to the next record in the dataset.

Declaration: `procedure Next`

Visibility: public

Description: `Next` positions the cursor on the next record in the dataset. It is equivalent to a `MoveBy(1)` operation. Calling this method triggers the `TDataSet.BeforeScroll` (309) and `TDataSet.AfterScroll` (310) events. If the dataset is located on the last known record (`EOF` (299) is true), then no action is performed, and the events are not triggered.

Errors: Calling this method on a closed dataset will result in an `EDatabaseError` (244) exception.

See also: `TDataSet.MoveBy` (293), `TDataSet.Prior` (295), `TDataSet.Last` (292), `TDataSet.BeforeScroll` (309), `TDataSet.AfterScroll` (310), `TDataSet.EOF` (299)

10.20.48 TDataSet.Open

Synopsis: Activate the dataset: Fetch data into memory.

Declaration: `procedure Open`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Open` must be used to make the `TDataSet` Active. It does nothing if the dataset is already active. `Open` initialises the `TDataSet` and brings the dataset in a browsable state:

Effectively the following happens:

1. The `BeforeOpen` event is triggered.
2. The descendents `InternalOpen` method is called to actually fetch data and initialize field-defs and field instances.
3. `BOF` (297) is set to `True`
4. Internal buffers are allocated and filled with data
5. If the dataset is empty, `EOF` (299) is set to `true`
6. `State` (302) is set to `dsBrowse`
7. The `AfterOpen` (306) event is triggered

Errors: If the descendent class cannot fetch the data, or the data does not match the field definitions present in the dataset, then an exception will be raised.

See also: `TDataSet.Active` (304), `TDataSet.State` (302), `TDataSet.BOF` (297), `TDataSet.EOF` (299), `TDataSet.BeforeOpen` (305), `TDataSet.AfterOpen` (306)

10.20.49 TDataSet.Post

Synopsis: Post pending edits to the database.

Declaration: `procedure Post; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Post` attempts to save pending edits when the dataset is in one of the edit modes: that is, after a `Insert` (291), `Append` (282) or `TDataSet.Edit` (286) operation. The changes will be committed to memory - and usually immediatly to the underlying database as well. Prior to saving the data to memory, it will check some constraints: in `TDataSet`, the presence of a value for all required fields is checked. if for a required field no value is present, an exception will be raised. A call to `Post` results in the triggering of the `BeforePost` (308), `AfterPost` (308) events. After the call to `Post`, the `State` (302) of the dataset is again `dsBrowse`, i.e. the dataset is again in browse mode.

Errors: Invoking the `post` method when the dataset is not in one of the editing modes (`dsEditModes` (228)) will result in an `EdatabaseError` (244) exception. If an exception occurs during the save operation, the `OnPostError` (313) event is triggered to handle the error.

See also: `Insert` (291), `Append` (282), `Edit` (286), `OnPostError` (313), `BeforePost` (308), `AfterPost` (308), `State` (302)

10.20.50 TDataSet.Prior

Synopsis: Go to the previous record

Declaration: `procedure Prior`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Prior` moves the cursor to the previous record. It is equivalent to a `MoveBy(-1)` operation. Calling this method triggers the `TDataSet.BeforeScroll` (309) and `TDataSet.AfterScroll` (310) events. If the dataset is located on the first record, (`BOF` (297) is true) then no action is performed, and the events are not triggered.

Errors: Calling this method on a closed dataset will result in an `EDatabaseError` (244) exception.

See also: `TDataSet.MoveBy` (293), `TDataSet.Next` (293), `TDataSet.First` (289), `TDataSet.BeforeScroll` (309), `TDataSet.AfterScroll` (310), `TDataSet.BOF` (297)

10.20.51 TDataSet.Refresh

Synopsis: Refresh the records in the dataset

Declaration: `procedure Refresh`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Refresh` posts any pending edits, and refetches the data in the dataset from the underlying database, and attempts to reposition the cursor on the same record as it was. This operation is not supported by all datasets, and should be used with care. The repositioning may not always succeed, in which case the cursor will be positioned on the first record in the dataset. This is in particular true for unidirectional datasets. Calling `Refresh` results in the triggering of the `BeforeRefresh` (310) and `AfterRefresh` (310) events.

Errors: Refreshing may fail if the underlying dataset descendent does not support it.

See also: `TDataSet.Close` (284), `TDataSet.Open` (294), `BeforeRefresh` (310), `AfterRefresh` (310)

10.20.52 TDataSet.Resync

Synopsis: Resynchronize the data buffer

Declaration: `procedure Resync (Mode: TResyncMode); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Resync` refetches the records around the cursor position. It should not be used by application code, instead `TDataSet.Refresh` (295) should be used. The `Resync` parameter indicates how the buffers should be refreshed.

See also: `TDataSet.Refresh` (295)

10.20.53 TDataSet.SetFields

Synopsis: Set a number of field values at once

Declaration: `procedure SetFields (const Values: Array of const)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `SetFields` sets the values of the fields with the corresponding values in the array. It starts with the first field in the `TDataset.Fields` (303) property, and works its way down the array.

Errors: If the dataset is not in edit mode, then an `EDatabaseError` (244) exception will be raised. If there are more values than fields, an `EListError` exception will be raised.

See also: `TDataset.Fields` (303)

10.20.54 `TDataset.Translate`

Synopsis: Transliterate a buffer

Declaration: `function Translate(Src: PChar; Dest: PChar; ToOem: Boolean) : Integer; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Translate` is called for all string fields for which the `TStringField.Transliterate` (404) property is set to `True`. The `toOEM` parameter is set to `True` if the transliteration must happen from the used codepage to the codepage used for storage, and if it is set to `False` then the transliteration must happen from the native codepage to the storage codepage. This call must be overridden by descendants of `TDataset` to provide the necessary transliteration: `TDataset` just copies the contents of the `Src` buffer to the `Dest` buffer. The result must be the number of bytes copied to the destination buffer.

Errors: No checks are performed on the buffers.

See also: `TStringField.Transliterate` (404)

10.20.55 `TDataset.UpdateCursorPos`

Synopsis: Update cursor position

Declaration: `procedure UpdateCursorPos`

Visibility: public

Description: `UpdateCursorPos` should not be used in application code. It is used to ensure that the logical cursor position is the correct (physical) position.

See also: `TDataset.Refresh` (295)

10.20.56 `TDataset.UpdateRecord`

Synopsis: Indicate that the record contents have changed

Declaration: `procedure UpdateRecord`

Visibility: public

Description: `UpdateRecord` notifies controls that the contents of the current record have changed. It triggers the event. This should never be called by application code, and is intended only for descendants of `TDataset`.

See also: `OnUpdateRecord` (277)

10.20.57 TDataSet.UpdateStatus

Synopsis: Get the update status for the current record

Declaration: `function UpdateStatus : TUpdateStatus; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `UpdateStatus` always returns `usUnModified` in the `TDataSet` implementation. Descendent classes should override this method to indicate the status for the current record in case they support cached updates: the function should return the status of the current record: has the record been locally inserted, modified or deleted, or none of these. `UpdateStatus` is not used in `TDataSet` itself, but is provided so applications have a unique API to work with datasets that have support for cached updates.

10.20.58 TDataSet.BlockReadSize

Declaration: `Property BlockReadSize : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

10.20.59 TDataSet.BOF

Synopsis: Is the cursor at the beginning of the data (on the first record)

Declaration: `Property BOF : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `BOF` returns `True` if the first record is the first record in the dataset, `False` otherwise. It will always be `True` if the dataset is just opened, or after a call to `TDataSet.First` (289). As soon as `TDataSet.Next` (293) is called, `BOF` will no longer be true.

See also: `TDataSet.EOF` (299), `TDataSet.Next` (293), `TDataSet.First` (289)

10.20.60 TDataSet.Bookmark

Synopsis: Get or set the current cursor position

Declaration: `Property Bookmark : TBookmarkStr`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Bookmark` can be read to obtain a bookmark to the current position in the dataset. The obtained value can be used to return to current position at a later stage. Writing the `Bookmark` property with a value previously obtained like this, will reposition the dataset on the same position as it was when the property was read.

This is often used when scanning all records, like this:

```

Var
  B : TBookmarkStr;

begin
  With MyDataset do
    begin
      B:=Bookmark;
      DisableControls;
    try
      First;
      While Not EOF do
        begin
          DoSomething;
        Next;
      end;
    finally
      EnableControls;
      Bookmark:=B;
    end;
  end;
end;

```

At the end of this code, the dataset will be positioned on the same record as when the code was started. The `TDataset.DisableControls` (286) and `TDataset.EnableControls` (287) calls prevent the controls from receiving update notifications as the dataset scrolls through the records, thus reducing flicker on the screen.

Note that bookmarks become invalid as soon as the dataset closes. A call to refresh may also destroy the bookmarks.

See also: `TDataset.DisableControls` (286), `TDataset.EnableControls` (287)

10.20.61 `TDataset.CanModify`

Synopsis: Can the data in the dataset be modified

Declaration: Property `CanModify` : Boolean

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `CanModify` indicates whether the dataset allows editing. Unidirectional datasets do not allow editing. Descendent datasets can impose additional conditions under which the data can not be modified (read-only datasets, for instance). If the `CanModify` property is `False`, then the edit, append or insert methods will fail.

See also: `TDataset.Insert` (291), `TDataset.Append` (282), `TDataset.Delete` (285), `TDataset.Edit` (286)

10.20.62 `TDataset.DataSource`

Synopsis: Datasource this dataset is connected to.

Declaration: Property `DataSource` : `TDatasource`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Datasource` is the datasource this dataset is connected to, and from which it can get values for parameters. In `TDataSet`, the `Datasource` property is not used, and is always `Nil`. It is up to descendent classes that actually support a datasource to implement getter and setter routines for the `Datasource` property.

See also: `TDatasource` (313)

10.20.63 TDataSet.DefaultFields

Synopsis: Is the dataset using persistent fields or not.

Declaration: `Property DefaultFields : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `DefaultFields` is `True` if the fields were generated dynamically when the dataset was opened. If it is `False` then the field instances are persistent, i.e. they were created at design time with the fields editor. If `DefaultFields` is `True`, then for each item in the `TDataSet.FieldDefs` (300) property, a field instance is created. These fields instances are freed again when the dataset is closed. If `DefaultFields` is `False`, then there may be less field instances than there are items in the `FieldDefs` property. This can be the case for instance when opening a DBF file at runtime which has more fields than the file used at design time.

See also: `TDataSet.FieldDefs` (300), `TDataSet.Fields` (303), `TField` (325)

10.20.64 TDataSet.EOF

Synopsis: Indicates whether the last record has been reached.

Declaration: `Property EOF : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `EOF` is `True` if the cursor is on the last record in the dataset, and no more records are available. It is also `True` for an empty dataset. The `EOF` property will be set to `True` in the following cases:

1. The cursor is on the last record, and the `TDataSet.Next` (293) method is called.
2. The `TDataSet.Last` (292) method is called (which is equivalent to moving to the last record and calling `TDataSet.Next` (293)).
3. The dataset is empty when opened.

In all other cases, `EOF` is `False`. Note: when the cursor is on the last-but-one record, and `Next` is called (moving the cursor to the last record), `EOF` will not yet be `True`. Only if both the cursor is on the last record **and** `Next` is called, will `EOF` become `True`.

This means that the following loop will stop after the last record was visited:

```
With MyDataset do
  While not EOF do
    begin
      DoSomething;
      Next;
    end;
```

See also: `TDataSet.BOF` (297), `TDataSet.Next` (293), `TDataSet.Last` (292), `TDataSet.IsEmpty` (291)

10.20.65 TDataSet.FieldCount

Synopsis: Number of fields

Declaration: `Property FieldCount : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `FieldCount` is the same as `Fields.Count` (359), i.e. the number of fields. For a dataset with persistent fields (when `DefaultFields` (299) is `False`) then this number will be always the same every time the dataset is opened. For a dataset with dynamically created fields, the number of fields may be different each time the dataset is opened.

See also: `TFields` (355)

10.20.66 TDataSet.FieldDefs

Synopsis: Definitions of available fields in the underlying database

Declaration: `Property FieldDefs : TFieldDefs`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `FieldDefs` is filled by the `TDataSet` descendent when the dataset is opened. It represents the fields as they are returned by the particular database when the data is initially fetched from the engine. If the dataset uses dynamically created fields (when `DefaultFields` (299) is `True`), then for each item in this list, a field instance will be created with default properties available in the field definition. If the dataset uses persistent fields, then the fields in the field list will be checked against the items in the `FieldDefs` property. If no matching item is found for a persistent field, then an exception will be raised. Items that exist in the `fielddefs` property but for which there is no matching field instance, are ignored.

See also: `TDataSet.Open` (294), `TDataSet.DefaultFields` (299), `TDataSet.Fields` (303)

10.20.67 TDataSet.Found

Synopsis: Check success of one of the `Find` methods

Declaration: `Property Found : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Found` is `True` if the last of one of the `TDataSet.FindFirst` (288), `TDataSet.FindLast` (288), `TDataSet.FindNext` (288) or `TDataSet.FindPrior` (288) operations was succesful.

See also: `TDataSet.FindFirst` (288), `TDataSet.FindLast` (288), `TDataSet.FindNext` (288), `TDataSet.FindPrior` (288)

10.20.68 TDataSet.Modified

Synopsis: Was the current record modified ?

Declaration: `Property Modified : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Modified` is `True` if the current record was modified after a call to `Tdataset.Edit` (286) or `Tdataset.Insert` (291). It becomes `True` if a value was written to one of the fields of the dataset.

See also: `Tdataset.Edit` (286), `TDataset.Insert` (291), `TDataset.Append` (282), `TDataset.Cancel` (283), `TDataset.Post` (294)

10.20.69 TDataSet.IsUniDirectional

Synopsis: Is the dataset unidirectional (i.e. forward scrolling only)

Declaration: `Property IsUniDirectional : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `IsUniDirectional` is `True` if the dataset is unidirectional. By default it is `False`, i.e. scrolling backwards is allowed. If the dataset is unidirectional, then any attempt to scroll backwards (using one of `TDataset.Prior` (295) or `TDataset.Next` (293)), random positioning of the cursor, editing or filtering will result in an `EDatabaseError` (244). Unidirectional datasets are also not suitable for display in a grid, as they have only 1 record in memory at any given time: they are only useful for performing an action on all records:

```
With MyDataset do
  While not EOF do
    begin
      DoSomething;
      Next;
    end;
```

See also: `TDataset.Prior` (295), `TDataset.Next` (293)

10.20.70 TDataSet.RecordCount

Synopsis: Number of records in the dataset

Declaration: `Property RecordCount : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `RecordCount` is the number of records in the dataset. This number is not necessarily equal to the number of records returned by a query. For optimization purposes, a `TDataset` descendent may choose not to fetch all records from the database when the dataset is opened. If this is the case, then the `RecordCount` will only reflect the number of records that have actually been fetched at the current time, and therefor the value will change as more records are fetched from the database.

Only when `Last` has been called (and the dataset has been forced to fetch all records returned by the database), will the value of `RecordCount` be equal to the number of records returned by the query.

In general, datasets based on in-memory data or flat files, will return the correct number of records in `RecordCount`.

See also: `TDataset.RecNo` ([302](#))

10.20.71 `TDataset.RecNo`

Synopsis: Current record number

Declaration: Property `RecNo` : `LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `RecNo` returns the current position in the dataset. It can be written to set the cursor to the indicated position. This property must be implemented by `TDataset` descendents, for `TDataset` the property always returns -1.

This property should not be used if exact positioning is required. it is inherently unreliable.

See also: `TDataset.RecordCount` ([301](#))

10.20.72 `TDataset.RecordSize`

Synopsis: Size of the record in memory

Declaration: Property `RecordSize` : `Word`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `RecordSize` is the total size of the memory buffer used for the records. This property returns always 0 in the `TDataset` implementation. Descendent classes should implement this property. Note that this property does not necessarily reflect the actual data size for the records. that may be more or less, depending on how the `TDataset` descendent manages it's data.

See also: `TField.Datasize` ([336](#)), `TDataset.RecordCount` ([301](#)), `TDataset.RecNo` ([302](#))

10.20.73 `TDataset.State`

Synopsis: Current operational state of the dataset

Declaration: Property `State` : `TDatasetState`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `State` determines the current operational state of the dataset. During it's lifetime, the dataset is in one of many states, depending on which operation is currently in progress:

- If a dataset is closed, the `State` is `dsInactive`.
- As soon as it is opened, it is in `dsBrowse` mode, and remains in this state while changing the cursor position.

- If the `Edit` or `Insert` or `Append` methods is called, the `State` changes to `dsEdit` or `dsInsert`, respectively.
- As soon as edits have been posted or cancelled, the state is again `dsBrowse`.
- Closing the dataset sets the state again to `dsInactive`.

There are some other states, mainly connected to internal operations, but which can become visible in some of the dataset's events.

See also: `TDataset.Active` (304), `TDataset.Edit` (286), `TDataset.Insert` (291), `TDataset.Append` (282), `TDataset.Post` (294), `TDataset.Cancel` (283)

10.20.74 `TDataset.Fields`

Synopsis: Indexed access to the fields of the dataset.

Declaration: `Property Fields : TFields`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Fields` provides access to the fields of the dataset. It is of type `TFields` (355) and therefore gives indexed access to the fields, but also allows other operations such as searching for fields based on their names or getting a list of fieldnames.

See also: `TFieldDefs` (353), `TField` (325)

10.20.75 `TDataset.FieldValues`

Synopsis: Acces to field values based on the field names.

Declaration: `Property FieldValues[fieldname: string]: Variant; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `FieldValues` provides array-like access to the values of the fields, based on the names of the fields. The value is read or written as a variant type. It is equivalent to the following:

```
FieldByName(FieldName).AsVariant
```

It can be read as well as written.

See also: `TFields.FieldByName` (358)

10.20.76 `TDataset.Filter`

Synopsis: Filter to apply to the data in memory.

Declaration: `Property Filter : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `Filter` is not implemented by `TDataSet`. It is up to descendent classes to implement actual filtering: the filtering happens on in-memory data, and is not applied on the database level. (in particular: setting the filter property will in no way influence the WHERE clause of an SQL-based dataset).

In general, the `filter` property accepts a SQL-like syntax usually encountered in the WHERE clause of an SQL SELECT statement.

The filter is only applied if the `Filtered` property is set to `True`. If the `Filtered` property is `False`, the `Filter` property is ignored.

See also: `TDataSet.Filtered` (304), `TDataSet.FilterOptions` (304)

10.20.77 TDataSet.Filtered

Synopsis: Is the filter active or not.

Declaration: `Property Filtered : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Filtered` determines whether the filter condition in `TDataSet.Filter` (303) is applied or not. The filter is only applied if the `Filtered` property is set to `True`. If the `Filtered` property is `False`, the `Filter` property is ignored.

See also: `TDataSet.Filter` (303), `TDataSet.FilterOptions` (304)

10.20.78 TDataSet.FilterOptions

Synopsis: Options to apply when filtering

Declaration: `Property FilterOptions : TFilterOptions`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `FilterOptions` determines what options should be taken into account when applying the filter in `TDataSet.Filter` (303), such as case-sensitivity or whether to treat an asterisk as a wildcard: By default, an asterisk (*) at the end of a literal string in the filter expression is treated as a wildcard. When `FilterOptions` does not include `foNoPartialCompare`, strings that have an asterisk at the end, indicate a partial string match. In that case, the asterisk matches any number of characters. If `foNoPartialCompare` is included in the options, the asterisk is regarded as a regular character.

See also: `TDataSet.Filter` (303), `TDataSet.FilterOptions` (304)

10.20.79 TDataSet.Active

Synopsis: Is the dataset open or closed.

Declaration: `Property Active : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Active` is `True` if the dataset is open, and `False` if it is closed (`TDataset.State` (302) is then `dsInactive`). Setting the `Active` property to `True` is equivalent to calling `TDataset.Open` (294), setting it to `False` is equivalent to calling `TDataset.Close` (284)

See also: `TDataset.State` (302), `TDataset.Open` (294), `TDataset.Close` (284)

10.20.80 `TDataset.AutoCalcFields`

Synopsis: How often should the value of calculated fields be calculated

Declaration: `Property AutoCalcFields : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `AutoCalcFields` is by default `true`, meaning that the values of calculated fields will be computed in the following cases:

- When the dataset is opened
- When the dataset is put in edit mode
- When a data field changed

When `AutoCalcFields` is `False`, then the calculated fields are called whenever

- The dataset is opened
- The dataset is put in edit mode

Both proper calculated fields and lookup fields are computed. Calculated fields are computed through the `TDataset.OnCalcFields` (311) event.

See also: `TField.FieldKind` (343), `TDataset.OnCalcFields` (311)

10.20.81 `TDataset.BeforeOpen`

Synopsis: Event triggered before the dataset is opened.

Declaration: `Property BeforeOpen : TDataSetNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `BeforeOpen` is triggered before the dataset is opened. No actions have been performed yet when this event is called, and the dataset is still in `dsInactive` state. It can be used to set parameters and options that influence the opening process. If an exception is raised during the event handler, the dataset remains closed.

See also: `TDataset.AfterOpen` (306), `TDataset.State` (302)

10.20.82 TDataSet.AfterOpen

Synopsis: Event triggered after the dataset is opened.

Declaration: Property AfterOpen : TDataSetNotifyEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: AfterOpen is triggered after the dataset is opened. The dataset has fetched its data and is in `dsBrowse` state when this event is triggered. If the dataset is not empty, then a `TDataSet.AfterScroll` (310) event will be triggered immediately after the AfterOpen event. If an exception is raised during the event handler, the dataset remains open, but the AfterScroll event will not be triggered.

See also: `TDataSet.AfterOpen` (306), `TDataSet.State` (302), `TDataSet.AfterScroll` (310)

10.20.83 TDataSet.BeforeClose

Synopsis: Event triggered before the dataset is closed.

Declaration: Property BeforeClose : TDataSetNotifyEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: BeforeClose is triggered before the dataset is closed. No actions have been performed yet when this event is called, and the dataset is still in `dsBrowse` state or one of the editing states. It can be used to prevent closing of the dataset, for instance if there are pending changes not yet committed to the database. If an exception is raised during the event handler, the dataset remains opened.

See also: `TDataSet.AfterClose` (306), `TDataSet.State` (302)

10.20.84 TDataSet.AfterClose

Synopsis: Event triggered after the dataset is closed

Declaration: Property AfterClose : TDataSetNotifyEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: AfterOpen is triggered after the dataset is opened. The dataset has discarded its data and has cleaned up its internal memory structures. It is in `dsInactive` state when this event is triggered.

See also: `TDataSet.BeforeClose` (306), `TDataSet.State` (302)

10.20.85 TDataSet.BeforeInsert

Synopsis: Event triggered before the dataset is put in insert mode.

Declaration: Property BeforeInsert : TDataSetNotifyEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `BeforeInsert` is triggered at the start of the `TDataset.Append` (282) or `TDataset.Insert` (291) methods. The dataset is still in `dsBrowse` state when this event is triggered. If an exception is raised in the `BeforeInsert` event handler, then the dataset will remain in `dsBrowse` state, and the append or insert operation is cancelled.

See also: `TDataset.AfterInsert` (307), `TDataset.Append` (282), `TDataset.Insert` (291)

10.20.86 `TDataset.AfterInsert`

Synopsis: Event triggered after the dataset is put in insert mode.

Declaration: `Property AfterInsert : TDatasetNotifyEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AfterInsert` is triggered after the dataset has finished putting the dataset in `dsInsert` state and it has initialized the new record buffer. This event can be used e.g. to set initial field values. After the `AfterInsert` event, the `TDataset.AfterScroll` (310) event is still triggered. Raising an exception in the `AfterInsert` event, will prevent the `AfterScroll` event from being triggered, but does not undo the insert or append operation.

See also: `TDataset.BeforeInsert` (306), `TDataset.AfterScroll` (310), `TDataset.Append` (282), `TDataset.Insert` (291)

10.20.87 `TDataset.BeforeEdit`

Synopsis: Event triggered before the dataset is put in edit mode.

Declaration: `Property BeforeEdit : TDatasetNotifyEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `BeforeEdit` is triggered at the start of the `TDataset.Edit` (286) method. The dataset is still in `dsBrowse` state when this event is triggered. If an exception is raised in the `BeforeEdit` event handler, then the dataset will remain in `dsBrowse` state, and the edit operation is cancelled.

See also: `TDataset.AfterEdit` (307), `TDataset.Edit` (286), `TDataset.State` (302)

10.20.88 `TDataset.AfterEdit`

Synopsis: Event triggered after the dataset is put in edit mode.

Declaration: `Property AfterEdit : TDatasetNotifyEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AfterEdit` is triggered after the dataset has finished putting the dataset in `dsEdit` state and it has initialized the edit buffer for the record. Raising an exception in the `AfterEdit` event does not undo the edit operation.

See also: `TDataset.BeforeEdit` (307), `TDataset.Edit` (286), `TDataset.State` (302)

10.20.89 TDataSet.BeforePost

Synopsis: Event called before changes are posted to the underlying database

Declaration: `Property BeforePost : TDataSetNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `BeforePost` is triggered at the start of the `TDataSet.Post` (294) method, when the dataset is still in one of the edit states (`dsEdit,dsInsert`). If the dataset was not in an edit state when `Post` is called, the `BeforePost` event is not triggered. This event can be used to supply values for required fields that have no value yet (the `Post` operation performs the check on required fields only after this event), or it can be used to abort the post operation: if an exception is raised during the `BeforePost` operation, the posting operation is cancelled, and the dataset remains in the editing state it was in before the post operation.

See also: `TDataSet.post` (294), `TDataSet.AfterPost` (308), `TDataSet.State` (302)

10.20.90 TDataSet.AfterPost

Synopsis: Event called after changes have been posted to the underlying database

Declaration: `Property AfterPost : TDataSetNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AfterPost` is triggered when the `TDataSet.Post` (294) operation was successfully completed, and the dataset is again in `dsBrowse` state. If an error occurred during the post operation, then the `AfterPost` event is not called, but the `TDataSet.OnPostError` (313) event is triggered instead.

See also: `TDataSet.BeforePost` (308), `TDataSet.Post` (294), `TDataSet.State` (302), `TDataSet.OnPostError` (313)

10.20.91 TDataSet.BeforeCancel

Synopsis: Event triggered before a Cancel operation.

Declaration: `Property BeforeCancel : TDataSetNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `BeforeCancel` is triggered at the start of the `TDataSet.Cancel` (283) operation, when the state is still one of the editing states (`dsEdit,dsInsert`). The event handler can be used to abort the cancel operation: if an exception is raised during the event handler, then the cancel operation stops. If the dataset was not in one of the editing states when the `Cancel` method was called, then the event is not triggered.

See also: `TDataSet.AfterCancel` (309), `TDataSet.Cancel` (283), `TDataSet.State` (302)

10.20.92 TDataSet.AfterCancel

Synopsis: Event triggered after a Cancel operation.

Declaration: `Property AfterCancel : TDataSetNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AfterCancel` is triggered when the `TDataSet.Cancel` (283) operation was successfully completed, and the dataset is again in `dsBrowse` state.

See also: `TDataSet.BeforeCancel` (308), `TDataSet.Cancel` (283), `TDataSet.State` (302)

10.20.93 TDataSet.BeforeDelete

Synopsis: Event triggered before a Delete operation.

Declaration: `Property BeforeDelete : TDataSetNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `BeforeDelete` is triggered at the start of the `TDataSet.Delete` (285) operation, when the dataset is still in `dsBrowse` state. The event handler can be used to abort the delete operation: if an exception is raised during the event handler, then the delete operation stops. The event is followed by a `TDataSet.BeforeScroll` (309) event. If the dataset was in insert mode when the `Delete` method was called, then the event will not be called, as `TDataSet.Cancel` (283) is called instead.

See also: `TDataSet.AfterDelete` (309), `TDataSet.Delete` (285), `TDataSet.BeforeScroll` (309), `TDataSet.Cancel` (283), `TDataSet.State` (302)

10.20.94 TDataSet.AfterDelete

Synopsis: Event triggered after a successful Delete operation.

Declaration: `Property AfterDelete : TDataSetNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AfterDelete` is triggered after the successful completion of the `TDataSet.Delete` (285) operation, when the dataset is again in `dsBrowse` state. The event is followed by a `TDataSet.AfterScroll` (310) event.

See also: `TDataSet.BeforeDelete` (309), `TDataSet.Delete` (285), `TDataSet.AfterScroll` (310), `TDataSet.State` (302)

10.20.95 TDataSet.BeforeScroll

Synopsis: Event triggered before the cursor changes position.

Declaration: `Property BeforeScroll : TDataSetNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `BeforeScroll` is triggered before the cursor changes position. This can happen with one of the navigation methods: `TDataset.Next` (293), `TDataset.Prior` (295), `TDataset.First` (289), `TDataset.Last` (292), but also with two of the editing operations: `TDataset.Insert` (291) and `TDataset.Delete` (285). Raising an exception in this event handler aborts the operation in progress.

See also: `TDataset.AfterScroll` (310), `TDataset.Next` (293), `TDataset.Prior` (295), `TDataset.First` (289), `TDataset.Last` (292), `TDataset.Insert` (291), `TDataset.Delete` (285)

10.20.96 `TDataset.AfterScroll`

Synopsis: Event triggered after the cursor has changed position.

Declaration: `Property AfterScroll : TDataSetNotifyEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AfterScroll` is triggered after the cursor has changed position. This can happen with one of the navigation methods: `TDataset.Next` (293), `TDataset.Prior` (295), `TDataset.First` (289), `TDataset.Last` (292), but also with two of the editing operations: `TDataset.Insert` (291) and `TDataset.Delete` (285) and after the dataset was opened. It is suitable for displaying status information or showing a value that needs to be calculated for each record.

See also: `TDataset.AfterScroll` (310), `TDataset.Next` (293), `TDataset.Prior` (295), `TDataset.First` (289), `TDataset.Last` (292), `TDataset.Insert` (291), `TDataset.Delete` (285), `TDataset.Open` (294)

10.20.97 `TDataset.BeforeRefresh`

Synopsis: Event triggered before the data is refreshed.

Declaration: `Property BeforeRefresh : TDataSetNotifyEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `BeforeRefresh` is triggered at the start of the `TDataset.Refresh` (295) method, after the dataset has been put in browse mode. If the dataset cannot be put in browse mode, the `BeforeRefresh` method will not be triggered. If an exception is raised during the `BeforeRefresh` method, then the refresh method is cancelled and the dataset remains in the `dsBrowse` state.

See also: `TDataset.Refresh` (295), `TDataset.AfterRefresh` (310), `TDataset.State` (302)

10.20.98 `TDataset.AfterRefresh`

Synopsis: Event triggered after the data has been refreshed.

Declaration: `Property AfterRefresh : TDataSetNotifyEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AfterRefresh` is triggered at the end of the `TDataset.Refresh` (295) method, after the dataset has refreshed its data and is again in `dsBrowse` state. This event can be used to react on changes in data in the current record

See also: `TDataset.Refresh` (295), `TDataset.State` (302), `TDataset.BeforeRefresh` (310)

10.20.99 TDataSet.OnCalcFields

Synopsis: Event triggered when values for calculated fields must be computed.

Declaration: `Property OnCalcFields : TDataSetNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnCalcFields` is triggered whenever the dataset needs to (re)compute the values of any calculated fields in the dataset. It is called very often, so this event should return as quickly as possible. Only the values of the calculated fields should be set, no methods of the dataset that change the data or cursor position may be called during the execution of this event handler. The frequency with which this event is called can be controlled through the `TDataset.AutoCalcFields` (305) property. Note that the value of lookup fields does not need to be calculated in this event, their value is computed automatically before this event is triggered.

See also: `TDataset.AutoCalcFields` (305), `TField.Kind` (325)

10.20.100 TDataSet.OnDeleteError

Synopsis: Event triggered when a delete operation fails.

Declaration: `Property OnDeleteError : TDataSetErrorEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnDeleteError` is triggered when the `TDataset.Delete` (285) method fails to delete the record in the underlying database. The event handler can be used to indicate what the response to the failed delete should be. To this end, it gets the exception object passed to it (parameter `E`), and it can examine this object to return an appropriate action in the `DataAction` parameter. The following responses are supported:

daFailThe operation should fail (an exception will be raised)

daAbortThe operation should be aborted (edits are undone, and an `EAbort` exception is raised)

daRetryRetry the operation.

For more information, see also the description of the `TDatasetErrorEvent` (231) event handler type.

See also: `TDatasetErrorEvent` (231), `TDataset.Delete` (285), `TDataset.OnEditError` (312), `TDataset.OnPostError` (313)

10.20.101 TDataSet.OnEditError

Synopsis: Event triggered when an edit operation fails.

Declaration: Property OnEditError : TDataSetErrorEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: OnEditError is triggered when the TDataSet.Edit (286) method fails to put the dataset in edit mode because the underlying database engine reported an error. The event handler can be used to indicate what the response to the failed edit operation should be. To this end, it gets the exception object passed to it (parameter E), and it can examine this object to return an appropriate action in the DataAction parameter. The following responses are supported:

daFailThe operation should fail (an exception will be raised)

daAbortThe operation should be aborted (edits are undone, and an EAbort exception is raised)

daRetryRetry the operation.

For more information, see also the description of the TDataSetErrorEvent (231) event handler type.

See also: TDataSetErrorEvent (231), TDataSet.Edit (286), TDataSet.OnDeleteError (311), TDataSet.OnPostError (313)

10.20.102 TDataSet.OnFilterRecord

Synopsis: Event triggered to filter records.

Declaration: Property OnFilterRecord : TFilterRecordEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: OnFilterRecord can be used to provide event-based filtering for datasets that support it. This event is only triggered when the Tdataset.Filtered (304) property is set to True. The event handler should set the Accept parameter to True if the current record should be accepted, or to False if it should be rejected. No methods that change the state of the dataset may be used during this event, and calculated fields or lookup field values are not yet available.

See also: TDataSet.Filter (303), TDataSet.Filtered (304), TDataSet.state (302)

10.20.103 TDataSet.OnNewRecord

Synopsis: Event triggered when a new record is created.

Declaration: Property OnNewRecord : TDataSetNotifyEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: OnNewRecord is triggered by the TDataSet.Append (282) or TDataSet.Insert (291) methods when the buffer for the new record's data has been allocated. This event can be used to set default value for some of the fields in the dataset. If an exception is raised during this event handler, the operation is cancelled and the dataset is put again in browse mode (TDataSet.State (302) is again dsBrowse).

See also: TDataSet.Append (282), TDataSet.Insert (291), TDataSet.State (302)

10.20.104 TDataSet.OnPostError

Synopsis: Event triggered when a post operation fails.

Declaration: `Property OnPostError : TDataSetErrorEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: `OnPostError` is triggered when the `TDataSet.Post` (294) method fails to post the changes in the dataset buffer to the underlying database, because the database engine reported an error. The event handler can be used to indicate what the response to the failed post operation should be. To this end, it gets the exception object passed to it (parameter `E`), and it can examine this object to return an appropriate action in the `DataAction` parameter. The following responses are supported:

daFailThe operation should fail (an exception will be raised)

daAbortThe operation should be aborted (edits are undone, and an `EAbort` exception is raised)

daRetryRetry the operation.

For more information, see also the description of the `TDataSetErrorEvent` (231) event handler type.

See also: `TDataSetErrorEvent` (231), `TDataSet.Post` (294), `TDataSet.OnDeleteError` (311), `TDataSet.OnEditError` (312)

10.21 TDataSource

10.21.1 Description

`TDataSource` is a mediating component: it handles communication between any DB-Aware component (often edit controls on a form) and a `TDataSet` (277) instance. Any database aware component should never communicate with a dataset directly. Instead, it should communicate with a `TDataSource` (313) instance. The `TDataSet` instance will communicate with the `TDataSource` instance, which will notify every component attached to it. Vice versa, any component that wishes to make changes to the dataset, will notify the `TDataSource` instance, which will then (if needed) notify the `TDataSet` instance. The `datasource` can be disabled, in which case all communication between the dataset and the DB-Aware components is suspended until the `datasource` is again enabled.

See also: `TDataSet` (277), `TDataLink` (272)

10.21.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
314	Create	Create a new instance of <code>TDataSource</code>
314	Destroy	Remove a <code>TDataSource</code> instance from memory
314	Edit	Put the dataset in edit mode, if needed
315	IsLinkedTo	Check if a dataset is linked to a certain dataset

10.21.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
315	AutoEdit	rw	Should the dataset be put in edit mode automatically
315	DataSet	rw	Dataset this datasource is connected to
316	Enabled	rw	Enable or disable sending of events
316	OnDataChange	rw	Called whenever data changes in the current record
316	OnStateChange	rw	Called whenever the state of the dataset changes
317	OnUpdateData	rw	Called whenever the data in the dataset must be updated
315	State	r	State of the dataset

10.21.4 TDataSource.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of TDataSource

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of `TDataSource`. It simply allocates some resources and then calls the inherited constructor.

See also: `TDataSource.Destroy` ([314](#))

10.21.5 TDataSource.Destroy

Synopsis: Remove a TDataSource instance from memory

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` notifies all `TDataLink` ([272](#)) instances connected to it that the dataset is no longer available, and then removes itself from the `TDataLink` instance. It then cleans up all resources and calls the inherited constructor.

See also: `TDataSource.Create` ([314](#)), `TDataLink` ([272](#))

10.21.6 TDataSource.Edit

Synopsis: Put the dataset in edit mode, if needed

Declaration: `procedure Edit`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Edit` will check `AutoEdit` ([315](#)): if it is `True`, then it puts the `Dataset` ([315](#)) it is connected to in edit mode, if it was in browse mode. If `AutoEdit` is `False`, then nothing happens. Application or component code that deals with GUI development should always attempt to set a dataset in edit mode through this method instead of calling `TDataset.Edit` ([286](#)) directly.

Errors: An `EDatabaseError` ([244](#)) exception can occur if the dataset is read-only or fails to set itself in edit mode. (e.g. unidirectional datasets).

See also: `TDataSource.AutoEdit` ([315](#)), `TDataset.Edit` ([286](#)), `TDataset.State` ([302](#))

10.21.7 TDataSource.IsLinkedTo

Synopsis: Check if a dataset is linked to a certain dataset

Declaration: `function IsLinkedTo (ADataset: TDataSet) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `IsLinkedTo` checks if it is somehow linked to `ADataset`: it checks the `Dataset` (315) property, and returns `True` if it is the same. If not, it continues by checking any detail dataset fields that the dataset possesses (recursively). This function can be used to detect circular links in e.g. master-detail relationships.

See also: `TDataSource.Dataset` (315)

10.21.8 TDataSource.State

Synopsis: State of the dataset

Declaration: `Property State : TDataSetState`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `State` contains the `State` (302) of the dataset it is connected to, or `dsInactive` if the dataset property is not set or the `datasource` is not enabled. Components connected to a dataset through a `datasource` property should always check `TDataSource.State` instead of checking `TDataSet.State` (302) directly, to take into account the effect of the `Enabled` (316) property.

See also: `TDataSet.State` (302), `TDataSource.Enabled` (316)

10.21.9 TDataSource.AutoEdit

Synopsis: Should the dataset be put in edit mode automatically

Declaration: `Property AutoEdit : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AutoEdit` can be set to `True` to prevent visual controls from putting the dataset in edit mode. Visual controls use the `TDataSource.Edit` (314) method to attempt to put the dataset in edit mode as soon as the user changes something. If `AutoEdit` is set to `False` then the `Edit` method does nothing. The effect is that the user must explicitly set the dataset in edit mode (by clicking some button or some other action) before the fields can be edited.

See also: `TDataSource.Edit` (314), `TDataSet.Edit` (286)

10.21.10 TDataSource.DataSet

Synopsis: Dataset this datasource is connected to

Declaration: `Property DataSet : TDataSet`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Dataset` must be set by the application programmer to the `TDataset` (277) instance for which this datasource is handling events. Setting it to `Nil` will disable all controls that are connected to this datasource instance. Once it is set and the datasource is enabled, the datasource will start sending data events to the controls or components connected to it.

See also: `TDataset` (277), `TDatasource.Enabled` (316)

10.21.11 `TDatasource.Enabled`

Synopsis: Enable or disable sending of events

Declaration: `Property Enabled : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Enabled` is by default set to `True`: the datasource instance communicates events from the dataset to components connected to the datasource, and vice versa: components can interact with the dataset. If the `Enabled` property is set to `False` then no events are communicated to connected components: it is as if the dataset property was set to `Nil`. Reversely, the components cannot interact with the dataset if the `Enabled` property is set to `False`.

See also: `TDataset` (277), `TDatasource.Dataset` (315), `TDatasource.AutoEdit` (315)

10.21.12 `TDatasource.OnStateChange`

Synopsis: Called whenever the state of the dataset changes

Declaration: `Property OnStateChange : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnStateChange` is called whenever the `TDataset.State` (302) property changes, and the datasource is enabled. It can be used in application code to react to state changes: enabling or disabling non-DB-Aware controls, setting empty values etc.

See also: `TDatasource.OnUpdateData` (317), `TDatasource.OnStateChange` (316), `TDataset.State` (302), `TDatasource.Enabled` (316)

10.21.13 `TDatasource.OnDataChange`

Synopsis: Called whenever data changes in the current record

Declaration: `Property OnDataChange : TDataChangeEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnDataChange` is called whenever a field value changes: if the `Field` parameter is set, a single field value changed. If the `Field` parameter is `Nil`, then the whole record changed: when the dataset is opened, when the user scrolls to a new record. This event handler can be set to react to data changes: to update the contents of non-DB-aware controls for instance. The event is not called when the datasource is not enabled.

See also: `TDatasource.OnUpdateData` (317), `TDatasource.OnStateChange` (316), `TDataset.AfterScroll` (310), `TField.OnChange` (348), `TDatasource.Enabled` (316)

10.21.14 TDataSource.OnUpdateData

Synopsis: Called whenever the data in the dataset must be updated

Declaration: `Property OnUpdateData : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnUpdateData` is called whenever the dataset needs the latest data from the controls: usually just before a `TDataset.Post` (294) operation. It can be used to copy data from non-db-aware controls to the dataset just before the dataset is posting the changes to the underlying database.

See also: `TDatasource.OnDataChange` (316), `TDatasource.OnStateChange` (316), `TDataset.Post` (294)

10.22 TDateField

10.22.1 Description

`TDateField` is the class used when a dataset must manage data of type date. (`TField.DataType` (337) equals `ftDate`). It initializes some of the properties of the `TField` (325) class to be able to work with date fields.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TDateField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each date field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TDataset` (277), `TField` (325), `TDateTimeField` (317), `TTimeField` (405)

10.22.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
317	Create	Create a new instance of a <code>TDateField</code> class.

10.22.3 TDateField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of a `TDateField` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TDateField` class. It calls the inherited destructor, and then sets some `TField` (325) properties to configure the instance for working with date values.

See also: `TField` (325)

10.23 TDateTimeField

10.23.1 Description

`TDateTimeField` is the class used when a dataset must manage data of type datetime. (`TField.DataType` (337) equals `ftDateTime`). It also serves as base class for the `TDateField` (317) or `TTimeField` (405) classes. It overrides some of the properties and methods of the `TField` (325) class to be able to work with date/time fields.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TDateTimeField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each datetime field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TDataset` (277), `TField` (325), `TDateField` (317), `TTimeField` (405)

10.23.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
318	Create	Create a new instance of a <code>TDateTimeField</code> class.

10.23.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
318	DisplayFormat	rw	Formatting string for textual representation of the field
319	EditMask		Specify an edit mask for an edit control
318	Value	rw	Contents of the field as a <code>TDateTime</code> value

10.23.4 TDateTimeField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of a `TDateTimeField` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TDateTimeField` class. It calls the inherited destructor, and then sets some `TField` (325) properties to configure the instance for working with date/time values.

See also: `TField` (325)

10.23.5 TDateTimeField.Value

Synopsis: Contents of the field as a `TDateTime` value

Declaration: `Property Value : TDateTime`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Value` is redefined from `TField.Value` (341) by `TDateTimeField` as a `TDateTime` value. It returns the same value as the `TField.AsDateTime` (332) property.

See also: `TField.AsDateTime` (332), `TField.Value` (341)

10.23.6 TDateTimeField.DisplayFormat

Synopsis: Formatting string for textual representation of the field

Declaration: `Property DisplayFormat : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `DisplayFormat` can be set to a formatting string that will then be used by the `TField.DisplayText` (337) property to format the value with the `DateTimeToString` (??) function.

See also: `DateTimeToString` (??), `FormatDateTime` (??), `TField.DisplayText` (337)

10.23.7 TDateTimeField.EditMask

Synopsis: Specify an edit mask for an edit control

Declaration: `Property EditMask :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `EditMask` can be used to specify an edit mask for controls that allow to edit this field. It has no effect on the field value, and serves only to ensure that the user can enter only correct data for this field.

`TDateTimeField` just changes the visibility of the `EditMask` property, it is introduced in `TField`.

For more information on valid edit masks, see the documentation of the GUI controls.

See also: `TField.EditMask` (337)

10.24 TDBDataset

10.24.1 Description

`TDBDataset` is a `TDataset` descendent which introduces the concept of a database: a central component (`TDatabase` (267)) which represents a connection to a database. This central component is exposed in the `TDBDataset.Database` (320) property. When the database is no longer connected, or is no longer in memory, all `TDBDataset` instances connected to it are disabled.

`TDBDataset` also introduces the notion of a transaction, exposed in the `Transaction` (320) property.

`TDBDataset` is an abstract class, it should never be used directly.

Dataset component writers should descend their component from `TDBDataset` if they wish to introduce a central database connection component. The database connection logic will be handled automatically by `TDBDataset`.

See also: `TDatabase` (267), `TDBTransaction` (320)

10.24.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
320	<code>destroy</code>	Remove the <code>TDBDataset</code> instance from memory.

10.24.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
320	<code>DataBase</code>	rw	Database this dataset is connected to
320	<code>Transaction</code>	rw	Transaction in which this dataset is running.

10.24.4 TDBDataset.destroy

Synopsis: Remove the TDBDataset instance from memory.

Declaration: `destructor destroy;` Override

Visibility: public

Description: Destroy will disconnect the TDBDataset from its Database (320) and Transaction (320). After this it calls the inherited destructor.

See also: TDBDataset.Database (320), TDatabase (267)

10.24.5 TDBDataset.DataBase

Synopsis: Database this dataset is connected to

Declaration: `Property DataBase : TDataBase`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Database should be set to the TDatabase (267) instance this dataset is connected to. It can only be set when the dataset is closed.

Descendent classes should check in the property setter whether the database instance is of the correct class.

Errors: If the property is set when the dataset is active, an EDatabaseError (244) exception will be raised.

See also: TDatabase (267), TDBDataset.Transaction (320)

10.24.6 TDBDataset.Transaction

Synopsis: Transaction in which this dataset is running.

Declaration: `Property Transaction : TDBTransaction`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Transaction points to a TDBTransaction (320) component that represents the transaction this dataset is active in. This property should only be used for databases that support transactions.

The property can only be set when the dataset is disabled.

See also: TDBTransaction (320), TDBDataset.Database (320)

10.25 TDBTransaction

10.25.1 Description

TDBTransaction encapsulates a SQL transaction. It is an abstract class, and should be used by component creators that wish to encapsulate transactions in a class. The TDBTransaction class offers functionality to refer to a TDatabase (267) instance, and to keep track of TDataset instances which are connected to the transaction.

See also: TDatabase (267), TDataset (277)

10.25.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
321	CloseDataSets	Close all connected datasets
321	Create	Transaction property
321	destroy	Remove a <code>TDBTransaction</code> instance from memory.

10.25.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
322	Active	rw	Is the transaction active or not
322	DataBase	rw	Database this transaction is connected to

10.25.4 TDBTransaction.Create

Synopsis: Transaction property

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new `TDBTransaction` instance. It sets up the necessary resources, after having called the inherited constructor.

See also: `TDBTransaction.Destroy` ([321](#))

10.25.5 TDBTransaction.destroy

Synopsis: Remove a `TDBTransaction` instance from memory.

Declaration: `destructor destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` first disconnects all connected `TDBDataset` ([319](#)) instances and then cleans up the resources allocated in the `Create` ([321](#)) constructor. After that it calls the inherited destructor.

See also: `TDBTransaction.Create` ([321](#))

10.25.6 TDBTransaction.CloseDataSets

Synopsis: Close all connected datasets

Declaration: `procedure CloseDataSets`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CloseDatasets` closes all connected datasets (All `TDBDataset` ([319](#)) instances whose `Transaction` ([320](#)) property points to this `TDBTransaction` instance).

See also: `TDBDataset` ([319](#)), `TDBDataset.Transaction` ([320](#))

10.25.7 TDBTransaction.DataBase

Synopsis: Database this transaction is connected to

Declaration: `Property DataBase : TDataBase`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `DataBase` points to the database that this transaction is part of. This property can be set only when the transaction is not active.

Errors: Setting this property to a new value when the transaction is active will result in an `EDatabaseError` (244) exception.

See also: `TDBTransaction.Active` (322), `TDataBase` (267)

10.25.8 TDBTransaction.Active

Synopsis: Is the transaction active or not

Declaration: `Property Active : Boolean`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Active` is `True` if a transaction was started using `TDBTransaction.StartTransaction` (320). Reversely, setting `Active` to `True` will call `StartTransaction`, setting it to `False` will call `TDBTransaction.EndTransaction` (320).

See also: `TDBTransaction.StartTransaction` (320), `TDBTransaction.EndTransaction` (320)

10.26 TDefCollection

10.26.1 Description

`TDefCollection` is a parent class for the `TFieldDefs` (353) and `TIndexDefs` (370) collections: It holds a set of named definitions on behalf of a `TDataset` (277) component. To this end, it introduces a `dataset` (324) property, and a mechanism to notify the dataset of any updates in the collection. It is supposed to hold items of class `TNamedItem` (382), so the `TDefCollection.Find` (323) method can find items by named.

10.26.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
323	<code>create</code>	Instantiate a new <code>TDefCollection</code> instance.
323	<code>Find</code>	Find an item by name
323	<code>GetItemNames</code>	Return a list of all names in the collection
323	<code>IndexOf</code>	Find location of item by name

10.26.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
324	<code>Dataset</code>	<code>r</code>	Dataset this collection manages definitions for.
324	<code>Updated</code>	<code>rw</code>	Has one of the items been changed

10.26.4 TDefCollection.create

Synopsis: Instantiate a new `TDefCollection` instance.

Declaration: `constructor create(ADataset: TDataSet; AOwner: TPersistent;
AClass: TCollectionItemClass)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` saves the `ADataset` and `AOwner` components in local variables for later reference, and then calls the inherited `Create` with `AClass` as a parameter. `AClass` should at least be of type `TNamedItem`. `ADataset` is the dataset on whose behalf the collection is managed. `AOwner` is the owner of the collection, normally this is the form or datamodule on which the dataset is dropped.

See also: `TDataset` ([277](#)), `TNamedItem` ([382](#))

10.26.5 TDefCollection.Find

Synopsis: Find an item by name

Declaration: `function Find(const AName: string) : TNamedItem`

Visibility: public

Description: `Find` searches for an item in the collection with name `AName` and returns the item if it is found. If no item with the requested name is found, `Nil` is returned. The search is performed case-insensitive.

Errors: If no item with matching name is found, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TNamedItem.Name` ([383](#)), `TDefCollection.IndexOf` ([323](#))

10.26.6 TDefCollection.GetItemNames

Synopsis: Return a list of all names in the collection

Declaration: `procedure GetItemNames(List: TStrings)`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetItemNames` fills `List` with the names of all items in the collection. It clears the list first.

Errors: If `List` is not a valid `TStrings` instance, an exception will occur.

See also: `TNamedItem.Name` ([383](#))

10.26.7 TDefCollection.IndexOf

Synopsis: Find location of item by name

Declaration: `function IndexOf(const AName: string) : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` searches in the collection for an item whose `Name` property matches `AName` and returns the index of the item if it finds one. If no item is found, -1 is returned. The search is performed case-insensitive.

See also: `TDefCollection.Find` ([323](#)), `TNamedItem.Name` ([383](#))

10.26.8 TDefCollection.Dataset

Synopsis: Dataset this collection manages definitions for.

Declaration: `Property Dataset : TDataSet`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Dataset` is the dataset this collection manages definitions for. It must be supplied when the collection is created and cannot change during the lifetime of the collection.

10.26.9 TDefCollection.Updated

Synopsis: Has one of the items been changed

Declaration: `Property Updated : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Changed` indicates whether the collection has changed: an item was added or removed, or one of the properties of the items was changed.

10.27 TDetailDataLink

10.27.1 Description

`TDetailDataLink` handles the communication between a detail dataset and the master datasource in a master-detail relationship between datasets. It should never be used in an application, and should only be used by component writers that wish to provide master-detail functionality for `TDataSet` descendents.

See also: `TDataSet` ([277](#)), `TDataSource` ([313](#))

10.27.2 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
324	<code>DetailDataSet</code>	r	Detail dataset in Master-detail relation

10.27.3 TDetailDataLink.DetailDataSet

Synopsis: Detail dataset in Master-detail relation

Declaration: `Property DetailDataSet : TDataSet`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `DetailDataSet` is the detail dataset in a master-detail relationship between 2 datasets. `DetailDataSet` is always `Nil` in `TDetailDataLink` and is only filled in in descendent classes like `TMasterDataLink` ([378](#)). The master dataset is available through the regular `TDataLink.DataSource` ([275](#)) property.

See also: `TDataSet` ([277](#)), `TMasterDataLink` ([378](#)), `TDataLink.DataSource` ([275](#))

10.28 TField

10.28.1 Description

`TField` is an abstract class that defines access methods for a field in a record, controlled by a `TDataset` (277) instance. It provides methods and properties to access the contents of the field in the current record. Reading one of the `AsXXX` properties of `TField` will access the field contents and return the contents as the desired type. Writing one of the `AsXXX` properties will write a value to the buffer represented by the `TField` instance.

`TField` is an abstract class, meaning that it should never be created directly. `TDataset` instances always create one of the descendent classes of `TField`, depending on the type of the underlying data.

See also: `TDataset` (277), `TFieldDef` (349), `TFields` (355)

10.28.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
328	<code>Assign</code>	Copy properties from one <code>TField</code> instance to another
328	<code>AssignValue</code>	Assign value of a variant record to the field.
329	<code>Clear</code>	Clear the field contents.
328	<code>Create</code>	Create a new <code>TField</code> instance
328	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroy the <code>TField</code> instance
329	<code>FocusControl</code>	Set focus to the first control connected to this field.
329	<code>GetData</code>	Get the data from this field
330	<code>IsBlob</code>	Is the field a BLOB field (untyped data of indeterminate size).
330	<code>IsValidChar</code>	Check whether a character is valid input for the field
330	<code>RefreshLookupList</code>	Refresh the lookup list
330	<code>SetData</code>	Save the field data
331	<code>SetFieldType</code>	Set the field data type
331	<code>Validate</code>	Validate the data buffer

10.28.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
342	Alignment	rw	Alignment for this field
331	AsBCD	rw	Access the field's contents as a BCD (Binary coded Decimal)
332	AsBoolean	rw	Access the field's contents as a Boolean value.
332	AsBytes	rw	
332	AsCurrency	rw	Access the field's contents as a Currency value.
332	AsDateTime	rw	Access the field's contents as a TDateTime value.
333	AsFloat	rw	Access the field's contents as a floating-point (Double) value.
334	AsInteger	rw	Access the field's contents as a 32-bit signed integer (longint) value.
333	AsLargeInt	rw	Access the field's contents as a 64-bit signed integer (longint) value.
333	AsLongint	rw	Access the field's contents as a 32-bit signed integer (longint) value.
334	AsString	rw	Access the field's contents as an AnsiString value.
335	AsVariant	rw	Access the field's contents as a Variant value.
334	AsWideString	rw	Access the field's contents as a WideString value.
335	AttributeSet	rw	Not used: dictionary information
335	Calculated	rw	Is the field a calculated field ?
336	CanModify	r	Can the field's contents be modified.
342	ConstraintErrorMessage	rw	Message to display if the CustomConstraint constraint is violated.
336	CurValue	r	Current value of the field
342	CustomConstraint	rw	Custom constraint for the field's value
336	DataSet	rw	Dataset this field belongs to
336	DataSet	r	Size of the field's data
337	DataType	r	The data type of the field.
343	DefaultExpression	rw	Default value for the field
343	DisplayLabel	rws	Name of the field for display purposes
337	DisplayName	r	User-readable fieldname
337	DisplayText	r	Formatted field value
343	DisplayWidth	rw	Width of the field in characters
337	EditMask	rw	Specify an edit mask for an edit control
338	EditMaskPtr	r	Alias for EditMask
343	FieldKind	rw	The kind of field.
344	FieldName	rw	Name of the field
338	FieldNo	r	Number of the field in the record
344	HasConstraints	r	Does the field have any constraints defined
344	ImportedConstraint	rw	Constraint for the field value on the level of the underlying database
344	Index	rw	Index of the field in the list of fields
338	IsIndexedField	r	Is the field an indexed field ?
339	IsNull	r	Is the field empty
345	KeyFields	rw	Key fields to use when looking up a field value.
339	Lookup	rw	Is the field a lookup field
345	LookupCache	rw	Should lookup values be cached
345	LookupDataSet	rw	Dataset with lookup values
346	LookupKeyFields	rw	Names of fields on which to perform a locate
341	LookupList	r	List of lookup values
346	LookupResultField	rw	Name of field to use as lookup value
339	NewValue	rw	The new value of the field
339	Offset	r	Offset of the field's value in the dataset buffer
341	OldValue	r	Old value of the field
348	OnChange	rw	Event triggered when the field's value has changed
348	OnGetText	rw	Event to format the field's content
348	OnSetText	rw	Event to set the field's content based on a user-formatted string
348	OnValidate	rw	Event to validate the value of a field before it is writ-

10.28.4 TField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new TField instance

Declaration: constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override

Visibility: public

Description: Create creates a new TField instance and sets up initial values for the fields. TField is a component, and AOwner will be used as the owner of the TField instance. This usually will be the form or datamodule on which the dataset was placed. There should normally be no need for a programmer to create a Tfield instance manually. The TDataSet.Open (294) method will create the necessary TField instances, if none had been created in the designer.

See also: TDataSet.Open (294)

10.28.5 TField.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroy the TField instance

Declaration: destructor Destroy; Override

Visibility: public

Description: Destroy cleans up any structures set up by the field instance, and then calls the inherited destructor. There should be no need to call this method under normal circumstances: the dataset instance will free any TField instances it has created when the dataset was opened.

See also: TDataSet.Close (284)

10.28.6 TField.Assign

Synopsis: Copy properties from one TField instance to another

Declaration: procedure Assign(Source: TPersistent); Override

Visibility: public

Description: Assign is overridden by TField to copy the field value (not the field properties) from Source if it exists. If Source is Nil then the value of the field is cleared.

Errors: If Source is not a TField instance, then an exception will be raised.

See also: TField.Value (341)

10.28.7 TField.AssignValue

Synopsis: Assign value of a variant record to the field.

Declaration: procedure AssignValue(const AValue: TVarRec)

Visibility: public

Description: AssignValue assigns the value of a "array of const" record AValue (of type TVarRec) to the field's value. If the record contains a TPersistent instance, it will be used as argument for the Assign to the field.

The dataset must be in edit mode to execute this method.

Errors: If the `AValue` contains an unsupported value (such as a non-nil pointer) then an exception will be raised. If the dataset is not in one of the edit modes, then executing this method will raise an `EDatabaseError` (244) exception.

See also: `TField.Assign` (328), `TField.Value` (341)

10.28.8 TField.Clear

Synopsis: Clear the field contents.

Declaration: `procedure Clear; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` clears the contents of the field. After calling this method the value of the field is `Null` and `IsNull` (339) returns `True`.

The dataset must be in edit mode to execute this method.

Errors: If the dataset is not in one of the edit modes, then executing this method will raise an `EDatabaseError` (244) exception.

See also: `TField.IsNull` (339), `TField.Value` (341)

10.28.9 TField.FocusControl

Synopsis: Set focus to the first control connected to this field.

Declaration: `procedure FocusControl`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FocusControl` will set focus to the first control that is connected to this field.

Errors: If the control cannot receive focus, then this method will raise an exception.

See also: `TDataset.EnableControls` (287), `TDataset.DisableControls` (286)

10.28.10 TField.GetData

Synopsis: Get the data from this field

Declaration: `function GetData(Buffer: Pointer) : Boolean; Overload`
`function GetData(Buffer: Pointer; NativeFormat: Boolean) : Boolean`
`; Overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetData` is used internally by `TField` to fetch the value of the data of this field into the data buffer pointed to by `Buffer`. If it returns `False` if the field has no value (i.e. is `Null`). If the `NativeFormat` parameter is true, then date/time formats should use the `TDateTime` format. It should not be necessary to use this method, instead use the various 'AsXXX' methods to access the data.

Errors: No validity checks are performed on `Buffer`: it should point to a valid memory area, and should be large enough to contain the value of the field. Failure to provide a buffer that matches these criteria will result in an exception.

See also: `TField.IsNull` (339), `TField.SetData` (330), `TField.Value` (341)

10.28.11 TField.IsBlob

Synopsis: Is the field a BLOB field (untyped data of indeterminate size).

Declaration: `class function IsBlob; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `IsBlob` returns `True` if the field is one of the blob field types. The `TField` implementation returns `false`. Only one of the blob-type field classes override this function and let it return `True`.

Errors: None.

See also: `TBlobField.IsBlob` ([254](#))

10.28.12 TField.IsValidChar

Synopsis: Check whether a character is valid input for the field

Declaration: `function IsValidChar(InputChar: Char) : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `IsValidChar` checks whether `InputChar` is a valid characters for the current field. It does this by checking whether `InputChar` is in the set of characters specified by the `TField.ValidChars` ([340](#)) property. The `ValidChars` property will be initialized to a correct set of characters by descendent classes. For instance, a numerical field will only accept numerical characters and the sign and decimal separator characters.

Descendent classes can override this method to provide custom checks. The `ValidChars` property can be set to restrict the list of valid characters to a subset of what would normally be available.

See also: `TField.ValidChars` ([340](#))

10.28.13 TField.RefreshLookupList

Synopsis: Refresh the lookup list

Declaration: `procedure RefreshLookupList`

Visibility: public

Description: `RefreshLookupList` fills the lookup list for a lookup fields with all key, value pairs found in the lookup dataset. It will open the lookup dataset if needed. The lookup list is only used if the `TField.LookupCache` ([345](#)) property is set to `True`.

Errors: If the values of the various lookup properties is not correct or the lookup dataset cannot be opened, then an exception will be raised.

See also: `LookupDataset` ([345](#)), `LookupKeyFields` ([346](#)), `LookupResultField` ([346](#))

10.28.14 TField.SetData

Synopsis: Save the field data

Declaration: `procedure SetData(Buffer: Pointer); Overload`
`procedure SetData(Buffer: Pointer; NativeFormat: Boolean); Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `SetData` saves the value of the field data in `Buffer` to the dataset internal buffer. The `Buffer` pointer should point to a memory buffer containing the data for the field in the correct format. If the `NativeFormat` parameter is true, then date/time formats should use the `TDateTime` format.

There should normally not be any need to call `SetData` directly: it is called by the various setter methods of the `AsXXX` properties of `TField`.

Errors: No validity checks are performed on `Buffer`: it should point to a valid memory area, and should be large enough to contain the value of the field. Failure to provide a buffer that matches these criteria will result in an exception.

See also: `TField.GetData` (329), `TField.Value` (341)

10.28.15 TField.SetFieldType

Synopsis: Set the field data type

Declaration: `procedure SetFieldType(AValue: TFieldType); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `SetFieldType` does nothing, but it can be overridden by descendent classes to provide special handling when the field type is set.

See also: `TField.DataType` (337)

10.28.16 TField.Validate

Synopsis: Validate the data buffer

Declaration: `procedure Validate(Buffer: Pointer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Validate` is called by `SetData` prior to writing the data from `Buffer` to the dataset buffer. It will call the `TField.OnValidate` (348) event handler, if one is set, to allow the application programmer to program additional checks.

See also: `TField.SetData` (330), `TField.OnValidate` (348)

10.28.17 TField.AsBCD

Synopsis: Access the field's contents as a BCD (Binary coded Decimal)

Declaration: `Property AsBCD : TBCD`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsBCD` can be used to read or write the contents of the field as a BCD value (Binary Coded Decimal). If the native type of the field is not BCD, then an attempt will be made to convert the field value from the native format to a BCD value when reading the field's content. Likewise, when writing the property, the value will be converted to the native type of the field (if the value allows it). Therefore, when reading or writing a field value for a field whose native data type is not a BCD value, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TField.AsCurrency` (332), `TField.Value` (341)

10.28.18 TField.AsBoolean

Synopsis: Access the field's contents as a Boolean value.

Declaration: `Property AsBoolean : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsBoolean` can be used to read or write the contents of the field as a boolean value. If the native type of the field is not Boolean, then an attempt will be made to convert the field value from the native format to a boolean value when reading the field's content. Likewise, when writing the property, the value will be converted to the native type of the field (if the value allows it). Therefor, when reading or writing a field value for a field whose native data type is not a Boolean value (for instance a string value), an exception may be raised.

See also: `TField.Value` ([341](#)), `TField.AsInteger` ([334](#))

10.28.19 TField.AsBytes

Declaration: `Property AsBytes : TBytes`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

10.28.20 TField.AsCurrency

Synopsis: Access the field's contents as a Currency value.

Declaration: `Property AsCurrency : Currency`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsBoolean` can be used to read or write the contents of the field as a currency value. If the native type of the field is not Boolean, then an attempt will be made to convert the field value from the native format to a currency value when reading the field's content. Likewise, when writing the property, the value will be converted to the native type of the field (if the value allows it). Therefor, when reading or writing a field value for a field whose native data type is not a currency-compatible value (dates or string values), an exception may be raised.

See also: `TField.Value` ([341](#)), `TField.AsFloat` ([333](#))

10.28.21 TField.AsDateTime

Synopsis: Access the field's contents as a TDateTime value.

Declaration: `Property AsDateTime : TDateTime`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsDateTime` can be used to read or write the contents of the field as a `TDateTime` value (for both date and time values). If the native type of the field is not a date or time value, then an attempt will be made to convert the field value from the native format to a `TDateTime` value when reading the field's content. Likewise, when writing the property, the value will be converted to the native type of the field (if the value allows it). Therefor, when reading or writing a field value for a field whose native data type is not a `TDateTime`-compatible value (dates or string values), an exception may be raised.

See also: `TField.Value` (341), `TField.AsString` (334)

10.28.22 TField.AsFloat

Synopsis: Access the field's contents as a floating-point (Double) value.

Declaration: `Property AsFloat : Double`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsFloat` can be used to read or write the contents of the field as a floating-point value (of type double, i.e. with double precision). If the native type of the field is not a floating-point value, then an attempt will be made to convert the field value from the native format to a floating-point value when reading the field's content. Likewise, when writing the property, the value will be converted to the native type of the field (if the value allows it). Therefor, when reading or writing a field value for a field whose native data type is not a floating-point-compatible value (string values for instance), an exception may be raised.

See also: `TField.Value` (341), `TField.AsString` (334), `TField.AsCurrency` (332)

10.28.23 TField.AsLongint

Synopsis: Access the field's contents as a 32-bit signed integer (longint) value.

Declaration: `Property AsLongint : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsLongint` can be used to read or write the contents of the field as a 32-bit signed integer value (of type longint). If the native type of the field is not a longint value, then an attempt will be made to convert the field value from the native format to a longint value when reading the field's content. Likewise, when writing the property, the value will be converted to the native type of the field (if the value allows it). Therefor, when reading or writing a field value for a field whose native data type is not a 32-bit signed integer-compatible value (string values for instance), an exception may be raised.

This is an alias for the `TField.AsInteger` (334).

See also: `TField.Value` (341), `TField.AsString` (334), `TField.AsInteger` (334)

10.28.24 TField.AsLargeInt

Synopsis: Access the field's contents as a 64-bit signed integer (longint) value.

Declaration: `Property AsLargeInt : LargeInt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsLargeInt` can be used to read or write the contents of the field as a 64-bit signed integer value (of type `Int64`). If the native type of the field is not an `Int64` value, then an attempt will be made to convert the field value from the native format to an `Int64` value when reading the field's content. Likewise, when writing the property, the value will be converted to the native type of the field (if the value allows it). Therefor, when reading or writing a field value for a field whose native data type is not a 64-bit signed integer-compatible value (string values for instance), an exception may be raised.

See also: `TField.Value` (341), `TField.AsString` (334), `TField.AsInteger` (334)

10.28.25 TField.AsInteger

Synopsis: Access the field's contents as a 32-bit signed integer (longint) value.

Declaration: `Property AsInteger : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsInteger` can be used to read or write the contents of the field as a 32-bit signed integer value (of type `Integer`). If the native type of the field is not an integer value, then an attempt will be made to convert the field value from the native format to a integer value when reading the field's content. Likewise, when writing the property, the value will be converted to the native type of the field (if the value allows it). Therefor, when reading or writing a field value for a field whose native data type is not a 32-bit signed integer-compatible value (string values for instance), an exception may be raised.

See also: `TField.Value` (341), `TField.AsString` (334), `TField.AsLongint` (333), `TField.AsInt64` (325)

10.28.26 TField.AsString

Synopsis: Access the field's contents as an `AnsiString` value.

Declaration: `Property AsString : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsString` can be used to read or write the contents of the field as an `AnsiString` value. If the native type of the field is not an `ansistring` value, then an attempt will be made to convert the field value from the native format to a `ansistring` value when reading the field's content. Likewise, when writing the property, the value will be converted to the native type of the field (if the value allows it). Therefor, when reading or writing a field value for a field whose native data type is not an `ansistring`-compatible value, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TField.Value` (341), `TField.AsWideString` (334)

10.28.27 TField.AsWideString

Synopsis: Access the field's contents as a `WideString` value.

Declaration: `Property AsWideString : WideString`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsWideString` can be used to read or write the contents of the field as a `WideString` value. If the native type of the field is not a widestring value, then an attempt will be made to convert the field value from the native format to a widestring value when reading the field's content. Likewise, when writing the property, the value will be converted to the native type of the field (if the value allows it). Therefore, when reading or writing a field value for a field whose native data type is not a widestring-compatible value, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TField.Value` (341), `TField.AString` (325)

10.28.28 TField.AsVariant

Synopsis: Access the field's contents as a `Variant` value.

Declaration: `Property AsVariant : variant`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AsVariant` can be used to read or write the contents of the field as a `Variant` value. If the native type of the field is not a `Variant` value, then an attempt will be made to convert the field value from the native format to a `variant` value when reading the field's content. Likewise, when writing the property, the value will be converted to the native type of the field (if the value allows it). Therefore, when reading or writing a field value for a field whose native data type is not a `variant-compatible` value, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TField.Value` (341), `TField.AString` (325)

10.28.29 TField.AttributeSet

Synopsis: Not used: dictionary information

Declaration: `Property AttributeSet : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AttributeSet` was used in older Delphi versions to store data dictionary information for use in data-aware controls at design time. Not used in FreePascal (or newer Delphi versions); kept for Delphi compatibility.

10.28.30 TField.Calculated

Synopsis: Is the field a calculated field ?

Declaration: `Property Calculated : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Calculated` is `True` if the `FieldKind` (343) is `fkCalculated`. Setting the property will result in `FieldKind` being set to `fkCalculated` (for a value of `True`) or `fkData`. This property should be considered read-only.

See also: `TField.FieldKind` (343)

10.28.31 TField.CanModify

Synopsis: Can the field's contents be modified.

Declaration: `Property CanModify : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `CanModify` is `True` if the field is not read-only and the dataset allows modification.

See also: `TField.ReadOnly` ([347](#)), `TDataset.CanModify` ([298](#))

10.28.32 TField.CurValue

Synopsis: Current value of the field

Declaration: `Property CurValue : Variant`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `CurValue` returns the current value of the field as a variant.

See also: `TField.Value` ([341](#))

10.28.33 TField.DataSet

Synopsis: Dataset this field belongs to

Declaration: `Property DataSet : TDataSet`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `DataSet` contains the dataset this field belongs to. Writing this property will add the field to the list of fields of a dataset, after removing it from the list of fields of the dataset the field was previously assigned to. It should under normal circumstances never be necessary to set this property, the `TDataset` code will take care of this.

See also: `TDataset` ([277](#)), `TDataset.Fields` ([303](#))

10.28.34 TField.DataSize

Synopsis: Size of the field's data

Declaration: `Property DataSize : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `DataSize` is the memory size needed to store the field's contents. This is different from the `Size` ([340](#)) property which declares a logical size for datatypes that have a variable size (such as string fields). For BLOB fields, use the `TBlobField.BlobSize` ([256](#)) property to get the size of the field's contents for the current record..

See also: `TField.Size` ([340](#)), `TBlobField.BlobSize` ([256](#))

10.28.35 TField.DataType

Synopsis: The data type of the field.

Declaration: `Property DataType : TFieldType`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `DataType` indicates the type of data the field has. This property is initialized when the dataset is opened or when persistent fields are created for the dataset. Instead of checking the class type of the field, it is better to check the `DataType`, since the actual class of the `TField` instance may differ depending on the dataset.

See also: `TField.FieldKind` (343)

10.28.36 TField.DisplayName

Synopsis: User-readable fieldname

Declaration: `Property DisplayName : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `DisplayName` is the name of the field as it will be displayed to the user e.g. in grid column headers. By default it equals the `FieldName` (344) property, unless assigned another value.
The use of this property is deprecated. Use `DisplayLabel` (343) instead.

See also: `TField.FieldName` (344)

10.28.37 TField.DisplayText

Synopsis: Formatted field value

Declaration: `Property DisplayText : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `DisplayText` returns the field's value as it should be displayed to the user, with all necessary formatting applied. Controls that should display the value of the field should use `DisplayText` instead of the `TField.AsString` (334) property, which does not take into account any formatting.

See also: `TField.AsString` (334)

10.28.38 TField.EditMask

Synopsis: Specify an edit mask for an edit control

Declaration: `Property EditMask : TEditMask`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `EditMask` can be used to specify an edit mask for controls that allow to edit this field. It has no effect on the field value, and serves only to ensure that the user can enter only correct data for this field.

For more information on valid edit masks, see the documentation of the GUI controls.

See also: `TDateTimeField.EditMask` (319), `TStringField.EditMask` (405)

10.28.39 TField.EditMaskPtr

Synopsis: Alias for `EditMask`

Declaration: `Property EditMaskPtr : TEditMask`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `EditMaskPtr` is a read-only alias for the `EditMask` (337) property. It is not used.

See also: `TField.EditMask` (337)

10.28.40 TField.FieldNo

Synopsis: Number of the field in the record

Declaration: `Property FieldNo : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `FieldNo` is the position of the field in the record. It is a 1-based index and is initialized when the dataset is opened or when persistent fields are created for the dataset.

See also: `TField.Index` (344)

10.28.41 TField.IsIndexField

Synopsis: Is the field an indexed field ?

Declaration: `Property IsIndexField : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `IsIndexField` is true if the field is an indexed field. By default this property is `False`, descendants of `TDataset` (277) can change this to `True`.

See also: `TField.Calculated` (335)

10.28.42 TField.IsNull

Synopsis: Is the field empty

Declaration: `Property IsNull : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `IsNull` is `True` if the field does not have a value. If the underlying data contained a value, or a value is written to it, `IsNull` will return `False`. After `TDataset.Insert` (291) is called or `Clear` (329) is called then `IsNull` will return `True`.

See also: `TField.Clear` (329), `TDataset.Insert` (291)

10.28.43 TField.Lookup

Synopsis: Is the field a lookup field

Declaration: `Property Lookup : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Lookup` is `True` if the `FieldKind` (343) equals `fkLookup`, `False` otherwise. Setting the `Lookup` property will switch the `FieldKind` between the `fkLookup` and `fkData`.

See also: `TField.FieldKind` (343)

10.28.44 TField.NewValue

Synopsis: The new value of the field

Declaration: `Property NewValue : Variant`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `NewValue` returns the new value of the field. The FPC implementation of `TDataset` (277) does not yet support this.

See also: `TField.Value` (341), `TField.CurValue` (336)

10.28.45 TField.Offset

Synopsis: Offset of the field's value in the dataset buffer

Declaration: `Property Offset : Word`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Offset` is the location of the field's contents in the dataset memory buffer. It is read-only and initialized by the dataset when it is opened.

See also: `TField.FieldNo` (338), `TField.Index` (344), `TField.Datasize` (336)

10.28.46 TField.Size

Synopsis: Logical size of the field

Declaration: `Property Size : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Size` is the declared size of the field for datatypes that can have variable size, such as string types, BCD types or array types. To get the size of the storage needed to store the field's content, the `DataSize` (336) should be used. For blob fields, the current size of the data is not guaranteed to be present.

See also: `DataSize` (336)

10.28.47 TField.Text

Synopsis: Text representation of the field

Declaration: `Property Text : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Text` can be used to retrieve or set the value of the value as a string value for editing purposes. It will trigger the `TField.OnGetText` (348) event handler if a handler was specified. For display purposes, the `TField.DisplayText` (337) property should be used. Controls that should display the value in a textual format should use `Text` whenever they must display the text for editing purposes. Inversely, when a control should save the value entered by the user, it should write the contents to the `Text` property, not the `AsString` (334) property, this will invoke the `Tfield.OnSetText` (348) event handler, if one is set.

See also: `TField.AsString` (334), `TField.DisplayText` (337), `TField.Value` (341)

10.28.48 TField.ValidChars

Synopsis: Characters that are valid input for the field's content

Declaration: `Property ValidChars : TFieldChars`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ValidChars` is a property that is initialized by descendent classes to contain the set of characters that can be entered in an edit control which is used to edit the field. Numerical fields will set this to a set of numerical characters, string fields will set this to all possible characters. It is possible to restrict the possible input by setting this property to a subset of all possible characters (for example, set it to all uppercase letters to allow the user to enter only uppercase characters. `TField` itself does not enforce the validity of the data when the content of the field is set, an edit control should check the validity of the user input by means of the `IsValidChar` (330) function.

See also: `TField.IsValidChar` (330)

10.28.49 TField.Value

Synopsis: Value of the field as a variant value

Declaration: `Property Value : variant`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Value` can be used to read or write the value of the field as a Variant value. When setting the value, the value will be converted to the actual type of the field as defined in the underlying data. Likewise, when reading the value property, the actual field value will be converted to a variant value. If the field does not contain a value (when `IsNull` (339) returns `True`), then `Value` will contain `Null`.

It is not recommended to use the `Value` property: it should only be used when the type of the field is unknown. If the type of the field is known, it is better to use one of the `AsXXX` properties, which will not only result in faster code, but will also avoid strange type conversions.

See also: `TField.IsNull` (339), `TField.Text` (340), `TField.DisplayText` (337)

10.28.50 TField.OldValue

Synopsis: Old value of the field

Declaration: `Property OldValue : variant`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `OldValue` returns the value of the field prior to an edit operation. This feature is currently not supported in FPC.

See also: `TField.Value` (341), `TField.CurValue` (336), `TField.NewValue` (339)

10.28.51 TField.LookupList

Synopsis: List of lookup values

Declaration: `Property LookupList : TLookupList`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `LookupList` contains the list of key, value pairs used when caching the possible lookup values for a lookup field. The list is only valid when the `LookupCache` (345) property is set to `True`. It can be refreshed using the `RefreshLookupList` (330) method.

See also: `TField.RefreshLookupList` (330), `TField.LookupCache` (345)

10.28.52 TField.Alignment

Synopsis: Alignment for this field

Declaration: `Property Alignment : TAlignment`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Alignment` contains the alignment that UI controls should observe when displaying the contents of the field. Setting the property at the field level will make sure that all DB-Aware controls will display the contents of the field with the same alignment.

See also: `TField.DisplayText` ([337](#))

10.28.53 TField.CustomConstraint

Synopsis: Custom constraint for the field's value

Declaration: `Property CustomConstraint : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `CustomConstraint` may contain a constraint that will be enforced when the dataset posts it's data. It should be a SQL-like expression that results in a `True` or `False` value. Examples of valid constraints are:

```
Salary < 10000
YearsEducation < Age
```

If the constraint is not satisfied when the record is posted, then an exception will be raised with the value of `ConstraintErrorMessage` ([342](#)) as a message.

This feature is not yet implemented in FPC.

See also: `TField.ConstraintErrorMessage` ([342](#)), `TField.ImportedConstraint` ([344](#))

10.28.54 TField.ConstraintErrorMessage

Synopsis: Message to display if the `CustomConstraint` constraint is violated.

Declaration: `Property ConstraintErrorMessage : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ConstraintErrorMessage` is the message that should be displayed when the dataset checks the constraints and the constraint in `TField.CustomConstraint` ([342](#)) is violated.

This feature is not yet implemented in FPC.

See also: `TField.CustomConstraint` ([342](#))

10.28.55 TField.DefaultExpression

Synopsis: Default value for the field

Declaration: `Property DefaultExpression : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `DefaultValue` can be set to a value that should be entered in the field whenever the `TDataset.Append` (282) or `TDataset.Insert` (291) methods are executed. It should contain a valid SQL expression that results in the correct type for the field.

This feature is not yet implemented in FPC.

See also: `TDataset.Insert` (291), `TDataset.Append` (282), `TDataset.CustomConstraint` (277)

10.28.56 TField.DisplayLabel

Synopsis: Name of the field for display purposes

Declaration: `Property DisplayLabel : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `DisplayLabel` is the name of the field as it will be displayed to the user e.g. in grid column headers. By default it equals the `FieldName` (344) property, unless assigned another value.

See also: `TField.FieldName` (344)

10.28.57 TField.DisplayWidth

Synopsis: Width of the field in characters

Declaration: `Property DisplayWidth : LongInt`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `DisplayWidth` is the width (in characters) that should be used by controls that display the contents of the field (such as in grids or lookup lists). It is initialized to a default value for most fields (e.g. it equals `Size` (340) for string fields) but can be modified to obtain a more appropriate value for the field's expected content.

See also: `TField.Alignment` (342), `TField.DisplayText` (337)

10.28.58 TField.FieldKind

Synopsis: The kind of field.

Declaration: `Property FieldKind : TFieldKind`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `FieldKind` indicates the type of the `TField` instance. Besides `TField` instances that represent fields present in the underlying data records, there can also be calculated or lookup fields. This property determines what kind of field the `TField` instance is.

10.28.59 TField.FieldName

Synopsis: Name of the field

Declaration: `Property FieldName : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `FieldName` is the name of the field as it is defined in the underlying data structures (for instance the name of the field in a SQL table, DBase file, or the alias of the field if it was aliased in a SQL SELECT statement. It does not always equal the `Name` property, which is the name of the `TField` component instance. The `Name` property will generally equal the name of the dataset appended with the value of the `FieldName` property.

See also: `TFieldDef.Name` (349), `TField.Size` (340), `TField.DataType` (337)

10.28.60 TField.HasConstraints

Synopsis: Does the field have any constraints defined

Declaration: `Property HasConstraints : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read

Description: `HasConstraints` will contain `True` if one of the `CustomConstraint` (342) or `ImportedConstraint` (344) properties is set to a non-empty value.

See also: `CustomConstraint` (342), `ImportedConstraint` (344)

10.28.61 TField.Index

Synopsis: Index of the field in the list of fields

Declaration: `Property Index : LongInt`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Index` is the name of the field in the list of fields of a dataset. It is, in general, the (0-based) position of the field in the underlying data structures, but this need not always be so. The `TField.FieldNo` (338) property should be used for that.

See also: `TField.FieldNo` (338)

10.28.62 TField.ImportedConstraint

Synopsis: Constraint for the field value on the level of the underlying database

Declaration: `Property ImportedConstraint : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ImportedConstraint` contains any constraints that the underlying data engine imposes on the values of a field (usually in an SQL CONSTRAINT) clause. Whether this field is filled with appropriate data depends on the implementation of the `TDataSet` (277) descendent.

See also: `TField.CustomConstraint` (342), `TDataSet` (277), `TField.ConstraintErrorMessage` (342)

10.28.63 TField.KeyFields

Synopsis: Key fields to use when looking up a field value.

Declaration: `Property KeyFields : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `KeyFields` should contain a semi-colon separated list of field names from the lookupfield's dataset which will be matched to the fields enumerated in `LookupKeyFields` (346) in the dataset pointed to by the `LookupDataset` (345) property.

See also: `LookupKeyFields` (346), `LookupDataset` (345)

10.28.64 TField.LookupCache

Synopsis: Should lookup values be cached

Declaration: `Property LookupCache : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `LookupCache` is by default `False`. If it is set to `True` then a list of key, value pairs will be created from the `LookupKeyFields` (346) in the dataset pointed to by the `LookupDataset` (345) property. The list of key, value pairs is available through the `TField.LookupList` (341) property.

See also: `LookupKeyFields` (346), `LookupDataset` (345), `TField.LookupList` (341)

10.28.65 TField.LookupDataSet

Synopsis: Dataset with lookup values

Declaration: `Property LookupDataSet : TDataSet`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `LookupDataset` is used by lookup fields to fetch the field's value. The `LookupKeyFields` (346) property is used as a list of fields to locate a record in this dataset, and the value of the `LookupResultField` (346) field is then used as the value of the lookup field.

See also: `KeyFields` (345), `LookupKeyFields` (346), `LookupResultField` (346), `LookupCache` (345)

10.28.66 TField.LookupKeyFields

Synopsis: Names of fields on which to perform a locate

Declaration: `Property LookupKeyFields : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `LookupKeyFields` should contain a semi-colon separated list of field names from the dataset pointed to by the `LookupDataset` (345) property. These fields will be used when locating a record corresponding to the values in the `TField.KeyFields` (345) property.

See also: `KeyFields` (345), `LookupDataset` (345), `LookupResultField` (346), `LookupCache` (345)

10.28.67 TField.LookupResultField

Synopsis: Name of field to use as lookup value

Declaration: `Property LookupResultField : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `LookupResultField` contains the field name from a field in the dataset pointed to by the `LookupDataset` (345) property. The value of this field will be used as the lookup's field value when a record is found in the lookup dataset as result for the lookup field value.

See also: `KeyFields` (345), `LookupDataset` (345), `LookupKeyFields` (346), `LookupCache` (345)

10.28.68 TField.Origin

Synopsis: Original fieldname of the field.

Declaration: `Property Origin : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Origin` contains the origin of the field in the form `TableName.fieldName`. This property is filled only if the `TDataset` (277) descendent or the database engine support retrieval of this property. It can be used to automatically create update statements, together with the `TField.ProviderFlags` (346) property.

See also: `TDataset` (277), `TField.ProviderFlags` (346)

10.28.69 TField.ProviderFlags

Synopsis: Flags for provider or update support

Declaration: `Property ProviderFlags : TProviderFlags`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ProviderFlags` contains a set of flags that can be used by engines that automatically generate update SQL statements or update data packets. The various items in the set tell the engine whether the key is a key field, should be used in the where clause of an update statement or whether - in fact - it should be updated at all.

These properties should be set by the programmer so engines such as SQLDB can create correct update SQL statements whenever they need to post changes to the database. Note that to be able to set these properties in a designer, persistent fields must be created.

See also: `TField.Origin` ([346](#))

10.28.70 TField.ReadOnly

Synopsis: Is the field read-only

Declaration: `Property ReadOnly : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ReadOnly` can be set to `True` to prevent controls of writing data to the field, effectively making it a read-only field. Setting this property to `True` does not prevent the field from getting a value through code: it is just an indication for GUI controls that the field's value is considered read-only.

See also: `TFieldDef.Attributes` ([352](#))

10.28.71 TField.Required

Synopsis: Does the field require a value

Declaration: `Property Required : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Required` determines whether the field needs a value when posting the data: when a dataset posts the changed made to a record (new or existing), it will check whether all fields with the `Required` property have a value assigned to them. If not, an exception will be raised. Descendents of `TDataset` ([277](#)) will set the property to `True` when opening the dataset, depending on whether the field is required in the underlying data engine. For fields that are not required by the database engine, the programmer can still set the property to `True` if the business logic requires a field.

See also: `TDataset.Open` ([294](#)), `ReadOnly` ([347](#)), `Visible` ([347](#))

10.28.72 TField.Visible

Synopsis: Should the field be shown in grids

Declaration: `Property Visible : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Visible` can be used to hide fields from a grid when displaying data to the user. Invisible fields will by default not be shown in the grid.

See also: `TField.ReadOnly` ([347](#)), `TField.Required` ([347](#))

10.28.73 TField.OnChange

Synopsis: Event triggered when the field's value has changed

Declaration: `Property OnChange : TFieldNotifyEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnChange` is triggered whenever the field's value has been changed. It is triggered only after the new contents have been written to the dataset buffer, so it can be used to react to changes in the field's content. To prevent the writing of changes to the buffer, use the `TField.OnValidate` (348) event. It is not allowed to change the state of the dataset or the contents of the field during the execution of this event handler: doing so may lead to infinite loops and other unexpected results.

See also: `TField.OnChange` (348)

10.28.74 TField.OnGetText

Synopsis: Event to format the field's content

Declaration: `Property OnGetText : TFieldGetTextEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnGetText` is triggered whenever the `TField.Text` (340) or `TField.DisplayText` (337) properties are read. It can be used to return a custom formatted string in the `AText` parameter which will then typically be used by a control to display the field's contents to the user. It is not allowed to change the state of the dataset or the contents of the field during the execution of this event handler.

See also: `TField.Text` (340), `TField.DisplayText` (337), `TField.OnSetText` (348), `TFieldGetTextEvent` (233)

10.28.75 TField.OnSetText

Synopsis: Event to set the field's content based on a user-formatted string

Declaration: `Property OnSetText : TFieldSetTextEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnSetText` is called whenever the `TField.Text` (340) property is written. It can be used to set the actual value of the field based on the passed `AText` parameter. Typically, this event handler will perform the inverse operation of the `TField.OnGetText` (348) handler, if it exists.

See also: `TField.Text` (340), `TField.OnGetText` (348), `TFieldGetTextEvent` (233)

10.28.76 TField.OnValidate

Synopsis: Event to validate the value of a field before it is written to the data buffer

Declaration: `Property OnValidate : TFieldNotifyEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnValidate` is called prior to writing a new field value to the dataset's data buffer. It can be used to prevent writing the new value to the buffer by raising an exception in the event handler. Note that this event handler is always called, irrespective of the way the value of the field is set.

See also: `TField.Text` (340), `TField.OnGetText` (348), `TField.OnSetText` (348), `TField.OnChange` (348)

10.29 TFieldDef

10.29.1 Description

`TFieldDef` is used to describe the fields that are present in the data underlying the dataset. For each field in the underlying field, an `TFieldDef` instance is created when the dataset is opened. This class offers almost no methods, it is mainly a storage class, to store all relevant properties of fields in a record (name, data type, size, required or not, etc.)

See also: `TDataset.FieldDefs` (300), `TFieldDefs` (353)

10.29.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
350	Assign	Assign the contents of one <code>TFieldDef</code> instance to another.
349	Create	Constructor for <code>TFieldDef</code> .
350	CreateField	Create <code>TField</code> instance based on definitions in current <code>TFieldDef</code> instance.
350	Destroy	Free the <code>TFieldDef</code> instance

10.29.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
352	Attributes	rw	Additional attributes of the field.
352	DataType	rw	Data type for the field
351	FieldClass	r	<code>TField</code> class used for this fielddef
351	FieldNo	r	Field number
351	InternalCalcField	rw	Is this a definition of an internally calculated field ?
352	Precision	rw	Precision used in BCD (Binary Coded Decimal) fields
351	Required	rw	Is the field required ?
352	Size	rw	Size of the buffer needed to store the data of the field

10.29.4 TFieldDef.Create

Synopsis: Constructor for `TFieldDef`.

Declaration: `constructor create(ACollection: TCollection); Override`
`constructor Create(AOwner: TFieldDefs;const AName: string;`
`ADataType: TFieldType;ASize: Integer;`
`ARequired: Boolean;AFieldNo: LongInt); Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` is the constructor for the `TFieldDef` class.

If a simple call is used, with a single argument `ACollection`, the inherited `Create` is called and the `Field` number is set to the incremented current index.

If the more complicated call is used, with multiple arguments, then after the inherited `Create` call, the `Name` (349), `datatype` (352), `size` (352), `precision` (352), `FieldNo` (351) and the `Required` (351) property are all set according to the passed arguments.

Errors: If a duplicate name is passed, then an exception will occur.

See also: `Name` (349), `datatype` (352), `size` (352), `precision` (352), `FieldNo` (351), `Required` (351)

10.29.5 TFieldDef.Destroy

Synopsis: Free the `TFieldDef` instance

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` destroys the `TFieldDef` instance. It simply calls the inherited destructor.

See also: `TFieldDef.Create` (349)

10.29.6 TFieldDef.Assign

Synopsis: Assign the contents of one `TFieldDef` instance to another.

Declaration: `procedure Assign(APersistent: TPersistent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Assign` assigns all published properties of `APersistent` to the current instance, if `APersistent` is an instance of class `TFieldDef`.

Errors: If `APersistent` is not of class `TFieldDef` (349), then an exception will be raised.

10.29.7 TFieldDef.CreateField

Synopsis: Create `TField` instance based on definitions in current `TFieldDef` instance.

Declaration: `function CreateField(AOwner: TComponent) : TField`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CreateField` determines, based on the `DataType` (352) what `TField` (325) descendent it should create, and then returns a newly created instance of this class. It sets the appropriate defaults for the `Size` (340), `FieldName` (344), `FieldNo` (338), `Precision` (325), `ReadOnly` (347) and `Required` (347) properties of the newly created instance. It should never be necessary to use this call in an end-user program, only `TDataset` descendent classes should use this call.

The newly created field is owned by the component instance passed in the `AOwner` parameter.

The `DefaultFieldClasses` (227) array is used to determine which `TField` Descendent class should be used when creating the `TField` instance, but descendents of `TDataset` may override the values in that array.

See also: `DefaultFieldClasses` (227), `TField` (325)

10.29.8 TFieldDef.FieldClass

Synopsis: TField class used for this fielddef

Declaration: `Property FieldClass : TFieldClass`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `FieldClass` is the class of the `TField` instance that is created by the `CreateField` (350) class. The return value is retrieved from the `TDataset` instance the `TFieldDef` instance is associated with. If there is no `TDataset` instance available, the return value is `Nil`

See also: `TDataset` (277), `CreateField` (350), `TField` (325)

10.29.9 TFieldDef.FieldNo

Synopsis: Field number

Declaration: `Property FieldNo : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `FieldNo` is the number of the field in the data structure where the dataset contents comes from, for instance in a DBase file. If the underlying data layer does not support the concept of field number, a sequential number is assigned.

10.29.10 TFieldDef.InternalCalcField

Synopsis: Is this a definition of an internally calculated field ?

Declaration: `Property InternalCalcField : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `InternalCalc` is `True` if the `fielddef` instance represents an internally calculated field: for internally calculated fields, storage must be provided by the underlying data mechanism.

10.29.11 TFieldDef.Required

Synopsis: Is the field required ?

Declaration: `Property Required : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Required` is set to `True` if the field requires a value when posting data to the dataset. If no value was entered, the dataset will raise an exception when the record is posted. The `Required` property is usually initialized based on the definition of the field in the underlying database. For SQL-based databases, a field declared as `NOT NULL` will result in a `Required` property of `True`.

10.29.12 TFieldDef.Attributes

Synopsis: Additional attributes of the field.

Declaration: `Property Attributes : TFieldAttributes`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Attributes` contain additional attributes of the field. It shares the `faRequired` attribute with the `Required` property.

See also: `TFieldDef.Required` ([351](#))

10.29.13 TFieldDef.DataType

Synopsis: Data type for the field

Declaration: `Property DataType : TFieldType`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `DataType` contains the data type of the field's contents. Based on this property, the `FieldClass` property determines what kind of field class must be used to represent this field.

See also: `TFieldDef.FieldClass` ([351](#)), `TFieldDef.CreateField` ([350](#))

10.29.14 TFieldDef.Precision

Synopsis: Precision used in BCD (Binary Coded Decimal) fields

Declaration: `Property Precision : LongInt`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Precision` is the number of digits used in a BCD (Binary Coded Decimal) field. It is not the number of digits after the decimal separator, but the total number of digits.

See also: `TFieldDef.Size` ([352](#))

10.29.15 TFieldDef.Size

Synopsis: Size of the buffer needed to store the data of the field

Declaration: `Property Size : Integer`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Size` indicates the size of the buffer needed to hold data for the field. For types with a fixed size (such as integer, word or data/time) the size can be zero: the buffer mechanism reserves automatically enough heap memory. For types which can have various sizes (blobs, string types), the `Size` property tells the buffer mechanism how many bytes are needed to hold the data for the field. For BCD fields, the size property indicates the number of decimals after the decimal separator.

See also: `TFieldDef.Precision` ([352](#)), `TFieldDef.DataType` ([352](#))

10.30 TFieldDefs

10.30.1 Description

TFieldDefs is used by each TDataSet instance to keep a description of the data that it manages; for each field in a record that makes up the underlying data, the TFieldDefs instance keeps an instance of TFieldDef that describes the field's contents. For any internally calculated fields of the dataset, a TFieldDef instance is kept as well. This collection is filled by descendent classes of TDataSet as soon as the dataset is opened; it is cleared when the dataset closes. After the collection was populated, the dataset creates TField instances based on all the definitions in the collections. If persistent fields were used, the contents of the fielddefs collection is compared to the field components that are present in the dataset. If the collection contains more field definitions than Field components, these extra fields will not be available in the dataset.

See also: TFieldDef ([349](#)), TDataSet ([277](#))

10.30.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
353	Add	Add a new field definition to the collection.
354	AddFieldDef	Add new TFieldDef
354	Assign	Copy all items from one dataset to another
353	Create	Create a new instance of TFieldDefs
354	Find	Find item by name
355	MakeNameUnique	Create a unique field name starting from a base name
354	Update	Force update of definitions

10.30.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
355	HiddenFields	rw	Should field instances be created for hidden fields
355	Items	rw	Indexed access to the fielddef instances

10.30.4 TFieldDefs.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of TFieldDefs

Declaration: constructor Create (ADataset: TDataSet)

Visibility: public

Description: Create is used to create a new instance of TFieldDefs. The ADataset argument contains the dataset instance for which the collection contains the field definitions.

See also: TFieldDef ([349](#)), TDataSet ([277](#))

10.30.5 TFieldDefs.Add

Synopsis: Add a new field definition to the collection.

Declaration: procedure Add(const AName: string; ADataType: TFieldType; ASize: Word;
 ARequired: Boolean); Overload
 procedure Add(const AName: string; ADataType: TFieldType; ASize: Word)
 ; Overload
 procedure Add(const AName: string; ADataType: TFieldType); Overload

Visibility: public

Description: Add adds a new item to the collection and fills in the Name, DataType, Size and Required properties of the newly added item with the provided parameters.

Errors: If an item with name AName already exists in the collection, then an exception will be raised.

See also: TFieldDefs.AddFieldDef ([354](#))

10.30.6 TFieldDefs.AddFieldDef

Synopsis: Add new TFieldDef

Declaration: `function AddFieldDef : TFieldDef`

Visibility: public

Description: AddFieldDef creates a new TFieldDef item and returns the instance.

See also: TFieldDefs.Add ([353](#))

10.30.7 TFieldDefs.Assign

Synopsis: Copy all items from one dataset to another

Declaration: `procedure Assign(FieldDefs: TFieldDefs); Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: Assign simply calls inherited Assign with the FieldDefs argument.

See also: TFieldDef.Assign ([350](#))

10.30.8 TFieldDefs.Find

Synopsis: Find item by name

Declaration: `function Find(const AName: string) : TFieldDef`

Visibility: public

Description: Find simply calls the inherited TDefCollection.Find ([323](#)) to find an item with name AName and typecasts the result to TFieldDef.

See also: TDefCollection.Find ([323](#)), TNamedItem.Name ([383](#))

10.30.9 TFieldDefs.Update

Synopsis: Force update of definitions

Declaration: `procedure Update; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: Update notifies the dataset that the field definitions are updated, if it was not yet notified.

See also: TDefCollection.Updated ([324](#))

10.30.10 TFieldDefs.MakeNameUnique

Synopsis: Create a unique field name starting from a base name

Declaration: `function MakeNameUnique(const AName: string) : string; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `MakeNameUnique` uses `AName` to construct a name of a field that is not yet in the collection. If `AName` is not yet in the collection, then `AName` is returned. If a field definition with field name equal to `AName` already exists, then a new name is constructed by appending a sequence number to `AName` till the resulting name does not appear in the list of field definitions.

See also: `TFieldDefs.Find` ([354](#)), `TFieldDef.Name` ([349](#))

10.30.11 TFieldDefs.HiddenFields

Synopsis: Should field instances be created for hidden fields

Declaration: `Property HiddenFields : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `HiddenFields` determines whether a field is created for fielddefs that have the `faHiddenCol` attribute set. If set to `False` (the default) then no `TField` instances will be created for hidden fields. If it is set to `True`, then a `TField` instance will be created for hidden fields.

See also: `TFieldDef.Attributes` ([352](#))

10.30.12 TFieldDefs.Items

Synopsis: Indexed access to the fielddef instances

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: LongInt]: TFieldDef; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Items` provides zero-based indexed access to all `TFieldDef` instances in the collection. The index must vary between 0 and `Count-1`, or an exception will be raised.

See also: `TFieldDef` ([349](#))

10.31 TFields

10.31.1 Description

`TFields` mimics a `TCollection` class for the `Fields` ([303](#)) property of `TDataset` ([277](#)) instance. Since `TField` ([325](#)) is a descendent of `TComponent`, it cannot be an item of a collection, and must be managed by another class.

See also: `TField` ([325](#)), `TDataset` ([277](#)), `TDataset.Fields` ([303](#))

10.31.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
356	Add	Add a new field to the list
357	CheckFieldName	Check field name for duplicate entries
357	CheckFieldNames	Check a list of field names for duplicate entries
357	Clear	Clear the list of fields
356	Create	Create a new instance of TFields
356	Destroy	Free the TFields instance
358	FieldByName	Find a field based on its name
358	FieldByNumber	Search field based on its fieldnumber
358	FindField	Find a field based on its name
358	GetEnumerator	Return an enumerator for the <code>for..in</code> construct
359	GetFieldNames	Get the list of fieldnames
359	IndexOf	Return the index of a field instance
359	Remove	Remove an instance from the list

10.31.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
359	Count	r	Number of fields in the list
360	Dataset	r	Dataset the fields belong to
360	Fields	rw	Indexed access to the fields in the list

10.31.4 TFields.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of TFields

Declaration: `constructor Create(ADataset: TDataSet)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of TFields. It stores the `ADataset` parameter, so it can be retrieved at any time in the `TFields.Dataset` ([360](#)) property, and initializes an internal list object to store the list of fields.

See also: `TDataSet` ([277](#)), `TFields.Dataset` ([360](#)), `TField` ([325](#))

10.31.5 TFields.Destroy

Synopsis: Free the TFields instance

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` frees the field instances that it manages on behalf of the `Dataset` ([360](#)). After that it cleans up the internal structures and then calls the inherited destructor.

See also: `TDataSet` ([277](#)), `TField` ([325](#)), `TFields.Clear` ([357](#))

10.31.6 TFields.Add

Synopsis: Add a new field to the list

Declaration: `procedure Add(Field: TField)`

Visibility: public

Description: Add must be used to add a new TField (325) instance to the list of fields. After a TField instance is added to the list, the TFields instance will free the field instance if it is cleared.

See also: TField (325), TFields.Clear (357)

10.31.7 TFields.CheckFieldName

Synopsis: Check field name for duplicate entries

Declaration: `procedure CheckFieldName(const Value: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: CheckFieldName checks whether a field with name equal to Value (case insensitive) already appears in the list of fields (using TFields.Find (355)). If it does, then an EDatabaseError (244) exception is raised.

See also: TField.FieldName (344), TFields.Find (355)

10.31.8 TFields.CheckFieldNames

Synopsis: Check a list of field names for duplicate entries

Declaration: `procedure CheckFieldNames(const Value: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: CheckFieldNames splits Value in a list of fieldnames, using semicolon as a separator. For each of the fieldnames obtained in this way, it calls CheckFieldName (357).

Errors: Spaces are not discarded, so leaving a space after or before a fieldname will not find the fieldname, and will yield a false negative result.

See also: TField.FieldName (344), TFields.CheckFieldName (357), TFields.Find (355)

10.31.9 TFields.Clear

Synopsis: Clear the list of fields

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: public

Description: Clear removes all TField (325) var instances from the list. All field instances are freed after they have been removed from the list.

See also: TField (325)

10.31.10 TFields.FindField

Synopsis: Find a field based on its name

Declaration: `function FindField(const Value: string) : TField`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindField` searches the list of fields and returns the field instance whose `FieldName` (344) property matches `Value`. The search is performed case-insensitively. If no field instance is found, then `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TFields.FieldByName` (358)

10.31.11 TFields.FieldByName

Synopsis: Find a field based on its name

Declaration: `function FieldByName(const Value: string) : TField`

Visibility: public

Description: `Fieldbyname` searches the list of fields and returns the field instance whose `FieldName` (344) property matches `Value`. The search is performed case-insensitively.

Errors: If no field instance is found, then an exception is raised. If this behaviour is undesired, use `TField.FindField` (325), where `Nil` is returned if no match is found.

See also: `TFields.FindField` (358), `TFields.FieldName` (355), `TFields.FieldByNumber` (358), `TFields.IndexOf` (359)

10.31.12 TFields.FieldByNumber

Synopsis: Search field based on its fieldnumber

Declaration: `function FieldByNumber(FieldNo: Integer) : TField`

Visibility: public

Description: `FieldByNumber` searches for the field whose `TField.FieldNo` (338) property matches the `FieldNo` parameter. If no such field is found, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TFields.FieldByName` (358), `TFields.FindField` (358), `TFields.IndexOf` (359)

10.31.13 TFields.GetEnumerator

Synopsis: Return an enumerator for the `for..in` construct

Declaration: `function GetEnumerator : TFieldsEnumerator`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetEnumerator` is the implementation of `IEnumerable` and returns an instance of `TFieldsEnumerator` (360)

See also: `TFieldsEnumerator` (360), `#rtl.system.IEnumerable` (??)

10.31.14 TFields.GetFieldNames

Synopsis: Get the list of fieldnames

Declaration: `procedure GetFieldNames(Values: TStrings)`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetFieldNames` fills `Values` with the fieldnames of all the fields in the list, each item in the list contains 1 fieldname. The list is cleared prior to filling it.

See also: `TField.FieldName` ([344](#))

10.31.15 TFields.IndexOf

Synopsis: Return the index of a field instance

Declaration: `function IndexOf(Field: TField) : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` scans the list of fields and returns the index of the field instance in the list (it compares actual field instances, not field names). If the field does not appear in the list, -1 is returned.

See also: `TFields.FieldByName` ([358](#)), `TFields.FieldByNumber` ([358](#)), `TFields.FindField` ([358](#))

10.31.16 TFields.Remove

Synopsis: Remove an instance from the list

Declaration: `procedure Remove(Value: TField)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Remove` removes the field `Value` from the list. It does not free the field after it was removed. If the field is not in the list, then nothing happens.

See also: `TFields.Clear` ([357](#))

10.31.17 TFields.Count

Synopsis: Number of fields in the list

Declaration: `Property Count : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Count` is the number of fields in the fieldlist. The items in the `Fields` ([360](#)) property are numbered from 0 to `Count-1`.

See also: `TFields.fields` ([360](#))

10.31.18 TFields.Dataset

Synopsis: Dataset the fields belong to

Declaration: `Property Dataset : TDataSet`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Dataset` is the dataset instance that owns the fieldlist. It is set when the `TFields` (355) instance is created. This property is purely for informational purposes. When adding fields to the list, no check is performed whether the field's `Dataset` property matches this dataset.

See also: `TFields.Create` (356), `TField.Dataset` (336), `TDataSet` (277)

10.31.19 TFields.Fields

Synopsis: Indexed access to the fields in the list

Declaration: `Property Fields[Index: Integer]: TField; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Fields` is the default property of the `TFields` class. It provides indexed access to the fields in the list: the index runs from 0 to `Count-1`.

Errors: Providing an index outside the allowed range will result in an `EListError` exception.

See also: `TFields.FieldName` (358)

10.32 TFieldsEnumerator

10.32.1 Description

`TFieldsEnumerator` implements all the methods of `IEnumerator` so a `TFields` (355) instance can be used in a `for..in` construct. `TFieldsEnumerator` returns all the fields in the `TFields` collection. Therefor the following construct is possible:

```
Var
  F : TField;

begin
  // ...
  For F in MyDataset.Fields do
    begin
      // F is of type TField.
    end;
  // ...
```

Do not create an instance of `TFieldsEnumerator` manually. The compiler will do all that is needed when it encounters the `for..in` construct.

See also: `TField` (325), `TFields` (355), `#rtl.system.IEnumerator` (??)

10.32.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
361	Create	Create a new instance of <code>TFieldsEnumerator</code> .
361	MoveNext	Move the current field to the next field in the collection.

10.32.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
361	Current	r	Return the current field

10.32.4 TFieldsEnumerator.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TFieldsEnumerator`.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AFields: TFields)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new instance of `TFieldsEnumerator`. It stores the `AFields` reference, pointing to the `TFields` ([355](#)) instance that created the enumerator. It initializes the enumerator position.

10.32.5 TFieldsEnumerator.MoveNext

Synopsis: Move the current field to the next field in the collection.

Declaration: `function MoveNext : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `MoveNext` moves the internal pointer to the next field in the fields collection, and returns `True` if the operation was a success. If no more fields are available, then `False` is returned.

See also: `TFieldsEnumerator.Current` ([361](#))

10.32.6 TFieldsEnumerator.Current

Synopsis: Return the current field

Declaration: `Property Current : TField`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Current` returns the current field. It will return a non-nil value only after `MoveNext` returned `True`.

See also: `TFieldsEnumerator.MoveNext` ([361](#))

10.33 TFloatField

10.33.1 Description

TFloatField is the class created when a dataset must manage floating point values of double precision. It exposes a few new properties such as Currency (363), MaxValue (363), MinValue (364) and overrides some TField (325) methods to work with floating point data.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of TFloatField manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each floating-point field when a dataset is opened.

See also: Currency (363), MaxValue (363), MinValue (364)

10.33.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
362	CheckRange	Check whether a value is in the allowed range of values for the field
362	Create	Create a new instance of the TFloatField

10.33.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
363	Currency	rw	Is the field a currency field.
363	MaxValue	rw	Maximum value for the field
364	MinValue	rw	Minimum value for the field
364	Precision	rw	Precision (number of digits) of the field in text representations
363	Value	rw	Value of the field as a double type

10.33.4 TFloatField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the TFloatField

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Create initializes a new instance of TFloatField. It calls the inherited constructor and then initializes some properties.

10.33.5 TFloatField.CheckRange

Synopsis: Check whether a value is in the allowed range of values for the field

Declaration: `function CheckRange(AValue: Double) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: CheckRange returns True if AValue lies within the range defined by the MinValue (364) and MaxValue (363) properties. If the value lies outside of the allowed range, then False is returned.

See also: MaxValue (363), MinValue (364)

10.33.6 TFloatField.Value

Synopsis: Value of the field as a double type

Declaration: `Property Value : Double`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Value` is redefined by `TFloatField` to return a value of type `Double`. It returns the same value as `TField.AsFloat` (333)

See also: `TField.AsFloat` (333), `TField.Value` (341)

10.33.7 TFloatField.Currency

Synopsis: Is the field a currency field.

Declaration: `Property Currency : Boolean`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Currency` can be set to `True` to indicate that the field contains data representing an amount of currency. This affects the way the `TField.DisplayText` (337) and `TField.Text` (340) properties format the value of the field: if the `Currency` property is `True`, then these properties will format the value as a currency value (generally appending the currency sign) and if the `Currency` property is `False`, then they will format it as a normal floating-point value.

See also: `TField.DisplayText` (337), `TField.Text` (340), `TNumericField.DisplayFormat` (384), `TNumericField.EditFormat` (384)

10.33.8 TFloatField.MaxValue

Synopsis: Maximum value for the field

Declaration: `Property MaxValue : Double`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `MaxValue` can be set to a value different from zero, it is then the maximum value for the field if set to any value different from zero. When setting the field's value, the value may not be larger than `MaxValue`. Any attempt to write a larger value as the field's content will result in an exception. By default `MaxValue` equals 0, i.e. any floating-point value is allowed.

If `MaxValue` is set, `MinValue` (364) should also be set, because it will also be checked.

See also: `TFloatField.MinValue` (364)

10.33.9 TFloatField.MinValue

Synopsis: Minimum value for the field

Declaration: `Property MinValue : Double`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `MinValue` can be set to a value different from zero, then it is the minimum value for the field. When setting the field's value, the value may not be less than `MinValue`. Any attempt to write a smaller value as the field's content will result in an exception. By default `MinValue` equals 0, i.e. any floating-point value is allowed.

If `MinValue` is set, `MaxValue` (363) should also be set, because it will also be checked.

See also: `TFloatField.MaxValue` (363), `TFloatField.CheckRange` (362)

10.33.10 TFloatField.Precision

Synopsis: Precision (number of digits) of the field in text representations

Declaration: `Property Precision : LongInt`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Precision` is the maximum number of digits that should be used when the field is converted to a textual representation in `TField.Displaytext` (337) or `TField.Text` (340), it is used in the arguments to `FormatFloat` (??).

See also: `TField.Displaytext` (337), `TField.Text` (340), `FormatFloat` (??)

10.34 TFMTBCDField

10.34.1 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
365	<code>CheckRange</code>	
364	<code>Create</code>	

10.34.2 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
365	<code>Currency</code>	rw	
365	<code>MaxValue</code>	rw	
365	<code>MinValue</code>	rw	
365	<code>Precision</code>	rw	
365	<code>Size</code>		
365	<code>Value</code>	rw	

10.34.3 TFMTBCDField.Create

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: public

10.34.4 TFMTBCDField.CheckRange

Declaration: `function CheckRange(AValue: TBCD) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

10.34.5 TFMTBCDField.Value

Declaration: `Property Value : TBCD`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

10.34.6 TFMTBCDField.Precision

Declaration: `Property Precision : LongInt`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

10.34.7 TFMTBCDField.Currency

Declaration: `Property Currency : Boolean`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

10.34.8 TFMTBCDField.MaxValue

Declaration: `Property MaxValue : string`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

10.34.9 TFMTBCDField.MinValue

Declaration: `Property MinValue : string`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

10.34.10 TFMTBCDField.Size

Declaration: `Property Size :`

Visibility: `published`

Access:

10.35 TGraphicField

10.35.1 Description

`TGraphicField` is the class used when a dataset must manage graphical BLOB data. (`TField.DataType` (337) equals `ftGraphic`). It initializes some of the properties of the `TField` (325) class. All methods to be able to work with graphical BLOB data have been implemented in the `TBlobField` (253) parent class.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TGraphicField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each graphical BLOB field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TDataset` (277), `TField` (325), `TBLOBField` (253), `TMemoField` (381), `TWideMemoField` (407)

10.35.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
366	Create	Create a new instance of the <code>TGraphicField</code> class

10.35.3 TGraphicField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TGraphicField` class

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TGraphicField` class. It calls the inherited destructor, and then sets some `TField` (325) properties to configure the instance for working with graphical BLOB values.

See also: `TField` (325)

10.36 TGUIDField

10.36.1 Description

`TGUIDField` is the class used when a dataset must manage native variant-typed data. (`TField.DataType` (337) equals `ftGUID`). It initializes some of the properties of the `TField` (325) class and overrides some of its methods to be able to work with variant data. It also adds a method to retrieve the field value as a native `TGUID` type.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TGUIDField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each GUID field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TDataset` (277), `TField` (325), `TGUIDField.AsGuid` (367)

10.36.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
367	Create	Create a new instance of the <code>TGUIDField</code> class

10.36.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
367	AsGuid	rw	Field content as a GUID value

10.36.4 TGUIDField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TGUIDField` class

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TGUIDField` class. It calls the inherited destructor, and then sets some `TField` ([325](#)) properties to configure the instance for working with GUID values.

See also: `TField` ([325](#))

10.36.5 TGUIDField.AsGuid

Synopsis: Field content as a GUID value

Declaration: `Property AsGuid : TGUID`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsGUID` can be used to get or set the field's content as a value of type `TGUID`.

See also: `TField.AsString` ([334](#))

10.37 TIndexDef

10.37.1 Description

`TIndexDef` describes one index in a set of indexes of a `TDataset` ([277](#)) instance. The collection of indexes is described by the `TIndexDefs` ([370](#)) class. It just has the necessary properties to describe an index, but does not implement any functionality to maintain an index.

See also: `TIndexDefs` ([370](#))

10.37.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
368	Create	Create a new index definition

10.37.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
369	CaseInsFields	rw	Fields in field list that are ordered case-insensitively
369	DescFields	rw	Fields in field list that are ordered descending
368	Expression	rw	Expression that makes up the index values
368	Fields	rw	Fields making up the index
369	Options	rw	Index options
369	Source	rw	Source of the index

10.37.4 TIndexDef.Create

Synopsis: Create a new index definition

Declaration: `constructor Create(Owner: TIndexDefs; const AName: string;
const TheFields: string; TheOptions: TIndexOptions)
; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` initializes a new `TIndexDef` (367) instance with the `AName` value as the index name, `AField` as the fields making up the index, and `TheOptions` as the options. `Owner` should be the `TIndexDefs` (370) instance to which the new `TIndexDef` can be added.

Errors: If an index with name `AName` already exists in the collection, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TIndexDefs` (370), `TIndexDef.Options` (369), `TIndexDef.Fields` (368)

10.37.5 TIndexDef.Expression

Synopsis: Expression that makes up the index values

Declaration: `Property Expression : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: `Expression` is an SQL expression based on which the index values are computed. It is only used when `ixExpression` is in `TIndexDef.Options` (369)

See also: `TIndexDef.Options` (369), `TIndexDef.Fields` (368)

10.37.6 TIndexDef.Fields

Synopsis: Fields making up the index

Declaration: `Property Fields : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: `Fields` is a list of fieldnames, separated by semicolons: the fields that make up the index, in case the index is not based on an expression. The list contains the names of all fields, regardless of whether the sort order for a particular field is ascending or descending. The fields should be in the right order, i.e. the first field is sorted on first, and so on.

The `TIndexDef.DescFields` (369) property can be used to determine the fields in the list that have a descending sort order. The `TIndexDef.CaseInsFields` (369) property determines which fields are sorted in a case-insensitive manner.

See also: `TIndexDef.DescFields` (369), `TIndexDef.CaseInsFields` (369), `TIndexDef.Expression` (368)

10.37.7 TIndexDef.CaseInsFields

Synopsis: Fields in field list that are ordered case-insensitively

Declaration: `Property CaseInsFields : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `CaseInsFields` is a list of fieldnames, separated by semicolons. It contains the names of the fields in the `Fields` (368) property which are ordered in a case-insensitive manner. `CaseInsFields` may not contain fieldnames that do not appear in `Fields`.

See also: `TIndexDef.Fields` (368), `TIndexDef.Expression` (368), `TIndexDef.DescFields` (369)

10.37.8 TIndexDef.DescFields

Synopsis: Fields in field list that are ordered descending

Declaration: `Property DescFields : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `DescFields` is a list of fieldnames, separated by semicolons. It contains the names of the fields in the `Fields` (368) property which are ordered in a descending manner. `DescFields` may not contain fieldnames that do not appear in `Fields`.

See also: `TIndexDef.Fields` (368), `TIndexDef.Expression` (368), `TIndexDef.DescFields` (369)

10.37.9 TIndexDef.Options

Synopsis: Index options

Declaration: `Property Options : TIndexOptions`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Options` describes the various properties of the index. This is usually filled by the dataset that provides the index definitions. For datasets that provide In-memory indexes, this should be set prior to creating the index: it cannot be changed once the index is created.

See the description of `TIndexOption` (237) for more information on the various available options.

See also: `TIndexOptions` (237)

10.37.10 TIndexDef.Source

Synopsis: Source of the index

Declaration: `Property Source : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Source` describes where the index comes from. This is a property for the convenience of the various datasets that provide indexes: they can use it to describe the source of the index.

10.38 TIndexDefs

10.38.1 Description

`TIndexDefs` is used to keep a collection of index (sort order) definitions. It can be used by classes that provide in-memory or on-disk indexes to provide a list of available indexes.

See also: `TIndexDef` ([367](#)), `TIndexDefs.Items` ([372](#))

10.38.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
370	<code>Add</code>	Add a new index definition with given name and options
371	<code>AddIndexDef</code>	Add a new, empty, index definition
370	<code>Create</code>	Create a new <code>TIndexDefs</code> instance
371	<code>Find</code>	Find an index by name
371	<code>FindIndexForFields</code>	Find index definition based on field names
371	<code>GetIndexForFields</code>	Get index definition based on field names
372	<code>Update</code>	Called whenever one of the items changes

10.38.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
372	<code>Items</code>	rw	Indexed access to the index definitions

10.38.4 TIndexDefs.Create

Synopsis: Create a new `TIndexDefs` instance

Declaration: `constructor Create(ADataset: TDataSet); Virtual; Overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TIndexDefs` class. It simply calls the inherited destructor with the appropriate item class, `TIndexDef` ([367](#)).

See also: `TIndexDef` ([367](#)), `TIndexDefs.Destroy` ([370](#))

10.38.5 TIndexDefs.Add

Synopsis: Add a new index definition with given name and options

Declaration: `procedure Add(const Name: string; const Fields: string; Options: TIndexOptions)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Add` adds a new `TIndexDef` ([367](#)) instance to the list of indexes. It initializes the index definition properties `Name`, `Fields` and `Options` with the values given in the parameters with the same names.

Errors: If an index with the same `Name` already exists in the list of indexes, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TIndexDef` ([367](#)), `TNamedItem.Name` ([383](#)), `TIndexDef.Fields` ([368](#)), `TIndexDef.Options` ([369](#)), `TIndexDefs.AddIndexDef` ([371](#))

10.38.6 TIndexDefs.AddIndexDef

Synopsis: Add a new, empty, index definition

Declaration: `function AddIndexDef : TIndexDef`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddIndexDef` adds a new `TIndexDef` (367) instance to the list of indexes, and returns the newly created instance. It does not initialize any of the properties of the new index definition.

See also: `TIndexDefs.Add` (370)

10.38.7 TIndexDefs.Find

Synopsis: Find an index by name

Declaration: `function Find(const IndexName: string) : TIndexDef`

Visibility: public

Description: `Find` overloads the `TDefCollection.Find` (323) method to search and return a `TIndexDef` (367) instance based on the name. The search is case-insensitive and raises an exception if no matching index definition was found. Note: `TIndexDefs.IndexOf` can be used instead if an exception is not desired.

See also: `TIndexDef` (367), `TDefCollection.Find` (323), `TIndexDefs.FindIndexForFields` (371)

10.38.8 TIndexDefs.FindIndexForFields

Synopsis: Find index definition based on field names

Declaration: `function FindIndexForFields(const Fields: string) : TIndexDef`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindIndexForFields` searches in the list of indexes for an index whose `TIndexDef.Fields` (368) property matches the list of fields in `Fields`. If it finds an index definition, then it returns the found instance.

Errors: If no matching definition is found, an exception is raised. This is different from other `Find` functionality, where `Find` usually returns `Nil` if nothing is found.

See also: `TIndexDef` (367), `TIndexDefs.Find` (371), `TIndexDefs.GetIndexForFields` (371)

10.38.9 TIndexDefs.GetIndexForFields

Synopsis: Get index definition based on field names

Declaration: `function GetIndexForFields(const Fields: string;
CaseInsensitive: Boolean) : TIndexDef`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetIndexForFields` searches in the list of indexes for an index whose `TIndexDef.Fields` (368) property matches the list of fields in `Fields`. If `CaseInsensitive` is `True` it only searches for case-sensitive indexes. If it finds an index definition, then it returns the found instance. If it does not find a matching definition, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TIndexDef` (367), `TIndexDefs.Find` (371), `TIndexDefs.FindIndexForFields` (371)

10.38.10 TIndexDefs.Update

Synopsis: Called whenever one of the items changes

Declaration: `procedure Update; Virtual; Overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Update` can be called to have the dataset update its index definitions.

10.38.11 TIndexDefs.Items

Synopsis: Indexed access to the index definitions

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: TIndexDef; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `Items` is redefined by `TIndexDefs` using `TIndexDef` as the type for the elements. It is the default property of the `TIndexDefs` class.

See also: `TIndexDef` ([367](#))

10.39 TIntegerField

10.39.1 Description

`TIntegerField` is an alias for `TLongintField` ([374](#)).

See also: `TLongintField` ([374](#)), `TField` ([325](#))

10.40 TLargeintField

10.40.1 Description

`TLargeIntField` is instantiated when a dataset must manage a field with 64-bit signed data: the data type `ftLargeInt`. It overrides some methods of `TField` ([325](#)) to handle `int64` data, and sets some of the properties to values for `int64` data. It also introduces some methods and properties specific to 64-bit integer data such as `MinValue` ([374](#)) and `MaxValue` ([373](#)).

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TLargeIntField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each `int64` field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TField` ([325](#)), `MinValue` ([374](#)), `MaxValue` ([373](#))

10.40.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
373	<code>CheckRange</code>	Check whether a values falls within the allowed range
373	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of the <code>TLargeintField</code> class

10.40.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
373	MaxValue	rw	Maximum value for the field
374	MinValue	rw	Minimum value for the field
373	Value	rw	Field contents as a 64-bit integer value

10.40.4 TLargeIntField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TLargeIntField` class

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TLargeIntField` class: it calls the inherited constructor and then initializes the various properties of `Tfield` ([325](#)) and `MinValue` ([374](#)) and `MaxValue` ([373](#)).

See also: `TField` ([325](#)), `MinValue` ([374](#)), `MaxValue` ([373](#))

10.40.5 TLargeIntField.CheckRange

Synopsis: Check whether a values falls within the allowed range

Declaration: `function CheckRange(AValue: LargeInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CheckRange` returns `True` if `AValue` lies within the range defined by the `MinValue` ([374](#)) and `MaxValue` ([373](#)) properties. If the value lies outside of the allowed range, then `False` is returned.

See also: `MaxValue` ([373](#)), `MinValue` ([374](#))

10.40.6 TLargeIntField.Value

Synopsis: Field contents as a 64-bit integer value

Declaration: `Property Value : LargeInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Value` is redefined by `TLargeIntField` as a 64-bit integer value. It returns the same value as `TField.AsLargeInt` ([333](#)).

See also: `TField.Value` ([341](#)), `TField.AsLargeInt` ([333](#))

10.40.7 TLargeIntField.MaxValue

Synopsis: Maximum value for the field

Declaration: `Property MaxValue : LargeInt`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `MaxValue` is the maximum value for the field if set to any value different from zero. When setting the field's value, the value may not be larger than `MaxValue`. Any attempt to write a larger value as the field's content will result in an exception. By default `MaxValue` equals 0, i.e. any integer value is allowed.

If `MaxValue` is set, `MinValue` (374) should also be set, because it will also be checked.

See also: `TLargeIntField.MinValue` (374)

10.40.8 TLargeintField.MinValue

Synopsis: Minimum value for the field

Declaration: `Property MinValue : LargeInt`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `MinValue` is the minimum value for the field. When setting the field's value, the value may not be less than `MinValue`. Any attempt to write a smaller value as the field's content will result in an exception. By default `MinValue` equals 0, i.e. any integer value is allowed.

If `MinValue` is set, `MaxValue` (373) should also be set, because it will also be checked.

See also: `TLargeIntField.MaxValue` (373)

10.41 TLongintField

10.41.1 Description

`TLongintField` is instantiated when a dataset must manage a field with 32-bit signed data: the data type `ftInteger`. It overrides some methods of `TField` (325) to handle integer data, and sets some of the properties to values for integer data. It also introduces some methods and properties specific to integer data such as `MinValue` (376) and `MaxValue` (375).

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TLongintField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each integer field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TField` (325), `MaxValue` (375), `MinValue` (376)

10.41.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
375	<code>CheckRange</code>	Check whether a valid is in the allowed range of values for the field
375	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of <code>TLongintField</code>

10.41.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
375	<code>MaxValue</code>	rw	Maximum value for the field
376	<code>MinValue</code>	rw	Minimum value for the field
375	<code>Value</code>	rw	Value of the field as longint

10.41.4 TLongintField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of TLongintField

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of TLongintField. After calling the inherited constructor, it initializes the `MinValue` (376) and `MaxValue` (375) properties.

See also: TField (325), `MaxValue` (375), `MinValue` (376)

10.41.5 TLongintField.CheckRange

Synopsis: Check whether a valid is in the allowed range of values for the field

Declaration: `function CheckRange(AValue: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `CheckRange` returns `True` if `AValue` lies within the range defined by the `MinValue` (376) and `MaxValue` (375) properties. If the value lies outside of the allowed range, then `False` is returned.

See also: `MaxValue` (375), `MinValue` (376)

10.41.6 TLongintField.Value

Synopsis: Value of the field as longint

Declaration: `Property Value : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Value` is redefined by TLongintField as a 32-bit signed integer value. It returns the same value as the `TField.AsInteger` (334) property.

See also: `TField.Value` (341)

10.41.7 TLongintField.MaxValue

Synopsis: Maximum value for the field

Declaration: `Property MaxValue : LongInt`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `MaxValue` is the maximum value for the field. When setting the field's value, the value may not be larger than `MaxValue`. Any attempt to write a larger value as the field's content will result in an exception. By default `MaxValue` equals `MaxInt`, i.e. any integer value is allowed.

See also: `MinValue` (376)

10.41.8 TLongintField.MinValue

Synopsis: Minimum value for the field

Declaration: `Property MinValue : LongInt`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `MinValue` is the minimum value for the field. When setting the field's value, the value may not be less than `MinValue`. Any attempt to write a smaller value as the field's content will result in an exception. By default `MinValue` equals `-MaxInt`, i.e. any integer value is allowed.

See also: `MaxValue` ([375](#))

10.42 TLookupList

10.42.1 Description

`TLookupList` is a list object used for storing values of lookup operations by lookup fields. There should be no need to create an instance of `TLookupList` manually, the `TField` instance will create an instance of `TLookupList` on demand.

See also: `TField.LookupCache` ([345](#))

10.42.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
377	<code>Add</code>	Add a key, value pair to the list
377	<code>Clear</code>	Remove all key, value pairs from the list
376	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of <code>TLookupList</code> .
376	<code>Destroy</code>	Free a <code>TLookupList</code> instance from memory
377	<code>FirstKeyByValue</code>	Find the first key that matches a value
377	<code>ValueOfKey</code>	Look up value based on a key
378	<code>ValuesToStrings</code>	Convert values to stringlist

10.42.3 TLookupList.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TLookupList`.

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` sets up the necessary structures to manage a list of lookup values for a lookup field.

See also: `TLookupList.Destroy` ([376](#))

10.42.4 TLookupList.Destroy

Synopsis: Free a `TLookupList` instance from memory

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` frees all resources (mostly memory) allocated by the lookup list, and calls then the inherited destructor.

See also: `TLookupList.Create` ([376](#))

10.42.5 TLookupList.Add

Synopsis: Add a key, value pair to the list

Declaration: `procedure Add(const AKey: Variant; const AValue: Variant)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Add` will add the value `AValue` to the list and associate it with key `AKey`. The same key cannot be added twice.

See also: `TLookupList.Clear` ([377](#))

10.42.6 TLookupList.Clear

Synopsis: Remove all key, value pairs from the list

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` removes all keys and associated values from the list.

See also: `TLookupList.Add` ([377](#))

10.42.7 TLookupList.FirstKeyByValue

Synopsis: Find the first key that matches a value

Declaration: `function FirstKeyByValue(const AValue: Variant) : Variant`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FirstKeyByValue` does a reverse lookup: it returns the first key value in the list that matches the `AValue` value. If none is found, `Null` is returned. This mechanism is quite slow, as a linear search is performed.

Errors: If no key is found, `Null` is returned.

See also: `TLookupList.ValueOfKey` ([377](#))

10.42.8 TLookupList.ValueOfKey

Synopsis: Look up value based on a key

Declaration: `function ValueOfKey(const AKey: Variant) : Variant`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ValueOfKey` does a value lookup based on a key: it returns the value in the list that matches the `AKey` key. If none is found, `Null` is returned. This mechanism is quite slow, as a linear search is performed.

See also: `TLookupList.FirstKeyByValue` ([377](#)), `TLookupList.Add` ([377](#))

10.42.9 TLookupList.ValuesToStrings

Synopsis: Convert values to stringlist

Declaration: `procedure ValuesToStrings(AStrings: TStrings)`

Visibility: public

Description: `ValuesToStrings` converts the list of values to a stringlist, so they can be used e.g. in a drop-down list.

See also: `TLookupList.ValueOfKey` ([377](#))

10.43 TMasterDataLink

10.43.1 Description

`TMasterDataLink` is a `TDatalink` descendent which handles master-detail relations. It can be used in `TDataset` ([277](#)) descendents that must have master-detail functionality: the detail dataset creates an instance of `TMasterDataLink` to point to the master dataset, which is subsequently available through the `TDatalink.Dataset` ([275](#)) property.

The class also provides functionality for keeping a list of fields that make up the master-detail functionality, in the `TMasterDataLink.FieldName` ([379](#)) and `TMasterDataLink.Fields` ([379](#)) properties.

This class should never be used in application code.

See also: `TDataset` ([277](#)), `TDatalink.DataSource` ([275](#)), `TDatalink.DataSet` ([275](#)), `TMasterDataLink.FieldName` ([379](#)), `TMasterDataLink.Fields` ([379](#))

10.43.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
378	Create	Create a new instance of <code>TMasterDataLink</code>
379	Destroy	Free the datalink instance from memory

10.43.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
379	<code>FieldNames</code>	rw	List of fieldnames that make up the master-detail relationship
379	<code>Fields</code>	r	List of fields as specified in <code>FieldNames</code>
379	<code>OnMasterChange</code>	rw	Called whenever the master dataset data changes
380	<code>OnMasterDisable</code>	rw	Called whenever the master dataset is disabled

10.43.4 TMasterDataLink.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TMasterDataLink`

Declaration: `constructor Create(ADataset: TDataset); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of `TMasterDataLink`. The `ADataset` parameter is the detail dataset in the master-detail relation: it is saved in the `DetailDataset` ([324](#)) property. The master dataset must be set through the `DataSource` ([275](#)) property, and is usually set by the application programmer.

See also: [TDetailDataLink.DetailDataset \(324\)](#), [TDatalink.Datasource \(275\)](#)

10.43.5 TMasterDataLink.Destroy

Synopsis: Free the datalink instance from memory

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the resources used by `TMasterDataLink` and then calls the inherited destructor.

See also: [TMasterDataLink.Create \(378\)](#)

10.43.6 TMasterDataLink.FieldNames

Synopsis: List of fieldnames that make up the master-detail relationship

Declaration: `Property FieldNames : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `FieldNames` is a semicolon-separated list of fieldnames in the master dataset ([TDatalink.Dataset \(275\)](#)) on which the master-detail relationship is based. Setting this property will fill the `TMasterDataLink.Fields (379)` property with the field instances of the master dataset.

See also: [TMasterDataLink.Fields \(379\)](#), [TDatalink.Dataset \(275\)](#), [TDataset.GetFieldList \(290\)](#)

10.43.7 TMasterDataLink.Fields

Synopsis: List of fields as specified in `FieldNames`

Declaration: `Property Fields : TList`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Fields` is filled with the [TField \(325\)](#) instances from the master dataset ([TDatalink.Dataset \(275\)](#)) when the `FieldNames (379)` property is set, and when the master dataset opens.

See also: [TField \(325\)](#), [TMasterDataLink.FieldNames \(379\)](#)

10.43.8 TMasterDataLink.OnMasterChange

Synopsis: Called whenever the master dataset data changes

Declaration: `Property OnMasterChange : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnMasterChange` is called whenever the field values in the master dataset changes, i.e. when it becomes active, or when the current record changes. If the [TMasterDataLink.Fields \(379\)](#) list is empty, [TMasterDataLink.OnMasterDisable \(380\)](#) is called instead.

See also: [TMasterDataLink.OnMasterDisable \(380\)](#)

10.43.9 TMasterDataLink.OnMasterDisable

Synopsis: Called whenever the master dataset is disabled

Declaration: Property OnMasterDisable : TNotifyEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: OnMasterDisable is called whenever the master dataset is disabled, or when it is active and the field list is empty.

See also: TMasterDataLink.OnMasterChange ([379](#))

10.44 TMasterParamsDataLink

10.44.1 Description

TMasterParamsDataLink is a TDataLink ([272](#)) descendent that can be used to establish a master-detail relationship between 2 TDataSet instances where the detail dataset is parametrized using a TParams instance. It takes care of closing and opening the detail dataset and copying the parameter values from the master dataset whenever the data in the master dataset changes.

See also: TDatalink ([272](#)), TDataSet ([277](#)), TParams ([397](#)), TParam ([385](#))

10.44.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
381	CopyParamsFromMaster	Copy parameter values from master dataset.
380	Create	Initialize a new TMasterParamsDataLink instance
381	RefreshParamNames	Refresh the list of parameter names

10.44.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
381	Params	rw	Parameters of detail dataset.

10.44.4 TMasterParamsDataLink.Create

Synopsis: Initialize a new TMasterParamsDataLink instance

Declaration: constructor Create(ADataset: TDataSet); Override

Visibility: public

Description: Create first calls the inherited constructor using ADataset, and then looks for a property named Params of type TParams ([397](#)) in the published properties of ADataset and assigns it to the Params ([381](#)) property.

See also: TDataSet ([277](#)), TParams ([397](#)), TMasterParamsDataLink.Params ([381](#))

10.44.5 TMasterParamsDataLink.RefreshParamNames

Synopsis: Refresh the list of parameter names

Declaration: `procedure RefreshParamNames; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `RefreshParamNames` scans the `Params` (381) property and sets the `FieldNames` (379) property to the list of parameter names.

See also: `TMasterParamsDataLink.Params` (381), `TMasterDataLink.FieldNames` (379)

10.44.6 TMasterParamsDataLink.CopyParamsFromMaster

Synopsis: Copy parameter values from master dataset.

Declaration: `procedure CopyParamsFromMaster(CopyBound: Boolean); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CopyParamsFromMaster` calls `TParams.CopyParamValuesFromDataset` (401), passing it the master dataset: it provides the parameters of the detail dataset with their new values. If `CopyBound` is `false`, then only parameters with their `Bound` (393) property set to `False` are copied. If it is `True` then the value is set for all parameters.

Errors: If the master dataset does not have a corresponding field for each parameter, then an exception will be raised.

See also: `TParams.CopyParamValuesFromDataset` (401), `TParam.Bound` (393)

10.44.7 TMasterParamsDataLink.Params

Synopsis: Parameters of detail dataset.

Declaration: `Property Params : TParams`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Params` is the `TParams` instance of the detail dataset. If the detail dataset contains a property named `Params` of type `TParams`, then it will be set when the `TMasterParamsDataLink` instance was created. If the property is not published, or has another name, then the `Params` property must be set in code.

See also: `Tparams` (397), `TMasterParamsDataLink.Create` (380)

10.45 TMemoField

10.45.1 Description

`TMemoField` is the class used when a dataset must manage memo (Text BLOB) data. (`TField.DataType` (337) equals `ftMemo`). It initializes some of the properties of the `TField` (325) class. All methods to be able to work with memo fields have been implemented in the `TBlobField` (253) parent class.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TMemoField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each memo field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TDataset` (277), `TField` (325), `TBLOBField` (253), `TWideMemoField` (407), `TGraphicField` (366)

10.45.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
382	Create	Create a new instance of the TMemoField class

10.45.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
382	Transliterate		Should the contents of the field be transliterated

10.45.4 TMemoField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the TMemoField class

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the TMemoField class. It calls the inherited destructor, and then sets some TField ([325](#)) properties to configure the instance for working with memo values.

See also: TField ([325](#))

10.45.5 TMemoField.Transliterate

Synopsis: Should the contents of the field be transliterated

Declaration: `Property Transliterate :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Transliterate` is redefined from TBlobField.Transliterate ([257](#)) with a default value of `true`.

See also: TBlobField.Transliterate ([257](#)), TStringField.Transliterate ([404](#)), TDataSet.Translate ([296](#))

10.46 TNamedItem

10.46.1 Description

NamedItem is a TCollectionItem (??) descendent which introduces a Name ([383](#)) property. It automatically returns the value of the Name property as the value of the DisplayName ([383](#)) property.

See also: DisplayName ([383](#)), Name ([383](#))

10.46.2 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
383	DisplayName	rw	Display name
383	Name	rw	Name of the item

10.46.3 TNamedItem.DisplayName

Synopsis: Display name

Declaration: `Property DisplayName : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `DisplayName` is declared in `TCollectionItem` (??), and is made public in `TNamedItem`. The value equals the value of the `Name` (383) property.

See also: `Name` (383)

10.46.4 TNamedItem.Name

Synopsis: Name of the item

Declaration: `Property Name : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Name` is the name of the item in the collection. This property is also used as the value for the `DisplayName` (383) property. If the `TNamedItem` item is owned by a `TDefCollection` (322) collection, then the name must be unique, i.e. each `Name` value may appear only once in the collection.

See also: `DisplayName` (383), `TDefCollection` (322)

10.47 TNumericField

10.47.1 Description

`TNumericField` is an abstract class which overrides some of the methods of `TField` (325) to handle numerical data. It also introduces or publishes a couple of properties that are only relevant in the case of numerical data, such as `TNumericField.DisplayFormat` (384) and `TNumericField.EditFormat` (384).

Since `TNumericField` is an abstract class, it must never be instantiated directly. Instead one of the descendent classes should be created.

See also: `TField` (325), `TNumericField.DisplayFormat` (384), `TNumericField.EditFormat` (384), `TField.Alignment` (342), `TIntegerField` (372), `TLargeIntField` (372), `TFloatField` (362), `TBCDField` (249)

10.47.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
384	Create	Create a new instance of <code>TNumericField</code>

10.47.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
384	Alignment		Alignment of the field
384	DisplayFormat	rw	Format string for display of numerical data
384	EditFormat	rw	Format string for editing of numerical data

10.47.4 TNumericField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of TNumericField

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` calls the inherited constructor and then initializes the `TField.Alignment` (342) property with

See also: `TField.Alignment` (342)

10.47.5 TNumericField.Alignment

Synopsis: Alignment of the field

Declaration: `Property Alignment :`

Visibility: `published`

Access:

Description: `Alignment` is published by `TNumericField` with `taRightJustify` as a default value.

See also: `TField.Alignment` (342)

10.47.6 TNumericField.DisplayFormat

Synopsis: Format string for display of numerical data

Declaration: `Property DisplayFormat : string`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `DisplayFormat` specifies a format string (such as used by the `Format` (??) and `FormatFloat` (??) functions) for display purposes: the `TField.DisplayText` (337) property will use this property to format the field's value. Which formatting function (and, consequently, which format can be entered) is used depends on the descendent of the `TNumericField` class.

See also: `Format` (??), `FormatFloat` (??), `TField.DisplayText` (337), `TNumericField.EditFormat` (384)

10.47.7 TNumericField.EditFormat

Synopsis: Format string for editing of numerical data

Declaration: `Property EditFormat : string`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `EditFormat` specifies a format string (such as used by the `Format` (??) and `FormatFloat` (??) functions) for editing purposes: the `TField.Text` (340) property will use this property to format the field's value. Which formatting function (and, consequently, which format can be entered) is used depends on the descendent of the `TNumericField` class.

See also: `Format` (??), `FormatFloat` (??), `TField.Text` (340), `TNumericField.DisplayFormat` (384)

10.48 TParam

10.48.1 Description

TParam is one item in a TParams (397) collection. It describes the name (TParam.Name (395)), type (ParamType (396)) and value (TParam.Value (395)) of a parameter in a parametrized query or stored procedure. Under normal circumstances, it should never be necessary to create a TParam instance manually; the TDataset (277) descendent that owns the parameters should have created all necessary TParam instances.

See also: TParams (397)

10.48.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
386	Assign	Assign one parameter instance to another
387	AssignField	Copy value from field instance
387	AssignFieldValue	Assign field value to the parameter.
388	AssignFromField	Copy field type and value
387	AssignToField	Assign parameter value to field
388	Clear	Clear the parameter value
386	Create	Create a new parameter value
388	GetData	Get the parameter value from a memory buffer
388	GetDataSize	Return the size of the data.
389	LoadFromFile	Load a parameter value from file
389	LoadFromStream	Load a parameter value from stream
389	SetBlobData	Set BLOB data
389	SetData	Set the parameter value from a buffer

10.48.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
390	AsBlob	rw	Return parameter value as a blob
390	AsBoolean	rw	Get/Set parameter value as a boolean value
390	AsCurrency	rw	Get/Set parameter value as a currency value
391	AsDate	rw	Get/Set parameter value as a date (TDateTime) value
391	AsDateTime	rw	Get/Set parameter value as a date/time (TDateTime) value
391	AsFloat	rw	Get/Set parameter value as a floating-point value
393	AsFmtBCD	rw	
391	AsInteger	rw	Get/Set parameter value as an integer (32-bit) value
392	AsLargeInt	rw	Get/Set parameter value as a 64-bit integer value
392	AsMemo	rw	Get/Set parameter value as a memo (string) value
392	AsSmallInt	rw	Get/Set parameter value as a smallint value
392	AsString	rw	Get/Set parameter value as a string value
393	AsTime	rw	Get/Set parameter value as a time (TDateTime) value
395	AsWideString	rw	Get/Set the value as a widestring
393	AsWord	rw	Get/Set parameter value as a word value
393	Bound	rw	Is the parameter value bound (set to fixed value)
394	Dataset	r	Dataset to which this parameter belongs
395	DataType	rw	Data type of the parameter
394	IsNull	r	Is the parameter empty
395	Name	rw	Name of the parameter
394	NativeStr	rw	No description available
396	NumericScale	rw	Numeric scale
396	ParamType	rw	Type of parameter
396	Precision	rw	Precision of the BCD value
397	Size	rw	Size of the parameter
394	Text	rw	Read or write the value of the parameter as a string
395	Value	rws	Value as a variant

10.48.4 TParam.Create

Synopsis: Create a new parameter value

Declaration: `constructor Create(ACollection: TCollection); Override; Overload
 constructor Create(AParams: TParams; AParamType: TParamType); Overload
 ; Reintroduce`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` first calls the inherited `create`, and then initializes the parameter properties. The first form creates a default parameter, the second form is a convenience function and initializes a parameter of a certain kind (`AParamType`), in which case the owning `TParams` collection must be specified in `AParams`

See also: `TParams` ([397](#))

10.48.5 TParam.Assign

Synopsis: Assign one parameter instance to another

Declaration: `procedure Assign(Source: TPersistent); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Assign copies the Name, ParamType, Bound, Value, SizePrecision and NumericScale properties from ASource if it is of type TParam. If Source is of type TField (325), then it is passed to TParam.AssignField (387). If Source is of type TStrings, then it is assigned to TParams.AsMemo (397).

Errors: If Source is not of type TParam, TField or TStrings, an exception will be raised.

See also: TField (325), TParam.Name (395), TParam.Bound (393), TParam.NumericScale (396), TParam.ParamType (396), TParam.value (395), TParam.Size (397), TParam.AssignField (387), Tparam.AsMemo (392)

10.48.6 TParam.AssignField

Synopsis: Copy value from field instance

Declaration: procedure AssignField(Field: TField)

Visibility: public

Description: AssignField copies the Field, FieldName (344) and Value (341) to the parameter instance. The parameter is bound after this operation. If Field is Nil then the parameter name and value are cleared.

See also: TParam.assign (386), TParam.AssignToField (387), TParam.AssignFieldValue (387)

10.48.7 TParam.AssignToField

Synopsis: Assign parameter value to field

Declaration: procedure AssignToField(Field: TField)

Visibility: public

Description: AssignToField copies the parameter value (395) to the field instance. If Field is Nil, nothing happens.

Errors: An EDatabaseError (244) exception is raised if the field has an unsupported field type (for types ftCursor, ftArray, ftDataset, ftReference).

See also: TParam.Assign (386), TParam.AssignField (387), TParam.AssignFromField (388)

10.48.8 TParam.AssignFieldValue

Synopsis: Assign field value to the parameter.

Declaration: procedure AssignFieldValue(Field: TField; const AValue: Variant)

Visibility: public

Description: AssignFieldValue copies only the field type from Field and the value from the AValue parameter. It sets the TParam.Bound (393) bound parameter to True. This method is called from TParam.AssignField (387).

See also: TField (325), TParam.AssignField (387), TParam.Bound (393)

10.48.9 TParam.AssignFromField

Synopsis: Copy field type and value

Declaration: `procedure AssignFromField(Field: TField)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AssignFromField` copies the field value (341) and data type (`TField.DataType` (337)) to the parameter instance. If `Field` is `Nil`, nothing happens. This is the reverse operation of `TParam.AssignToField` (387).

Errors: An `EDatabaseError` (244) exception is raised if the field has an unsupported field type (for types `ftCursor`, `ftArray`, `ftDataset`, `ftReference`).

See also: `TParam.Assign` (386), `TParam.AssignField` (387), `TParam.AssignToField` (387)

10.48.10 TParam.Clear

Synopsis: Clear the parameter value

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: public

Description: `Clear` clears the parameter value, it is set to `UnAssigned`. The Datatype, parameter type or name are not touched.

See also: `TParam.Value` (395), `TParam.Name` (395), `TParam.ParamType` (396), `TParam.DataType` (395)

10.48.11 TParam.GetData

Synopsis: Get the parameter value from a memory buffer

Declaration: `procedure GetData(Buffer: Pointer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetData` retrieves the parameter value and stores it in `buffer`. It uses the same data layout as `TField` (325), and can be used to copy the parameter value to a record buffer.

Errors: Only basic field types are supported. Using an unsupported field type will result in an `EDatabaseError` (244) exception.

See also: `TParam.SetData` (389), `TField` (325)

10.48.12 TParam.GetDataSize

Synopsis: Return the size of the data.

Declaration: `function GetDataSize : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetDataSize` returns the size (in bytes) needed to store the current value of the parameter.

Errors: For an unsupported data type, an `EDatabaseError` (244) exception is raised when this function is called.

See also: `TParam.GetData` (388), `TParam.SetData` (389)

10.48.13 TParam.LoadFromFile

Synopsis: Load a parameter value from file

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromFile(const FileName: string; BlobType: TBlobType)`

Visibility: public

Description: `LoadFromFile` can be used to load a BLOB-type parameter from a file named `FileName`. The `BlobType` parameter can be used to set the exact data type of the parameter: it must be one of the BLOB data types. This function simply creates a `TFileStream` instance and passes it to `TParam.LoadFromStream` (389).

Errors: If the specified `FileName` is not a valid file, or the file is not readable, an exception will occur.

See also: `TParam.LoadFromStream` (389), `TBlobType` (229), `TParam.SaveToFile` (385)

10.48.14 TParam.LoadFromStream

Synopsis: Load a parameter value from stream

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromStream(Stream: TStream; BlobType: TBlobType)`

Visibility: public

Description: `LoadFromStream` can be used to load a BLOB-type parameter from a stream. The `BlobType` parameter can be used to set the exact data type of the parameter: it must be one of the BLOB data types.

Errors: If the stream does not support taking the `Size` of the stream, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TParam.LoadFromFile` (389), `TParam.SaveToStream` (385)

10.48.15 TParam.SetBlobData

Synopsis: Set BLOB data

Declaration: `procedure SetBlobData(Buffer: Pointer; ASize: Integer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `SetBlobData` reads the value of a BLOB type parameter from a memory buffer: the data is read from the memory buffer `Buffer` and is assumed to be `Size` bytes long.

Errors: No checking is performed on the validity of the data buffer. If the data buffer is invalid or the size is wrong, an exception may occur.

See also: `TParam.LoadFromStream` (389)

10.48.16 TParam.SetData

Synopsis: Set the parameter value from a buffer

Declaration: `procedure SetData(Buffer: Pointer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `SetData` performs the rever operation of `TParam.GetData` (388): it reads the parameter value from the memory area pointed to by `Buffer`. The size of the data read is determined by `TParam.GetDataSize` (388) and the type of data by `TParam.DataType` (395) : it is the same storage mechanism used by `TField` (325), and so can be used to copy the value from a `TDataset` (277) record buffer.

Errors: Not all field types are supported. If an unsupported field type is encountered, an `EDatabaseError` (244) exception is raised.

See also: `TDataset` (277), `TParam.GetData` (388), `TParam.DataType` (395), `TParam.GetDataSize` (388)

10.48.17 TParam.AsBlob

Synopsis: Return parameter value as a blob

Declaration: `Property AsBlob : TBlobData`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsBlob` returns the parameter value as a blob: currently this is a string. It can be set to set the parameter value.

See also: `TParam.AsString` (392)

10.48.18 TParam.AsBoolean

Synopsis: Get/Set parameter value as a boolean value

Declaration: `Property AsBoolean : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsBoolean` will return the parameter value as a boolean value. If it is written, the value is set to the specified value and the data type is set to `ftBoolean`.

See also: `TParam.DataType` (395), `TParam.Value` (395)

10.48.19 TParam.AsCurrency

Synopsis: Get/Set parameter value as a currency value

Declaration: `Property AsCurrency : Currency`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsCurrency` will return the parameter value as a currency value. If it is written, the value is set to the specified value and the data type is set to `ftCurrency`.

See also: `TParam.AsFloat` (391), `TParam.DataType` (395), `TParam.Value` (395)

10.48.20 TParam.AsDate

Synopsis: Get/Set parameter value as a date (TDateTime) value

Declaration: `Property AsDate : TDateTime`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AsDate` will return the parameter value as a date value. If it is written, the value is set to the specified value and the data type is set to `ftDate`.

See also: [TParam.AsDateTime \(391\)](#), [TParam.AsTime \(393\)](#), [TParam.DataType \(395\)](#), [TParam.Value \(395\)](#)

10.48.21 TParam.AsDateTime

Synopsis: Get/Set parameter value as a date/time (TDateTime) value

Declaration: `Property AsDateTime : TDateTime`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AsDateTime` will return the parameter value as a TDateTime value. If it is written, the value is set to the specified value and the data type is set to `ftDateTime`.

See also: [TParam.AsDate \(391\)](#), [TParam.asTime \(393\)](#), [TParam.DataType \(395\)](#), [TParam.Value \(395\)](#)

10.48.22 TParam.AsFloat

Synopsis: Get/Set parameter value as a floating-point value

Declaration: `Property AsFloat : Double`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AsFloat` will return the parameter value as a double floating-point value. If it is written, the value is set to the specified value and the data type is set to `ftFloat`.

See also: [TParam.AsCurrency \(390\)](#), [TParam.DataType \(395\)](#), [TParam.Value \(395\)](#)

10.48.23 TParam.AsInteger

Synopsis: Get/Set parameter value as an integer (32-bit) value

Declaration: `Property AsInteger : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AsInteger` will return the parameter value as a 32-bit signed integer value. If it is written, the value is set to the specified value and the data type is set to `ftInteger`.

See also: [TParam.AsLargeInt \(392\)](#), [TParam.AsSmallInt \(392\)](#), [TParam.AsWord \(393\)](#), [TParam.DataType \(395\)](#), [TParam.Value \(395\)](#)

10.48.24 TParam.AsLargeInt

Synopsis: Get/Set parameter value as a 64-bit integer value

Declaration: `Property AsLargeInt : LargeInt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsLargeInt` will return the parameter value as a 64-bit signed integer value. If it is written, the value is set to the specified value and the data type is set to `ftLargeInt`.

See also: `TParam.asInteger` (391), `TParam.asSmallint` (392), `TParam.AsWord` (393), `TParam.DataType` (395), `TParam.Value` (395)

10.48.25 TParam.AsMemo

Synopsis: Get/Set parameter value as a memo (string) value

Declaration: `Property AsMemo : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsMemo` will return the parameter value as a memo (string) value. If it is written, the value is set to the specified value and the data type is set to `ftMemo`.

See also: `TParam.asString` (392), `TParam.LoadFromStream` (389), `TParam.SaveToStream` (385), `TParam.DataType` (395), `TParam.Value` (395)

10.48.26 TParam.AsSmallInt

Synopsis: Get/Set parameter value as a smallint value

Declaration: `Property AsSmallInt : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsSmallint` will return the parameter value as a 16-bit signed integer value. If it is written, the value is set to the specified value and the data type is set to `ftSmallint`.

See also: `TParam.AsInteger` (391), `TParam.AsLargeInt` (392), `TParam.AsWord` (393), `TParam.DataType` (395), `TParam.Value` (395)

10.48.27 TParam.AsString

Synopsis: Get/Set parameter value as a string value

Declaration: `Property AsString : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsString` will return the parameter value as a string value. If it is written, the value is set to the specified value and the data type is set to `ftString`.

See also: `TParam.DataType` (395), `TParam.Value` (395)

10.48.28 TParam.AsTime

Synopsis: Get/Set parameter value as a time (TDateTime) value

Declaration: `Property AsTime : TDateTime`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AsTime` will return the parameter value as a time (TDateTime) value. If it is written, the value is set to the specified value and the data type is set to `ftTime`.

See also: `TParam.AsDate` ([391](#)), `TParam.AsDateTime` ([391](#)), `TParam.DataType` ([395](#)), `TParam.Value` ([395](#))

10.48.29 TParam.AsWord

Synopsis: Get/Set parameter value as a word value

Declaration: `Property AsWord : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AsWord` will return the parameter value as an integer. If it is written, the value is set to the specified value and the data type is set to `ftWord`.

See also: `TParam.AsInteger` ([391](#)), `TParam.AsLargeInt` ([392](#)), `TParam.AsSmallint` ([392](#)), `TParam.DataType` ([395](#)), `TParam.Value` ([395](#))

10.48.30 TParam.AsFmtBCD

Declaration: `Property AsFmtBCD : TBCD`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

10.48.31 TParam.Bound

Synopsis: Is the parameter value bound (set to fixed value)

Declaration: `Property Bound : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Bound` indicates whether a parameter has received a fixed value: setting the parameter value will set `Bound` to `True`. When creating master-detail relationships, parameters with their `Bound` property set to `True` will not receive a value from the master dataset: their value will be kept. Only parameters where `Bound` is `False` will receive a new value from the master dataset.

See also: `TParam.DataType` ([395](#)), `TParam.Value` ([395](#))

10.48.32 TParam.Dataset

Synopsis: Dataset to which this parameter belongs

Declaration: `Property Dataset : TDataSet`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Dataset` is the dataset that owns the `TParams` (397) instance of which this `TParam` instance is a part. It is `Nil` if the collection is not set, or is not a `TParams` instance.

See also: `TDataSet` (277), `TParams` (397)

10.48.33 TParam.IsNull

Synopsis: Is the parameter empty

Declaration: `Property IsNull : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `IsNull` is `True` if the value is empty or not set (`Null` or `UnAssigned`).

See also: `TParam.Clear` (388), `TParam.Value` (395)

10.48.34 TParam.NativeStr

Synopsis: No description available

Declaration: `Property NativeStr : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: No description available

10.48.35 TParam.Text

Synopsis: Read or write the value of the parameter as a string

Declaration: `Property Text : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AsText` returns the same value as `TParam.AsString` (392), but, when written, does not set the data type: instead, it attempts to convert the value to the type specified in `TParam.DataType` (395).

See also: `TParam.AsString` (392), `TParam.DataType` (395)

10.48.36 TParam.Value

Synopsis: Value as a variant

Declaration: `Property Value : Variant`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Value` returns (or sets) the value as a variant value.

See also: `TParam.DataType` ([395](#))

10.48.37 TParam.AsWideString

Synopsis: Get/Set the value as a widestring

Declaration: `Property AsWideString : WideString`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AsWideString` returns the parameter value as a widestring value. Setting the property will set the value of the parameter and will also set the `DataType` ([395](#)) to `ftWideString`.

See also: `TParam.AsString` ([392](#)), `TParam.Value` ([395](#)), `TParam.DataType` ([395](#))

10.48.38 TParam.DataType

Synopsis: Data type of the parameter

Declaration: `Property DataType : TFieldType`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `DataType` is the current data type of the parameter value. It is set automatically when one of the various `AsXYZ` properties is written, or when the value is copied from a field value.

See also: `TParam.IsNull` ([394](#)), `TParam.Value` ([395](#)), `TParam.AssignField` ([387](#))

10.48.39 TParam.Name

Synopsis: Name of the parameter

Declaration: `Property Name : string`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Name` is the name of the parameter. The name is usually determined automatically from the SQL statement the parameter is part of. Each parameter name should appear only once in the collection.

See also: `TParam.DataType` ([395](#)), `TParam.Value` ([395](#)), `TParams.ParamByName` ([400](#))

10.48.40 TParam.NumericScale

Synopsis: Numeric scale

Declaration: `Property NumericScale : Integer`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `NumericScale` can be used to store the numerical scale for BCD values. It is currently unused.

See also: `TParam.Precision` ([396](#)), `TParam.Size` ([397](#))

10.48.41 TParam.ParamType

Synopsis: Type of parameter

Declaration: `Property ParamType : TParamType`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ParamType` specifies the type of parameter: is the parameter value written to the database engine, or is it received from the database engine, or both ? It can have the following value:

ptUnknownUnknown type

ptInputInput parameter

ptOutputOutput paramete, filled on result

ptInputOutputInput/output parameter

ptResultResult parameter

The `ParamType` property is usually set by the database engine that creates the parameter instances.

See also: `TParam.DataType` ([395](#)), `TParam.DataSize` ([385](#)), `TParam.Name` ([395](#))

10.48.42 TParam.Precision

Synopsis: Precision of the BCD value

Declaration: `Property Precision : Integer`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Precision` can be used to store the numerical precision for BCD values. It is currently unused.

See also: `TParam.NumericScale` ([396](#)), `TParam.Size` ([397](#))

10.48.43 TParam.Size

Synopsis: Size of the parameter

Declaration: `Property Size : Integer`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Size` is the declared size of the parameter. In the current implementation, this parameter is ignored other than copying it from `TField.DataSize` (336) in the `TParam.AssignFieldValue` (387) method. The actual size can be retrieved through the `TParam.Datasize` (385) property.

See also: `TParam.Datasize` (385), `TField.DataSize` (336), `TParam.AssignFieldValue` (387)

10.49 TParams

10.49.1 Description

`TParams` is a collection of `TParam` (385) values. It is used to specify parameter values for parametrized SQL statements, but is also used to specify parameter values for stored procedures. Its default property is an array of `TParam` (385) values. The class also offers a method to scan a SQL statement for parameter names and replace them with placeholders understood by the SQL engine: `TParams.ParseSQL` (400).

`TDataset` (277) itself does not use `TParams`. The class is provided in the `DB` unit, so all `TDataset` descendants that need some kind of parametrization make use of the same interface. The `TMasterParamsDataLink` (380) class can be used to establish a master-detail relationship between a parameter-aware `TDataset` instance and another dataset; it will automatically refresh parameter values when the fields in the master dataset change. To this end, the `TParams.CopyParamValuesFromDataset` (401) method exists.

See also: `TDataset` (277), `TMasterParamsDataLink` (380), `TParam` (385), `TParams.ParseSQL` (400), `TParams.CopyParamValuesFromDataset` (401)

10.49.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
398	<code>AddParam</code>	Add a parameter to the collection
398	<code>AssignValues</code>	Copy values from another collection
401	<code>CopyParamValuesFromDataset</code>	Copy parameter values from a the fields in a dataset.
398	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of <code>TParams</code>
398	<code>CreateParam</code>	Create and add a new parameter to the collection
399	<code>FindParam</code>	Find a parameter with given name
399	<code>GetParamList</code>	Fetch a list of <code>TParam</code> instances
399	<code>IsEqual</code>	Is the list of parameters equal
400	<code>ParamByName</code>	Return a parameter by name
400	<code>ParseSQL</code>	Parse SQL statement, replacing parameter names with SQL parameter placeholders
401	<code>RemoveParam</code>	Remove a parameter from the collection

10.49.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
401	Dataset	r	Dataset that owns the TParams instance
402	Items	rw	Indexed access to TParams instances in the collection
402	ParamValues	rw	Named access to the parameter values.

10.49.4 TParams.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of TParams

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TPersistent); Overload`
`constructor Create; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of `TParams`. It calls the inherited constructor with `TParam` ([385](#)) as the collection's item class, and sets `AOwner` as the owner of the collection. Usually, `AOwner` will be the dataset that needs parameters.

See also: `#rtl.classes.TCollection.create` ([??](#)), `TParam` ([385](#))

10.49.5 TParams.AddParam

Synopsis: Add a parameter to the collection

Declaration: `procedure AddParam(Value: TParam)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddParam` adds `Value` to the collection.

Errors: No checks are done on the `TParam` instance. If it is `Nil`, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TParam` ([385](#)), `#rtl.classes.tcollection.add` ([??](#))

10.49.6 TParams.AssignValues

Synopsis: Copy values from another collection

Declaration: `procedure AssignValues(Value: TParams)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AssignValues` examines all `TParam` ([385](#)) instances in `Value`, and looks in its own items for a `TParam` instance with the same name. If it is found, then the value and type of the parameter are copied (using `TParam.Assign` ([386](#))). If it is not found, nothing is done.

See also: `TParam` ([385](#)), `TParam.Assign` ([386](#))

10.49.7 TParams.CreateParam

Synopsis: Create and add a new parameter to the collection

Declaration: `function CreateParam(FldType: TFieldType; const ParamName: string;`
`ParamType: TParamType) : TParam`

Visibility: public

Description: `CreateParam` creates a new `TParam` (385) instance with datatype equal to `fldType`, Name equal to `ParamName` and sets its `ParamType` property to `ParamType`. The parameter is then added to the collection.

See also: `TParam` (385), `TParam.Name` (395), `TParam.Datatype` (395), `TParam.Paramtype` (396)

10.49.8 TParams.FindParam

Synopsis: Find a parameter with given name

Declaration: `function FindParam(const Value: string) : TParam`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindParam` searches the collection for the `TParam` (385) instance with property `Name` equal to `Value`. It will return the last instance with the given name, and will only return one instance. If no match is found, `Nil` is returned.

Remark: A `TParams` collection can have 2 `TParam` instances with the same name: no checking for duplicates is done.

See also: `TParam.Name` (395), `TParams.ParamByName` (400), `TParams.GetParamList` (399)

10.49.9 TParams.GetParamList

Synopsis: Fetch a list of `TParam` instances

Declaration: `procedure GetParamList(List: TList; const ParamNames: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetParamList` examines the parameter names in the semicolon-separated list `ParamNames`. It searches each `TParam` instance from the names in the list and adds it to `List`.

Errors: If the `ParamNames` list contains an unknown parameter name, then an exception is raised. Whitespace is not discarded.

See also: `TParam` (385), `TParam.Name` (395), `TParams.ParamByName` (400)

10.49.10 TParams.IsEqual

Synopsis: Is the list of parameters equal

Declaration: `function IsEqual(Value: TParams) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `IsEqual` compares the parameter count of `Value` and if it matches, it compares all `TParam` items of `Value` with the items it owns. If all items are equal (all properties match), then `True` is returned. The items are compared on index, so the order is important.

See also: `TParam` (385)

10.49.11 TParams.ParamByName

Synopsis: Return a parameter by name

Declaration: `function ParamByName(const Value: string) : TParam`

Visibility: public

Description: `ParamByName` searches the collection for the `TParam` (385) instance with property `Name` equal to `Value`. It will return the last instance with the given name, and will only return one instance. If no match is found, an exception is raised.

Remark: A `TParams` collection can have 2 `TParam` instances with the same name: no checking for duplicates is done.

See also: `TParam.Name` (395), `TParams.FindParam` (399), `TParams.GetParamList` (399)

10.49.12 TParams.ParseSQL

Synopsis: Parse SQL statement, replacing parameter names with SQL parameter placeholders

Declaration: `function ParseSQL(SQL: string; DoCreate: Boolean) : string; Overload`
`function ParseSQL(SQL: string; DoCreate: Boolean; EscapeSlash: Boolean;`
`EscapeRepeat: Boolean; ParameterStyle: TParamStyle)`
`: string; Overload`
`function ParseSQL(SQL: string; DoCreate: Boolean; EscapeSlash: Boolean;`
`EscapeRepeat: Boolean; ParameterStyle: TParamStyle;`
`out ParamBinding: TParamBinding) : string; Overload`
`function ParseSQL(SQL: string; DoCreate: Boolean; EscapeSlash: Boolean;`
`EscapeRepeat: Boolean; ParameterStyle: TParamStyle;`
`out ParamBinding: TParamBinding;`
`out ReplaceString: string) : string; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `ParseSQL` parses the SQL statement for parameter names in the form `:ParamName`. It replaces them with a SQL parameter placeholder. If `DoCreate` is `True` then a `TParam` instance is added to the collection with the found parameter name.

The parameter placeholder is determined by the `ParameterStyle` property, which can have the following values:

psInterbaseParameters are specified by a `?` character

psPostgreSQLParameters are specified by a `$N` character.

psSimulatedParameters are specified by a `$N` character.

`psInterbase` is the default.

If the `EscapeSlash` parameter is `True`, then backslash characters are used to quote the next character in the SQL statement. If it is `False`, the backslash character is regarded as a normal character.

If the `EscapeRepeat` parameter is `True` (the default) then embedded quotes in string literals are escaped by repeating themselves. If it is `false` then they should be quoted with backslashes.

`ParamBinding`, if specified, is filled with the indexes of the parameter instances in the parameter collection: for each SQL parameter placeholder, the index of the corresponding `TParam` instance is returned in the array.

`ReplaceString`, if specified, contains the placeholder used for the parameter names (by default, \$). It has effect only when `ParameterStyle` equals `psSimulated`.

The function returns the SQL statement with the parameter names replaced by placeholders.

See also: `TParam` (385), `TParam.Name` (395), `TParamStyle` (238)

10.49.13 TParams.RemoveParam

Synopsis: Remove a parameter from the collection

Declaration: `procedure RemoveParam(Value: TParam)`

Visibility: public

Description: `RemoveParam` removes the parameter `Value` from the collection, but does not free the instance.

Errors: `Value` must be a valid instance, or an exception will be raised.

See also: `TParam` (385)

10.49.14 TParams.CopyParamValuesFromDataset

Synopsis: Copy parameter values from a the fields in a dataset.

Declaration: `procedure CopyParamValuesFromDataset (ADataset: TDataSet;
CopyBound: Boolean)`

Visibility: public

Description: `CopyParamValuesFromDataset` assigns values to all parameters in the collection by searching in `ADataset` for fields with the same name, and assigning the value of the field to the `TParam` instances using `TParam.AssignField` (387). By default, this operation is only performed on `TParam` instances with their `Bound` (393) property set to `False`. If `CopyBound` is true, then the operation is performed on all `TParam` instances in the collection.

Errors: If, for some `TParam` instance, `ADataset` misses a field with the same name, an `EDatabaseError` exception will be raised.

See also: `TParam` (385), `TParam.Bound` (393), `TParam.AssignField` (387), `TDataSet` (277), `TDataSet.FieldName` (287)

10.49.15 TParams.Dataset

Synopsis: Dataset that owns the `TParams` instance

Declaration: `Property Dataset : TDataSet`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Dataset` is the `TDataSet` (277) instance that was specified when the `TParams` instance was created.

See also: `TParams.Create` (398), `TDataSet` (277)

10.49.16 TParams.Items

Synopsis: Indexed access to TParams instances in the collection

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: TParam; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Items is overridden by TParams so it has the proper type (TParam). The Index runs from 0 to Count-1.

See also: TParams ([397](#))

10.49.17 TParams.ParamValues

Synopsis: Named access to the parameter values.

Declaration: `Property ParamValues[ParamName: string]: Variant`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: ParamValues provides access to the parameter values (TParam.Value ([395](#))) by name. It is equivalent to reading and writing

`ParamByName (ParamName) .Value`

See also: TParam.Value ([395](#)), TParams.ParamByName ([400](#))

10.50 TSmallIntField

10.50.1 Description

TSmallIntField is the class created when a dataset must manage 16-bit signed integer data, of datatype `ftSmallInt`. It exposes no new properties, but simply overrides some methods to manage 16-bit signed integer data.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of TSmallIntField manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each smallint field when a dataset is opened.

See also: TField ([325](#)), TNumericField ([383](#)), TLongintField ([374](#)), TWordField ([409](#))

10.50.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
403	Create	Create a new instance of the TSmallIntField class.

10.50.3 TSmallIntField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the TSmallIntField class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Create initializes a new instance of the TSmallIntField (402) class. It calls the inherited constructor and then simply sets some of the TField (325) properties to work with 16-bit signed integer data.

See also: TField (325)

10.51 TStringField

10.51.1 Description

TStringField is the class used whenever a dataset has to handle a string field type (data type `ftString`). This class overrides some of the standard TField (325) methods to handle string data, and introduces some properties that are only pertinent for data fields of string type. It should never be necessary to create an instance of TStringField manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each string field when a dataset is opened.

See also: TField (325), TWideStringField (408), TDataSet (277)

10.51.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
403	Create	Create a new instance of the TStringField class
404	SetFieldType	Set the field type

10.51.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
405	EditMask		Specify an edit mask for an edit control
404	FixedChar	rw	Is the string declared with a fixed length ?
405	Size		Maximum size of the string
404	Transliterate	rw	Should the field value be transliterated when reading or writing
404	Value	rw	Value of the field as a string

10.51.4 TStringField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the TStringField class

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Create is used to create a new instance of the TStringField class. It initializes some TField (325) properties after having called the inherited constructor.

10.51.5 TStringField.SetFieldType

Synopsis: Set the field type

Declaration: `procedure SetFieldType(AValue: TFieldType);` Override

Visibility: public

Description: `SetFieldType` is overridden in `TStringField` (403) to check the data type more accurately (`ftString` and `ftFixedChar`). No extra functionality is added.

See also: `TField.DataType` (337)

10.51.6 TStringField.FixedChar

Synopsis: Is the string declared with a fixed length ?

Declaration: `Property FixedChar : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `FixedChar` is `True` if the underlying data engine has declared the field with a fixed length, as in a SQL `CHAR()` declaration: the field's value will then always be padded with as many spaces as needed to obtain the declared length of the field. If it is `False` then the declared length is simply the maximum length for the field, and no padding with spaces is performed.

10.51.7 TStringField.Transliterate

Synopsis: Should the field value be transliterated when reading or writing

Declaration: `Property Transliterate : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Transliterate` can be set to `True` if the field's contents should be transliterated prior to copying it from or to the field's buffer. Transliteration is done by a method of `TDataset`: `TDataset.Translate` (296).

See also: `TDataset.Translate` (296)

10.51.8 TStringField.Value

Synopsis: Value of the field as a string

Declaration: `Property Value : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Value` is overridden in `TField` to return the value of the field as a string. It returns the contents of `TField.AsString` (334) when read, or sets the `AsString` property when written to.

See also: `TField.AsString` (334), `TField.Value` (341)

10.51.9 TStringField.EditMask

Synopsis: Specify an edit mask for an edit control

Declaration: `Property EditMask :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `EditMask` can be used to specify an edit mask for controls that allow to edit this field. It has no effect on the field value, and serves only to ensure that the user can enter only correct data for this field.

`TStringField` just changes the visibility of the `EditMask` property, it is introduced in `TField`.

For more information on valid edit masks, see the documentation of the GUI controls.

See also: `TField.EditMask` ([337](#))

10.51.10 TStringField.Size

Synopsis: Maximum size of the string

Declaration: `Property Size :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Size` is made published by the `TStringField` class so it can be set in the IDE: it is the declared maximum size of the string (in characters) and is used to calculate the size of the dataset buffer.

See also: `TField.Size` ([340](#))

10.52 TTimeField

10.52.1 Description

`TimeField` is the class used when a dataset must manage data of type time. (`TField.DataType` ([337](#)) equals `ftTime`). It initializes some of the properties of the `TField` ([325](#)) class to be able to work with time fields.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TTimeField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each time field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TDataset` ([277](#)), `TField` ([325](#)), `TDateTimeField` ([317](#)), `TDateField` ([317](#))

10.52.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
406	Create	Create a new instance of a <code>TTimeField</code> class.

10.52.3 TTimeField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of a `TTimeField` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TTimeField` class. It calls the inherited destructor, and then sets some `TField` (325) properties to configure the instance for working with time values.

See also: `TField` (325)

10.53 TVarBytesField

10.53.1 Description

`TVarBytesField` is the class used when a dataset must manage data of variable-size binary type. (`TField.DataType` (337) equals `ftVarBytes`). It initializes some of the properties of the `TField` (325) class to be able to work with variable-size byte fields.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TVarBytesField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each variable-sized binary data field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TDataset` (277), `TField` (325), `TBytesField` (259)

10.53.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
406	Create	Create a new instance of a <code>TVarBytesField</code> class.

10.53.3 TVarBytesField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of a `TVarBytesField` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TVarBytesField` class. It calls the inherited destructor, and then sets some `TField` (325) properties to configure the instance for working with variable-size binary data values.

See also: `TField` (325)

10.54 TVariantField

10.54.1 Description

`TVariantField` is the class used when a dataset must manage native variant-typed data. (`TField.DataType` (337) equals `ftVariant`). It initializes some of the properties of the `TField` (325) class and overrides some of its methods to be able to work with variant data.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TVariantField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each variant field when a dataset is opened.

See also: TDataSet (277), TField (325)

10.54.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
407	Create	Create a new instance of the TVariantField class

10.54.3 TVariantField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the TVariantField class

Declaration: constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override

Visibility: public

Description: Create initializes a new instance of the TVariantField class. It calls the inherited destructor, and then sets some TField (325) properties to configure the instance for working with variant values.

See also: TField (325)

10.55 TWideMemoField

10.55.1 Description

TWideMemoField is the class used when a dataset must manage memo (Text BLOB) data. (TField.DataType (337) equals ftWideMemo). It initializes some of the properties of the TField (325) class. All methods to be able to work with widestring memo fields have been implemented in the TBlobField (253) parent class.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of TWideMemoField manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each widestring memo field when a dataset is opened.

See also: TDataSet (277), TField (325), TBlobField (253), TMemoField (381), TGraphicField (366)

10.55.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
407	Create	Create a new instance of the TWideMemoField class

10.55.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
408	Value	rw	Value of the field's contents as a widestring

10.55.4 TWideMemoField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the TWideMemoField class

Declaration: constructor Create(aOwner: TComponent); Override

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TWideMemoField` class. It calls the inherited destructor, and then sets some `TField` (325) properties to configure the instance for working with widestring memo values.

See also: `TField` (325)

10.55.5 TWideMemoField.Value

Synopsis: Value of the field's contents as a widestring

Declaration: `Property Value : WideString`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Value` is redefined by `TWideMemoField` as a `WideString` value. Reading and writing this property is equivalent to reading and writing the `TField.AsWideString` (334) property.

See also: `TField.Value` (341), `TField.AsWideString` (334)

10.56 TWideStringField

10.56.1 Description

`TWideStringField` is the string field class instantiated for fields of data type `ftWideString`. This class overrides some of the standard `TField` (325) methods to handle widestring data, and introduces some properties that are only pertinent for data fields of widestring type. It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TWideStringField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each widestring field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TField` (325), `TStringField` (403), `TDataset` (277)

10.56.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
408	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of the <code>TWideStringField</code> class.
409	<code>SetFieldType</code>	Set the field type

10.56.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
409	<code>Value</code>	rw	Value of the field as a widestring

10.56.4 TWideStringField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TWideStringField` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(aOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` is used to create a new instance of the `TWideStringField` class. It initializes some `TField` (325) properties after having called the inherited constructor.

10.56.5 TWideStringField.SetFieldType

Synopsis: Set the field type

Declaration: `procedure SetFieldType(AValue: TFieldType); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `SetFieldType` is overridden in `TWideStringField` (408) to check the data type more accurately (`ftWideString` and `ftFixedWideChar`). No extra functionality is added.

See also: `TField.DataType` (337)

10.56.6 TWideStringField.Value

Synopsis: Value of the field as a widestring

Declaration: `Property Value : WideString`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Value` is overridden by the `TWideStringField` to return a `WideString` value. It is the same value as the `TField.AsWideString` (334) property.

See also: `TField.AsWideString` (334), `TField.Value` (341)

10.57 TWordField

10.57.1 Description

`TWordField` is the class created when a dataset must manage 16-bit unsigned integer data, of datatype `ftWord`. It exposes no new properties, but simply overrides some methods to manage 16-bit unsigned integer data.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TWordField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each word field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TField` (325), `TNumericField` (383), `TLongintField` (374), `TSmallIntField` (402)

10.57.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
409	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of the <code>TWordField</code> class.

10.57.3 TWordField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TWordField` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TWordField` (409) class. It calls the inherited constructor and then simply sets some of the `TField` (325) properties to work with 16-bit unsigned integer data.

See also: `TField` (325)

Chapter 11

Reference for unit 'dbugintf'

11.1 Overview

Use `dbugintf` to add debug messages to your application. The messages are not sent to standard output, but are sent to a debug server process which collects messages from various clients and displays them somehow on screen.

The unit is transparent in its use: it does not need initialization, it will start the debug server by itself if it can find it: the program should be called `debugserver` and should be in the `PATH`. When the first debug message is sent, the unit will initialize itself.

The FCL contains a sample debug server (`dbugsvr`) which can be started in advance, and which writes debug message to the console (both on Windows and Linux). The Lazarus project contains a visual application which displays the messages in a GUI.

The `dbugintf` unit relies on the SimpleIPC (410) mechanism to communicate with the debug server, hence it works on all platforms that have a functional version of that unit. It also uses `TProcess` to start the debug server if needed, so the process (410) unit should also be functional.

11.2 Writing a debug server

Writing a debug server is relatively easy. It should instantiate a `TSimpleIPCServer` class from the SimpleIPC (410) unit, and use the `DebugServerID` as `ServerID` identification. This constant, as well as the record containing the message which is sent between client and server is defined in the `msgintf` unit.

The `dbugintf` unit relies on the SimpleIPC (410) mechanism to communicate with the debug server, hence it works on all platforms that have a functional version of that unit. It also uses `TProcess` to start the debug server if needed, so the process (410) unit should also be functional.

11.3 Constants, types and variables

11.3.1 Resource strings

```
SEntering = '> Entering '
```

String used when sending method enter message.

```
SExiting = '< Exiting '
```

String used when sending method exit message.

`SProcessID = 'Process %s'`

String used when sending identification message to the server.

`SSeparator = '>-----<'`

String used when sending a separator line.

`SServerStartFailed = 'Failed to start debugserver. (%s)'`

String used to display an error message when the start of the debug server failed

11.3.2 Constants

`SendError : string = ''`

Whenever a call encounters an exception, the exception message is stored in this variable.

11.3.3 Types

`TDebugLevel = (dlInformation, dlWarning, dlError)`

Table 11.1: Enumeration values for type TDebugLevel

Value	Explanation
<code>dlError</code>	Error message
<code>dlInformation</code>	Informational message
<code>dlWarning</code>	Warning message

`TDebugLevel` indicates the severity level of the debug message to be sent. By default, an informational message is sent.

11.4 Procedures and functions

11.4.1 GetDebuggingEnabled

Synopsis: Check if sending of debug messages is enabled.

Declaration: `function GetDebuggingEnabled : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetDebuggingEnabled` returns the value set by the last call to `SetDebuggingEnabled`. It is `True` by default.

See also: `SetDebuggingEnabled` ([415](#)), `SendDebug` ([412](#))

11.4.2 InitDebugClient

Synopsis: Initialize the debug client.

Declaration: `function InitDebugClient : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `InitDebugClient` starts the debug server and then performs all necessary initialization of the debug IPC communication channel.

Normally this function should not be called. The `SendDebug` (412) call will initialize the debug client when it is first called.

Errors: None.

See also: `SendDebug` (412), `StartDebugServer` (415)

11.4.3 SendBoolean

Synopsis: Send the value of a boolean variable

Declaration: `procedure SendBoolean(const Identifier: string;const Value: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SendBoolean` is a simple wrapper around `SendDebug` (412) which sends the name and value of a boolean value as an informational message.

Errors: None.

See also: `SendDebug` (412), `SendDateTime` (412), `SendInteger` (414), `SendPointer` (415)

11.4.4 SendDateTime

Synopsis: Send the value of a `TDateTime` variable.

Declaration: `procedure SendDateTime(const Identifier: string;const Value: TDateTime)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SendDateTime` is a simple wrapper around `SendDebug` (412) which sends the name and value of an integer value as an informational message. The value is converted to a string using the `DateTimeToStr` (??) call.

Errors: None.

See also: `SendDebug` (412), `SendBoolean` (412), `SendInteger` (414), `SendPointer` (415)

11.4.5 SendDebug

Synopsis: Send a message to the debug server.

Declaration: `procedure SendDebug(const Msg: string)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SendDebug` sends the message `Msg` to the debug server as an informational message (debug level `dlInformation`). If no debug server is running, then an attempt will be made to start the server first.

The binary that is started is called `debugserver` and should be somewhere on the `PATH`. A sample binary which writes received messages to standard output is included in the FCL, it is called `dbugsrv`. This binary can be renamed to `debugserver` or can be started before the program is started.

Errors: Errors are silently ignored, any exception messages are stored in `SendError` (411).

See also: `SendDebugEx` (413), `SendDebugFmt` (413), `SendDebugFmtEx` (413)

11.4.6 SendDebugEx

Synopsis: Send debug message other than informational messages

Declaration: `procedure SendDebugEx(const Msg: string; MType: TDebugLevel)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SendDebugEx` allows to specify the debug level of the message to be sent in `MType`. By default, `SendDebug` (412) uses informational messages.

Other than that the function of `SendDebugEx` is equal to that of `SendDebug`

Errors: None.

See also: `SendDebug` (412), `SendDebugFmt` (413), `SendDebugFmtEx` (413)

11.4.7 SendDebugFmt

Synopsis: Format and send a debug message

Declaration: `procedure SendDebugFmt(const Msg: string; const Args: Array of const)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SendDebugFmt` is a utility routine which formats a message by passing `Msg` and `Args` to `Format` (??) and sends the result to the debug server using `SendDebug` (412). It exists mainly to avoid the `Format` call in calling code.

Errors: None.

See also: `SendDebug` (412), `SendDebugEx` (413), `SendDebugFmtEx` (413), `#rtl.sysutils.format` (??)

11.4.8 SendDebugFmtEx

Synopsis: Format and send message with alternate type

Declaration: `procedure SendDebugFmtEx(const Msg: string; const Args: Array of const; MType: TDebugLevel)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SendDebugFmtEx` is a utility routine which formats a message by passing `Msg` and `Args` to `Format` (??) and sends the result to the debug server using `SendDebugEx` (413) with Debug level `MType`. It exists mainly to avoid the `Format` call in calling code.

Errors: None.

See also: `SendDebug` (412), `SendDebugEx` (413), `SendDebugFmt` (413), `#rtl.sysutils.format` (??)

11.4.9 SendInteger

Synopsis: Send the value of an integer variable.

Declaration: `procedure SendInteger(const Identifier: string; const Value: Integer;
HexNotation: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SendInteger` is a simple wrapper around `SendDebug` (412) which sends the name and value of an integer value as an informational message. If `HexNotation` is `True`, then the value will be displayed using hexadecimal notation.

Errors: None.

See also: `SendDebug` (412), `SendBoolean` (412), `SendDateTime` (412), `SendPointer` (415)

11.4.10 SendMethodEnter

Synopsis: Send method enter message

Declaration: `procedure SendMethodEnter(const MethodName: string)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SendMethodEnter` sends a "Entering `MethodName`" message to the debug server. After that it increases the message indentation (currently 2 characters). By sending a corresponding `SendMethodExit` (414), the indentation of messages can be decreased again.

By using the `SendMethodEnter` and `SendMethodExit` methods at the beginning and end of a procedure/method, it is possible to visually trace program execution.

Errors: None.

See also: `SendDebug` (412), `SendMethodExit` (414), `SendSeparator` (415)

11.4.11 SendMethodExit

Synopsis: Send method exit message

Declaration: `procedure SendMethodExit(const MethodName: string)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SendMethodExit` sends a "Exiting `MethodName`" message to the debug server. After that it decreases the message indentation (currently 2 characters). By sending a corresponding `SendMethodEnter` (414), the indentation of messages can be increased again.

By using the `SendMethodEnter` and `SendMethodExit` methods at the beginning and end of a procedure/method, it is possible to visually trace program execution.

Note that the indentation level will not be made negative.

Errors: None.

See also: `SendDebug` (412), `SendMethodEnter` (414), `SendSeparator` (415)

11.4.12 SendPointer

Synopsis: Send the value of a pointer variable.

Declaration: `procedure SendPointer(const Identifier: string; const Value: Pointer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SendInteger` is a simple wrapper around `SendDebug` (412) which sends the name and value of a pointer value as an informational message. The pointer value is displayed using hexadecimal notation.

Errors: None.

See also: `SendDebug` (412), `SendBoolean` (412), `SendDateTime` (412), `SendInteger` (414)

11.4.13 SendSeparator

Synopsis: Send a separator message

Declaration: `procedure SendSeparator`

Visibility: default

Description: `SendSeparator` is a simple wrapper around `SendDebug` (412) which sends a short horizontal line to the debug server. It can be used to visually separate execution of blocks of code or blocks of values.

Errors: None.

See also: `SendDebug` (412), `SendMethodEnter` (414), `SendMethodExit` (414)

11.4.14 SetDebuggingEnabled

Synopsis: Temporary enables or disables debugging

Declaration: `procedure SetDebuggingEnabled(const AValue: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetDebuggingEnabled` can be used to temporarily enable or disable sending of debug messages: this allows to control the amount of messages sent to the debug server without having to remove the `SendDebug` (412) statements. By default, debugging is enabled. If set to false, debug messages are simply discarded till debugging is enabled again.

A value of `True` enables sending of debug messages. A value of `False` disables sending.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetDebuggingEnabled` (411), `SendDebug` (412)

11.4.15 StartDebugServer

Synopsis: Start the debug server

Declaration: `function StartDebugServer : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `StartDebugServer` attempts to start the debug server. The process started is called `debugserver` and should be located in the `PATH`.

Normally this function should not be called. The `SendDebug` (412) call will attempt to start the server by itself if it is not yet running.

Errors: On error, `False` is returned.

See also: `SendDebug` (412), `InitDebugClient` (412)

Chapter 12

Reference for unit 'dbugmsg'

12.1 Used units

Table 12.1: Used units by unit 'dbugmsg'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??

12.2 Overview

`dbugmsg` is an auxiliary unit used in the `dbugintf` (410) unit. It defines the message protocol used between the debug unit and the debug server.

12.3 Constants, types and variables

12.3.1 Constants

```
DebugServerID : string = 'fpcdebugserver'
```

`DebugServerID` is a string which is used when creating the message protocol, it is used when identifying the server in the (platform dependent) client-server protocol.

```
lctError = 2
```

`lctError` is the identification of error messages.

```
lctIdentify = 3
```

`lctIdentify` is sent by the client to a server when it first connects. It's the first message, and contains the name of client application.

```
lctInformation = 0
```

`lctInformation` is the identification of informational messages.

`lctStop = -1`

`lctStop` is sent by the client to a server when it disconnects.

`lctWarning = 1`

`lctWarning` is the identification of warning messages.

12.3.2 Types

```
TDebugMessage = record
  MsgType : Integer;
  MsgTimeStamp : TDateTime;
  Msg : string;
end
```

`TDebugMessage` is a record that describes the message passed from the client to the server. It should not be passed directly in shared memory, as the string containing the message is allocated on the heap. Instead, the `WriteDebugMessageToStream` (419) and `ReadDebugMessageFromStream` (418) can be used to read or write the message from/to a stream.

12.4 Procedures and functions

12.4.1 DebugMessageName

Synopsis: Return the name of the debug message

Declaration: `function DebugMessageName(msgType: Integer) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `DebugMessageName` returns the name of the message type. It can be used to examine the `MsgType` field of a `TDebugMessage` (418) record, and if `msgType` contains a known type, it returns a string describing this type.

Errors: If `MsgType` contains an unknown type, 'Unknown' is returned.

12.4.2 ReadDebugMessageFromStream

Synopsis: Read a message from stream

Declaration: `procedure ReadDebugMessageFromStream(AStream: TStream;
var Msg: TDebugMessage)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReadDebugMessageFromStream` reads a `TDebugMessage` (418) record (`Msg`) from the stream `AStream`.

The record is not read in a byte-ordering safe way, i.e. it cannot be exchanged between little- and big-endian systems.

Errors: If the stream contains not enough bytes or is malformed, then an exception may be raised.

See also: `TDebugMessage` (418), `WriteDebugMessageToStream` (419)

12.4.3 WriteDebugMessageToStream

Synopsis: Write a message to stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteDebugMessageToStream(AStream: TStream;
const Msg: TDebugMessage)`

Visibility: default

Description: `WriteDebugMessageFromStream` writes a `TDebugMessage` (418) record (Msg) to the stream `AStream`.

The record is not written in a byte-ordering safe way, i.e. it cannot be exchanged between little- and big-endian systems.

Errors: A stream write error may occur if the stream cannot be written to.

See also: `TDebugMessage` (418), `ReadDebugMessageFromStream` (418)

Chapter 13

Reference for unit 'eventlog'

13.1 Used units

Table 13.1: Used units by unit 'eventlog'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

13.2 Overview

The EventLog unit implements the TEventLog ([422](#)) component, which is a component that can be used to send log messages to the system log (if it is available) or to a file.

13.3 Constants, types and variables

13.3.1 Resource strings

SErrLogFailedMsg = 'Failed to log entry (Error: %s)'

Message used to format an error when an error exception is raised.

SLogCustom = 'Custom (%d)'

Custom message formatting string

SLogDebug = 'Debug'

Debug message name

SLogError = 'Error'

Error message name

SLogInfo = 'Info'

Informational message name

SLogWarning = 'Warning'

Warning message name

13.3.2 Types

TLogCategoryEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject;var Code: Word) of object

TLogCategoryEvent is the event type for the TEventLog.OnGetCustomCategory (429) event handler. It should return a OS event category code for the etCustom log event type in the Code parameter.

TLogCodeEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject;var Code: DWord) of object

TLogCodeEvent is the event type for the OnGetCustomEvent (429) and OnGetCustomEventID (429) event handlers. It should return a OS system log code for the etCustom log event or event ID type in the Code parameter.

TLogType = (ltSystem,ltFile)

Table 13.2: Enumeration values for type TLogType

Value	Explanation
ltFile	Write to file
ltSystem	Use the system log

TLogType determines where the log messages are written. It is the type of the TEventLog.LogType (426) property. It can have 2 values:

ltFile This is used to write all messages to file. if no system logging mechanism exists, this is used as a fallback mechanism.

ltSystem This is used to send all messages to the system log mechanism. Which log mechanism this is, depends on the operating system.

13.4 ELogError

13.4.1 Description

ELogError is the exception used in the TEventLog (422) component to indicate errors.

See also: TEventLog (422)

13.5 TEventLog

13.5.1 Description

TEventLog is a component which can be used to send messages to the system log. In case no system log exists (such as on Windows 95/98 or DOS), the messages are written to a file. Messages can be logged using the general Log (424) call, or the specialized Warning (425), Error (425), Info (425) or Debug (425) calls, which have the event type predefined.

See also: Log (424), Warning (425), Error (425), Info (425), Debug (425)

13.5.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
425	Debug	Log a debug message
422	Destroy	Clean up TEventLog instance
425	Error	Log an error message to
423	EventTypeToString	Create a string representation of an event type
425	Info	Log an informational message
424	Log	Log a message to the system log.
424	Pause	
423	RegisterMessageFile	Register message file
424	Resume	
424	UnRegisterMessageFile	Unregister the message file (needed on windows only)
425	Warning	Log a warning message.

13.5.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
426	Active	rw	Activate the log mechanism
426	AppendContent	rw	Control whether output is appended to an existing file
428	CustomLogType	rw	Custom log type ID
427	DefaultEventType	rw	Default event type for the Log (424) call.
428	EventIDOffset	rw	Offset for event ID messages identifiers
427	FileName	rw	File name for log file
426	Identification	rw	Identification string for messages
426	LogType	rw	Log type
429	OnGetCustomCategory	rw	Event to retrieve custom message category
429	OnGetCustomEvent	rw	Event to retrieve custom event Code
429	OnGetCustomEventID	rw	Event to retrieve custom event ID
429	Paused	rw	
427	RaiseExceptionOnError	rw	Determines whether logging errors are reported or ignored
428	TimeStampFormat	rw	Format for the timestamp string

13.5.4 TEventLog.Destroy

Synopsis: Clean up TEventLog instance

Declaration: destructor Destroy; Override

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the `TEventLog` instance. It cleans any log structures that might have been set up to perform logging, by setting the `Active` (426) property to `False`.

See also: `Active` (426)

13.5.5 TEventLog.EventTypeToString

Synopsis: Create a string representation of an event type

Declaration: `function EventTypeToString(E: TEventType) : string`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `EventTypeToString` converts the event type `E` to a suitable string representation for logging purposes. It's mainly used when writing messages to file, as the system log usually has it's own mechanisms for displaying the various event types.

See also: `#rtl.sysutils.TEventType` (??)

13.5.6 TEventLog.RegisterMessageFile

Synopsis: Register message file

Declaration: `function RegisterMessageFile(AFileName: string) : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `RegisterMessageFile` is used on Windows to register the file `AFileName` containing the formatting strings for the system messages. This should be a file containing resource strings. If `AFileName` is empty, the filename of the application binary is substituted.

When a message is logged to the windows system log, Windows looks for a formatting string in the file registered with this call.

There are 2 kinds of formatting strings:

Category strings these should be numbered from 1 to 4

1Should contain the description of the `etInfo` event type.

2Should contain the description of the `etWarning` event type.

4Should contain the description of the `etError` event type.

4Should contain the description of the `etDebug` event type.

None of these strings should have a string substitution placeholder.

The second type of strings are the **message definitions**. Their number starts at `EventIDOffset` (428) (default is 1000) and each string should have 1 placeholder.

Free Pascal comes with a `fclel.res` resource file which contains default values for the 8 strings, in english. It can be linked in the application binary with the statement

```
{ $R fclel.res }
```

This file is generated from the `fclel.mc` and `fclel.rc` files that are distributed with the Free Pascal sources.

If the strings are not registered, windows will still display the event messages, but they will not be formatted nicely.

Note that while any messages logged with the event logger are displayed in the event viewern Windows locks the file registered here. This usually means that the binary is locked.

On non-windows operating systems, this call is ignored.

Errors: If `AFileName` is invalid, false is returned.

13.5.7 TEventLog.UnRegisterMessageFile

Synopsis: Unregister the message file (needed on windows only)

Declaration: `function UnRegisterMessageFile : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `UnRegisterMessageFile` can be used to unregister a message file previously registered with `TEventLog.RegisterMessageFile` (423). This function is usable only on windows, it has no effect on other platforms. Note that windows locks the registered message file while viewing messages, so unregistering helps to avoid file locks while event viewer is open.

See also: `TEventLog.RegisterMessageFile` (423)

13.5.8 TEventLog.Pause

Declaration: `procedure Pause`

Visibility: public

13.5.9 TEventLog.Resume

Declaration: `procedure Resume`

Visibility: public

13.5.10 TEventLog.Log

Synopsis: Log a message to the system log.

Declaration: `procedure Log(EventType: TEventType; const Msg: string); Overload`
`procedure Log(EventType: TEventType; const Fmt: string;`
`Args: Array of const); Overload`
`procedure Log(const Msg: string); Overload`
`procedure Log(const Fmt: string; Args: Array of const); Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `Log` sends a log message to the system log. The message is either the parameter `Msg` as is, or is formatted from the `Fmt` and `Args` parameters. If `EventType` is specified, then it is used as the message event type. If `EventType` is omitted, then the event type is determined from `Default-EventType` (427).

If `EventType` is `etCustom`, then the `OnGetCustomEvent` (429), `OnGetCustomEventID` (429) and `OnGetCustomCategory` (429).

The other logging calls: `Info` (425), `Warning` (425), `Error` (425) and `Debug` (425) use the `Log` call to do the actual work.

See also: `Info` (425), `Warning` (425), `Error` (425), `Debug` (425), `OnGetCustomEvent` (429), `OnGetCustomEventID` (429), `OnGetCustomCategory` (429)

13.5.11 TEventLog.Warning

Synopsis: Log a warning message.

Declaration: `procedure Warning(const Msg: string); Overload`
`procedure Warning(const Fmt: string; Args: Array of const); Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `Warning` is a utility function which logs a message with the `etWarning` type. The message is either the parameter `Msg` as is, or is formatted from the `Fmt` and `Args` parameters.

See also: Log ([424](#)), Info ([425](#)), Error ([425](#)), Debug ([425](#))

13.5.12 TEventLog.Error

Synopsis: Log an error message to

Declaration: `procedure Error(const Msg: string); Overload`
`procedure Error(const Fmt: string; Args: Array of const); Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `Error` is a utility function which logs a message with the `etError` type. The message is either the parameter `Msg` as is, or is formatted from the `Fmt` and `Args` parameters.

See also: Log ([424](#)), Info ([425](#)), Warning ([425](#)), Debug ([425](#))

13.5.13 TEventLog.Debug

Synopsis: Log a debug message

Declaration: `procedure Debug(const Msg: string); Overload`
`procedure Debug(const Fmt: string; Args: Array of const); Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `Debug` is a utility function which logs a message with the `etDebug` type. The message is either the parameter `Msg` as is, or is formatted from the `Fmt` and `Args` parameters.

See also: Log ([424](#)), Info ([425](#)), Warning ([425](#)), Error ([425](#))

13.5.14 TEventLog.Info

Synopsis: Log an informational message

Declaration: `procedure Info(const Msg: string); Overload`
`procedure Info(const Fmt: string; Args: Array of const); Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `Info` is a utility function which logs a message with the `etInfo` type. The message is either the parameter `Msg` as is, or is formatted from the `Fmt` and `Args` parameters.

See also: Log ([424](#)), Warning ([425](#)), Error ([425](#)), Debug ([425](#))

13.5.15 TEventLog.AppendContent

Synopsis: Control whether output is appended to an existing file

Declaration: `Property AppendContent : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AppendContent` determines what is done when the log type is `ltFile` and a log file already exists. If the log file already exists, then the default behaviour (`AppendContent=False`) is to re-create the log file when the log is activated. If `AppendContent` is `True` then output will be appended to the existing file.

See also: `LogType` ([426](#)), `FileName` ([427](#))

13.5.16 TEventLog.Identification

Synopsis: Identification string for messages

Declaration: `Property Identification : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Identification` is used as a string identifying the source of the messages in the system log. If it is empty, the filename part of the application binary is used.

See also: `Active` ([426](#)), `TimeStampFormat` ([428](#))

13.5.17 TEventLog.LogType

Synopsis: Log type

Declaration: `Property LogType : TLogType`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `LogType` is the type of the log: if it is `ltSystem`, then the system log is used, if it is available. If it is `ltFile` or there is no system log available, then the log messages are written to a file. The name for the log file is taken from the `FileName` ([427](#)) property.

See also: `FileName` ([427](#))

13.5.18 TEventLog.Active

Synopsis: Activate the log mechanism

Declaration: `Property Active : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Active` determines whether the log mechanism is active: if set to `True`, the component connects to the system log mechanism, or opens the log file if needed. Any attempt to log a message while the log is not active will try to set this property to `True`. Disconnecting from the system log or closing the log file is done by setting the `Active` property to `False`.

If the connection to the system logger fails, or the log file cannot be opened, then setting this property may result in an exception.

See also: [Log \(424\)](#)

13.5.19 TEventLog.RaiseExceptionOnError

Synopsis: Determines whether logging errors are reported or ignored

Declaration: `Property RaiseExceptionOnError : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `RaiseExceptionOnError` determines whether an error during a logging operation will be signaled with an exception or not. If set to `False`, errors will be silently ignored, thus not disturbing normal operation of the program.

13.5.20 TEventLog.DefaultEventType

Synopsis: Default event type for the [Log \(424\)](#) call.

Declaration: `Property DefaultEventType : TEventType`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `DefaultEventType` is the event type used by the [Log \(424\)](#) call if it's `EventType` parameter is omitted.

See also: [Log \(424\)](#)

13.5.21 TEventLog.FileName

Synopsis: File name for log file

Declaration: `Property FileName : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `FileName` is the name of the log file used to log messages if no system logger is available or the [LogType \(426\)](#) is `ltFile`. If none is specified, then the name of the application binary is used, with the extension replaced by `.log`. The file is then located in the `/tmp` directory on unix-like systems, or in the application directory for Dos/Windows like systems.

See also: [LogType \(426\)](#)

13.5.22 TEventLog.TimestampFormat

Synopsis: Format for the timestamp string

Declaration: `Property TimestampFormat : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `TimestampFormat` is the formatting string used to create a timestamp string when writing log messages to file. It should have a format suitable for the `FormatDateTime (??)` call. If it is left empty, then `yyyy-mm-dd hh:nn:ss.zzz` is used.

See also: `TEventLog.Identification` ([426](#))

13.5.23 TEventLog.CustomLogType

Synopsis: Custom log type ID

Declaration: `Property CustomLogType : Word`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `CustomLogType` is used in the `EventTypeToString` ([423](#)) to format the custom log event type string.

See also: `EventTypeToString` ([423](#))

13.5.24 TEventLog.EventIDOffset

Synopsis: Offset for event ID messages identifiers

Declaration: `Property EventIDOffset : DWord`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `EventIDOffset` is the offset for the message formatting strings in the windows resource file. This property is ignored on other platforms.

The message strings in the file registered with the `RegisterMessageFile` ([423](#)) call are windows resource strings. They each have a unique ID, which must be communicated to windows. In the resource file distributed by Free Pascal, the resource strings are numbered from 1000 to 1004. The actual number communicated to windows is formed by adding the ordinal value of the message's eventtype to `EventIDOffset` (which is by default 1000), which means that by default, the string numbers are:

- 1000**Custom event types
- 1001**Information event type
- 1002**Warning event type
- 1003**Error event type
- 1004**Debug event type

See also: `RegisterMessageFile` ([423](#))

13.5.25 TEventLog.OnGetCustomCategory

Synopsis: Event to retrieve custom message category

Declaration: Property OnGetCustomCategory : TLogCategoryEvent

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: OnGetCustomCategory is called on the windows platform to determine the category of a custom event type. It should return an ID which will be used by windows to look up the string which describes the message category in the file containing the resource strings.

See also: OnGetCustomEventID ([429](#)), OnGetCustomEvent ([429](#))

13.5.26 TEventLog.OnGetCustomEventID

Synopsis: Event to retrieve custom event ID

Declaration: Property OnGetCustomEventID : TLogCodeEvent

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: OnGetCustomEventID is called on the windows platform to determine the category of a custom event type. It should return an ID which will be used by windows to look up the string which formats the message, in the file containing the resource strings.

See also: OnGetCustomCategory ([429](#)), OnGetCustomEvent ([429](#))

13.5.27 TEventLog.OnGetCustomEvent

Synopsis: Event to retrieve custom event Code

Declaration: Property OnGetCustomEvent : TLogCodeEvent

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: OnGetCustomEvent is called on the windows platform to determine the event code of a custom event type. It should return an ID.

See also: OnGetCustomCategory ([429](#)), OnGetCustomEventID ([429](#))

13.5.28 TEventLog.Paused

Declaration: Property Paused : Boolean

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Chapter 14

Reference for unit 'ezcgi'

14.1 Used units

Table 14.1: Used units by unit 'ezcgi'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

14.2 Overview

`ezcgi`, written by Michael Hess, provides a single class which offers simple access to the CGI environment which a CGI program operates under. It supports both GET and POST methods. It's intended for simple CGI programs which do not need full-blown CGI support. File uploads are not supported by this component.

To use the unit, a descendent of the `TEZCGI` class should be created and the `DoPost` ([433](#)) or `DoGet` ([433](#)) methods should be overridden.

14.3 Constants, types and variables

14.3.1 Constants

```
hexTable = '0123456789ABCDEF'
```

String constant used to convert a number to a hexadecimal code or back.

14.4 ECGIException

14.4.1 Description

Exception raised by `TEZcgi` ([431](#))

See also: `TEZcgi` ([431](#))

14.5 TEZcgi

14.5.1 Description

`TEZcgi` implements all functionality to analyze the CGI environment and query the variables present in it. It's main use is the exposed variables.

Programs wishing to use this class should make a descendent class of this class and override the `DoPost` ([433](#)) or `DoGet` ([433](#)) methods. To run the program, an instance of this class must be created, and it's `Run` ([432](#)) method should be invoked. This will analyze the environment and call the `DoPost` or `DoGet` method, depending on what HTTP method was used to invoke the program.

14.5.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
431	Create	Creates a new instance of the <code>TEZCGI</code> component
431	Destroy	Removes the <code>TEZCGI</code> component from memory
433	DoGet	Method to handle <code>GET</code> requests
433	DoPost	Method to handle <code>POST</code> requests
433	GetValue	Return the value of a request variable.
432	PutLine	Send a line of output to the web-client
432	Run	Run the CGI application.
432	WriteContent	Writes the content type to standard output

14.5.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
435	Email	rw	Email of the server administrator
435	Name	rw	Name of the server administrator
434	Names	r	Indexed array with available variable names.
433	Values	r	Variables passed to the CGI script
435	VariableCount	r	Number of available variables.
434	Variables	r	Indexed array with variables as name=value pairs.

14.5.4 TEZcgi.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new instance of the `TEZCGI` component

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes the CGI program's environment: it reads the environment variables passed to the CGI program and stores them in the `Variable` ([434](#)) property.

See also: `Variables` ([434](#)), `Names` ([434](#)), `Values` ([433](#))

14.5.5 TEZcgi.Destroy

Synopsis: Removes the `TEZCGI` component from memory

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` removes all variables from memory and then calls the inherited `destroy`, removing the `TEZCGI` instance from memory.

`Destroy` should never be called directly. Instead `Free` should be used, or `FreeAndNil`

See also: `Create` ([431](#))

14.5.6 TEZcgi.Run

Synopsis: Run the CGI application.

Declaration: `procedure Run`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Run` analyses the variables passed to the application, processes the request variables (it stores them in the `Variables` ([434](#)) property) and calls the `DoPost` ([433](#)) or `DoGet` ([433](#)) methods, depending on the method passed to the web server.

After creating the instance of `TEZCGI`, the `Run` method is the only method that should be called when using this component.

See also: `Variables` ([434](#)), `DoPost` ([433](#)), `DoGet` ([433](#))

14.5.7 TEZcgi.WriteContent

Synopsis: Writes the content type to standard output

Declaration: `procedure WriteContent(cType: string)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `WriteContent` writes the content type `cType` to standard output, followed by an empty line. After this method was called, no more HTTP headers may be written to standard output. Any HTTP headers should be written before `WriteContent` is called. It should be called from the `DoPost` ([433](#)) or `DoGet` ([433](#)) methods.

See also: `DoPost` ([433](#)), `DoGet` ([433](#)), `PutLine` ([432](#))

14.5.8 TEZcgi.PutLine

Synopsis: Send a line of output to the web-client

Declaration: `procedure PutLine(sOut: string)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `PutLine` writes a line of text (`sOut`) to the web client (currently, to standard output). It should be called only after `WriteContent` ([432](#)) was called with a content type of `text`. The sent text is not processed in any way, i.e. no HTML entities or so are inserted instead of special HTML characters. This should be done by the user.

Errors: No check is performed whether the content type is right.

See also: `WriteContent` ([432](#))

14.5.9 TEZcgi.GetValue

Synopsis: Return the value of a request variable.

Declaration: `function GetValue(Index: string; defaultValue: string) : string`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetValue` returns the value of the variable named `Index`, and returns `DefaultValue` if it is empty or does not exist.

See also: [Values \(433\)](#)

14.5.10 TEZcgi.DoPost

Synopsis: Method to handle POST requests

Declaration: `procedure DoPost; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `DoPost` is called by the [Run \(432\)](#) method the POST method was used to invoke the CGI application. It should be overridden in descendents of `TEZcgi` to actually handle the request.

See also: [Run \(432\)](#), [DoGet \(433\)](#)

14.5.11 TEZcgi.DoGet

Synopsis: Method to handle GET requests

Declaration: `procedure DoGet; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `DoGet` is called by the [Run \(432\)](#) method the GET method was used to invoke the CGI application. It should be overridden in descendents of `TEZcgi` to actually handle the request.

See also: [Run \(432\)](#), [DoPost \(433\)](#)

14.5.12 TEZcgi.Values

Synopsis: Variables passed to the CGI script

Declaration: `Property Values[Index: string]: string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Values` is a name-based array of variables that were passed to the script by the web server or the HTTP request. The `Index` variable is the name of the variable whose value should be retrieved. The following standard values are available:

AUTH_TYPEAuthorization type

CONTENT_LENGTHContent length

CONTENT_TYPEContent type

GATEWAY_INTERFACEUsed gateway interface
PATH_INFORequested URL
PATH_TRANSLATEDTransformed URL
QUERY_STRINGClient query string
REMOTE_ADDRAddress of remote client
REMOTE_HOSTDNS name of remote client
REMOTE_IDENTRemote identity.
REMOTE_USERRemote user
REQUEST_METHODRequest methods (POST or GET)
SCRIPT_NAMEScript name
SERVER_NAMEServer host name
SERVER_PORTServer port
SERVER_PROTOCOLServer protocol
SERVER_SOFTWAREWeb server software
HTTP_ACCEPTAccepted responses
HTTP_ACCEPT_CHARSETAccepted character sets
HTTP_ACCEPT_ENCODINGAccepted encodings
HTTP_IF_MODIFIED_SINCEProxy information
HTTP_REFERERReferring page
HTTP_USER_AGENTClient software name

Other than the standard list, any variables that were passed by the web-client request, are also available. Note that the variables are case insensitive.

See also: [TEZCGI.Variables \(434\)](#), [TEZCGI.Names \(434\)](#), [TEZCGI.GetValue \(433\)](#), [TEZcgi.VariableCount \(435\)](#)

14.5.13 TEZcgi.Names

Synopsis: Indexed array with available variable names.

Declaration: `Property Names[Index: Integer]: string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Names` provides indexed access to the available variable names. The `Index` may run from 0 to `VariableCount` ([435](#)). Any other value will result in an exception being raised.

See also: [TEZcgi.Variables \(434\)](#), [TEZcgi.Values \(433\)](#), [TEZcgi.GetValue \(433\)](#), [TEZcgi.VariableCount \(435\)](#)

14.5.14 TEZcgi.Variables

Synopsis: Indexed array with variables as name=value pairs.

Declaration: `Property Variables[Index: Integer]: string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Variables` provides indexed access to the available variable names and values. The variables are returned as `Name=Value` pairs. The `Index` may run from 0 to `VariableCount` (435). Any other value will result in an exception being raised.

See also: `TEZcgi.Names` (434), `TEZcgi.Values` (433), `TEZcgi.GetValue` (433), `TEZcgi.VariableCount` (435)

14.5.15 `TEZcgi.VariableCount`

Synopsis: Number of available variables.

Declaration: `Property VariableCount : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `TEZcgi.VariableCount` returns the number of available CGI variables. This includes both the standard CGI environment variables and the request variables. The actual names and values can be retrieved with the `Names` (434) and `Variables` (434) properties.

See also: `Names` (434), `Variables` (434), `TEZcgi.Values` (433), `TEZcgi.GetValue` (433)

14.5.16 `TEZcgi.Name`

Synopsis: Name of the server administrator

Declaration: `Property Name : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Name` is used when displaying an error message to the user. This should set prior to calling the `TEZcgi.Run` (432) method.

See also: `TEZcgi.Run` (432), `TEZcgi.Email` (435)

14.5.17 `TEZcgi.Email`

Synopsis: Email of the server administrator

Declaration: `Property Email : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Email` is used when displaying an error message to the user. This should set prior to calling the `TEZcgi.Run` (432) method.

See also: `TEZcgi.Run` (432), `TEZcgi.Name` (435)

Chapter 15

Reference for unit 'fpTimer'

15.1 Used units

Table 15.1: Used units by unit 'fpTimer'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??

15.2 Overview

The `fpTimer` unit implements a timer class `TFPTimer` (438) which can be used on all supported platforms. The timer class uses a driver class `TFPTimerDriver` (439) which does the actual work.

A default timer driver class is implemented on all platforms. It will work in GUI and non-gui applications, but only in the application's main thread.

An alternative driver class can be used by setting the `DefaultTimerDriverClass` (436) variable to the class pointer of the driver class. The driver class should descend from `TFPTimerDriver` (439).

15.3 Constants, types and variables

15.3.1 Types

```
TFPTimerDriverClass = Class of TFPTimerDriver
```

`TFPTimerDriverClass` is the class pointer of `TFPTimerDriver` (439) it exists mainly for the purpose of being able to set `DefaultTimerDriverClass` (436), so a custom timer driver can be used for the timer instances.

15.3.2 Variables

```
DefaultTimerDriverClass : TFPTimerDriverClass = Nil
```

`DefaultTimerDriverClass` contains the `TFPTimerDriver` (439) class pointer that should be used when a new instance of `TFPCustomTimer` (437) is created. It is by default set to the system timer class.

Setting this class pointer to another descendent of `TFPTimerDriver` allows to customize the default timer implementation used in the entire application.

15.4 TFPCustomTimer

15.4.1 Description

`TFPCustomTimer` is the timer class containing the timer's implementation. It relies on an extra driver instance (of type `TFPTimerDriver` (439)) to do the actual work.

`TFPCustomTimer` publishes no events or properties, so it is unsuitable for handling in an IDE. The `TFPTimer` (438) descendent class publishes all needed events of `TFPCustomTimer`.

See also: `TFPTimerDriver` (439), `TFPTimer` (438)

15.4.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
437	Create	Create a new timer
437	Destroy	Release a timer instance from memory
438	StartTimer	Start the timer
438	StopTimer	Stop the timer

15.4.3 TFPCustomTimer.Create

Synopsis: Create a new timer

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` instantiates a new `TFPCustomTimer` instance. It creates the timer driver instance from the `DefaultTimerDriverClass` class pointer.

See also: `TFPCustomTimer.Destroy` (437)

15.4.4 TFPCustomTimer.Destroy

Synopsis: Release a timer instance from memory

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` releases the timer driver component from memory, and then calls `Inherited` to clean the `TFPCustomTimer` instance from memory.

See also: `TFPCustomTimer.Create` (437)

15.4.5 TFPCustomTimer.StartTimer

Synopsis: Start the timer

Declaration: `procedure StartTimer; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `StartTimer` starts the timer. After a call to `StartTimer`, the timer will start producing timer ticks.

The timer stops producing ticks only when the `StopTimer` (438) event is called.

See also: `StopTimer` (438), `Enabled` (438), `OnTimer` (439)

15.4.6 TFPCustomTimer.StopTimer

Synopsis: Stop the timer

Declaration: `procedure StopTimer; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `StopTimer` stops a started timer. After a call to `StopTimer`, the timer no longer produces timer ticks.

See also: `StartTimer` (438), `Enabled` (438), `OnTimer` (439)

15.5 TFPTimer

15.5.1 Description

`TFPTimer` implements no new events or properties, but merely publishes events and properties already implemented in `TFPCustomTimer` (437): `Enabled` (438), `OnTimer` (439) and `Interval` (439).

The `TFPTimer` class is suitable for use in an IDE.

See also: `TFPCustomTimer` (437), `Enabled` (438), `OnTimer` (439), `Interval` (439)

15.5.2 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
438	<code>Enabled</code>		Start or stop the timer
439	<code>Interval</code>		Timer tick interval in milliseconds.
439	<code>OnTimer</code>		Event called on each timer tick.

15.5.3 TFPTimer.Enabled

Synopsis: Start or stop the timer

Declaration: `Property Enabled :`

Visibility: `published`

Access:

Description: `Enabled` controls whether the timer is active. Setting `Enabled` to `True` will start the timer (calling `StartTimer` (438)), setting it to `False` will stop the timer (calling `StopTimer` (438)).

See also: `StartTimer` (438), `StopTimer` (438), `OnTimer` (439), `Interval` (439)

15.5.4 TFPTimer.Interval

Synopsis: Timer tick interval in milliseconds.

Declaration: `Property Interval :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Interval` specifies the timer interval in milliseconds. Every `Interval` milliseconds, the `OnTimer` (439) event handler will be called.

Note that the milliseconds interval is a minimum interval. Under high system load, the timer tick may arrive later.

See also: `OnTimer` (439), `Enabled` (438)

15.5.5 TFPTimer.OnTimer

Synopsis: Event called on each timer tick.

Declaration: `Property OnTimer :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `OnTimer` is called on each timer tick. The event handler must be assigned to a method that will do the actual work that should occur when the timer fires.

See also: `Interval` (439), `Enabled` (438)

15.6 TFPTimerDriver

15.6.1 Description

`TFPTimerDriver` is the abstract timer driver class: it simply provides an interface for the `TFP-CustomTimer` (437) class to use.

The `fpTimer` unit implements a descendent of this class which implements the default timer mechanism.

See also: `TFPCustomTimer` (437), `DefaultTimerDriverClass` (436)

15.6.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
440	Create	Create new driver instance
440	StartTimer	Start the timer
440	StopTimer	Stop the timer

15.6.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
440	Timer	r	Timer tick

15.6.4 TFPTimerDriver.Create

Synopsis: Create new driver instance

Declaration: `constructor Create(ATimer: TFPCustomTimer); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` should be overridden by descendents of `TFPTimerDriver` to do additional initialization of the timer driver. `Create` just stores (in `Timer` (440)) a reference to the `ATimer` instance which created the driver instance.

See also: `Timer` (440), `TFPTimer` (438)

15.6.5 TFPTimerDriver.StartTimer

Synopsis: Start the timer

Declaration: `procedure StartTimer; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `StartTimer` is called by `TFPCustomTimer.StartTimer` (438). It should be overridden by descendents of `TFPTimerDriver` to actually start the timer.

See also: `TFPCustomTimer.StartTimer` (438), `TFPTimerDriver.StopTimer` (440)

15.6.6 TFPTimerDriver.StopTimer

Synopsis: Stop the timer

Declaration: `procedure StopTimer; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `StopTimer` is called by `TFPCustomTimer.StopTimer` (438). It should be overridden by descendents of `TFPTimerDriver` to actually stop the timer.

See also: `TFPCustomTimer.StopTimer` (438), `TFPTimerDriver.StartTimer` (440)

15.6.7 TFPTimerDriver.Timer

Synopsis: Timer tick

Declaration: `Property Timer : TFPCustomTimer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Timer` calls the `TFPCustomTimer` (437) timer event. Descendents of `TFPTimerDriver` should call `Timer` whenever a timer tick occurs.

See also: `TFPTimer.OnTimer` (439), `TFPTimerDriver.StartTimer` (440), `TFPTimerDriver.StopTimer` (440)

Chapter 16

Reference for unit 'gettext'

16.1 Used units

Table 16.1: Used units by unit 'gettext'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

16.2 Overview

The `gettext` unit can be used to hook into the resource string mechanism of Free Pascal to provide translations of the resource strings, based on the GNU `gettext` mechanism. The unit provides a class (`TMOFile` ([443](#))) to read the `.mo` files with localizations for various languages. It also provides a couple of calls to translate all resource strings in an application based on the translations in a `.mo` file.

16.3 Constants, types and variables

16.3.1 Constants

```
MOFileHeaderMagic = $950412de
```

This constant is found as the first integer in a `.mo`

16.3.2 Types

```
PLongWordArray = ^TLongWordArray
```

Pointer to a `TLongWordArray` ([442](#)) array.

```
PMOStringTable = ^TMOStringTable
```

Pointer to a `TMOStringTable` (442) array.

```
PPCharArray = ^TPCharArray
```

Pointer to a `TPCharArray` (442) array.

```
TLongWordArray = Array[0..(1 shl 30) div SizeOf(LongWord)] of LongWord
```

`TLongWordArray` is an array used to define the `PLongWordArray` (441) pointer. A variable of type `TLongWordArray` should never be directly declared, as it would occupy too much memory. The `PLongWordArray` type can be used to allocate a dynamic number of elements.

```
TMOFileHeader = packed record
  magic : LongWord;
  revision : LongWord;
  nstrings : LongWord;
  OrigTabOffset : LongWord;
  TransTabOffset : LongWord;
  HashTabSize : LongWord;
  HashTabOffset : LongWord;
end
```

This structure describes the structure of a .mo file with string localizations.

```
TMOStringInfo = packed record
  length : LongWord;
  offset : LongWord;
end
```

This record is one element in the string tables describing the original and translated strings. It describes the position and length of the string. The location of these tables is stored in the `TMOFileHeader` (442) record at the start of the file.

```
TMOStringTable = Array[0..(1 shl 30) div SizeOf(TMOStringInfo)] of TMOStringInfo
```

`TMOStringTable` is an array type containing `TMOStringInfo` (442) records. It should never be used directly, as it would occupy too much memory.

```
TPCharArray = Array[0..(1 shl 30) div SizeOf(PChar)] of PChar
```

`TLongWordArray` is an array used to define the `PPCharArray` (442) pointer. A variable of type `TPCharArray` should never be directly declared, as it would occupy too much memory. The `PPCharArray` type can be used to allocate a dynamic number of elements.

16.4 Procedures and functions

16.4.1 GetLanguageIDs

Synopsis: Return the current language IDs

Declaration: `procedure GetLanguageIDs (var Lang: string; var FallbackLang: string)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetLanguageIDs` returns the current language IDs (an ISO string) as returned by the operating system. On windows, the `GetUserDefaultLCID` and `GetLocaleInfo` calls are used. On other operating systems, the `LC_ALL`, `LC_MESSAGES` or `LANG` environment variables are examined.

16.4.2 TranslateResourceStrings

Synopsis: Translate the resource strings of the application.

Declaration: `procedure TranslateResourceStrings (AFile: TMOFile)`
`procedure TranslateResourceStrings (const AFilename: string)`

Visibility: default

Description: `TranslateResourceStrings` translates all the resource strings in the application based on the values in the `.mo` file `AFilename` or `AFile`. The procedure creates an `TMOFile` (443) instance to read the `.mo` file if a filename is given.

Errors: If the file does not exist or is an invalid `.mo` file.

See also: `TranslateUnitResourceStrings` (443), `TMOFile` (443)

16.4.3 TranslateUnitResourceStrings

Synopsis: Translate the resource strings of a unit.

Declaration: `procedure TranslateUnitResourceStrings (const AUnitName: string;`
`AFile: TMOFile)`
`procedure TranslateUnitResourceStrings (const AUnitName: string;`
`const AFilename: string)`

Visibility: default

Description: `TranslateUnitResourceStrings` is identical in function to `TranslateResourceStrings` (443), but translates the strings of a single unit (`AUnitName`) which was used to compile the application. This can be more convenient, since the resource string files are created on a unit basis.

See also: `TranslateResourceStrings` (443), `TMOFile` (443)

16.5 EMOFileError

16.5.1 Description

`EMOFileError` is raised in case an `TMOFile` (443) instance is created with an invalid `.mo`.

See also: `TMOFile` (443)

16.6 TMOFile

16.6.1 Description

`TMOFile` is a class providing easy access to a `.mo` file. It can be used to translate any of the strings that reside in the `.mo` file. The internal structure of the `.mo` is completely hidden.

16.6.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
444	Create	Create a new instance of the <code>TMOFile</code> class.
444	Destroy	Removes the <code>TMOFile</code> instance from memory
444	Translate	Translate a string

16.6.3 TMOFile.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TMOFile` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(const AFilename: string)`
`constructor Create(AStream: TStream)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of the `MOFile` class. It opens the file `AFilename` or the stream `AStream`. If a stream is provided, it should be seekable.

The whole contents of the file is read into memory during the `Create` call. This means that the stream is no longer needed after the `Create` call.

Errors: If the named file does not exist, then an exception may be raised. If the file does not contain a valid `TMOFileHeader` ([442](#)) structure, then an `EMOFileError` ([443](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `TMOFile.Destroy` ([444](#))

16.6.4 TMOFile.Destroy

Synopsis: Removes the `TMOFile` instance from memory

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans the internal structures with the contents of the `.mo`. After this the `TMOFile` instance is removed from memory.

See also: `TMOFile.Create` ([444](#))

16.6.5 TMOFile.Translate

Synopsis: Translate a string

Declaration: `function Translate(AOrig: PChar; ALen: Integer; AHash: LongWord) : string`
`function Translate(AOrig: string; AHash: LongWord) : string`
`function Translate(AOrig: string) : string`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Translate` translates the string `AOrig`. The string should be in the `.mo` file as-is. The string can be given as a plain string, as a `PChar` (with length `ALen`). If the hash value (`AHash`) of the string is not given, it is calculated.

If the string is in the `.mo` file, the translated string is returned. If the string is not in the file, an empty string is returned.

Errors: None.

Chapter 17

Reference for unit 'IBConnection'

17.1 Used units

Table 17.1: Used units by unit 'IBConnection'

Name	Page
bufdataset	??
Classes	??
db	227
dbconst	??
ibase60dyn	??
sqldb	574
System	??
sysutils	??

17.2 Constants, types and variables

17.2.1 Constants

DEFDIALECT = 3

Default dialect that will be used when connecting to databases. See TIBConnection.Dialect ([449](#)) for more details on dialects.

MAXBLOBSEGMENTSIZE = 65535

17.2.2 Types

```
TDatabaseInfo = record
  Dialect : Integer;
  ODSMajorVersion : Integer;
  ServerVersion : string;
  ServerVersionString : string;
end
```

17.3 EIBDatabaseError

17.3.1 Description

Firebird/Interbase database error, a descendant of `db.EDatabaseError` ([445](#)).

See also: `db.EDatabaseError` ([445](#))

17.4 TIBConnection

17.4.1 Description

`TIBConnection` is a descendant of `TSQLConnection` ([445](#)) and represents a connection to a Firebird/Interbase server.

It is designed to work with Interbase 6, Firebird 1 and newer database servers.

`TIBConnection` by default requires the Firebird/Interbase client library (e.g. `gds32.dll`, `libfbclient.so`, `fbclient.dll`, `fbembed.dll`) and its dependencies to be installed on the system. The bitness between library and your application must match: e.g. use 32 bit `fbclient` when developing a 32 bit application on 64 bit Linux.

On Windows, in accordance with the regular Windows way of loading DLLs, the library can also be in the executable directory. In fact, this directory is searched first, and might be a good option for distributing software to end users as it eliminates problems with incompatible DLL versions.

`TIBConnection` is based on FPC Interbase/Firebird code (`ibase60.inc`) that tries to load the client library. If you want to use Firebird embedded, make sure the embedded library is searched/loaded first. There are several ways to do this:

- Include `ibase60` in your uses clause, set `UseEmbeddedFirebird` to `true`
- On Windows, with FPC newer than 2.5.1, put `fbembed.dll` in your application directory
- On Windows, put the `fbembed.dll` in your application directory and rename it to `fbclient.dll`

Pre 2.5.1 versions of FPC did not try to load the `fbembed` library by default. See [FPC bug 17664](#) for more details.

An indication of which DLLs need to be installed on Windows (Firebird 2.5, differs between versions:

- `fbclient.dll` (or `fbembed.dll`)
- `firebird.msg`
- `ib_util.dll`
- `icudt30.dll`
- `icuin30.dll`
- `icuuc30.dll`
- `msvcp80.dll`
- `msvcr80.dll`

Please see your database documentation for details.

See also: `TSQLConnection` ([445](#))

17.4.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
447	Create	Creates a <code>TIBConnection</code> object
447	CreateDB	Creates a database on disk
448	DropDB	Deletes a database from disk
447	GetConnectionInfo	

17.4.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
448	BlobSegmentSize	rw	Write this amount of bytes per BLOB segment
449	DatabaseName		Name of the database to connect to
449	Dialect	rws	Database dialect
449	KeepConnection		Keep open connection after first query
449	LoginPrompt		Switch for showing custom login prompt
448	ODSMajorVersion	r	
450	OnLogin		Event triggered when a login prompt needs to be shown.
450	Params		Firebird/Interbase specific parameters

17.4.4 TIBConnection.Create

Synopsis: Creates a `TIBConnection` object

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Creates a `TIBConnection` object

17.4.5 TIBConnection.GetConnectionInfo

Declaration: `function GetConnectionInfo(InfoType: TConnInfoType) : string; Override`

Visibility: `public`

17.4.6 TIBConnection.CreateDB

Synopsis: Creates a database on disk

Declaration: `procedure CreateDB; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Instructs the Interbase or Firebird database server to create a new database.

If set, the `TSQLConnection.Params` ([445](#)) (specifically, `PAGE_SIZE`) and `TSQLConnection.CharSet` ([445](#)) properties influence the database creation.

If creating a database using a client/server environment, the `TIBConnection` code will connect to the database server before trying to create the database. Therefore make sure the connection properties are already correctly set, e.g. `TSQLConnection.HostName` ([445](#)), `TSQLConnection.UserName` ([445](#)), `TSQLConnection.Password` ([445](#)).

If creating a database using Firebird embedded, make sure the embedded library is loaded, the `TSQLConnection.HostName` ([445](#)) property is empty, and set the `TSQLConnection.UserName` ([445](#)) to e.g. 'SYSDBA'. See `TIBConnection: Firebird/Interbase specific TSQLConnection` ([445](#)) for details on loading the embedded database library.

See also: `TSQLConnection.Params` (445), `TSQLConnection.DropDB` (445), `TIBConnection` (446)

17.4.7 TIBConnection.DropDB

Synopsis: Deletes a database from disk

Declaration: `procedure DropDB; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `DropDB` instructs the Interbase/Firebird database server to delete the database that is specified in the `TIBConnection` (446).

In a client/server environment, the `TIBConnection` code will connect to the database server before telling it to drop the database. Therefore make sure the connection properties are already correctly set, e.g. `TSQLConnection.HostName` (445), `TSQLConnection.UserName` (445), `TSQLConnection.Password` (445).

When using Firebird embedded, make sure the embedded connection library is loaded, the `TSQLConnection.HostName` (445) property is empty, and set the `TSQLConnection.UserName` (445) to e.g. 'SYSDBA'. See `TIBConnection: Firebird/Interbase specific TSQLConnection` (445) for more details on loading the embedded library.

See also: `TSQLConnection.CreateDB` (445), `TSQLConnection.HostName` (445), `TSQLConnection.UserName` (445), `TSQLConnection.Password` (445)

17.4.8 TIBConnection.BlobSegmentSize

Synopsis: Write this amount of bytes per BLOB segment

Declaration: `Property BlobSegmentSize : Word; deprecated;`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: **Deprecated** since FPC 2.7.1 revision 19659

When sending BLOBs to the database, the code writes them in segments.

Before FPC 2.7.1 revision 19659, these segments were 80 bytes and could be changed using `BlobSegmentSize`. Please set `BlobSegmentSize` to 65535 for better write performance.

In newer FPC versions, the `BlobSegmentSize` property is ignored and segments of 65535 bytes are always used.

17.4.9 TIBConnection.ODSMajorVersion

Declaration: `Property ODSMajorVersion : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read

17.4.10 TIBConnection.DatabaseName

Synopsis: Name of the database to connect to

Declaration: `Property DatabaseName :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: Name of the Interbase/Firebird database to connect to.

This can be either the path to the database or an alias name. Please see your database documentation for details.

In a client/server environment, the name indicates the location of the database on the server's filesystem, so if you have a Linux Firebird server, you might have something like `/var/lib/firebird/2.5/data/employee.fdb`

If using an embedded Firebird database, the name is a relative path relative to the `fbembed` library.

17.4.11 TIBConnection.Dialect

Synopsis: Database dialect

Declaration: `Property Dialect : Integer`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: Firebird/Interbase servers since Interbase 6 have a dialect setting for backwards compatibility. It can be 1, 2 or 3, the default is 3.

Note: the dialect for new Interbase/Firebird databases is 3; dialects 1 and 2 are only used in legacy environments. In practice, you can ignore this setting for newly created databases.

17.4.12 TIBConnection.KeepConnection

Synopsis: Keep open connection after first query

Declaration: `Property KeepConnection :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: Determines whether to keep the connection open once it is established and the first query has been executed.

17.4.13 TIBConnection.LoginPrompt

Synopsis: Switch for showing custom login prompt

Declaration: `Property LoginPrompt :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: If true, the `OnLogin` ([445](#)) event will fire, allowing you to handle supplying of credentials yourself.

See also: `TSQLConnection.OnLogin` ([445](#))

17.4.14 TIBConnection.Params

Synopsis: Firebird/Interbase specific parameters

Declaration: `Property Params :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Params` is a `#rtl.classes.TStringList` (??) of name=value combinations that set database-specific parameters.

The following parameter is supported:

- `PAGE_SIZE`: size of database pages (an integer), e.g. 16384.

See your database documentation for more details.

See also: `#fcl.sqlldb.TSQLConnection.Params` ([603](#))

17.4.15 TIBConnection.OnLogin

Synopsis: Event triggered when a login prompt needs to be shown.

Declaration: `Property OnLogin :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `OnLogin` is triggered when the connection needs a login prompt when connecting: it is triggered when the `LoginPrompt` ([445](#)) property is `True`, after the `BeforeConnect` ([266](#)) event, but before the connection is actually established.

See also: `#fcl.db.TCustomConnection.BeforeConnect` ([266](#)), `TSQLConnection.LoginPrompt` ([445](#)), `#fcl.db.TCustomConnection.Open` ([264](#)), `TSQLConnection.OnLogin` ([445](#))

17.5 TIBConnectionDef

17.5.1 Description

Child of `TConnectionDef` ([445](#)) used to register an Interbase/Firebird connection, so that it is available in "connection factory" scenarios where database drivers/connections are loaded at runtime and it is unknown at compile time whether the required database libraries are present on the end user's system.

See also: `TConnectionDef` ([445](#))

17.5.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
451	ConnectionClass	Firebird/Interbase child of ConnectionClass (586)
451	DefaultLibraryName	
451	Description	Description for the Firebird/Interbase child of #fcl.sqlldb.TConnectionDef.ConnectionClass (586)
452	LoadedLibraryName	
451	LoadFunction	
451	TypeName	Firebird/Interbase child of TConnectionDef.TypeName (445)
452	UnLoadFunction	

17.5.3 TIBConnectionDef.TypeName

Synopsis: Firebird/Interbase child of TConnectionDef.TypeName ([445](#))

Declaration: `class function TypeName; Override`

Visibility: default

See also: TConnectionDef.TypeName ([445](#)), TIBConnection ([446](#))

17.5.4 TIBConnectionDef.ConnectionClass

Synopsis: Firebird/Interbase child of ConnectionClass ([586](#))

Declaration: `class function ConnectionClass; Override`

Visibility: default

See also: TConnectionDef.ConnectionClass ([445](#)), TIBConnection ([446](#))

17.5.5 TIBConnectionDef.Description

Synopsis: Description for the Firebird/Interbase child of #fcl.sqlldb.TConnectionDef.ConnectionClass ([586](#))

Declaration: `class function Description; Override`

Visibility: default

Description: The description identifies this ConnectionDef object as a Firebird/Interbase connection.

See also: #fcl.sqlldb.TConnectionDef.Description ([586](#)), TIBConnection ([446](#))

17.5.6 TIBConnectionDef.DefaultLibraryName

Declaration: `class function DefaultLibraryName; Override`

Visibility: default

17.5.7 TIBConnectionDef.LoadFunction

Declaration: `class function LoadFunction; Override`

Visibility: default

17.5.8 TIBConnectionDef.UnLoadFunction

Declaration: `class function UnLoadFunction; Override`

Visibility: `default`

17.5.9 TIBConnectionDef.LoadedLibraryName

Declaration: `class function LoadedLibraryName; Override`

Visibility: `default`

17.6 TIBCursor

17.6.1 Description

A cursor that keeps track of where you are in a Firebird/Interbase dataset. It is a descendent of [TSQLCursor \(445\)](#).

See also: [TSQLCursor \(445\)](#), [TIBConnection \(446\)](#)

17.7 TIBTrans

17.7.1 Description

Firebird/Interbase database transaction object. Descendant of [TSQLHandle \(445\)](#).

See also: [TSQLHandle \(445\)](#), [TIBConnection \(446\)](#)

Chapter 18

Reference for unit 'idea'

18.1 Used units

Table 18.1: Used units by unit 'idea'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

18.2 Overview

Besides some low level IDEA encryption routines, the IDEA unit also offers 2 streams which offer on-the-fly encryption or decryption: there are 2 stream objects: A write-only encryption stream which encrypts anything that is written to it, and a decryption stream which decrypts anything that is read from it.

18.3 Constants, types and variables

18.3.1 Constants

`IDEABLOCKSIZE = 8`

IDEA block size

`IDEAKEYSIZE = 16`

IDEA Key size constant.

`KEYLEN = 6 * ROUNDS + 4`

Key length

`ROUNDS = 8`

Number of rounds to encrypt

18.3.2 Types

`IdeaCryptData = TideaCryptData`

Provided for backward functionality.

`IdeaCryptKey = TideaCryptKey`

Provided for backward functionality.

`IDEAkey = TIDEAKey`

Provided for backward functionality.

`TideaCryptData = Array[0..3] of Word`

`TideaCryptData` is an internal type, defined to hold data for encryption/decryption.

`TideaCryptKey = Array[0..7] of Word`

The actual encryption or decryption key for IDEA is 64-bit long. This type is used to hold such a key. It can be generated with the `EnKeyIDEA` (455) or `DeKeyIDEA` (454) algorithms depending on whether an encryption or decryption key is needed.

`TIDEAKey = Array[0..keylen-1] of Word`

The IDEA key should be filled by the user with some random data (say, a passphrase). This key is used to generate the actual encryption/decryption keys.

18.4 Procedures and functions

18.4.1 CipherIdea

Synopsis: Encrypt or decrypt a buffer.

Declaration: `procedure CipherIdea(Input: TideaCryptData; out outdata: TideaCryptData;
z: TIDEAKey)`

Visibility: default

Description: `CipherIdea` encrypts or decrypts a buffer with data (`Input`) using key `z`. The resulting encrypted or decrypted data is returned in `Output`.

Errors: None.

See also: `EnKeyIdea` (455), `DeKeyIdea` (454), `TIDEAEncryptStream` (457), `TIDEADecryptStream` (455)

18.4.2 DeKeyIdea

Synopsis: Create a decryption key from an encryption key.

Declaration: `procedure DeKeyIdea(z: TIDEAKey; out dk: TIDEAKey)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DeKeyIdea` creates a decryption key based on the encryption key `z`. The decryption key is returned in `dk`. Note that only a decryption key generated from the encryption key that was used to encrypt the data can be used to decrypt the data.

Errors: None.

See also: `EnKeyIdea` (455), `CipherIdea` (454)

18.4.3 EnKeyIdea

Synopsis: Create an IDEA encryption key from a user key.

Declaration: `procedure EnKeyIdea (UserKey: TIDEACryptKey; out z: TIDEAKey)`

Visibility: default

Description: `EnKeyIdea` creates an IDEA encryption key from user-supplied data in `UserKey`. The Encryption key is stored in `z`.

Errors: None.

See also: `DeKeyIdea` (454), `CipherIdea` (454)

18.5 EIDEAError

18.5.1 Description

`EIDEAError` is used to signal errors in the IDEA encryption decryption streams.

18.6 TIDEADeCryptStream

18.6.1 Description

`TIDEADeCryptStream` is a stream which decrypts anything that is read from it using the IDEA mechanism. It reads the encrypted data from a source stream and decrypts it using the `CipherIDEA` (454) algorithm. It is a read-only stream: it is not possible to write data to this stream.

When creating a `TIDEADeCryptStream` instance, an IDEA decryption key should be passed to the constructor, as well as the stream from which encrypted data should be read written.

The encrypted data can be created with a `TIDEAEncryptStream` (457) encryption stream.

See also: `TIDEAEncryptStream` (457), `TIDEAStream.Create` (459), `CipherIDEA` (454)

18.6.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
456	Create	Constructor to create a new <code>TIDEADeCryptStream</code> instance
456	Read	Reads data from the stream, decrypting it as needed
456	Seek	Set position on the stream

18.6.3 TIDEADeCryptStream.Create

Synopsis: Constructor to create a new `TIDEADeCryptStream` instance

Declaration: `constructor Create(const AKey: string; Dest: TStream); Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` creates a new `TIDEADeCryptStream` instance using the the string `AKey` to compute the encryption key (454), which is then passed on to the inherited constructor `TIDEAStream.Create` (459). It is an easy-access function which introduces no new functionality.

The string is truncated at the maximum length of the `TIdeaCryptKey` (454) structure, so it makes no sense to provide a string with length longer than this structure.

See also: `TIdeaCryptKey` (454), `TIDEAStream.Create` (459), `TIDEAEnCryptStream.Create` (457)

18.6.4 TIDEADeCryptStream.Read

Synopsis: Reads data from the stream, decrypting it as needed

Declaration: `function Read(var Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Read` attempts to read `Count` bytes from the stream, placing them in `Buffer` the bytes are read from the source stream and decrypted as they are read. (bytes are read from the source stream in blocks of 8 bytes. The function returns the number of bytes actually read.

Errors: If an error occurs when reading data from the source stream, an exception may be raised.

See also: `Write` (455), `Seek` (456), `TIDEAEncryptStream` (457)

18.6.5 TIDEADeCryptStream.Seek

Synopsis: Set position on the stream

Declaration: `function Seek(const Offset: Int64; Origin: TSeekOrigin) : Int64; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Seek` will only work on a forward seek. It emulates a forward seek by reading and discarding bytes from the input stream. The `TIDEADeCryptStream` stream tries to provide seek capabilities for the following limited number of cases:

Origin=soFromBeginning If `Offset` is larger than the current position, then the remaining bytes are skipped by reading them from the stream and discarding them.

Origin=soFromCurrent If `Offset` is zero, the current position is returned. If it is positive, then `Offset` bytes are skipped by reading them from the stream and discarding them.

Errors: An `EIDEAError` (455) exception is raised if the stream does not allow the requested seek operation.

See also: `Read` (456)

18.7 TIDEAEncryptStream

18.7.1 Description

`TIDEAEncryptStream` is a stream which encrypts anything that is written to it using the IDEA mechanism, and then writes the encrypted data to the destination stream using the `CipherIDEA` (454) algorithm. It is a write-only stream: it is not possible to read data from this stream.

When creating a `TIDEAEncryptStream` instance, an IDEA encryption key should be passed to the constructor, as well as the stream to which encrypted data should be written.

The resulting encrypted data can be read again with a `TIDEADecryptStream` (455) decryption stream.

See also: `TIDEADecryptStream` (455), `TIDEAStream.Create` (459), `CipherIDEA` (454)

18.7.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
457	Create	Constructor to create a new <code>TIDEAEncryptStream</code> instance
457	Destroy	Flush data buffers and free the stream instance.
458	Flush	Write remaining bytes from the stream
458	Seek	Set stream position
458	Write	Write bytes to the stream to be encrypted

18.7.3 TIDEAEncryptStream.Create

Synopsis: Constructor to create a new `TIDEAEncryptStream` instance

Declaration: `constructor Create(const AKey: string; Dest: TStream);` Overload

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` creates a new `TIDEAEncryptStream` instance using the the string `AKey` to compute the encryption key (454), which is then passed on to the inherited constructor `TIDEAStream.Create` (459). It is an easy-access function which introduces no new functionality.

The string is truncated at the maximum length of the `TIdeaCryptKey` (454) structure, so it makes no sense to provide a string with length longer than this structure.

See also: `TIdeaCryptKey` (454), `TIDEAStream.Create` (459), `TIDEADeCryptStream.Create` (456)

18.7.4 TIDEAEncryptStream.Destroy

Synopsis: Flush data buffers and free the stream instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy;` Override

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` flushes any data still remaining in the internal encryption buffer, and then calls the inherited `Destroy`

By default, the destination stream is not freed when the encryption stream is freed.

Errors: None.

See also: `TIDEAStream.Create` (459)

18.7.5 TIDEAEncryptStream.Write

Synopsis: Write bytes to the stream to be encrypted

Declaration: `function Write(const Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Write` writes `Count` bytes from `Buffer` to the stream, encrypting the bytes as they are written (encryption in blocks of 8 bytes).

Errors: If an error occurs writing to the destination stream, an error may occur.

See also: `Read` ([456](#))

18.7.6 TIDEAEncryptStream.Seek

Synopsis: Set stream position

Declaration: `function Seek(Offset: LongInt; Origin: Word) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Seek` return the current position if called with 0 and `soFromCurrent` as arguments. With all other values, it will always raise an exception, since it is impossible to set the position on an encryption stream.

Errors: An `EIDEAError` ([455](#)) will be raised unless called with 0 and `soFromCurrent` as arguments.

See also: `Write` ([458](#)), `EIDEAError` ([455](#))

18.7.7 TIDEAEncryptStream.Flush

Synopsis: Write remaining bytes from the stream

Declaration: `procedure Flush`

Visibility: public

Description: `Flush` writes the current encryption buffer to the stream. Encryption always happens in blocks of 8 bytes, so if the buffer is not completely filled at the end of the writing operations, it must be flushed. It should never be called directly, unless at the end of all writing operations. It is called automatically when the stream is destroyed.

Errors: None.

See also: `Write` ([458](#))

18.8 TIDEAStream

18.8.1 Description

Do not create instances of `TIDEAStream` directly. It implements no useful functionality: it serves as a common ancestor of the `TIDEAEncryptStream` ([457](#)) and `TIDEADeCryptStream` ([455](#)), and simply provides some fields that these descendent classes use when encrypting/decrypting. One of these classes should be created, depending on whether one wishes to encrypt or to decrypt.

See also: `TIDEAEncryptStream` ([457](#)), `TIDEADeCryptStream` ([455](#))

18.8.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
459	Create	Creates a new instance of the <code>TIDEAStream</code> class

18.8.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
459	Key	r	Key used when encrypting/decrypting

18.8.4 TIDEAStream.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new instance of the `TIDEAStream` class

Declaration: constructor `Create(AKey: TIDEAKey; Dest: TStream);` Overload

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` stores the encryption/decryption key and then calls the inherited `Create` to store the `Dest` stream.

Errors: None.

See also: `TIDEAEncryptStream` ([457](#)), `TIDEADeCryptStream` ([455](#))

18.8.5 TIDEAStream.Key

Synopsis: Key used when encrypting/decrypting

Declaration: Property `Key : TIDEAKey`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Key` is the key as it was passed to the constructor of the stream. It cannot be changed while data is read or written. It is the key as it is used when encrypting/decrypting.

See also: `CipherIdea` ([454](#))

Chapter 19

Reference for unit 'inicol'

19.1 Used units

Table 19.1: Used units by unit 'inicol'

Name	Page
Classes	??
IniFiles	470
System	??
sysutils	??

19.2 Overview

`inicol` contains an implementation of `TCollection` and `TCollectionItem` descendents which cooperate to read and write the collection from and to a `.ini` file. It uses the `TCustomIniFile` ([470](#)) class for this.

19.3 Constants, types and variables

19.3.1 Constants

```
KeyCount = 'Count'
```

`KeyCount` is used as a key name when reading or writing the number of items in the collection from the global section.

```
SGlobal = 'Global'
```

`SGlobal` is used as the default name of the global section when reading or writing the collection.

19.4 EIniCol

19.4.1 Description

EIniCol is used to report error conditions in the load and save methods of TIniCollection (461).

19.5 TIniCollection

19.5.1 Description

TIniCollection is a collection (??) descendent which has the capability to write itself to an .ini file. It introduces some load and save mechanisms, which can be used to write all items in the collection to disk. The items should be descendents of the type TIniCollectionItem (465).

All methods work using a TCustomIniFile class, making it possible to save to alternate file formats, or even databases.

An instance of TIniCollection should never be used directly. Instead, a descendent should be used, which sets the FPrefix and FSectionPrefix protected variables.

See also: TIniCollection.LoadFromFile (463), TIniCollection.LoadFromIni (463), TIniCollection.SaveToIni (462), TIniCollection.SaveToFile (462)

19.5.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
461	Load	Loads the collection from the default filename.
463	LoadFromFile	Load collection from file.
463	LoadFromIni	Load collection from a file in .ini file format.
462	Save	Save the collection to the default filename.
462	SaveToFile	Save collection to a file in .ini file format
462	SaveToIni	Save the collection to a TCustomIniFile descendent

19.5.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
464	FileName	rw	Filename of the collection
464	GlobalSection	rw	Name of the global section
463	Prefix	r	Prefix used in global section
464	SectionPrefix	r	Prefix string for section names

19.5.4 TIniCollection.Load

Synopsis: Loads the collection from the default filename.

Declaration: procedure Load

Visibility: public

Description: Load loads the collection from the file as specified in the FileName (464) property. It calls the LoadFromFile (463) method to do this.

Errors: If the collection was not loaded or saved to file before this call, an EIniCol exception will be raised.

See also: [TIniCollection.LoadFromFile \(463\)](#), [TIniCollection.LoadFromIni \(463\)](#), [TIniCollection.Save \(462\)](#), [FileName \(464\)](#)

19.5.5 TIniCollection.Save

Synopsis: Save the collection to the default filename.

Declaration: `procedure Save`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Save` writes the collection to the file as specified in the [FileName \(464\)](#) property, using [GlobalSection \(464\)](#) as the section. It calls the [SaveToFile \(462\)](#) method to do this.

Errors: If the collection was not loaded or saved to file before this call, an `EIniCol` exception will be raised.

See also: [TIniCollection.SaveToFile \(462\)](#), [TIniCollection.SaveToIni \(462\)](#), [TIniCollection.Load \(461\)](#), [FileName \(464\)](#)

19.5.6 TIniCollection.SaveToIni

Synopsis: Save the collection to a `TCustomIniFile` descendent

Declaration: `procedure SaveToIni(Ini: TCustomIniFile; Section: string); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `SaveToIni` does the actual writing. It writes the number of elements in the global section (as specified by the `Section` argument), as well as the section name for each item in the list. The item names are written using the [Prefix \(463\)](#) property for the key. After this it calls the [SaveToIni \(465\)](#) method of all [TIniCollectionItem \(465\)](#) instances.

This means that the global section of the .ini file will look something like this:

```
[globalsection]
Count=3
Prefix1=SectionPrefixFirstItemName
Prefix2=SectionPrefixSecondItemName
Prefix3=SectionPrefixThirdItemName
```

This construct allows to re-use an ini file for multiple collections.

After this method is called, the [GlobalSection \(464\)](#) property contains the value of `Section`, it will be used in the [Save \(465\)](#) method.

See also: [TIniCollectionItem.SaveToIni \(465\)](#)

19.5.7 TIniCollection.SaveToFile

Synopsis: Save collection to a file in .ini file format

Declaration: `procedure SaveToFile(AFileName: string; Section: string)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `SaveToFile` will create a `TMemIniFile` instance with the `AFileName` argument as a filename. This instance is passed on to the `SaveToIni` (462) method, together with the `Section` argument, to do the actual saving.

Errors: An exception may be raised if the path in `AFileName` does not exist.

See also: `TIniCollection.SaveToIni` (462), `TIniCollection.LoadFromFile` (463)

19.5.8 TIniCollection.LoadFromIni

Synopsis: Load collection from a file in .ini file format.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromIni(Ini: TCustomIniFile; Section: string); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `LoadFromIni` will load the collection from the `Ini` instance. It first clears the collection, and reads the number of items from the global section with the name as passed through the `Section` argument. After this, an item is created and added to the collection, and its data is read by calling the `TIniCollectionItem.LoadFromIni` (465) method, passing the appropriate section name as found in the global section.

The description of the global section can be found in the `TIniCollection.SaveToIni` (462) method description.

See also: `TIniCollection.LoadFromFile` (463), `TIniCollectionItem.LoadFromIni` (465), `TIniCollection.SaveToIni` (462)

19.5.9 TIniCollection.LoadFromFile

Synopsis: Load collection from file.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromFile(AFileName: string; Section: string)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `LoadFromFile` creates a `TMemIniFile` instance using `AFileName` as the filename. It calls `LoadFromIni` (463) using this instance and `Section` as the parameters.

See also: `TIniCollection.LoadFromIni` (463), `TIniCollection.Load` (461), `TIniCollection.SaveToIni` (462), `TIniCollection.SaveToFile` (462)

19.5.10 TIniCollection.Prefix

Synopsis: Prefix used in global section

Declaration: `Property Prefix : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Prefix` is used when writing the section names of the items in the collection to the global section, or when reading the names from the global section. If the prefix is set to `Item` then the global section might look something like this:


```
[MyCollection]
Count=2
Item1=FirstItem
Item2=SecondItem
```

A descendent of `TIniCollection` should set the value of this property, it cannot be empty.

See also: `TIniCollection.SectionPrefix` ([464](#)), `TIniCollection.GlobalSection` ([464](#))

19.5.11 TIniCollection.SectionPrefix

Synopsis: Prefix string for section names

Declaration: `Property SectionPrefix : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `SectionPrefix` is a string that is prepended to the section name as returned by the `TIniCollectionItem.SectionName` ([466](#)) property to return the exact section name. It can be empty.

See also: `TIniCollection.Section` ([461](#)), `TIniCollection.GlobalSection` ([464](#))

19.5.12 TIniCollection.FileName

Synopsis: Filename of the collection

Declaration: `Property FileName : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `FileName` is the filename as used in the last `LoadFromFile` ([463](#)) or `SaveToFile` ([462](#)) operation. It is used in the `Load` ([461](#)) or `Save` ([462](#)) calls.

See also: `Save` ([462](#)), `LoadFromFile` ([463](#)), `SaveToFile` ([462](#)), `Load` ([461](#))

19.5.13 TIniCollection.GlobalSection

Synopsis: Name of the global section

Declaration: `Property GlobalSection : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `GlobalSection` contains the value of the `Section` argument in the `LoadFromIni` ([463](#)) or `SaveToIni` ([462](#)) calls. It's used in the `Load` ([461](#)) or `Save` ([462](#)) calls.

See also: `Save` ([462](#)), `LoadFromFile` ([463](#)), `SaveToFile` ([462](#)), `Load` ([461](#))

19.6 TIniCollectionItem

19.6.1 Description

TIniCollectionItem is a #rtl.classes.tcollectionitem (??) descendent which has some extra methods for saving/loading the item to or from an .ini file.

To use this class, a descendent should be made, and the SaveToIni (465) and LoadFromIni (465) methods should be overridden. They should implement the actual loading and saving. The loading and saving is always initiated by the methods in TIniCollection (461), TIniCollection.LoadFromIni (463) and TIniCollection.SaveToIni (462) respectively.

See also: TIniCollection (461), TIniCollectionItem.SaveToIni (465), TIniCollectionItem.LoadFromIni (465), TIniCollection.LoadFromIni (463), TIniCollection.SaveToIni (462)

19.6.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
466	LoadFromFile	Load item from a file
465	LoadFromIni	Method called when the item must be loaded
466	SaveToFile	Save item to a file
465	SaveToIni	Method called when the item must be saved

19.6.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
466	SectionName	rw	Default section name

19.6.4 TIniCollectionItem.SaveToIni

Synopsis: Method called when the item must be saved

Declaration: `procedure SaveToIni(Ini: TCustomIniFile; Section: string); Virtual
; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: SaveToIni is called by TIniCollection.SaveToIni (462) when it saves this item. Descendent classes should override this method to save the data they need to save. All write methods of the TCustomIniFile instance passed in Ini can be used, as long as the writing happens in the section passed in Section.

Errors: No checking is done to see whether the values are actually written to the correct section.

See also: TIniCollection.SaveToIni (462), LoadFromIni (465), SaveToFile (466), LoadFromFile (466)

19.6.5 TIniCollectionItem.LoadFromIni

Synopsis: Method called when the item must be loaded

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromIni(Ini: TCustomIniFile; Section: string); Virtual
; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `LoadFromIni` is called by `TIniCollection.LoadFromIni` (463) when it saves this item. Descendent classes should override this method to load the data they need to load. All read methods of the `TCustomIniFile` instance passed in `Ini` can be used, as long as the reading happens in the section passed in `Section`.

Errors: No checking is done to see whether the values are actually read from the correct section.

See also: `TIniCollection.LoadFromIni` (463), `SaveToIni` (465), `LoadFromFile` (466), `SaveToFile` (466)

19.6.6 TIniCollectionItem.SaveToFile

Synopsis: Save item to a file

Declaration: `procedure SaveToFile(FileName: string;Section: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: `SaveToFile` creates an instance of `TIniFile` with the indicated `FileName` calls `SaveToIni` (465) to save the item to the indicated file in .ini format under the section `Section`

Errors: An exception can occur if the file is not writeable.

See also: `SaveToIni` (465), `LoadFromFile` (466)

19.6.7 TIniCollectionItem.LoadFromFile

Synopsis: Load item from a file

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromFile(FileName: string;Section: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: `LoadFromFile` creates an instance of `TMemIniFile` and calls `LoadFromIni` (465) to load the item from the indicated file in .ini format from the section `Section`.

Errors: None.

See also: `SaveToFile` (466), `LoadFromIni` (465)

19.6.8 TIniCollectionItem.SectionName

Synopsis: Default section name

Declaration: `Property SectionName : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `SectionName` is the section name under which the item will be saved or from which it should be read. The read/write functions should be overridden in descendents to determine a unique section name within the .ini file.

See also: `SaveToFile` (466), `LoadFromIni` (465)

19.7 TNamedIniCollection

19.7.1 Description

TNamedIniCollection is the collection to go with the TNamedIniCollectionItem (468) item class. it provides some functions to look for items based on the UserData (467) or based on the Name (467).

See also: TNamedIniCollectionItem (468), IndexOfUserData (467), IndexOfName (467)

19.7.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
468	FindByName	Return the item based on its name
468	FindByUserData	Return the item based on its UserData
467	IndexOfName	Search for an item, based on its name, and return its position
467	IndexOfUserData	Search for an item based on it's UserData property

19.7.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
468	NamedItems	rw	Indexed access to the TNamedIniCollectionItem items

19.7.4 TNamedIniCollection.IndexOfUserData

Synopsis: Search for an item based on it's UserData property

Declaration: `function IndexOfUserData(UserData: TObject) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: IndexOfUserData searches the list of items and returns the index of the item which has UserData in its UserData (467) property. If no such item exists, -1 is returned.

Note that the (linear) search starts at the last element and works it's way back to the first.

Errors: If no item exists, -1 is returned.

See also: IndexOfName (467), TNamedIniCollectionItem.UserData (469)

19.7.5 TNamedIniCollection.IndexOfName

Synopsis: Search for an item, based on its name, and return its position

Declaration: `function IndexOfName(const AName: string) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: IndexOfName searches the list of items and returns the index of the item which has name equal to AName (case insensitive). If no such item exists, -1 is returned.

Note that the (linear) search starts at the last element and works it's way back to the first.

Errors: If no item exists, -1 is returned.

See also: IndexOfUserData (467), TNamedIniCollectionItem.Name (469)

19.7.6 TNamedIniCollection.FindByName

Synopsis: Return the item based on its name

Declaration: `function FindByName(const AName: string) : TNamedIniCollectionItem`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindByName` returns the collection item whose name matches `AName` (case insensitive match). It calls `IndexOfName` (467) and returns the item at the found position. If no item is found, `Nil` is returned.

Errors: If no item is found, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `IndexOfName` (467), `FindByUserData` (468)

19.7.7 TNamedIniCollection.FindByUserData

Synopsis: Return the item based on its `UserData`

Declaration: `function FindByUserData(UserData: TObject) : TNamedIniCollectionItem`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindByName` returns the collection item whose `UserData` (469) property value matches the `UserData` parameter. If no item is found, `Nil` is returned.

Errors: If no item is found, `Nil` is returned.

19.7.8 TNamedIniCollection.NamedItems

Synopsis: Indexed access to the `TNamedIniCollectionItem` items

Declaration: `Property NamedItems[Index: Integer]: TNamedIniCollectionItem; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `NamedItem` is the default property of the `TNamedIniCollection` collection. It allows indexed access to the `TNamedIniCollectionItem` (468) items. The index is zero based.

See also: `TNamedIniCollectionItem` (468)

19.8 TNamedIniCollectionItem

19.8.1 Description

`TNamedIniCollectionItem` is a `TIniCollectionItem` (465) descent with a published name property. The name is used as the section name when saving the item to the ini file.

See also: `TIniCollectionItem` (465)

19.8.2 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
469	Name	rw	Name of the item
469	UserData	rw	User-defined data

19.8.3 TNamedIniCollectionItem.UserData

Synopsis: User-defined data

Declaration: `Property UserData : TObject`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `UserData` can be used to associate an arbitrary object with the item - much like the `Objects` property of a `TStrings`.

19.8.4 TNamedIniCollectionItem.Name

Synopsis: Name of the item

Declaration: `Property Name : string`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Name` is the name of this item. It is also used as the section name when writing the collection item to the `.ini` file.

See also: `TNamedIniCollectionItem.UserData` ([469](#))

Chapter 20

Reference for unit 'IniFiles'

20.1 Used units

Table 20.1: Used units by unit 'IniFiles'

Name	Page
Classes	??
contnrs	115
System	??
sysutils	??

20.2 Overview

IniFiles provides support for handling .ini files. It contains an implementation completely independent of the Windows API for handling such files. The basic (abstract) functionality is defined in TCustomIniFile ([470](#)) and is implemented in TIniFile ([481](#)) and TMemIniFile ([490](#)). The API presented by these components is Delphi compatible.

20.3 TCustomIniFile

20.3.1 Description

TCustomIniFile implements all calls for manipulating a .ini. It does not implement any of this behaviour, the behaviour must be implemented in a descendent class like TIniFile ([481](#)) or TMemIniFile ([490](#)).

Since TCustomIniFile is an abstract class, it should never be created directly. Instead, one of the TIniFile or TMemIniFile classes should be created.

See also: TIniFile ([481](#)), TMemIniFile ([490](#))

20.3.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
471	Create	Instantiate a new instance of TCustomIniFile.
478	DeleteKey	Delete a key from a section
472	Destroy	Remove the TCustomIniFile instance from memory
478	EraseSection	Clear a section
475	ReadBinaryStream	Read binary data
474	ReadBool	
474	ReadDate	Read a date value
474	ReadDateTime	Read a Date/Time value
475	ReadFloat	Read a floating point value
473	ReadInt64	
473	ReadInteger	Read an integer value from the file
477	ReadSection	Read the key names in a section
477	ReadSections	Read the list of sections
478	ReadSectionValues	Read names and values of a section
472	ReadString	Read a string valued key
475	ReadTime	Read a time value
472	SectionExists	Check if a section exists.
478	UpdateFile	Update the file on disk
479	ValueExists	Check if a value exists
477	WriteBinaryStream	Write binary data
474	WriteBool	Write boolean value
476	WriteDate	Write date value
476	WriteDateTime	Write date/time value
476	WriteFloat	Write a floating-point value
473	WriteInt64	
473	WriteInteger	Write an integer value
473	WriteString	Write a string value
477	WriteTime	Write time value

20.3.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
480	CaseSensitive	rw	Are key and section names case sensitive
479	EscapeLineFeeds	r	Should linefeeds be escaped ?
479	FileName	r	Name of the .ini file
480	StripQuotes	rw	Should quotes be stripped from string values

20.3.4 TCustomIniFile.Create

Synopsis: Instantiate a new instance of TCustomIniFile.

Declaration: constructor Create(const AFileName: string; AEscapeLineFeeds: Boolean)
; Virtual

Visibility: public

Description: Create creates a new instance of TCustomIniFile and loads it with the data from AFileName, if this file exists. If the AEscapeLineFeeds parameter is True, then lines which have their end-of-line markers escaped with a backslash, will be concatenated. This means that the following 2 lines

```
Description=This is a \
```


line with a long text

is equivalent to

Description=This is a line with a long text

By default, not escaping of linefeeds is performed (for Delphi compatibility)

Errors: If the file cannot be read, an exception may be raised.

See also: `Destroy` ([472](#))

20.3.5 TCustomIniFile.Destroy

Synopsis: Remove the `TCustomIniFile` instance from memory

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans up all internal structures and then calls the inherited `Destroy`.

See also: `TCustomIniFile` ([470](#))

20.3.6 TCustomIniFile.SectionExists

Synopsis: Check if a section exists.

Declaration: `function SectionExists(const Section: string) : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `SectionExists` returns `True` if a section with name `Section` exists, and contains keys. (comments are not considered keys)

See also: `TCustomIniFile.ValueExists` ([479](#))

20.3.7 TCustomIniFile.ReadString

Synopsis: Read a string valued key

Declaration: `function ReadString(const Section: string; const Ident: string; const Default: string) : string; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadString` reads the key `Ident` in section `Section`, and returns the value as a string. If the specified key or section do not exist, then the value in `Default` is returned. Note that if the key exists, but is empty, an empty string will be returned.

See also: `WriteString` ([473](#)), `ReadInteger` ([473](#)), `ReadBool` ([474](#)), `ReadDate` ([474](#)), `ReadDateTime` ([474](#)), `ReadTime` ([475](#)), `ReadFloat` ([475](#)), `ReadBinaryStream` ([475](#))

20.3.8 TCustomIniFile.WriteString

Synopsis: Write a string value

Declaration: `procedure WriteString(const Section: string;const Ident: string;
const Value: string); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteString` writes the string `Value` with the name `Ident` to the section `Section`, overwriting any previous value that may exist there. The section will be created if it does not exist.

See also: [ReadString \(472\)](#), [WriteInteger \(473\)](#), [WriteBool \(474\)](#), [WriteDate \(476\)](#), [WriteDateTime \(476\)](#), [WriteTime \(477\)](#), [WriteFloat \(476\)](#), [WriteBinaryStream \(477\)](#)

20.3.9 TCustomIniFile.ReadInteger

Synopsis: Read an integer value from the file

Declaration: `function ReadInteger(const Section: string;const Ident: string;
Default: LongInt) : LongInt; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadInteger` reads the key `Ident` in section `Section`, and returns the value as an integer. If the specified key or section do not exist, then the value in `Default` is returned. If the key exists, but contains an invalid integer value, `Default` is also returned.

See also: [WriteInteger \(473\)](#), [ReadString \(472\)](#), [ReadBool \(474\)](#), [ReadDate \(474\)](#), [ReadDateTime \(474\)](#), [ReadTime \(475\)](#), [ReadFloat \(475\)](#), [ReadBinaryStream \(475\)](#)

20.3.10 TCustomIniFile.WriteInteger

Synopsis: Write an integer value

Declaration: `procedure WriteInteger(const Section: string;const Ident: string;
Value: LongInt); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteInteger` writes the integer `Value` with the name `Ident` to the section `Section`, overwriting any previous value that may exist there. The section will be created if it does not exist.

See also: [ReadInteger \(473\)](#), [WriteString \(473\)](#), [WriteBool \(474\)](#), [WriteDate \(476\)](#), [WriteDateTime \(476\)](#), [WriteTime \(477\)](#), [WriteFloat \(476\)](#), [WriteBinaryStream \(477\)](#)

20.3.11 TCustomIniFile.ReadInt64

Declaration: `function ReadInt64(const Section: string;const Ident: string;
Default: Int64) : LongInt; Virtual`

Visibility: public

20.3.12 TCustomIniFile.WriteInt64

Declaration: `procedure WriteInt64(const Section: string;const Ident: string;
Value: Int64); Virtual`

Visibility: public

20.3.13 TCustomIniFile.ReadBool

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function ReadBool(const Section: string;const Ident: string;
Default: Boolean) : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadString` reads the key `Ident` in section `Section`, and returns the value as a boolean (valid values are 0 and 1). If the specified key or section do not exist, then the value in `Default` is returned. If the key exists, but contains an invalid integer value, `False` is also returned.

See also: `WriteBool` (474), `ReadInteger` (473), `ReadString` (472), `ReadDate` (474), `ReadDateTime` (474), `ReadTime` (475), `ReadFloat` (475), `ReadBinaryStream` (475)

20.3.14 TCustomIniFile.WriteBool

Synopsis: Write boolean value

Declaration: `procedure WriteBool(const Section: string;const Ident: string;
Value: Boolean); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteBool` writes the boolean `Value` with the name `Ident` to the section `Section`, overwriting any previous value that may exist there. The section will be created if it does not exist.

See also: `ReadBool` (474), `WriteInteger` (473), `WriteString` (473), `WriteDate` (476), `WriteDateTime` (476), `WriteTime` (477), `WriteFloat` (476), `WriteBinaryStream` (477)

20.3.15 TCustomIniFile.ReadDate

Synopsis: Read a date value

Declaration: `function ReadDate(const Section: string;const Ident: string;
Default: TDateTime) : TDateTime; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadDate` reads the key `Ident` in section `Section`, and returns the value as a date (`TDateTime`). If the specified key or section do not exist, then the value in `Default` is returned. If the key exists, but contains an invalid date value, `Default` is also returned. The international settings of the `SysUtils` are taken into account when deciding if the read value is a correct date.

See also: `WriteDate` (476), `ReadInteger` (473), `ReadBool` (474), `ReadString` (472), `ReadDateTime` (474), `ReadTime` (475), `ReadFloat` (475), `ReadBinaryStream` (475)

20.3.16 TCustomIniFile.ReadDateTime

Synopsis: Read a Date/Time value

Declaration: `function ReadDateTime(const Section: string;const Ident: string;
Default: TDateTime) : TDateTime; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadDateTime` reads the key `Ident` in section `Section`, and returns the value as a date/time (`TDateTime`). If the specified key or section do not exist, then the value in `Default` is returned. If the key exists, but contains an invalid date/time value, `Default` is also returned. The international settings of the `SysUtils` are taken into account when deciding if the read value is a correct date/time.

See also: `WriteDateTime` (476), `ReadInteger` (473), `ReadBool` (474), `ReadDate` (474), `ReadString` (472), `ReadTime` (475), `ReadFloat` (475), `ReadBinaryStream` (475)

20.3.17 `TCustomIniFile.ReadFloat`

Synopsis: Read a floating point value

Declaration: `function ReadFloat(const Section: string;const Ident: string; Default: Double) : Double; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadFloat` reads the key `Ident` in section `Section`, and returns the value as a float (`Double`). If the specified key or section do not exist, then the value in `Default` is returned. If the key exists, but contains an invalid float value, `Default` is also returned. The international settings of the `SysUtils` are taken into account when deciding if the read value is a correct float.

See also: `WriteFloat` (476), `ReadInteger` (473), `ReadBool` (474), `ReadDate` (474), `ReadDateTime` (474), `ReadTime` (475), `ReadString` (472), `ReadBinaryStream` (475)

20.3.18 `TCustomIniFile.ReadTime`

Synopsis: Read a time value

Declaration: `function ReadTime(const Section: string;const Ident: string; Default: TDateTime) : TDateTime; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadTime` reads the key `Ident` in section `Section`, and returns the value as a time (`TDateTime`). If the specified key or section do not exist, then the value in `Default` is returned. If the key exists, but contains an invalid time value, `Default` is also returned. The international settings of the `SysUtils` are taken into account when deciding if the read value is a correct time.

See also: `WriteTime` (477), `ReadInteger` (473), `ReadBool` (474), `ReadDate` (474), `ReadDateTime` (474), `ReadString` (472), `ReadFloat` (475), `ReadBinaryStream` (475)

20.3.19 `TCustomIniFile.ReadBinaryStream`

Synopsis: Read binary data

Declaration: `function ReadBinaryStream(const Section: string;const Name: string; Value: TStream) : Integer; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadBinaryStream` reads the key `Name` in section `Section`, and returns the value in the stream `Value`. If the specified key or section do not exist, then the contents of `Value` are left untouched. The stream is not cleared prior to adding data to it.

The data is interpreted as a series of 2-byte hexadecimal values, each representing a byte in the data stream, i.e, it should always be an even number of hexadecimal characters.

See also: [WriteBinaryStream \(477\)](#), [ReadInteger \(473\)](#), [ReadBool \(474\)](#), [ReadDate \(474\)](#), [ReadDateTime \(474\)](#), [ReadTime \(475\)](#), [ReadFloat \(475\)](#), [ReadString \(472\)](#)

20.3.20 TCustomIniFile.WriteDate

Synopsis: Write date value

Declaration: `procedure WriteDate(const Section: string; const Ident: string;
Value: TDateTime); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteDate` writes the date `Value` with the name `Ident` to the section `Section`, overwriting any previous value that may exist there. The section will be created if it does not exist. The date is written using the internationalization settings in the `SysUtils` unit.

See also: [ReadDate \(474\)](#), [WriteInteger \(473\)](#), [WriteBool \(474\)](#), [WriteString \(473\)](#), [WriteDateTime \(476\)](#), [WriteTime \(477\)](#), [WriteFloat \(476\)](#), [WriteBinaryStream \(477\)](#)

20.3.21 TCustomIniFile.WriteDateTime

Synopsis: Write date/time value

Declaration: `procedure WriteDateTime(const Section: string; const Ident: string;
Value: TDateTime); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteDateTime` writes the date/time `Value` with the name `Ident` to the section `Section`, overwriting any previous value that may exist there. The section will be created if it does not exist. The date/time is written using the internationalization settings in the `SysUtils` unit.

See also: [ReadDateTime \(474\)](#), [WriteInteger \(473\)](#), [WriteBool \(474\)](#), [WriteDate \(476\)](#), [WriteString \(473\)](#), [WriteTime \(477\)](#), [WriteFloat \(476\)](#), [WriteBinaryStream \(477\)](#)

20.3.22 TCustomIniFile.WriteFloat

Synopsis: Write a floating-point value

Declaration: `procedure WriteFloat(const Section: string; const Ident: string;
Value: Double); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteFloat` writes the time `Value` with the name `Ident` to the section `Section`, overwriting any previous value that may exist there. The section will be created if it does not exist. The floating point value is written using the internationalization settings in the `SysUtils` unit.

See also: [ReadFloat \(475\)](#), [WriteInteger \(473\)](#), [WriteBool \(474\)](#), [WriteDate \(476\)](#), [WriteDateTime \(476\)](#), [WriteTime \(477\)](#), [WriteString \(473\)](#), [WriteBinaryStream \(477\)](#)

20.3.23 TCustomIniFile.WriteTime

Synopsis: Write time value

Declaration: `procedure WriteTime(const Section: string; const Ident: string;
Value: TDateTime); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteTime` writes the time `Value` with the name `Ident` to the section `Section`, overwriting any previous value that may exist there. The section will be created if it does not exist. The time is written using the internationalization settings in the `SysUtils` unit.

See also: `ReadTime` (475), `WriteInteger` (473), `WriteBool` (474), `WriteDate` (476), `WriteDateTime` (476), `WriteString` (473), `WriteFloat` (476), `WriteBinaryStream` (477)

20.3.24 TCustomIniFile.WriteBinaryStream

Synopsis: Write binary data

Declaration: `procedure WriteBinaryStream(const Section: string; const Name: string;
Value: TStream); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteBinaryStream` writes the binary data in `Value` with the name `Ident` to the section `Section`, overwriting any previous value that may exist there. The section will be created if it does not exist.

The binary data is encoded using a 2-byte hexadecimal value per byte in the data stream. The data stream must be seekable, so its size can be determined. The data stream is not repositioned, it must be at the correct position.

See also: `ReadBinaryStream` (475), `WriteInteger` (473), `WriteBool` (474), `WriteDate` (476), `WriteDateTime` (476), `WriteTime` (477), `WriteFloat` (476), `WriteString` (473)

20.3.25 TCustomIniFile.ReadSection

Synopsis: Read the key names in a section

Declaration: `procedure ReadSection(const Section: string; Strings: TStrings); Virtual
; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadSection` will return the names of the keys in section `Section` in `Strings`, one string per key. If a non-existing section is specified, the list is cleared. To return the values of the keys as well, the `ReadSectionValues` (478) method should be used.

See also: `ReadSections` (477), `SectionExists` (472), `ReadSectionValues` (478)

20.3.26 TCustomIniFile.ReadSections

Synopsis: Read the list of sections

Declaration: `procedure ReadSections(Strings: TStrings); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadSections` returns the names of existing sections in `Strings`. It also returns names of empty sections.

See also: `SectionExists` (472), `ReadSectionValues` (478), `ReadSection` (477)

20.3.27 `TCustomIniFile.ReadSectionValues`

Synopsis: Read names and values of a section

Declaration: `procedure ReadSectionValues(const Section: string; Strings: TStrings)`
`; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadSectionValues` returns the keys and their values in the section `Section` in `Strings`. They are returned as `Key=Value` strings, one per key, so the `Values` property of the stringlist can be used to read the values. To retrieve just the names of the available keys, `ReadSection` (477) can be used.

See also: `SectionExists` (472), `ReadSections` (477), `ReadSection` (477)

20.3.28 `TCustomIniFile.EraseSection`

Synopsis: Clear a section

Declaration: `procedure EraseSection(const Section: string); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `EraseSection` deletes all values from the section named `Section` and removes the section from the ini file. If the section didn't exist prior to a call to `EraseSection`, nothing happens.

See also: `SectionExists` (472), `ReadSections` (477), `DeleteKey` (478)

20.3.29 `TCustomIniFile.DeleteKey`

Synopsis: Delete a key from a section

Declaration: `procedure DeleteKey(const Section: string; const Ident: string); Virtual`
`; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `DeleteKey` deletes the key `Ident` from section `Section`. If the key or section didn't exist prior to the `DeleteKey` call, nothing happens.

See also: `EraseSection` (478)

20.3.30 `TCustomIniFile.UpdateFile`

Synopsis: Update the file on disk

Declaration: `procedure UpdateFile; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `UpdateFile` writes the in-memory image of the ini-file to disk. To speed up operation of the `inifile` class, the whole ini-file is read into memory when the class is created, and all operations are performed in-memory. If `CacheUpdates` is set to `True`, any changes to the inifile are only in memory, until they are committed to disk with a call to `UpdateFile`. If `CacheUpdates` is set to `False`, then all operations which cause a change in the .ini file will immediately be committed to disk with a call to `UpdateFile`. Since the whole file is written to disk, this may have serious impact on performance.

See also: `CacheUpdates` ([485](#))

20.3.31 `TCustomIniFile.ValueExists`

Synopsis: Check if a value exists

Declaration: `function ValueExists(const Section: string;const Ident: string)
: Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `ValueExists` checks whether the key `Ident` exists in section `Section`. It returns `True` if a key was found, or `False` if not. The key may be empty.

See also: `SectionExists` ([472](#))

20.3.32 `TCustomIniFile.FileName`

Synopsis: Name of the .ini file

Declaration: `Property FileName : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `FileName` is the name of the ini file on disk. It should be specified when the `TCustomIniFile` instance is created. Contrary to the Delphi implementation, if no path component is present in the filename, the filename is not searched in the windows directory.

See also: `Create` ([471](#))

20.3.33 `TCustomIniFile.EscapeLineFeeds`

Synopsis: Should linefeeds be escaped ?

Declaration: `Property EscapeLineFeeds : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `EscapeLineFeeds` determines whether escaping of linefeeds is enabled: For a description of this feature, see `Create` ([471](#)), as the value of this property must be specified when the `TCustomIniFile` instance is created.

By default, `EscapeLineFeeds` is `False`.

See also: `Create` ([471](#)), `CaseSensitive` ([480](#))

20.3.34 TCustomIniFile.CaseSensitive

Synopsis: Are key and section names case sensitive

Declaration: `Property CaseSensitive : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `CaseSensitive` determines whether searches for sections and keys are performed case-sensitive or not. By default, they are not case sensitive.

See also: [EscapeLineFeeds \(479\)](#)

20.3.35 TCustomIniFile.StripQuotes

Synopsis: Should quotes be stripped from string values

Declaration: `Property StripQuotes : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `StripQuotes` determines whether quotes around string values are stripped from the value when reading the values from file. By default, quotes are not stripped (this is Delphi and Windows compatible).

20.4 THashedStringList

20.4.1 Description

`THashedStringList` is a `TStringList` (??) descendent which creates hash values for the strings and names (in the case of a name-value pair) stored in it. The [IndexOf \(481\)](#) and [IndexOfName \(481\)](#) functions make use of these hash values to quicker locate a value.

See also: [IndexOf \(481\)](#), [IndexOfName \(481\)](#)

20.4.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
480	<code>Destroy</code>	Clean up instance
481	<code>IndexOf</code>	Returns the index of a string in the list of strings
481	<code>IndexOfName</code>	Return the index of a name in the list of name=value pairs

20.4.3 THashedStringList.Destroy

Synopsis: Clean up instance

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the hash tables and then calls the inherited `Destroy`.

See also: [THashedStringList.Create \(480\)](#)

20.4.4 THashedStringList.IndexOf

Synopsis: Returns the index of a string in the list of strings

Declaration: `function IndexOf(const S: string) : Integer; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` overrides the `#rtl.classes.TStringList.IndexOf (??)` method and uses the hash values to look for the location of `S`.

See also: `#rtl.classes.TStringList.IndexOf (??)`, `THashedStringList.IndexOfName (481)`

20.4.5 THashedStringList.IndexOfName

Synopsis: Return the index of a name in the list of name=value pairs

Declaration: `function IndexOfName(const Name: string) : Integer; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOfName` overrides the `#rtl.classes.TStrings.IndexOfName (??)` method and uses the hash values of the names to look for the location of `Name`.

See also: `#rtl.classes.TStrings.IndexOfName (??)`, `THashedStringList.IndexOf (481)`

20.5 TIniFile

20.5.1 Description

`TIniFile` is an implementation of `TCustomIniFile (470)` which does the same as `TMemIniFile (490)`, namely it reads the whole file into memory. Unlike `TMemIniFile` it does not cache updates in memory, but immediatly writes any changes to disk.

`TIniFile` introduces no new methods, it just implements the abstract methods introduced in `TCustomIniFile`

See also: `TCustomIniFile (470)`, `TMemIniFile (490)`

20.5.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
482	Create	Create a new instance of <code>TIniFile</code>
484	DeleteKey	Delete key
482	Destroy	Remove the <code>TIniFile</code> instance from memory
484	EraseSection	
483	ReadSection	Read the key names in a section
483	ReadSectionRaw	Read raw section
483	ReadSections	Read section names
484	ReadSectionValues	
482	ReadString	Read a string
484	UpdateFile	Update the file on disk
483	WriteString	Write string to file

20.5.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
485	CacheUpdates	rw	Should changes be kept in memory
485	Stream	r	Stream from which ini file was read

20.5.4 TIniFile.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TIniFile`

Declaration: `constructor Create(const AFileName: string; AEscapeLineFeeds: Boolean)`
`; Override`
`constructor Create(AStream: TStream; AEscapeLineFeeds: Boolean)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of `TIniFile` and initializes the class by reading the file from disk if the filename `AFileName` is specified, or from stream in case `AStream` is specified. It also sets most variables to their initial values, i.e. `AEscapeLineFeeds` is saved prior to reading the file, and `Cacheupdates` is set to `False`.

See also: `TCustomIniFile` ([470](#)), `TMemIniFile` ([490](#))

20.5.5 TIniFile.Destroy

Synopsis: Remove the `TIniFile` instance from memory

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` writes any pending changes to disk, and cleans up the `TIniFile` structures, and then calls the inherited `Destroy`, effectively removing the instance from memory.

Errors: If an error happens when the file is written to disk, an exception will be raised.

See also: `UpdateFile` ([478](#)), `CacheUpdates` ([485](#))

20.5.6 TIniFile.ReadString

Synopsis: Read a string

Declaration: `function ReadString(const Section: string; const Ident: string;`
`const Default: string) : string; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadString` implements the `TCustomIniFile.ReadString` ([472](#)) abstract method by looking at the in-memory copy of the ini file and returning the string found there.

See also: `TCustomIniFile.ReadString` ([472](#))

20.5.7 TIniFile.WriteString

Synopsis: Write string to file

Declaration: `procedure WriteString(const Section: string; const Ident: string;
const Value: string); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteString` implements the `TCustomIniFile.WriteString` (473) abstract method by writing the string to the in-memory copy of the ini file. If `CacheUpdates` (485) property is `False`, then the whole file is immediately written to disk as well.

Errors: If an error happens when the file is written to disk, an exception will be raised.

20.5.8 TIniFile.ReadSection

Synopsis: Read the key names in a section

Declaration: `procedure ReadSection(const Section: string; Strings: TStrings)
; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadSection` reads the key names from `Section` into `Strings`, taking the in-memory copy of the ini file. This is the implementation for the abstract `TCustomIniFile.ReadSection` (477)

See also: `TCustomIniFile.ReadSection` (477), `TIniFile.ReadSectionRaw` (483)

20.5.9 TIniFile.ReadSectionRaw

Synopsis: Read raw section

Declaration: `procedure ReadSectionRaw(const Section: string; Strings: TStrings)`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadSectionRaw` returns the contents of the section `Section` as it is: this includes the comments in the section. (these are also stored in memory)

See also: `TIniFile.ReadSection` (483), `TCustomIniFile.ReadSection` (477)

20.5.10 TIniFile.ReadSections

Synopsis: Read section names

Declaration: `procedure ReadSections(Strings: TStrings); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadSections` is the implementation of `TCustomIniFile.ReadSections` (477). It operates on the in-memory copy of the ini file, and places all section names in `Strings`.

See also: `TIniFile.ReadSection` (483), `TCustomIniFile.ReadSections` (477), `TIniFile.ReadSectionValues` (484)

20.5.11 TIniFile.ReadSectionValues

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure ReadSectionValues(const Section: string; Strings: TStrings)
; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadSectionValues` is the implementation of `TCustomIniFile.ReadSectionValues` (478). It operates on the in-memory copy of the ini file, and places all key names from `Section` together with their values in `Strings`.

See also: `TIniFile.ReadSection` (483), `TCustomIniFile.ReadSectionValues` (478), `TIniFile.ReadSections` (483)

20.5.12 TIniFile.EraseSection

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure EraseSection(const Section: string); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `EraseSection` deletes the section `Section` from memory, if `CacheUpdates` (485) is `False`, then the file is immediately updated on disk. This method is the implementation of the abstract `TCustomIniFile.EraseSection` (478) method.

See also: `TCustomIniFile.EraseSection` (478), `TIniFile.ReadSection` (483), `TIniFile.ReadSections` (483)

20.5.13 TIniFile.DeleteKey

Synopsis: Delete key

Declaration: `procedure DeleteKey(const Section: string; const Ident: string)
; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `DeleteKey` deletes the `Ident` from the section `Section`. This operation is performed on the in-memory copy of the ini file. if `CacheUpdates` (485) is `False`, then the file is immediately updated on disk.

See also: `CacheUpdates` (485)

20.5.14 TIniFile.UpdateFile

Synopsis: Update the file on disk

Declaration: `procedure UpdateFile; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `UpdateFile` writes the in-memory data for the ini file to disk. The whole file is written. If the ini file was instantiated from a stream, then the stream is updated. Note that the stream must be seekable for this to work correctly. The ini file is marked as 'clean' after a call to `UpdateFile` (i.e. not in need of writing to disk).

Errors: If an error occurs when writing to stream or disk, an exception may be raised.

See also: `CacheUpdates` (485)

20.5.15 TIniFile.Stream

Synopsis: Stream from which ini file was read

Declaration: `Property Stream : TStream`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Stream` is the stream which was used to create the `IniFile`. The `UpdateFile` (484) method will use this stream to write changes to.

See also: `Create` (482), `UpdateFile` (484)

20.5.16 TIniFile.CacheUpdates

Synopsis: Should changes be kept in memory

Declaration: `Property CacheUpdates : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `CacheUpdates` determines how to deal with changes to the ini-file data: if set to `True` then changes are kept in memory till the file is written to disk with a call to `UpdateFile` (484). If it is set to `False` then each call that changes the data of the ini-file will result in a call to `UpdateFile`. This is the default behaviour, but it may adversely affect performance.

See also: `UpdateFile` (484)

20.6 TIniFileKey

20.6.1 Description

`TIniFileKey` is used to keep the key/value pairs in the ini file in memory. It is an internal structure, used internally by the `TIniFile` (481) class.

See also: `TIniFile` (481)

20.6.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
486	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of <code>TIniFileKey</code>

20.6.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
486	<code>Ident</code>	rw	Key name
486	<code>Value</code>	rw	Key value

20.6.4 TIniFileKey.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of TIniFileKey

Declaration: constructor Create(const AIdent: string; const AValue: string)

Visibility: public

Description: Create instantiates a new instance of TIniFileKey on the heap. It fills Ident (486) with AIdent and Value (486) with AValue.

See also: Ident (486), Value (486)

20.6.5 TIniFileKey.Ident

Synopsis: Key name

Declaration: Property Ident : string

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: Ident is the key value part of the key/value pair.

See also: Value (486)

20.6.6 TIniFileKey.Value

Synopsis: Key value

Declaration: Property Value : string

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: Value is the value part of the key/value pair.

See also: Ident (486)

20.7 TIniFileKeyList

20.7.1 Description

TIniFileKeyList maintains a list of TIniFileKey (485) instances on behalf of the TIniFileSection (487) class. It stores the keys of one section of the .ini files.

See also: TIniFileKey (485), TIniFileSection (487)

20.7.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
487	Clear	Clear the list
487	Destroy	Free the instance

20.7.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
487	Items	r	Indexed access to TIniFileKey items in the list

20.7.4 TIniFileKeyList.Destroy

Synopsis: Free the instance

Declaration: destructor Destroy; Override

Visibility: public

Description: Destroy clears up the list using Clear ([487](#)) and then calls the inherited destroy.

See also: Clear ([487](#))

20.7.5 TIniFileKeyList.Clear

Synopsis: Clear the list

Declaration: procedure Clear; Override

Visibility: public

Description: Clear removes all TIniFileKey ([485](#)) instances from the list, and frees the instances.

See also: TIniFileKey ([485](#))

20.7.6 TIniFileKeyList.Items

Synopsis: Indexed access to TIniFileKey items in the list

Declaration: Property Items[Index: Integer]: TIniFileKey; default

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Items provides indexed access to the TIniFileKey ([485](#)) items in the list. The index is zero-based and runs from 0 to Count-1.

See also: TIniFileKey ([485](#))

20.8 TIniFileSection

20.8.1 Description

TIniFileSection is a class which represents a section in the .ini, and is used internally by the TIniFile ([481](#)) class (one instance of TIniFileSection is created for each section in the file by the TIniFileSectionList ([489](#)) list). The name of the section is stored in the Name ([488](#)) property, and the key/value pairs in this section are available in the KeyList ([489](#)) property.

See also: TIniFileKeyList ([486](#)), TIniFile ([481](#)), TIniFileSectionList ([489](#))

20.8.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
488	Create	Create a new section object
488	Destroy	Free the section object from memory
488	Empty	Is the section empty

20.8.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
489	KeyList	r	List of key/value pairs in this section
488	Name	r	Name of the section

20.8.4 TIniFileSection.Empty

Synopsis: Is the section empty

Declaration: `function Empty : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Empty` returns `True` if the section contains no key values (even if they are empty). It may contain comments.

20.8.5 TIniFileSection.Create

Synopsis: Create a new section object

Declaration: `constructor Create(const AName: string)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new `TIniFileSection` class, and sets the name to `AName`. It allocates a `TIniFileKeyList` ([486](#)) instance to keep all the key/value pairs for this section.

See also: `TIniFileKeyList` ([486](#))

20.8.6 TIniFileSection.Destroy

Synopsis: Free the section object from memory

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the key list, and then calls the inherited `Destroy`, removing the `TIniFileSection` instance from memory.

See also: `Create` ([488](#)), `TIniFileKeyList` ([486](#))

20.8.7 TIniFileSection.Name

Synopsis: Name of the section

Declaration: `Property Name : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read

Description: Name is the name of the section in the file.

See also: TIniFileSection.KeyList ([489](#))

20.8.8 TIniFileSection.KeyList

Synopsis: List of key/value pairs in this section

Declaration: Property KeyList : TIniFileKeyList

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: KeyList is the TIniFileKeyList ([486](#)) instance that is used by the TIniFileSection to keep the key/value pairs of the section.

See also: TIniFileSection.Name ([488](#)), TIniFileKeyList ([486](#))

20.9 TIniFileSectionList

20.9.1 Description

TIniFileSectionList maintains a list of TIniFileSection ([487](#)) instances, one for each section in an .ini file. TIniFileSectionList is used internally by the TIniFile ([481](#)) class to represent the sections in the file.

See also: TIniFileSection ([487](#)), TIniFile ([481](#))

20.9.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
490	Clear	Clear the list
489	Destroy	Free the object from memory

20.9.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
490	Items	r	Indexed access to all the section objects in the list

20.9.4 TIniFileSectionList.Destroy

Synopsis: Free the object from memory

Declaration: destructor Destroy; Override

Visibility: public

Description: Destroy calls Clear ([490](#)) to clear the section list and then calls the inherited Destroy

See also: Clear ([490](#))

20.9.5 TIniFileSectionList.Clear

Synopsis: Clear the list

Declaration: `procedure Clear; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` removes all `TIniFileSection` (487) items from the list, and frees the items it removes from the list.

See also: `TIniFileSection` (487), `TIniFileSectionList.Items` (490)

20.9.6 TIniFileSectionList.Items

Synopsis: Indexed access to all the section objects in the list

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: TIniFileSection; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Items` provides indexed access to all the section objects in the list. `Index` should run from 0 to `Count-1`.

See also: `TIniFileSection` (487), `TIniFileSectionList.Clear` (490)

20.10 TMemIniFile

20.10.1 Description

`TMemIniFile` is a simple descendent of `TIniFile` (481) which introduces some extra methods to be compatible to the Delphi implementation of `TMemIniFile`. The FPC implementation of `TIniFile` is implemented as a `TMemIniFile`, except that `TIniFile` does not cache its updates, and `TMemIniFile` does.

See also: `TIniFile` (481), `TCustomIniFile` (470), `CacheUpdates` (485)

20.10.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
491	<code>Clear</code>	Clear the data
490	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of <code>TMemIniFile</code>
491	<code>GetStrings</code>	Get contents of ini file as stringlist
491	<code>Rename</code>	Rename the ini file
491	<code>SetStrings</code>	Set data from a stringlist

20.10.3 TMemIniFile.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TMemIniFile`

Declaration: `constructor Create(const AFileName: string; AEscapeLineFeeds: Boolean); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` simply calls the inherited `Create` (482), and sets the `CacheUpdates` (485) to `True` so updates will be kept in memory till they are explicitly written to disk.

See also: `TIniFile.Create` (482), `CacheUpdates` (485)

20.10.4 TMemIniFile.Clear

Synopsis: Clear the data

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` removes all sections and key/value pairs from memory. If `CacheUpdates` (485) is set to `False` then the file on disk will immediatly be emptied.

See also: `SetStrings` (491), `GetStrings` (491)

20.10.5 TMemIniFile.GetStrings

Synopsis: Get contents of ini file as stringlist

Declaration: `procedure GetStrings(List: TStringList)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetStrings` returns the whole contents of the ini file in a single stringlist, `List`. This includes comments and empty sections.

The `GetStrings` call can be used to get data for a call to `SetStrings` (491), which can be used to copy data between 2 in-memory ini files.

See also: `SetStrings` (491), `Clear` (491)

20.10.6 TMemIniFile.Rename

Synopsis: Rename the ini file

Declaration: `procedure Rename(const AFileName: string; Reload: Boolean)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Rename` will rename the ini file with the new name `AFileName`. If `Reload` is `True` then the in-memory contents will be cleared and replaced with the contents found in `AFileName`, if it exists. If `Reload` is `False`, the next call to `UpdateFile` will replace the contents of `AFileName` with the in-memory data.

See also: `UpdateFile` (484)

20.10.7 TMemIniFile.SetStrings

Synopsis: Set data from a stringlist

Declaration: `procedure SetStrings(List: TStringList)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `SetStrings` sets the in-memory data from the `List` stringlist. The data is first cleared.

The `SetStrings` call can be used to set the data of the ini file to a list of strings obtained with `GetStrings` ([491](#)). The two calls combined can be used to copy data between 2 in-memory ini files.

See also: `GetStrings` ([491](#)), `Clear` ([491](#))

Chapter 21

Reference for unit 'iostream'

21.1 Used units

Table 21.1: Used units by unit 'iostream'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??

21.2 Overview

The `iostream` implements a descendent of `THandleStream` (??) streams that can be used to read from standard input and write to standard output and standard diagnostic output (`stderr`).

21.3 Constants, types and variables

21.3.1 Types

`TIOSType = (iosInput, iosOutPut, iosError)`

Table 21.2: Enumeration values for type `TIOSType`

Value	Explanation
<code>iosError</code>	The stream can be used to write to standard diagnostic output
<code>iosInput</code>	The stream can be used to read from standard input
<code>iosOutPut</code>	The stream can be used to write to standard output

`TIOSType` is passed to the `Create` (494) constructor of `TIOStream` (494), it determines what kind of stream is created.

21.4 EIOStreamError

21.4.1 Description

Error thrown in case of an invalid operation on a TIOStream ([494](#)).

21.5 TIOStream

21.5.1 Description

TIOStream can be used to create a stream which reads from or writes to the standard input, output or stderr file descriptors. It is a descendent of THandleStream. The type of stream that is created is determined by the TIOSType ([493](#)) argument to the constructor. The handle of the standard input, output or stderr file descriptors is determined automatically.

The TIOStream keeps an internal Position, and attempts to provide minimal Seek ([495](#)) behaviour based on this position.

See also: TIOSType ([493](#)), THandleStream (??)

21.5.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
494	Create	Construct a new instance of TIOStream (494)
494	Read	Read data from the stream.
495	Seek	Set the stream position
495	Write	Write data to the stream

21.5.3 TIOStream.Create

Synopsis: Construct a new instance of TIOStream ([494](#))

Declaration: `constructor Create(aIOSType: TIOSType)`

Visibility: public

Description: Create creates a new instance of TIOStream ([494](#)), which can subsequently be used

Errors: No checking is performed to see whether the requested file descriptor is actually open for reading/writing. In that case, subsequent calls to Read or Write or seek will fail.

See also: TIOStream.Read ([494](#)), TIOStream.Write ([495](#))

21.5.4 TIOStream.Read

Synopsis: Read data from the stream.

Declaration: `function Read(var Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Read checks first whether the type of the stream allows reading (type is iosInput). If not, it raises a EIOStreamError ([494](#)) exception. If the stream can be read, it calls the inherited Read to actually read the data.

Errors: An `EIOStreamError` exception is raised if the stream does not allow reading.

See also: `TIOSType` (493), `TIOStream.Write` (495)

21.5.5 TIOStream.Write

Synopsis: Write data to the stream

Declaration: `function Write(const Buffer;Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Write` checks first whether the type of the stream allows writing (type is `iosOutput` or `iosError`). If not, it raises a `EIOStreamError` (494) exception. If the stream can be written to, it calls the inherited `Write` to actually read the data.

Errors: An `EIOStreamError` exception is raised if the stream does not allow writing.

See also: `TIOSType` (493), `TIOStream.Read` (494)

21.5.6 TIOStream.Seek

Synopsis: Set the stream position

Declaration: `function Seek(const Offset: Int64;Origin: TSeekOrigin) : Int64; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Seek` overrides the standard `Seek` implementation. Normally, standard input, output and stderr are not seekable. The `TIOStream` stream tries to provide seek capabilities for the following limited number of cases:

Origin=soFromBeginning If `Offset` is larger than the current position, then the remaining bytes are skipped by reading them from the stream and discarding them, if the stream is of type `iosInput`.

Origin=soFromCurrent If `Offset` is zero, the current position is returned. If it is positive, then `Offset` bytes are skipped by reading them from the stream and discarding them, if the stream is of type `iosInput`.

All other cases will result in a `EIOStreamError` exception.

Errors: An `EIOStreamError` (494) exception is raised if the stream does not allow the requested seek operation.

See also: `EIOStreamError` (494)

Chapter 22

Reference for unit 'libtar'

22.1 Used units

Table 22.1: Used units by unit 'libtar'

Name	Page
BaseUnix	??
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??
Unix	??
UnixType	??
Windows	??

22.2 Overview

The `libtar` units provides 2 classes to read and write `.tar` archives: `TTarArchive` ([500](#)) class can be used to read a tar file, and the `TTarWriter` ([502](#)) class can be used to write a tar file. The unit was implemented originally by Stefan Heymann.

22.3 Constants, types and variables

22.3.1 Constants

```
ALL_PERMISSIONS = [tpReadByOwner, tpWriteByOwner, tpExecuteByOwner, tpReadByGroup, tpWriteByGroup, tpExecuteByGroup, tpReadByOther, tpWriteByOther, tpExecuteByOther]
```

`ALL_PERMISSIONS` is a set constant containing all possible permissions (read/write/execute, for all groups of users) for an archive entry.

```
EXECUTE_PERMISSIONS = [tpExecuteByOwner, tpExecuteByGroup, tpExecuteByOther]
```

`WRITE_PERMISSIONS` is a set constant containing all possible execute permissions set for an archive entry.

```
FILETYPE_NAME : Array[TFileType] of string = ('Regular', 'Link', 'Symbolic Link', 'C
```

FILETYPE_NAME can be used to get a textual description for each of the possible entry file types.

```
READ_PERMISSIONS = [tpReadByOwner, tpReadByGroup, tpReadByOther]
```

READ_PERMISSIONS is a set constant containing all possible read permissions set for an archive entry.

```
WRITE_PERMISSIONS = [tpWriteByOwner, tpWriteByGroup, tpWriteByOther]
```

WRITE_PERMISSIONS is a set constant containing all possible write permissions set for an archive entry.

22.3.2 Types

```
TFileType = (ftNormal, ftLink, ftSymbolicLink, ftCharacter, ftBlock,
             ftDirectory, ftFifo, ftContiguous, ftDumpDir, ftMultiVolume,
             ftVolumeHeader)
```

Table 22.2: Enumeration values for type TFileType

Value	Explanation
ftBlock	Block device file
ftCharacter	Character device file
ftContiguous	Contiguous file
ftDirectory	Directory
ftDumpDir	List of files
ftFifo	FIFO file
ftLink	Hard link
ftMultiVolume	Multi-volume file part
ftNormal	Normal file
ftSymbolicLink	Symbolic link
ftVolumeHeader	Volume header, can appear only as first entry in the archive

TFileType describes the file type of a file in the archive. It is used in the FileType field of the TTarDirRec (498) record.

```
TTarDirRec = record
  Name : AnsiString;
  Size : Int64;
  DateTime : TDateTime;
  Permissions : TTarPermissions;
  FileType : TFileType;
  LinkName : AnsiString;
  UID : Integer;
  GID : Integer;
  UserName : AnsiString;
  GroupName : AnsiString;
  ChecksumOK : Boolean;
```

```

Mode : TTarModes;
Magic : AnsiString;
MajorDevNo : Integer;
MinorDevNo : Integer;
FilePos : Int64;
end

```

TTarDirRec describes an entry in the tar archive. It is similar to a directory entry as in TSearchRec (??), and is returned by the TTarArchive.FindNext (501) call.

```
TTarMode = (tmSetUid, tmSetGid, tmSaveText)
```

Table 22.3: Enumeration values for type TTarMode

Value	Explanation
tmSaveText	Bit \$200 is set
tmSetGid	File has SetGID bit set
tmSetUid	File has SetUID bit set.

TTarMode describes extra file modes. It is used in the Mode field of the TTarDirRec (498) record.

```
TTarModes = Set of TTarMode
```

TTarModes denotes the full set of permission bits for the file in the field Mode field of the TTarDirRec (498) record.

```

TTarPermission = (tpReadByOwner, tpWriteByOwner, tpExecuteByOwner,
                  tpReadByGroup, tpWriteByGroup, tpExecuteByGroup,
                  tpReadByOther, tpWriteByOther, tpExecuteByOther)

```

Table 22.4: Enumeration values for type TTarPermission

Value	Explanation
tpExecuteByGroup	Group can execute the file
tpExecuteByOther	Other people can execute the file
tpExecuteByOwner	Owner can execute the file
tpReadByGroup	Group can read the file
tpReadByOther	Other people can read the file.
tpReadByOwner	Owner can read the file
tpWriteByGroup	Group can write the file
tpWriteByOther	Other people can write the file
tpWriteByOwner	Owner can write the file

TTarPermission denotes part of a files permission as it is stored in the .tar archive. Each of these enumerated constants correspond with one of the permission bits from a unix file permission.

```
TTarPermissions = Set of TTarPermission
```

TTarPermissions describes the complete set of permissions that a file has. It is used in the Permissions field of the TTarDirRec (498) record.

22.4 Procedures and functions

22.4.1 ClearDirRec

Synopsis: Initialize tar archive entry

Declaration: `procedure ClearDirRec (var DirRec: TTarDirRec)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ClearDirRec` clears the `DirRec` entry, it basically zeroes out all fields.

See also: `TTarDirRec` ([498](#))

22.4.2 ConvertFilename

Synopsis: Convert filename to archive format

Declaration: `function ConvertFilename (Filename: string) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `ConvertFileName` converts the file name `FileName` to a format allowed by the tar archive. Basically, it converts directory specifiers to forward slashes.

22.4.3 FileTimeGMT

Synopsis: Extract filetype

Declaration: `function FileTimeGMT (FileName: string) : TDateTime; Overload`
`function FileTimeGMT (SearchRec: TSearchRec) : TDateTime; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `FileTimeGMT` returns the timestamp of a filename (`FileName` must exist) or a search rec (`TSearchRec`) to a GMT representation that can be used in a tar entry.

See also: `TTarDirRec` ([498](#))

22.4.4 PermissionString

Synopsis: Convert a set of permissions to a string

Declaration: `function PermissionString (Permissions: TTarPermissions) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `PermissionString` can be used to convert a set of `Permissions` to a string in the same format as used by the unix 'ls' command.

See also: `TTarPermissions` ([498](#))

22.5 TTarArchive

22.5.1 Description

`TTarArchive` is the class used to read and examine `.tar` archives. It can be constructed from a stream or from a filename. Creating an instance will not perform any operation on the stream yet.

See also: `TTarWriter` ([502](#)), `FindNext` ([501](#))

22.5.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
500	Create	Create a new instance of the archive
500	Destroy	Destroy <code>TTarArchive</code> instance
501	FindNext	Find next archive entry
501	GetFilePos	Return current archive position
501	ReadFile	Read a file from the archive
500	Reset	Reset archive
502	SetFilePos	Set position in archive

22.5.3 TTarArchive.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the archive

Declaration: `constructor Create(Stream: TStream); Overload`
`constructor Create(Filename: string; FileMode: Word); Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` can be used to create a new instance of `TTarArchive` using either a `StreamTStream` ([??](#)) descendent or using a name of a file to open: `FileName`. In case of the filename, an open mode can be specified.

Errors: In case a filename is specified and the file cannot be opened, an exception will occur.

See also: `FindNext` ([501](#))

22.5.4 TTarArchive.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroy `TTarArchive` instance

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` closes the archive stream (if it created a stream) and cleans up the `TTarArchive` instance.

See also: `TTarArchive.Create` ([500](#))

22.5.5 TTarArchive.Reset

Synopsis: Reset archive

Declaration: `procedure Reset`

Visibility: public

Description: `Reset` sets the archive file position on the beginning of the archive.

See also: `TTarArchive.Create` ([500](#))

22.5.6 `TTarArchive.FindNext`

Synopsis: Find next archive entry

Declaration: `function FindNext (var DirRec: TTarDirRec) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindNext` positions the file pointer on the next archive entry, and returns all information about the entry in `DirRec`. It returns `True` if the operation was successful, or `False` if not (for instance, when the end of the archive was reached).

Errors: In case there are no more entries, `False` is returned.

See also: `TTarArchive.ReadFile` ([501](#))

22.5.7 `TTarArchive.ReadFile`

Synopsis: Read a file from the archive

Declaration: `procedure ReadFile (Buffer: POINTER); Overload`
`procedure ReadFile (Stream: TStream); Overload`
`procedure ReadFile (Filename: string); Overload`
`function ReadFile : string; Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadFile` can be used to read the current file in the archive. It can be called after the archive was successfully positioned on an entry in the archive. The file can be read in various ways:

- directly in a memory buffer. No checks are performed to see whether the buffer points to enough memory.
- It can be copied to a `Stream`.
- It can be copied to a file with name `FileName`.
- The file content can be copied to a string

Errors: An exception may occur if the buffer is not large enough, or when the file specified in `filename` cannot be opened.

22.5.8 `TTarArchive.GetFilesPos`

Synopsis: Return current archive position

Declaration: `procedure GetFilesPos (var Current: Int64; var Size: Int64)`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetFilesPos` returns the position in the tar archive in `Current` and the complete archive size in `Size`.

See also: `TTarArchive.SetFilesPos` ([502](#)), `TTarArchive.Reset` ([500](#))

22.5.9 TTarArchive.SetFilePos

Synopsis: Set position in archive

Declaration: `procedure SetFilePos(NewPos: Int64)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `SetFilePos` can be used to set the absolute position in the tar archive.

See also: `TTarArchive.Reset` (500), `TTarArchive.GetFilePos` (501)

22.6 TTarWriter

22.6.1 Description

`TTarWriter` can be used to create `.tar` archives. It can be created using a filename, in which case the archive will be written to the filename, or it can be created using a stream, in which case the archive will be written to the stream - for instance a compression stream.

See also: `TTarArchive` (500)

22.6.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
504	<code>AddDir</code>	Add directory to archive
503	<code>AddFile</code>	Add a file to the archive
505	<code>AddLink</code>	Add hard link to archive
503	<code>AddStream</code>	Add stream contents to archive.
504	<code>AddString</code>	Add string as file data
504	<code>AddSymbolicLink</code>	Add a symbolic link to the archive
505	<code>AddVolumeHeader</code>	Add volume header entry
502	<code>Create</code>	Create a new archive
503	<code>Destroy</code>	Close archive and clean up <code>TTarWriter</code>
505	<code>Finalize</code>	Finalize the archive

22.6.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
506	<code>GID</code>	<code>rw</code>	Archive entry group ID
506	<code>GroupName</code>	<code>rw</code>	Archive entry group name
507	<code>Magic</code>	<code>rw</code>	Archive entry Magic constant
507	<code>Mode</code>	<code>rw</code>	Archive entry mode
505	<code>Permissions</code>	<code>rw</code>	Archive entry permissions
506	<code>UID</code>	<code>rw</code>	Archive entry user ID
506	<code>UserName</code>	<code>rw</code>	Archive entry user name

22.6.4 TTarWriter.Create

Synopsis: Create a new archive

Declaration: `constructor Create(TargetStream: TStream); Overload`
`constructor Create(TargetFilename: string; Mode: Integer); Overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` creates a new `TTarWriter` instance. This will start a new `.tar` archive. The archive will be written to the `TargetStream` stream or to a file with name `TargetFileName`, which will be opened with filemode `Mode`.

Errors: In case `TargetFileName` cannot be opened, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TTarWriter.Destroy` (503)

22.6.5 `TTarWriter.Destroy`

Synopsis: Close archive and clean up `TTarWriter`

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` will close the archive (i.e. it writes the end-of-archive marker, if it was not yet written), and then frees the `TTarWriter` instance.

See also: `TTarWriter.Finalize` (505)

22.6.6 `TTarWriter.AddFile`

Synopsis: Add a file to the archive

Declaration: `procedure AddFile(Filename: string; TarFilename: AnsiString)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddFile` adds a file to the archive: the contents is read from `FileName`. Optionally, an alternative filename can be specified in `TarFileName`. This name should contain only forward slash path separators. If it is not specified, the name will be computed from `FileName`.

The archive entry is written with the current owner data and permissions.

Errors: If `FileName` cannot be opened, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TTarWriter.AddStream` (503), `TTarWriter.AddString` (504), `TTarWriter.AddLink` (505), `TTarWriter.AddSymbolicLink` (504), `TTarWriter.AddDir` (504), `TTarWriter.AddVolumeHeader` (505)

22.6.7 `TTarWriter.AddStream`

Synopsis: Add stream contents to archive.

Declaration: `procedure AddStream(Stream: TStream; TarFilename: AnsiString;
FileDateGmt: TDateTime)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddStream` will add the contents of `Stream` to the archive. The `Stream` will not be reset: only the contents of the stream from the current position will be written to the archive. The entry will be written with file name `TarFileName`. This name should contain only forward slash path separators. The entry will be written with timestamp `FileDateGmt`.

The archive entry is written with the current owner data and permissions.

See also: `TTarWriter.AddFile` (503), `TTarWriter.AddString` (504), `TTarWriter.AddLink` (505), `TTarWriter.AddSymbolicLink` (504), `TTarWriter.AddDir` (504), `TTarWriter.AddVolumeHeader` (505)

22.6.8 TTarWriter.AddString

Synopsis: Add string as file data

Declaration: `procedure AddString(Contents: AnsiString; TarFilename: AnsiString;
FileDateGmt: TDateTime)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddString` adds the string `Contents` as the data of an entry with file name `TarFileName`. This name should contain only forward slash path separators. The entry will be written with timestamp `FileDateGmt`.

The archive entry is written with the current owner data and permissions.

See also: `TTarWriter.AddFile` (503), `TTarWriter.AddStream` (503), `TTarWriter.AddLink` (505), `TTarWriter.AddSymbolicLink` (504), `TTarWriter.AddDir` (504), `TTarWriter.AddVolumeHeader` (505)

22.6.9 TTarWriter.AddDir

Synopsis: Add directory to archive

Declaration: `procedure AddDir(Dirname: AnsiString; DateGmt: TDateTime;
MaxDirSize: Int64)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddDir` adds a directory entry to the archive. The entry is written with name `DirName`, maximum directory size `MaxDirSize` (0 means unlimited) and timestamp `DateGmt`.

Note that this call only adds an entry for a directory to the archive: if `DirName` is an existing directory, it does not write all files in the directory to the archive.

The directory entry is written with the current owner data and permissions.

See also: `TTarWriter.AddFile` (503), `TTarWriter.AddStream` (503), `TTarWriter.AddLink` (505), `TTarWriter.AddSymbolicLink` (504), `TTarWriter.AddString` (504), `TTarWriter.AddVolumeHeader` (505)

22.6.10 TTarWriter.AddSymbolicLink

Synopsis: Add a symbolic link to the archive

Declaration: `procedure AddSymbolicLink(Filename: AnsiString; Linkname: AnsiString;
DateGmt: TDateTime)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddSymbolicLink` adds a symbolic link entry to the archive, with name `FileName`, pointing to `LinkName`. The entry is written with timestamp `DateGmt`.

The link entry is written with the current owner data and permissions.

See also: `TTarWriter.AddFile` (503), `TTarWriter.AddStream` (503), `TTarWriter.AddLink` (505), `TTarWriter.AddDir` (504), `TTarWriter.AddString` (504), `TTarWriter.AddVolumeHeader` (505)

22.6.11 TTarWriter.AddLink

Synopsis: Add hard link to archive

Declaration: `procedure AddLink (Filename: AnsiString; Linkname: AnsiString;
DateGmt: TDateTime)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddLink` adds a hard link entry to the archive. The entry has name `FileName`, timestamp `DateGmt` and points to `LinkName`.

The link entry is written with the current owner data and permissions.

See also: `TTarWriter.AddFile` (503), `TTarWriter.AddStream` (503), `TTarWriter.AddSymbolicLink` (504), `TTarWriter.AddDir` (504), `TTarWriter.AddString` (504), `TTarWriter.AddVolumeHeader` (505)

22.6.12 TTarWriter.AddVolumeHeader

Synopsis: Add volume header entry

Declaration: `procedure AddVolumeHeader (VolumeId: AnsiString; DateGmt: TDateTime)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddVolumeHeader` adds a volume header entry to the archive. The entry is written with name `VolumeID` and timestamp `DateGmt`.

The volume header entry is written with the current owner data and permissions.

See also: `TTarWriter.AddFile` (503), `TTarWriter.AddStream` (503), `TTarWriter.AddSymbolicLink` (504), `TTarWriter.AddDir` (504), `TTarWriter.AddString` (504), `TTarWriter.AddLink` (505)

22.6.13 TTarWriter.Finalize

Synopsis: Finalize the archive

Declaration: `procedure Finalize`

Visibility: public

Description: `Finalize` writes the end-of-archive marker to the archive. No more entries can be added after `Finalize` was called.

If the `TTarWriter` instance is destroyed, it will automatically call `finalize` if `finalize` was not yet called.

See also: `TTarWriter.Destroy` (503)

22.6.14 TTarWriter.Permissions

Synopsis: Archive entry permissions

Declaration: `Property Permissions : TTarPermissions`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: `Permissions` is used for the permissions field of the archive entries.

See also: `TTarDirRec` (498)

22.6.15 TTarWriter.UID

Synopsis: Archive entry user ID

Declaration: `Property UID : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `UID` is used for the `UID` field of the archive entries.

See also: `TTarDirRec` ([498](#))

22.6.16 TTarWriter.GID

Synopsis: Archive entry group ID

Declaration: `Property GID : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `GID` is used for the `GID` field of the archive entries.

See also: `TTarDirRec` ([498](#))

22.6.17 TTarWriter.UserName

Synopsis: Archive entry user name

Declaration: `Property UserName : AnsiString`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `UserName` is used for the `UserName` field of the archive entries.

See also: `TTarDirRec` ([498](#))

22.6.18 TTarWriter.GroupName

Synopsis: Archive entry group name

Declaration: `Property GroupName : AnsiString`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `GroupName` is used for the `GroupName` field of the archive entries.

See also: `TTarDirRec` ([498](#))

22.6.19 TTarWriter.Mode

Synopsis: Archive entry mode

Declaration: `Property Mode : TTarModes`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Mode` is used for the `Mode` field of the archive entries.

See also: `TTarDirRec` ([498](#))

22.6.20 TTarWriter.Magic

Synopsis: Archive entry Magic constant

Declaration: `Property Magic : AnsiString`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Magic` is used for the `Magic` field of the archive entries.

See also: `TTarDirRec` ([498](#))

Chapter 23

Reference for unit 'mssqlconn'

23.1 Used units

Table 23.1: Used units by unit 'mssqlconn'

Name	Page
BufDataset	??
Classes	??
db	227
dblib	??
sqldb	574
System	??
sysutils	??

23.2 Overview

Connector to Microsoft SQL Server databases. Needs FreeTDS dblib library.

23.3 Constants, types and variables

23.3.1 Types

`TClientCharset = (ccNone, ccUTF8, ccISO88591, ccUnknown)`

Table 23.2: Enumeration values for type TClientCharset

Value	Explanation
ccISO88591	
ccNone	
ccUnknown	
ccUTF8	

```

TServerInfo = record
  ServerVersion : string;
  ServerVersionString : string;
  UserName : string;
end

```

23.3.2 Variables

```
DBLibLibraryName : string = DBLIBDLL
```

23.4 EMSSQLDatabaseError

23.4.1 Description

Sybase/MS SQL Server specific error

23.5 TMSSQLConnection

23.5.1 Description

Connector to Microsoft SQL Server databases.

Requirements:

MS SQL Server Client Library is required (ntwdblib.dll)

- or -

FreeTDS (dblib.dll)

Older FreeTDS libraries may require freetds.conf: (<http://www.freetds.org/userguide/freetdsconf.htm>)

[global]

tds version = 7.1

client charset = UTF-8

port = 1433 or instance = ... (optional)

dump file = freetds.log (optional)

text size = 2147483647 (optional)

Known problems:

- CHAR/VARCHAR data truncated to column length when encoding to UTF-8 (use NCHAR/NVARCHAR instead or CAST char/varchar to nchar/nvarchar)
- Multiple result sets (MARS) are not supported (for example when SP returns more than 1 result set only 1st is processed)
- DB-Library error 10038 "Results Pending": set TSQLQuery.PacketRecords=-1 to fetch all pending rows
- BLOB data (IMAGE/TEXT columns) larger than 16MB are truncated to 16MB: (set TMSSQL-Connection.Params: 'TEXTSIZE=2147483647' or execute 'SET TEXTSIZE 2147483647')

23.5.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
510	Create	
510	CreateDB	
510	DropDB	
510	GetConnectionInfo	

23.5.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
511	CharSet		
512	Connected		
512	DatabaseName		
511	HostName		Host and optionally port or instance
512	KeepConnection		
512	LoginPrompt		
513	OnLogin		
512	Params		
510	Password		
512	Role		
511	Transaction		
511	UserName		

23.5.4 TMSSQLConnection.Create

Declaration: constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override

Visibility: public

23.5.5 TMSSQLConnection.GetConnectionInfo

Declaration: function GetConnectionInfo(InfoType: TConnInfoType) : string; Override

Visibility: public

23.5.6 TMSSQLConnection.CreateDB

Declaration: procedure CreateDB; Override

Visibility: public

23.5.7 TMSSQLConnection.DropDB

Declaration: procedure DropDB; Override

Visibility: public

23.5.8 TMSSQLConnection.Password

Declaration: Property Password :

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `TMSSQLConnection` specific: if you don't enter a `UserName` and `Password`, the connector will try to use Trusted Authentication/SSPI (on Windows only).

23.5.9 `TMSSQLConnection.Transaction`

Declaration: `Property Transaction :`

Visibility: published

Access:

23.5.10 `TMSSQLConnection.UserName`

Declaration: `Property UserName :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `TMSSQLConnection` specific: if you don't enter a `UserName` and `Password`, the connector will try to use Trusted Authentication/SSPI (on Windows only).

23.5.11 `TMSSQLConnection.CharSet`

Declaration: `Property CharSet :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: Character Set - if you use Microsoft DB-Lib and set to 'UTF-8' then char/varchar fields will be UTF8Encoded/Decoded.

If you use FreeTDS DB-Lib, then you must compile with iconv support (requires libiconv2.dll) or cast char/varchar to nchar/nvarchar in SELECTs.

23.5.12 `TMSSQLConnection.HostName`

Synopsis: Host and optionally port or instance

Declaration: `Property HostName :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `TMSSQLConnection` specific: you can specify an instance or a port after the host name itself.

Instance should be specified with a backslash e.g.: 127.0.0.1\SQLEXPRESS. Port should be specified with a colon, e.g. BIGBADSERVER:1433

See <http://www.freetds.org/userguide/portoverride.htm>

23.5.13 TMSSQLConnection.Connected

Declaration: `Property Connected :`

Visibility: published

Access:

23.5.14 TMSSQLConnection.Role

Declaration: `Property Role :`

Visibility: published

Access:

23.5.15 TMSSQLConnection.DatabaseName

Declaration: `Property DatabaseName :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `TMSSQLConnection` specific: the master database should always exist on a server.

23.5.16 TMSSQLConnection.KeepConnection

Declaration: `Property KeepConnection :`

Visibility: published

Access:

23.5.17 TMSSQLConnection.LoginPrompt

Declaration: `Property LoginPrompt :`

Visibility: published

Access:

23.5.18 TMSSQLConnection.Params

Declaration: `Property Params :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `TMSSQLConnection` specific:

set "AutoCommit=true" if you don't want to explicitly commit/rollback transactions

set "TextSize=16777216" - to set maximum size of blob/text/image data returned. Otherwise, these large fields may be cut off when retrieving/setting data.

23.5.19 TMSSQLConnection.OnLogin

Declaration: `Property OnLogin :`

Visibility: `published`

Access:

23.6 TMSSQLConnectionDef

23.6.1 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
513	<code>ConnectionClass</code>	
513	<code>DefaultLibraryName</code>	
513	<code>Description</code>	
514	<code>LoadedLibraryName</code>	
513	<code>LoadFunction</code>	
513	<code>TypeName</code>	
514	<code>UnLoadFunction</code>	

23.6.2 TMSSQLConnectionDef.TypeName

Declaration: `class function TypeName; Override`

Visibility: `default`

23.6.3 TMSSQLConnectionDef.ConnectionClass

Declaration: `class function ConnectionClass; Override`

Visibility: `default`

23.6.4 TMSSQLConnectionDef.Description

Declaration: `class function Description; Override`

Visibility: `default`

23.6.5 TMSSQLConnectionDef.DefaultLibraryName

Declaration: `class function DefaultLibraryName; Override`

Visibility: `default`

23.6.6 TMSSQLConnectionDef.LoadFunction

Declaration: `class function LoadFunction; Override`

Visibility: `default`

23.6.7 TMSQLConnectionDef.UnLoadFunction

Declaration: `class function UnLoadFunction; Override`

Visibility: `default`

23.6.8 TMSQLConnectionDef.LoadedLibraryName

Declaration: `class function LoadedLibraryName; Override`

Visibility: `default`

23.7 TSybaseConnection

23.7.1 Description

Connector to Sybase Adaptive Server Enterprise (ASE) database servers.

Requirements:

FreeTDS (dblib.dll)

Older FreeTDS libraries may require freetds.conf: (<http://www.freetds.org/userguide/freetdsconf.htm>)

[global]

tds version = 7.1

client charset = UTF-8

port = 5000 (optional)

dump file = freetds.log (optional)

text size = 2147483647 (optional)

23.7.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
514	Create	

23.7.3 TSybaseConnection.Create

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

23.8 TSybaseConnectionDef

23.8.1 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
515	ConnectionClass	
515	Description	
515	TypeName	

23.8.2 TSybaseConnectionDef.TypeName

Declaration: `class function TypeName; Override`

Visibility: `default`

23.8.3 TSybaseConnectionDef.ConnectionClass

Declaration: `class function ConnectionClass; Override`

Visibility: `default`

23.8.4 TSybaseConnectionDef.Description

Declaration: `class function Description; Override`

Visibility: `default`

Chapter 24

Reference for unit 'Pipes'

24.1 Used units

Table 24.1: Used units by unit 'Pipes'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

24.2 Overview

The Pipes unit implements streams that are wrappers around the OS's pipe functionality. It creates a pair of streams, and what is written to one stream can be read from another.

24.3 Constants, types and variables

24.3.1 Constants

`ENoSeekMsg = 'Cannot seek on pipes'`

Constant used in `EPipeSeek` ([517](#)) exception.

`EPipeMsg = 'Failed to create pipe.'`

Constant used in `EPipeCreation` ([517](#)) exception.

24.4 Procedures and functions

24.4.1 CreatePipeHandles

Synopsis: Function to create a set of pipe handles

Declaration: `function CreatePipeHandles(var InHandle: THandle; var OutHandle: THandle;
APipeBufferSize: Cardinal) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `CreatePipeHandles` provides an OS-independent way to create a set of pipe filehandles. These handles are inheritable to child processes. The reading end of the pipe is returned in `InHandle`, the writing end in `OutHandle`.

Errors: On error, `False` is returned.

See also: `CreatePipeStreams` (517)

24.4.2 CreatePipeStreams

Synopsis: Create a pair of pipe stream.

Declaration: `procedure CreatePipeStreams(var InPipe: TInputPipeStream;
var OutPipe: TOutputPipeStream)`

Visibility: default

Description: `CreatePipeStreams` creates a set of pipe file descriptors with `CreatePipeHandles` (516), and if that call is successful, a pair of streams is created: `InPipe` and `OutPipe`.

Errors: If no pipe handles could be created, an `EPipeCreation` (517) exception is raised.

See also: `CreatePipeHandles` (516), `TInputPipeStream` (517), `TOutputPipeStream` (519)

24.5 EPipeCreation

24.5.1 Description

Exception raised when an error occurred during the creation of a pipe pair.

24.6 EPipeError

24.6.1 Description

Exception raised when an invalid operation is performed on a pipe stream.

24.7 EPipeSeek

24.7.1 Description

Exception raised when an invalid seek operation is attempted on a pipe.

24.8 TInputPipeStream

24.8.1 Description

`TInputPipeStream` is created by the `CreatePipeStreams` (517) call to represent the reading end of a pipe. It is a `TStream` (??) descendent which does not allow writing, and which mimics the seek operation.

See also: TStream (??), CreatePipeStreams (517), TOutputPipeStream (519)

24.8.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
518	Destroy	
519	Read	Read data from the stream to a buffer.
518	Seek	Set the current position of the stream
518	Write	Write data to the stream.

24.8.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
519	NumBytesAvailable	r	Number of bytes available for reading.

24.8.4 TInputPipeStream.Destroy

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

24.8.5 TInputPipeStream.Write

Synopsis: Write data to the stream.

Declaration: `function Write(const Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Write` overrides the parent implementation of `Write`. On a `TInputPipeStream` will always raise an exception, as the pipe is read-only.

Errors: An `EStreamError` (??) exception is raised when this function is called.

See also: `Read` (519), `Seek` (518)

24.8.6 TInputPipeStream.Seek

Synopsis: Set the current position of the stream

Declaration: `function Seek(const Offset: Int64; Origin: TSeekOrigin) : Int64; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Seek` overrides the standard `Seek` implementation. Normally, pipe streams stderr are not seekable. The `TInputPipeStream` stream tries to provide seek capabilities for the following limited number of cases:

Origin=soFromBeginning If `Offset` is larger than the current position, then the remaining bytes are skipped by reading them from the stream and discarding them.

Origin=soFromCurrent If `Offset` is zero, the current position is returned. If it is positive, then `Offset` bytes are skipped by reading them from the stream and discarding them, if the stream is of type `iosInput`.

All other cases will result in a `EPipeSeek` exception.

Errors: An `EPipeSeek` (517) exception is raised if the stream does not allow the requested seek operation.

See also: `EPipeSeek` (517), `Seek` (??)

24.8.7 `TInputPipeStream.Read`

Synopsis: Read data from the stream to a buffer.

Declaration: `function Read(var Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Read` calls the inherited read and adjusts the internal position pointer of the stream.

Errors: None.

See also: `Write` (518), `Seek` (518)

24.8.8 `TInputPipeStream.NumBytesAvailable`

Synopsis: Number of bytes available for reading.

Declaration: `Property NumBytesAvailable : DWord`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `NumBytesAvailable` is the number of bytes available for reading. This is the number of bytes in the OS buffer for the pipe. It is not a number of bytes in an internal buffer.

If this number is nonzero, then reading `NumBytesAvailable` bytes from the stream will not block the process. Reading more than `NumBytesAvailable` bytes will block the process, while it waits for the requested number of bytes to become available.

See also: `TInputPipeStream.Read` (519)

24.9 `TOutputPipeStream`

24.9.1 Description

`TOutputPipeStream` is created by the `CreatePipeStreams` (517) call to represent the writing end of a pipe. It is a `TStream` (??) descendent which does not allow reading.

See also: `TStream` (??), `CreatePipeStreams` (517), `TInputPipeStream` (517)

24.9.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
520	<code>Destroy</code>	
520	<code>Read</code>	Read data from the stream.
520	<code>Seek</code>	Sets the position in the stream

24.9.3 TOutputPipeStream.Destroy

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

24.9.4 TOutputPipeStream.Seek

Synopsis: Sets the position in the stream

Declaration: `function Seek(const Offset: Int64; Origin: TSeekOrigin) : Int64
; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Seek` is overridden in `TOutputPipeStream`. Calling this method will always raise an exception: an output pipe is not seekable.

Errors: An `EPipeSeek` ([517](#)) exception is raised if this method is called.

24.9.5 TOutputPipeStream.Read

Synopsis: Read data from the stream.

Declaration: `function Read(var Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Read` overrides the parent `Read` implementation. It always raises an exception, because a output pipe is write-only.

Errors: An `EStreamError` (??) exception is raised when this function is called.

See also: `Seek` ([520](#))

Chapter 25

Reference for unit 'pooledmm'

25.1 Used units

Table 25.1: Used units by unit 'pooledmm'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??

25.2 Overview

`pooledmm` is a memory manager class which uses pools of blocks. Since it is a higher-level implementation of a memory manager which works on top of the FPC memory manager, It also offers more debugging and analysis tools. It is used mainly in the LCL and Lazarus IDE.

25.3 Constants, types and variables

25.3.1 Types

```
PPooledMemManagerItem = ^TPooledMemManagerItem
```

`PPooledMemManagerItem` is a pointer type, pointing to a `TPooledMemManagerItem` (522) item, used in a linked list.

```
TEnumItemsMethod = procedure(Item: Pointer) of object
```

`TEnumItemsMethod` is a prototype for the callback used in the `TNonFreePooledMemManager.EnumerateItems` (523) call. The parameter `Item` will be set to each of the pointers in the item list of `TNonFreePooledMemManager` (522).

```
TPooledMemManagerItem = record
  Next : PPooledMemManagerItem;
end
```

`TPooledMemManagerItem` is used internally by the `TPooledMemManager` (524) class to maintain the free list block. It simply points to the next free block.

25.4 TNonFreePooledMemManager

25.4.1 Description

`TNonFreePooledMemManager` keeps a list of fixed-size memory blocks in memory. Each block has the same size, making it suitable for storing a lot of records of the same type. It does not free the items stored in it, except when the list is cleared as a whole.

It allocates memory for the blocks in an exponential way, i.e. each time a new block of memory must be allocated, its size is the double of the last block. The first block will contain 8 items.

25.4.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
522	<code>Clear</code>	Clears the memory
522	<code>Create</code>	Creates a new instance of <code>TNonFreePooledMemManager</code>
523	<code>Destroy</code>	Removes the <code>TNonFreePooledMemManager</code> instance from memory
523	<code>EnumerateItems</code>	Enumerate all items in the list
523	<code>NewItem</code>	Return a pointer to a new memory block

25.4.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
523	<code>ItemSize</code>	<code>r</code>	Size of an item in the list

25.4.4 TNonFreePooledMemManager.Clear

Synopsis: Clears the memory

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` clears all blocks from memory, freeing the allocated memory blocks. None of the pointers returned by `NewItem` (523) is valid after a call to `Clear`

See also: `NewItem` (523)

25.4.5 TNonFreePooledMemManager.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new instance of `TNonFreePooledMemManager`

Declaration: `constructor Create(TheItemSize: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of `TNonFreePooledMemManager` and sets the item size to `TheItemSize`.

Errors: If not enough memory is available, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TNonFreePooledMemManager.ItemSize` (523)

25.4.6 TNonFreePooledMemManager.Destroy

Synopsis: Removes the `TNonFreePooledMemManager` instance from memory

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` clears the list, clears the internal structures, and then calls the inherited `Destroy`.

`Destroy` should never be called directly. Instead `Free` should be used, or `FreeAndNil`

See also: `TNonFreePooledMemManager.Create` ([522](#)), `TNonFreePooledMemManager.Clear` ([522](#))

25.4.7 TNonFreePooledMemManager.NewItem

Synopsis: Return a pointer to a new memory block

Declaration: `function NewItem : Pointer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `NewItem` returns a pointer to an unused memory block of size `ItemSize` ([523](#)). It will allocate new memory on the heap if necessary.

Note that there is no way to mark the memory block as free, except by clearing the whole list.

Errors: If no more memory is available, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TNonFreePooledMemManager.Clear` ([522](#))

25.4.8 TNonFreePooledMemManager.EnumerateItems

Synopsis: Enumerate all items in the list

Declaration: `procedure EnumerateItems(const Method: TEnumItemsMethod)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `EnumerateItems` will enumerate over all items in the list, passing the items to `Method`. This can be used to execute certain operations on all items in the list. (for example, simply list them)

25.4.9 TNonFreePooledMemManager.ItemSize

Synopsis: Size of an item in the list

Declaration: `Property ItemSize : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `ItemSize` is the size of a single block in the list. It's a fixed size determined when the list is created.

See also: `TNonFreePooledMemManager.Create` ([522](#))

25.5 TPooledMemManager

25.5.1 Description

`TPooledMemManager` is a class which maintains a linked list of blocks, represented by the `TPooledMemManagerItem` (522) record. It should not be used directly, but should be descended from and the descendent should implement the actual memory manager.

See also: `TPooledMemManagerItem` (522)

25.5.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
524	<code>Clear</code>	Clears the list
524	<code>Create</code>	Creates a new instance of the <code>TPooledMemManager</code> class
525	<code>Destroy</code>	Removes an instance of <code>TPooledMemManager</code> class from memory

25.5.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
526	<code>AllocatedCount</code>	r	Total number of allocated items in the list
525	<code>Count</code>	r	Number of items in the list
526	<code>FreeCount</code>	r	Number of free items in the list
526	<code>FreedCount</code>	r	Total number of freed items in the list.
525	<code>MaximumFreeCountRatio</code>	rw	Maximum ratio of free items over total items
525	<code>MinimumFreeCount</code>	rw	Minimum count of free items in the list

25.5.4 TPooledMemManager.Clear

Synopsis: Clears the list

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` clears the list, it disposes all items in the list.

See also: `TPooledMemManager.FreedCount` (526)

25.5.5 TPooledMemManager.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new instance of the `TPooledMemManager` class

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes all necessary properties and then calls the inherited `create`.

See also: `TPooledMemManager.Destroy` (525)

25.5.6 TPooledMemManager.Destroy

Synopsis: Removes an instance of `TPooledMemManager` class from memory

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` calls `Clear` (524) and then calls the inherited `destroy`.

`Destroy` should never be called directly. Instead `Free` should be used, or `FreeAndNil`

See also: `TPooledMemManager.Create` (524)

25.5.7 TPooledMemManager.MinimumFreeCount

Synopsis: Minimum count of free items in the list

Declaration: `Property MinimumFreeCount : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `MinimumFreeCount` is the minimum number of free items in the linked list. When disposing an item in the list, the number of items is checked, and only if the required number of free items is present, the item is actually freed.

The default value is 100000

See also: `TPooledMemManager.MaximumFreeCountRatio` (525)

25.5.8 TPooledMemManager.MaximumFreeCountRatio

Synopsis: Maximum ratio of free items over total items

Declaration: `Property MaximumFreeCountRatio : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `MaximumFreeCountRatio` is the maximum ratio (divided by 8) of free elements over the total amount of elements: When disposing an item in the list, if the number of free items is higher than this ratio, the item is freed.

The default value is 8.

See also: `TPooledMemManager.MinimumFreeCount` (525)

25.5.9 TPooledMemManager.Count

Synopsis: Number of items in the list

Declaration: `Property Count : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Count` is the total number of items allocated from the list.

See also: `TPooledMemManager.FreeCount` (526), `TPooledMemManager.AllocatedCount` (526), `TPooledMemManager.FreedCount` (526)

25.5.10 TPooledMemManager.FreeCount

Synopsis: Number of free items in the list

Declaration: `Property FreeCount : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `FreeCount` is the current total number of free items in the list.

See also: `TPooledMemManager.Count` ([525](#)), `TPooledMemManager.AllocatedCount` ([526](#)), `TPooledMemManager.FreedCount` ([526](#))

25.5.11 TPooledMemManager.AllocatedCount

Synopsis: Total number of allocated items in the list

Declaration: `Property AllocatedCount : Int64`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `AllocatedCount` is the total number of newly allocated items on the list.

See also: `TPooledMemManager.Count` ([525](#)), `TPooledMemManager.FreeCount` ([526](#)), `TPooledMemManager.FreedCount` ([526](#))

25.5.12 TPooledMemManager.FreedCount

Synopsis: Total number of freed items in the list.

Declaration: `Property FreedCount : Int64`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `FreedCount` is the total number of elements actually freed in the list.

See also: `TPooledMemManager.Count` ([525](#)), `TPooledMemManager.FreeCount` ([526](#)), `TPooledMemManager.AllocatedCount` ([526](#))

Chapter 26

Reference for unit 'process'

26.1 Used units

Table 26.1: Used units by unit 'process'

Name	Page
Classes	??
Pipes	516
System	??
sysutils	??

26.2 Overview

The `Process` unit contains the code for the `TProcess` ([531](#)) component, a cross-platform component to start and control other programs, offering also access to standard input and output for these programs.

`TProcess` does not handle wildcard expansion, does not support complex pipelines as in Unix. If this behaviour is desired, the shell can be executed with the pipeline as the command it should execute.

26.3 Constants, types and variables

26.3.1 Types

`TProcessForkEvent` = procedure

`TProcessForkEvent` is the prototype for `TProcess.OnForkEvent` ([539](#)). It is a simple procedure, as the idea is that only process-global things should be performed in this event handler.

```
TProcessOption = (poRunSuspended, poWaitOnExit, poUsePipes,
                  poStderrToOutPut, poNoConsole, poNewConsole,
                  poDefaultErrorMode, poNewProcessGroup, poDebugProcess,
                  poDebugOnlyThisProcess)
```


Table 26.2: Enumeration values for type TProcessOption

Value	Explanation
poDebugOnlyThisProcess	Do not follow processes started by this process (Win32 only)
poDebugProcess	Allow debugging of the process (Win32 only)
poDefaultErrorMode	Use default error handling.
poNewConsole	Start a new console window for the process (Win32 only)
poNewProcessGroup	Start the process in a new process group (Win32 only)
poNoConsole	Do not allow access to the console window for the process (Win32 only)
poRunSuspended	Start the process in suspended state.
poStderrToOutPut	Redirect standard error to the standard output stream.
poUsePipes	Use pipes to redirect standard input and output.
poWaitOnExit	Wait for the process to terminate before returning.

When a new process is started using `TProcess.Execute` (533), these options control the way the process is started. Note that not all options are supported on all platforms.

`TProcessOptions = Set of TProcessOption`

Set of `TProcessOption` (528).

`TProcessPriority = (ppHigh, ppIdle, ppNormal, ppRealTime)`

Table 26.3: Enumeration values for type TProcessPriority

Value	Explanation
ppHigh	The process runs at higher than normal priority.
ppIdle	The process only runs when the system is idle (i.e. has nothing else to do)
ppNormal	The process runs at normal priority.
ppRealTime	The process runs at real-time priority.

This enumerated type determines the priority of the newly started process. It translates to default platform specific constants. If finer control is needed, then platform-dependent mechanism need to be used to set the priority.

`TShowWindowOptions = (swoNone, swoHIDE, swoMaximize, swoMinimize, swoRestore, swoShow, swoShowDefault, swoShowMaximized, swoShowMinimized, swoshowMinNOActive, swoShowNA, swoShowNoActivate, swoShowNormal)`

Table 26.4: Enumeration values for type TShowWindowOptions

Value	Explanation
swoHIDE	The main window is hidden.
swoMaximize	The main window is maximized.
swoMinimize	The main window is minimized.
swoNone	Allow system to position the window.
swoRestore	Restore the previous position.
swoShow	Show the main window.
swoShowDefault	When showing Show the main window on
swoShowMaximized	The main window is shown maximized
swoShowMinimized	The main window is shown minimized
swoshowMinNOActive	The main window is shown minimized but not activated
swoShowNA	The main window is shown but not activated
swoShowNoActivate	The main window is shown but not activated
swoShowNormal	The main window is shown normally

This type describes what the new process' main window should look like. Most of these have only effect on Windows. They are ignored on other systems.

```
TStartupOption = (suoUseShowWindow, suoUseSize, suoUsePosition,
                  suoUseCountChars, suoUseFillAttribute)
```

Table 26.5: Enumeration values for type TStartupOption

Value	Explanation
suoUseCountChars	Use the console character width as specified in TProcess (531).
suoUseFillAttribute	Use the console fill attribute as specified in TProcess (531).
suoUsePosition	Use the window sizes as specified in TProcess (531).
suoUseShowWindow	Use the Show Window options specified in TShowWindowOption (528)
suoUseSize	Use the window sizes as specified in TProcess (531)

These options are mainly for Win32, and determine what should be done with the application once it's started.

```
TStartupOptions = Set of TStartupOption
```

Set of TStartupOption (529).

26.3.2 Variables

```
TryTerminals : Array of string
```

TryTerminals is used under unix to test for available terminal programs in the DetectXTerm (530) function. If XTermProgram (529) is empty, each item in this list will be searched in the path, and used as a terminal program if it was found.

```
XTermProgram : string
```

XTermProgram is the terminal program that is used. If empty, it will be set the first time DetectXTerm (530) is called.

26.4 Procedures and functions

26.4.1 CommandToList

Declaration: `procedure CommandToList(S: string; List: TStrings)`

Visibility: default

26.4.2 DetectXTerm

Synopsis: Detect the terminal program.

Declaration: `function DetectXTerm : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `DetectXTerm` checks if `XTermProgram` (529) is set. if so, it returns that. If `XTermProgram` is empty, the list specified in `TryTerminals` (529) is tested for existence. If none is found, then the `DESKTOP_SESSION` environment variable is examined:

kdekonsole is used if it is found.

gnome `gnome-terminal` is used if it is found

windowmaker `aterm` or `xterm` are used if found.

If after all this, no terminal is found, then a list of default programs is tested: `'x-terminal-emulator'`, `'xterm'`, `'aterm'`, `'wterm'`, `'rxvt'`

If a terminal program is found, then it is saved in `XTermProgram`, so the next call to `DetectXTerm` will re-use the value. If the search must be performed again, it is sufficient to set `XTermProgram` to the empty string.

See also: `XTermProgram` (529), `TryTerminals` (529), `TProcess.XTermProgram` (547)

26.4.3 RunCommand

Declaration: `function RunCommand(const exename: string;
const commands: Array of string;
var outputstring: string) : Boolean
function RunCommand(const cmdline: string; var outputstring: string)
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

26.4.4 RunCommandIndir

Declaration: `function RunCommandIndir(const curdir: string; const exename: string;
const commands: Array of string;
var outputstring: string;
var exitstatus: Integer) : Integer
function RunCommandIndir(const curdir: string; const exename: string;
const commands: Array of string;
var outputstring: string) : Boolean
function RunCommandInDir(const curdir: string; const cmdline: string;
var outputstring: string) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

26.5 EProcess

26.5.1 Description

Exception raised when an error occurs in a TProcess routine.

See also: TProcess ([531](#))

26.6 TProcess

26.6.1 Description

TProcess is a component that can be used to start and control other processes (programs/binaries). It contains a lot of options that control how the process is started. Many of these are Win32 specific, and have no effect on other platforms, so they should be used with care.

The simplest way to use this component is to create an instance, set the CommandLine ([540](#)) property to the full pathname of the program that should be executed, and call Execute ([533](#)). To determine whether the process is still running (i.e. has not stopped executing), the Running ([544](#)) property can be checked.

More advanced techniques can be used with the Options ([542](#)) settings.

See also: Create ([532](#)), Execute ([533](#)), Running ([544](#)), CommandLine ([540](#)), Options ([542](#))

26.6.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
533	CloseInput	Close the input stream of the process
534	CloseOutput	Close the output stream of the process
534	CloseStderr	Close the error stream of the process
532	Create	Create a new instance of the TProcess class.
533	Destroy	Destroy this instance of TProcess
533	Execute	Execute the program with the given options
534	Resume	Resume execution of a suspended process
534	Suspend	Suspend a running process
535	Terminate	Terminate a running process
535	WaitOnExit	Wait for the program to stop executing.

26.6.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
539	Active	rw	Start or stop the process.
539	ApplicationName	rw	Name of the application to start (deprecated)
540	CommandLine	rw	Command-line to execute (deprecated)
541	ConsoleTitle	rw	Title of the console window
541	CurrentDirectory	rw	Working directory of the process.
542	Desktop	rw	Desktop on which to start the process.
542	Environment	rw	Environment variables for the new process
540	Executable	rw	Executable name. Supersedes <code>CommandLine</code> and <code>ApplicationName</code> .
538	ExitStatus	r	Exit status of the process.
547	FillAttribute	rw	Color attributes of the characters in the console window (Windows only)
535	Handle	r	Handle of the process
538	InheritHandles	rw	Should the created process inherit the open handles of the current process.
537	Input	r	Stream connected to standard input of the process.
539	OnForkEvent	rw	Event triggered after fork occurred on Linux
542	Options	rw	Options to be used when starting the process.
537	Output	r	Stream connected to standard output of the process.
540	Parameters	rw	Command-line arguments. Supersedes <code>CommandLine</code> .
539	PipeBufferSize	rw	
543	Priority	rw	Priority at which the process is running.
536	ProcessHandle	r	Alias for <code>Handle</code> (535)
536	ProcessID	r	ID of the process.
544	Running	r	Determines whether the process is still running.
544	ShowWindow	rw	Determines how the process main window is shown (Windows only)
544	StartupOptions	rw	Additional (Windows) startup options
538	Stderr	r	Stream connected to standard diagnostic output of the process.
536	ThreadHandle	r	Main process thread handle
537	ThreadID	r	ID of the main process thread
545	WindowColumns	rw	Number of columns in console window (windows only)
545	WindowHeight	rw	Height of the process main window
546	WindowLeft	rw	X-coordinate of the initial window (Windows only)
535	WindowRect	rw	Positions for the main program window.
546	WindowRows	rw	Number of rows in console window (Windows only)
546	WindowTop	rw	Y-coordinate of the initial window (Windows only)
547	WindowWidth	rw	Height of the process main window (Windows only)
547	XTermProgram	rw	XTerm program to use (unix only)

26.6.4 TProcess.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TProcess` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of the `TProcess` class. After calling the inherited constructor, it simply sets some default values.

26.6.5 TProcess.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroy this instance of TProcess

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans up this instance of TProcess. Prior to calling the inherited destructor, it cleans up any streams that may have been created. If a process was started and is still executed, it is *not* stopped, but the standard input/output/stderr streams are no longer available, because they have been destroyed.

Errors: None.

See also: `Create` (532)

26.6.6 TProcess.Execute

Synopsis: Execute the program with the given options

Declaration: `procedure Execute; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Execute` actually executes the program as specified in `CommandLine` (540), applying as much as of the specified options as supported on the current platform.

If the `poWaitOnExit` option is specified in `Options` (542), then the call will only return when the program has finished executing (or if an error occurred). If this option is not given, the call returns immediately, but the `WaitOnExit` (535) call can be used to wait for it to close, or the `Running` (544) call can be used to check whether it is still running.

The `TProcess.Terminate` (535) call can be used to terminate the program if it is still running, or the `Suspend` (534) call can be used to temporarily stop the program's execution.

The `ExitStatus` (538) function can be used to check the program's exit status, after it has stopped executing.

Errors: On error a `EProcess` (531) exception is raised.

See also: `TProcess.Running` (544), `TProcess.WaitOnExit` (535), `TProcess.Terminate` (535), `TProcess.Suspend` (534), `TProcess.Resume` (534), `TProcess.ExitStatus` (538)

26.6.7 TProcess.CloseInput

Synopsis: Close the input stream of the process

Declaration: `procedure CloseInput; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CloseInput` closes the input file descriptor of the process, that is, it closes the handle of the pipe to standard input of the process.

See also: `Input` (537), `StdErr` (538), `Output` (537), `CloseOutput` (534), `CloseStdErr` (534)

26.6.8 TProcess.CloseOutput

Synopsis: Close the output stream of the process

Declaration: `procedure CloseOutput; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CloseOutput` closes the output file descriptor of the process, that is, it closes the handle of the pipe to standard output of the process.

See also: [Output \(537\)](#), [Input \(537\)](#), [StdErr \(538\)](#), [CloseInput \(533\)](#), [CloseStdErr \(534\)](#)

26.6.9 TProcess.CloseStderr

Synopsis: Close the error stream of the process

Declaration: `procedure CloseStderr; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CloseStdErr` closes the standard error file descriptor of the process, that is, it closes the handle of the pipe to standard error output of the process.

See also: [Output \(537\)](#), [Input \(537\)](#), [StdErr \(538\)](#), [CloseInput \(533\)](#), [CloseStdErr \(534\)](#)

26.6.10 TProcess.Resume

Synopsis: Resume execution of a suspended process

Declaration: `function Resume : Integer; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Resume` should be used to let a suspended process resume its execution. It should be called in particular when the `poRunSuspended` flag is set in [Options \(542\)](#).

Errors: None.

See also: [TProcess.Suspend \(534\)](#), [TProcess.Options \(542\)](#), [TProcess.Execute \(533\)](#), [TProcess.Terminate \(535\)](#)

26.6.11 TProcess.Suspend

Synopsis: Suspend a running process

Declaration: `function Suspend : Integer; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Suspend` suspends a running process. If the call is successful, the process is suspended: it stops running, but can be made to execute again using the [Resume \(534\)](#) call.

`Suspend` is fundamentally different from [TProcess.Terminate \(535\)](#) which actually stops the process.

Errors: On error, a nonzero result is returned.

See also: [TProcess.Options \(542\)](#), [TProcess.Resume \(534\)](#), [TProcess.Terminate \(535\)](#), [TProcess.Execute \(533\)](#)

26.6.12 TProcess.Terminate

Synopsis: Terminate a running process

Declaration: `function Terminate(AExitCode: Integer) : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Terminate` stops the execution of the running program. It effectively stops the program.

On Windows, the program will report an exit code of `AExitCode`, on other systems, this value is ignored.

Errors: On error, a nonzero value is returned.

See also: `TProcess.ExitStatus` (538), `TProcess.Suspend` (534), `TProcess.Execute` (533), `TProcess.WaitOnExit` (535)

26.6.13 TProcess.WaitOnExit

Synopsis: Wait for the program to stop executing.

Declaration: `function WaitOnExit : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `WaitOnExit` waits for the running program to exit. It returns `True` if the wait was succesful, or `False` if there was some error waiting for the program to exit.

Note that the return value of this function has changed. The old return value was a `DWord` with a platform dependent error code. To make things consistent and cross-platform, a boolean return type was used.

Errors: On error, `False` is returned. No extended error information is available, as it is highly system dependent.

See also: `TProcess.ExitStatus` (538), `TProcess.Terminate` (535), `TProcess.Running` (544)

26.6.14 TProcess.WindowRect

Synopsis: Positions for the main program window.

Declaration: `Property WindowRect : TRect`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `WindowRect` can be used to specify the position of

26.6.15 TProcess.Handle

Synopsis: Handle of the process

Declaration: `Property Handle : THandle`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Handle` identifies the process. In Unix systems, this is the process ID. On windows, this is the process handle. It can be used to signal the process.

The handle is only valid after `TProcess.Execute` (533) has been called. It is not reset after the process stopped.

See also: `TProcess.ThreadHandle` (536), `TProcess.ProcessID` (536), `TProcess.ThreadID` (537)

26.6.16 TProcess.ProcessHandle

Synopsis: Alias for `Handle` (535)

Declaration: `Property ProcessHandle : THandle`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `ProcessHandle` equals `Handle` (535) and is provided for completeness only.

See also: `TProcess.Handle` (535), `TProcess.ThreadHandle` (536), `TProcess.ProcessID` (536), `TProcess.ThreadID` (537)

26.6.17 TProcess.ThreadHandle

Synopsis: Main process thread handle

Declaration: `Property ThreadHandle : THandle`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `ThreadHandle` is the main process thread handle. On Unix, this is the same as the process ID, on Windows, this may be a different handle than the process handle.

The handle is only valid after `TProcess.Execute` (533) has been called. It is not reset after the process stopped.

See also: `TProcess.Handle` (535), `TProcess.ProcessID` (536), `TProcess.ThreadID` (537)

26.6.18 TProcess.ProcessID

Synopsis: ID of the process.

Declaration: `Property ProcessID : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `ProcessID` is the ID of the process. It is the same as the handle of the process on Unix systems, but on Windows it is different from the process `Handle`.

The ID is only valid after `TProcess.Execute` (533) has been called. It is not reset after the process stopped.

See also: `TProcess.Handle` (535), `TProcess.ThreadHandle` (536), `TProcess.ThreadID` (537)

26.6.19 TProcess.ThreadID

Synopsis: ID of the main process thread

Declaration: `Property ThreadID : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `ProcessID` is the ID of the main process thread. It is the same as the handle of the main process thread (or the process itself) on Unix systems, but on Windows it is different from the thread Handle.

The ID is only valid after `TProcess.Execute` (533) has been called. It is not reset after the process stopped.

See also: `TProcess.ProcessID` (536), `TProcess.Handle` (535), `TProcess.ThreadHandle` (536)

26.6.20 TProcess.Input

Synopsis: Stream connected to standard input of the process.

Declaration: `Property Input : TOutputPipeStream`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Input` is a stream which is connected to the process' standard input file handle. Anything written to this stream can be read by the process.

The `Input` stream is only instantiated when the `poUsePipes` flag is used in `Options` (542).

Note that writing to the stream may cause the calling process to be suspended when the created process is not reading from it's input, or to cause errors when the process has terminated.

See also: `TProcess.OutPut` (537), `TProcess.StdErr` (538), `TProcess.Options` (542), `TProcessOption` (528)

26.6.21 TProcess.Output

Synopsis: Stream connected to standard output of the process.

Declaration: `Property Output : TInputPipeStream`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Output` is a stream which is connected to the process' standard output file handle. Anything written to standard output by the created process can be read from this stream.

The `Output` stream is only instantiated when the `poUsePipes` flag is used in `Options` (542).

The `Output` stream also contains any data written to standard diagnostic output (`stderr`) when the `poStdErrToOutPut` flag is used in `Options` (542).

Note that reading from the stream may cause the calling process to be suspended when the created process is not writing anything to standard output, or to cause errors when the process has terminated.

See also: `TProcess.InPut` (537), `TProcess.StdErr` (538), `TProcess.Options` (542), `TProcessOption` (528)

26.6.22 TProcess.Stderr

Synopsis: Stream connected to standard diagnostic output of the process.

Declaration: `Property Stderr : TInputPipeStream`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `StdErr` is a stream which is connected to the process' standard diagnostic output file handle (`StdErr`). Anything written to standard diagnostic output by the created process can be read from this stream.

The `StdErr` stream is only instantiated when the `poUsePipes` flag is used in `Options` (542).

The Output stream equals the Output (537) when the `poStdErrToOutPut` flag is used in `Options` (542).

Note that reading from the stream may cause the calling process to be suspended when the created process is not writing anything to standard output, or to cause errors when the process has terminated.

See also: `TProcess.InPut` (537), `TProcess.Output` (537), `TProcess.Options` (542), `TProcessOption` (528)

26.6.23 TProcess.ExitStatus

Synopsis: Exit status of the process.

Declaration: `Property ExitStatus : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `ExitStatus` contains the exit status as reported by the process when it stopped executing. The value of this property is only meaningful when the process is no longer running. If it is not running then the value is zero.

See also: `TProcess.Running` (544), `TProcess.Terminate` (535)

26.6.24 TProcess.InheritHandles

Synopsis: Should the created process inherit the open handles of the current process.

Declaration: `Property InheritHandles : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `InheritHandles` determines whether the created process inherits the open handles of the current process (value `True`) or not (`False`).

On Unix, setting this variable has no effect.

See also: `TProcess.InPut` (537), `TProcess.Output` (537), `TProcess.StdErr` (538)

26.6.25 TProcess.OnForkEvent

Synopsis: Event triggered after fork occurred on Linux

Declaration: `Property OnForkEvent : TProcessForkEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnForkEvent` is triggered after the `fpFork` (??) call in the child process. It can be used to e.g. close file descriptors and make changes to other resources before the `fpexecv` (??) call. This event is not used on windows.

See also: [Output \(537\)](#), [Input \(537\)](#), [StdErr \(538\)](#), [CloseInput \(533\)](#), [CloseStdErr \(534\)](#), [TProcessForkEvent \(527\)](#)

26.6.26 TProcess.PipeBufferSize

Declaration: `Property PipeBufferSize : Cardinal`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

26.6.27 TProcess.Active

Synopsis: Start or stop the process.

Declaration: `Property Active : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Active` starts the process if it is set to `True`, or terminates the process if set to `False`. It's mostly intended for use in an IDE.

See also: [TProcess.Execute \(533\)](#), [TProcess.Terminate \(535\)](#)

26.6.28 TProcess.ApplicationName

Synopsis: Name of the application to start (deprecated)

Declaration: `Property ApplicationName : string; deprecated;`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ApplicationName` is an alias for `TProcess.CommandLine` ([540](#)). It's mostly for use in the Windows `CreateProcess` call. If `CommandLine` is not set, then `ApplicationName` will be used instead.

`ApplicationName` is deprecated. New code should use `Executable` ([540](#)) instead, and leave `ApplicationName` empty.

See also: [TProcess.CommandLine \(540\)](#), [TProcess.Executable \(540\)](#), [TProcess.Parameters \(540\)](#)

26.6.29 TProcess.CommandLine

Synopsis: Command-line to execute (deprecated)

Declaration: `Property CommandLine : string; deprecated;`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `CommandLine` is deprecated. To avoid problems with command-line options with spaces in them and the quoting problems that this entails, it has been superseded by the properties `TProcess.Executable` (540) and `TProcess.Parameters` (540), which should be used instead of `CommandLine`. New code should leave `CommandLine` empty.

`CommandLine` is the command-line to be executed: this is the name of the program to be executed, followed by any options it should be passed.

If the command to be executed or any of the arguments contains whitespace (space, tab character, linefeed character) it should be enclosed in single or double quotes.

If no absolute pathname is given for the command to be executed, it is searched for in the `PATH` environment variable. On Windows, the current directory always will be searched first. On other platforms, this is not so.

Note that either `CommandLine` or `ApplicationName` must be set prior to calling `Execute`.

See also: `TProcess.ApplicationName` (539), `TProcess.Executable` (540), `TProcess.Parameters` (540)

26.6.30 TProcess.Executable

Synopsis: Executable name. Supersedes `CommandLine` and `ApplicationName`.

Declaration: `Property Executable : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Executable` is the name of the executable to start. It should not contain any command-line arguments. If no path is given, it will be searched in the `PATH` environment variable.

The extension must be given, none will be added by the component itself. It may be that the OS adds the extension, but this behaviour is not guaranteed.

Arguments should be passed in `TProcess.Parameters` (540).

`Executable` supersedes the `TProcess.CommandLine` (540) and `TProcess.ApplicationName` (539) properties, which have been deprecated. However, if either of `CommandLine` or `ApplicationName` is specified, they will be used instead of `Executable`.

See also: `CommandLine` (540), `ApplicationName` (539), `Parameters` (540)

26.6.31 TProcess.Parameters

Synopsis: Command-line arguments. Supersedes `CommandLine`.

Declaration: `Property Parameters : TStrings`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Parameters` contains the command-line arguments that should be passed to the program specified in `Executable` (540).

Commandline arguments should be specified one per item in `Parameters`: each item in `Parameters` will be passed as a separate command-line item. It is therefor not necessary to quote whitespace in the items. As a consequence, it is not allowed to specify multiple command-line parameters in 1 item in the stringlist. If a command needs 2 options `-t` and `-s`, the following is not correct:

```
With Parameters do
begin
add(' -t -s' );
end;
```

Instead, the code should read:

```
With Parameters do
begin
add(' -t' );
Add(' -s' );
end;
```

Remark: Note that `Parameters` is ignored if either of `CommandLine` or `ApplicationName` is specified. It can only be used with `Executable`.

Remark: The idea of using `Parameters` is that they are passed unmodified to the operating system. On Windows, a single command-line string must be constructed, and each parameter is surrounded by double quote characters if it contains a space. The programmer must not quote parameters with spaces.

See also: `Executable` (540), `CommandLine` (540), `ApplicationName` (539)

26.6.32 TProcess.ConsoleTitle

Synopsis: Title of the console window

Declaration: `Property ConsoleTitle : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read, Write

Description: `ConsoleTitle` is used on Windows when executing a console application: it specifies the title caption of the console window. On other platforms, this property is currently ignored.

Changing this property after the process was started has no effect.

See also: `TProcess.WindowColumns` (545), `TProcess.WindowRows` (546)

26.6.33 TProcess.CurrentDirectory

Synopsis: Working directory of the process.

Declaration: `Property CurrentDirectory : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read, Write

Description: `CurrentDirectory` specifies the working directory of the newly started process.

Changing this property after the process was started has no effect.

See also: `TProcess.Environment` ([542](#))

26.6.34 TProcess.Desktop

Synopsis: Desktop on which to start the process.

Declaration: `Property Desktop : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `DeskTop` is used on Windows to determine on which desktop the process' main window should be shown. Leaving this empty means the process is started on the same desktop as the currently running process.

Changing this property after the process was started has no effect.

On unix, this parameter is ignored.

See also: `TProcess.Input` ([537](#)), `TProcess.Output` ([537](#)), `TProcess.StdErr` ([538](#))

26.6.35 TProcess.Environment

Synopsis: Environment variables for the new process

Declaration: `Property Environment : TStringList`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Environment` contains the environment for the new process; it's a list of `Name=Value` pairs, one per line.

If it is empty, the environment of the current process is passed on to the new process.

See also: `TProcess.Options` ([542](#))

26.6.36 TProcess.Options

Synopsis: Options to be used when starting the process.

Declaration: `Property Options : TProcessOptions`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Options` determine how the process is started. They should be set before the `Execute` ([533](#)) call is made.

Table 26.6:

Option	Meaning
<code>poRunSuspended</code>	Start the process in suspended state.
<code>poWaitOnExit</code>	Wait for the process to terminate before returning.
<code>poUsePipes</code>	Use pipes to redirect standard input and output.
<code>poStderrToOutPut</code>	Redirect standard error to the standard output stream.
<code>poNoConsole</code>	Do not allow access to the console window for the process (Win32 only)
<code>poNewConsole</code>	Start a new console window for the process (Win32 only)
<code>poDefaultErrorMode</code>	Use default error handling.
<code>poNewProcessGroup</code>	Start the process in a new process group (Win32 only)
<code>poDebugProcess</code>	Allow debugging of the process (Win32 only)
<code>poDebugOnlyThisProcess</code>	Do not follow processes started by this process (Win32 only)

See also: `TProcessOption` (528), `TProcessOptions` (528), `TProcess.Priority` (543), `TProcess.StartupOptions` (544)

26.6.37 TProcess.Priority

Synopsis: Priority at which the process is running.

Declaration: `Property Priority : TProcessPriority`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Priority` determines the priority at which the process is running.

Table 26.7:

Priority	Meaning
<code>ppHigh</code>	The process runs at higher than normal priority.
<code>ppIdle</code>	The process only runs when the system is idle (i.e. has nothing else to do)
<code>ppNormal</code>	The process runs at normal priority.
<code>ppRealTime</code>	The process runs at real-time priority.

Note that not all priorities can be set by any user. Usually, only users with administrative rights (the root user on Unix) can set a higher process priority.

On unix, the process priority is mapped on `Nice` values as follows:

Table 26.8:

Priority	Nice value
<code>ppHigh</code>	20
<code>ppIdle</code>	20
<code>ppNormal</code>	0
<code>ppRealTime</code>	-20

See also: `TProcessPriority` ([528](#))

26.6.38 `TProcess.StartupOptions`

Synopsis: Additional (Windows) startup options

Declaration: `Property StartupOptions : TStartupOptions`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `StartupOptions` contains additional startup options, used mostly on Windows system. They determine which other window layout properties are taken into account when starting the new process.

Table 26.9:

Priority	Meaning
<code>suoUseShowWindow</code>	Use the Show Window options specified in <code>ShowWindow</code> (544)
<code>suoUseSize</code>	Use the specified window sizes
<code>suoUsePosition</code>	Use the specified window sizes.
<code>suoUseCountChars</code>	Use the specified console character width.
<code>suoUseFillAttribute</code>	Use the console fill attribute specified in <code>FillAttribute</code> (547).

See also: `TProcess.ShowWindow` ([544](#)), `TProcess.WindowHeight` ([545](#)), `TProcess.WindowWidth` ([547](#)), `TProcess.WindowLeft` ([546](#)), `TProcess.WindowTop` ([546](#)), `TProcess.WindowColumns` ([545](#)), `TProcess.WindowRows` ([546](#)), `TProcess.FillAttribute` ([547](#))

26.6.39 `TProcess.Running`

Synopsis: Determines wheter the process is still running.

Declaration: `Property Running : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read

Description: `Running` can be read to determine whether the process is still running.

See also: `TProcess.Terminate` ([535](#)), `TProcess.Active` ([539](#)), `TProcess.ExitStatus` ([538](#))

26.6.40 `TProcess.ShowWindow`

Synopsis: Determines how the process main window is shown (Windows only)

Declaration: `Property ShowWindow : TShowWindowOptions`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: ShowWindow determines how the process' main window is shown. It is useful only on Windows.

Table 26.10:

Option	Meaning
swoNone	Allow system to position the window.
swoHIDE	The main window is hidden.
swoMaximize	The main window is maximized.
swoMinimize	The main window is minimized.
swoRestore	Restore the previous position.
swoShow	Show the main window.
swoShowDefault	When showing Show the main window on a default position
swoShowMaximized	The main window is shown maximized
swoShowMinimized	The main window is shown minimized
swoshowMinNOActive	The main window is shown minimized but not activated
swoShowNA	The main window is shown but not activated
swoShowNoActivate	The main window is shown but not activated
swoShowNormal	The main window is shown normally

26.6.41 TProcess.WindowColumns

Synopsis: Number of columns in console window (windows only)

Declaration: Property WindowColumns : Cardinal

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: WindowColumns is the number of columns in the console window, used to run the command in. This property is only effective if suoUseCountChars is specified in StartupOptions (544)

See also: TProcess.WindowHeight (545), TProcess.WindowWidth (547), TProcess.WindowLeft (546), TProcess.WindowTop (546), TProcess.WindowRows (546), TProcess.FillAttribute (547), TProcess.StartupOptions (544)

26.6.42 TProcess.WindowHeight

Synopsis: Height of the process main window

Declaration: Property WindowHeight : Cardinal

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: WindowHeight is the initial height (in pixels) of the process' main window. This property is only effective if suoUseSize is specified in StartupOptions (544)

See also: TProcess.WindowWidth (547), TProcess.WindowLeft (546), TProcess.WindowTop (546), TProcess.WindowColumns (545), TProcess.WindowRows (546), TProcess.FillAttribute (547), TProcess.StartupOptions (544)

26.6.43 TProcess.WindowLeft

Synopsis: X-coordinate of the initial window (Windows only)

Declaration: `Property WindowLeft : Cardinal`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `WindowLeft` is the initial X coordinate (in pixels) of the process' main window, relative to the left border of the desktop. This property is only effective if `suoUsePosition` is specified in `StartupOptions` (544)

See also: `TProcess.WindowHeight` (545), `TProcess.WindowWidth` (547), `TProcess.WindowTop` (546), `TProcess.WindowColumns` (545), `TProcess.WindowRows` (546), `TProcess.FillAttribute` (547), `TProcess.StartupOptions` (544)

26.6.44 TProcess.WindowRows

Synopsis: Number of rows in console window (Windows only)

Declaration: `Property WindowRows : Cardinal`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `WindowRows` is the number of rows in the console window, used to run the command in. This property is only effective if `suoUseCountChars` is specified in `StartupOptions` (544)

See also: `TProcess.WindowHeight` (545), `TProcess.WindowWidth` (547), `TProcess.WindowLeft` (546), `TProcess.WindowTop` (546), `TProcess.WindowColumns` (545), `TProcess.FillAttribute` (547), `TProcess.StartupOptions` (544)

26.6.45 TProcess.WindowTop

Synopsis: Y-coordinate of the initial window (Windows only)

Declaration: `Property WindowTop : Cardinal`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `WindowTop` is the initial Y coordinate (in pixels) of the process' main window, relative to the top border of the desktop. This property is only effective if `suoUsePosition` is specified in `StartupOptions` (544)

See also: `TProcess.WindowHeight` (545), `TProcess.WindowWidth` (547), `TProcess.WindowLeft` (546), `TProcess.WindowColumns` (545), `TProcess.WindowRows` (546), `TProcess.FillAttribute` (547), `TProcess.StartupOptions` (544)

26.6.46 TProcess.WindowWidth

Synopsis: Height of the process main window (Windows only)

Declaration: `Property WindowWidth : Cardinal`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `WindowWidth` is the initial width (in pixels) of the process' main window. This property is only effective if `suoUseSize` is specified in `StartupOptions` (544)

See also: `TProcess.WindowHeight` (545), `TProcess.WindowLeft` (546), `TProcess.WindowTop` (546), `TProcess.WindowColumns` (545), `TProcess.WindowRows` (546), `TProcess.FillAttribute` (547), `TProcess.StartupOptions` (544)

26.6.47 TProcess.FillAttribute

Synopsis: Color attributes of the characters in the console window (Windows only)

Declaration: `Property FillAttribute : Cardinal`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `FillAttribute` is a WORD value which specifies the background and foreground colors of the console window.

See also: `TProcess.WindowHeight` (545), `TProcess.WindowWidth` (547), `TProcess.WindowLeft` (546), `TProcess.WindowTop` (546), `TProcess.WindowColumns` (545), `TProcess.WindowRows` (546), `TProcess.StartupOptions` (544)

26.6.48 TProcess.XTermProgram

Synopsis: XTerm program to use (unix only)

Declaration: `Property XTermProgram : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `XTermProgram` can be used to specify the console program to use when `poConsole` is specified in `TProcess.Options` (542).

If none is specified, `DetectXTerm` (530) is used to detect the terminal program to use. the list specified in `TryTerminals` is tried. If none is found, then the `DESKTOP_SESSION` environment variable is examined:

kdekonsole is used if it is found.

gnomegnome-terminal is used if it is found

windowmakeraterm or xterm are used if found.

If after all this, no terminal is found, then a list of default programs is tested: 'x-terminal-emulator', 'xterm', 'aterm', 'wterm', 'rxvt'

See also: `TProcess.Options` (542), `DetectXTerm` (530)

Chapter 27

Reference for unit 'rttiutils'

27.1 Used units

Table 27.1: Used units by unit 'rttiutils'

Name	Page
Classes	??
StrUtils	??
System	??
sysutils	??
typinfo	??

27.2 Overview

The `rttiutils` unit is a unit providing simplified access to the RTTI information from published properties using the `TPropInfoList` ([550](#)) class. This access can be used when saving or restoring form properties at runtime, or for persisting other objects whose RTTI is available: the `TPropsStorage` ([553](#)) class can be used for this. The implementation is based on the `apputils` unit from `RXLib` by *AO ROSNO* and *Master-Bank*

27.3 Constants, types and variables

27.3.1 Constants

```
sPropNameDelimiter : string = '_'
```

Separator used when constructing section/key names

27.3.2 Types

```
TEraseSectEvent = procedure(const ASection: string) of object
```

`TEraseSectEvent` is used by `TPropsStorage` (553) to clear a storage section, in a .ini file like fashion: The call should remove all keys in the section `ASection`, and remove the section from storage.

```
TFindComponentEvent = function(const Name: string) : TComponent
```

`TFindComponentEvent` should return the component instance for the component with name path `Name`. The name path should be relative to the global list of loaded components.

```
TReadStrEvent = function(const ASection: string;const Item: string;
                        const Default: string) : string of object
```

`TReadStrEvent` is used by `TPropsStorage` (553) to read strings from a storage mechanism, in a .ini file like fashion: The call should read the string in `ASection` with key `Item`, and if it does not exist, `Default` should be returned.

```
TWriteStrEvent = procedure(const ASection: string;const Item: string;
                        const Value: string) of object
```

`TWriteStrEvent` is used by `TPropsStorage` (553) to write strings to a storage mechanism, in a .ini file like fashion: The call should write the string `Value` in `ASection` with key `Item`. The section and key should be created if they didn't exist yet.

27.3.3 Variables

```
FindGlobalComponentCallBack : TFindComponentEvent
```

`FindGlobalComponentCallBack` is called by `UpdateStoredList` (550) whenever it needs to resolve component references. It should be set to a routine that locates a loaded component in the global list of loaded components.

27.4 Procedures and functions

27.4.1 CreateStoredItem

Synopsis: Concatenates component and property name

Declaration: `function CreateStoredItem(const CompName: string;const PropName: string) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `CreateStoredItem` concatenates `CompName` and `PropName` if they are both empty. The names are separated by a dot (.) character. If either of the names is empty, an empty string is returned.

This function can be used to create items for the list of properties such as used in `UpdateStoredList` (550), `TPropsStorage.StoreObjectsProps` (555) or `TPropsStorage.LoadObjectsProps` (555).

See also: `ParseStoredItem` (550), `UpdateStoredList` (550), `TPropsStorage.StoreObjectsProps` (555), `TPropsStorage.LoadObjectsProps` (555)

27.4.2 ParseStoredItem

Synopsis: Split a property reference to component reference and property name

Declaration: `function ParseStoredItem(const Item: string; var CompName: string;
var PropName: string) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `ParseStoredItem` parses the property reference `Item` and splits it in a reference to a component (returned in `CompName`) and a name of a property (returned in `PropName`). This function basically does the opposite of `CreateStoredItem` (549). Note that both names should be non-empty, i.e., at least 1 dot character must appear in `Item`.

Errors: If an error occurred during parsing, `False` is returned.

See also: `CreateStoredItem` (549), `UpdateStoredList` (550), `TPropsStorage.StoreObjectsProps` (555), `TPropsStorage.LoadObjectsProps` (555)

27.4.3 UpdateStoredList

Synopsis: Update a stringlist with object references

Declaration: `procedure UpdateStoredList (AComponent: TComponent; AStoredList: TStringList;
FromForm: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

Description: `UpdateStoredList` will parse the strings in `AStoredList` using `ParseStoredItem` (550) and will replace the `Objects` properties with the instance of the object whose name each property path in the list refers to. If `FromForm` is `True`, then all instances are searched relative to `AComponent`, i.e. they must be owned by `AComponent`. If `FromForm` is `False` the instances are searched in the global list of streamed components. (the `FindGlobalComponentCallback` (549) callback must be set for the search to work correctly in this case)

If a component cannot be found, the reference string to the property is removed from the stringlist.

Errors: If `AComponent` is `Nil`, an exception may be raised.

See also: `ParseStoredItem` (550), `TPropsStorage.StoreObjectsProps` (555), `TPropsStorage.LoadObjectsProps` (555), `FindGlobalComponentCallback` (549)

27.5 TPropInfoList

27.5.1 Description

`TPropInfoList` is a class which can be used to maintain a list with information about published properties of a class (or an instance). It is used internally by `TPropsStorage` (553)

See also: `TPropsStorage` (553)

27.5.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
551	Contains	Check whether a certain property is included
551	Create	Create a new instance of <code>TPropInfoList</code>
552	Delete	Delete property information from the list
551	Destroy	Remove the <code>TPropInfoList</code> instance from memory
552	Find	Retrieve property information based on name
552	Intersect	Intersect 2 property lists

27.5.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
552	Count	r	Number of items in the list
553	Items	r	Indexed access to the property type pointers

27.5.4 TPropInfoList.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TPropInfoList`

Declaration: constructor `Create(AObject: TObject; Filter: TTypeKinds)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` allocates and initializes a new instance of `TPropInfoList` on the heap. It retrieves a list of published properties from `AObject`: if `Filter` is empty, then all properties are retrieved. If it is not empty, then only properties of the kind specified in the set are retrieved. Instance should not be `Nil`

See also: `Destroy` ([551](#))

27.5.5 TPropInfoList.Destroy

Synopsis: Remove the `TPropInfoList` instance from memory

Declaration: destructor `Destroy`; Override

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the internal structures maintained by `TPropInfoList` and then calls the inherited `Destroy`.

See also: `Create` ([551](#))

27.5.6 TPropInfoList.Contains

Synopsis: Check whether a certain property is included

Declaration: function `Contains(P: PPropInfo) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `Contains` checks whether `P` is included in the list of properties, and returns `True` if it does. If `P` cannot be found, `False` is returned.

See also: `Find` ([552](#)), `Intersect` ([552](#))

27.5.7 TPropInfoList.Find

Synopsis: Retrieve property information based on name

Declaration: `function Find(const AName: string) : PPropInfo`

Visibility: public

Description: `Find` returns a pointer to the type information of the property `AName`. If no such information is available, the function returns `Nil`. The search is performed case insensitive.

See also: `Intersect` ([552](#)), `Contains` ([551](#))

27.5.8 TPropInfoList.Delete

Synopsis: Delete property information from the list

Declaration: `procedure Delete(Index: Integer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Delete` deletes the property information at position `Index` from the list. It's mainly of use in the `Intersect` ([552](#)) call.

Errors: No checking on the validity of `Index` is performed.

See also: `Intersect` ([552](#))

27.5.9 TPropInfoList.Intersect

Synopsis: Intersect 2 property lists

Declaration: `procedure Intersect(List: TPropInfoList)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Intersect` reduces the list of properties to the ones also contained in `List`, i.e. all properties which are not also present in `List` are removed.

See also: `Delete` ([552](#)), `Contains` ([551](#))

27.5.10 TPropInfoList.Count

Synopsis: Number of items in the list

Declaration: `Property Count : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Count` is the number of property type pointers in the list.

See also: `Items` ([553](#))

27.5.11 TPropInfoList.Items

Synopsis: Indexed access to the property type pointers

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: PPropInfo; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Items` provides access to the property type pointers stored in the list. `Index` runs from 0 to `Count-1`.

See also: `Count` ([552](#))

27.6 TPropsStorage

27.6.1 Description

`TPropsStorage` provides a mechanism to store properties from any class which has published properties (usually a `TPersistent` descendent) in a storage mechanism.

`TPropsStorage` does not handle the storage by itself, instead, the storage is handled through a series of callbacks to read and/or write strings. Conversion of property types to string is handled by `TPropsStorage` itself: all that needs to be done is set the 3 handlers. The storage mechanism is assumed to have the structure of an .ini file : sections with key/value pairs. The three callbacks should take this into account, but they do not need to create an actual .ini file.

See also: `TPropInfoList` ([550](#))

27.6.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
554	<code>LoadAnyProperty</code>	Load a property value
555	<code>LoadObjectsProps</code>	Load a list of component properties
554	<code>LoadProperties</code>	Load a list of properties
553	<code>StoreAnyProperty</code>	Store a property value
555	<code>StoreObjectsProps</code>	Store a list of component properties
554	<code>StoreProperties</code>	Store a list of properties

27.6.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
556	<code>AObject</code>	rw	Object to load or store properties from
557	<code>OnEraseSection</code>	rw	Erase a section in storage
557	<code>OnReadString</code>	rw	Read a string value from storage
557	<code>OnWriteString</code>	rw	Write a string value to storage
556	<code>Prefix</code>	rw	Prefix to use in storage
556	<code>Section</code>	rw	Section name for storage

27.6.4 TPropsStorage.StoreAnyProperty

Synopsis: Store a property value

Declaration: `procedure StoreAnyProperty(PropInfo: PPropInfo)`

Visibility: public

Description: `StoreAnyProperty` stores the property with information specified in `PropInfo` in the storage mechanism. The property value is retrieved from the object instance specified in the `AObject` (556) property of `TPropsStorage`.

Errors: If the property pointer is invalid or `AObject` is invalid, an exception will be raised.

See also: `AObject` (556), `LoadAnyProperty` (554), `LoadProperties` (554), `StoreProperties` (554)

27.6.5 TPropsStorage.LoadAnyProperty

Synopsis: Load a property value

Declaration: `procedure LoadAnyProperty(PropInfo: PPropInfo)`

Visibility: public

Description: `LoadAnyProperty` loads the property with information specified in `PropInfo` from the storage mechanism. The value is then applied to the object instance specified in the `AObject` (556) property of `TPropsStorage`.

Errors: If the property pointer is invalid or `AObject` is invalid, an exception will be raised.

See also: `AObject` (556), `StoreAnyProperty` (553), `LoadProperties` (554), `StoreProperties` (554)

27.6.6 TPropsStorage.StoreProperties

Synopsis: Store a list of properties

Declaration: `procedure StoreProperties(PropList: TStrings)`

Visibility: public

Description: `StoreProperties` stores the values of all properties in `PropList` in the storage mechanism. The list should contain names of published properties of the `AObject` (556) object.

Errors: If an invalid property name is specified, an exception will be raised.

See also: `AObject` (556), `StoreAnyProperty` (553), `LoadProperties` (554), `LoadAnyProperty` (554)

27.6.7 TPropsStorage.LoadProperties

Synopsis: Load a list of properties

Declaration: `procedure LoadProperties(PropList: TStrings)`

Visibility: public

Description: `LoadProperties` loads the values of all properties in `PropList` from the storage mechanism. The list should contain names of published properties of the `AObject` (556) object.

Errors: If an invalid property name is specified, an exception will be raised.

See also: `AObject` (556), `StoreAnyProperty` (553), `StoreProperties` (554), `LoadAnyProperty` (554)

27.6.8 TPropsStorage.LoadObjectsProps

Synopsis: Load a list of component properties

Declaration: `procedure LoadObjectsProps (AComponent: TComponent; StoredList: TStrings)`

Visibility: public

Description: `LoadObjectsProps` loads a list of component properties, relative to `AComponent`: the names of the component properties to load are specified as follows:

```
ComponentName1.PropertyName
ComponentName2.Subcomponent1.PropertyName
```

The component instances will be located relative to `AComponent`, and must therefore be names of components owned by `AComponent`, followed by a valid property of these components. If the `componentname` is missing, the property name will be assumed to be a property of `AComponent` itself.

The `Objects` property of the stringlist should be filled with the instances of the components the property references refer to: they can be filled with the `UpdateStoredList` (550) call.

For example, to load the checked state of a checkbox named 'CBCheckMe' and the caption of a button named 'BPressMe', both owned by a form, the following strings should be passed:

```
CBCheckMe.Checked
BPressMe.Caption
```

and the `AComponent` should be the form component that owns the button and checkbox.

Note that this call removes the value of the `AObject` (556) property.

Errors: If an invalid component is specified, an exception will be raised.

See also: `UpdateStoredList` (550), `StoreObjectsProps` (555), `LoadProperties` (554), `LoadAnyProperty` (554)

27.6.9 TPropsStorage.StoreObjectsProps

Synopsis: Store a list of component properties

Declaration: `procedure StoreObjectsProps (AComponent: TComponent; StoredList: TStrings)`

Visibility: public

Description: `StoreObjectsProps` stores a list of component properties, relative to `AComponent`: the names of the component properties to store are specified as follows:

```
ComponentName1.PropertyName
ComponentName2.Subcomponent1.PropertyName
```

The component instances will be located relative to `AComponent`, and must therefore be names of components owned by `AComponent`, followed by a valid property of these components. If the `componentname` is missing, the property name will be assumed to be a property of `AComponent` itself.

The `Objects` property of the stringlist should be filled with the instances of the components the property references refer to: they can be filled with the `UpdateStoredList` (550) call.

For example, to store the checked state of a checkbox named 'CBCheckMe' and the caption of a button named 'BPressMe', both owned by a form, the following strings should be passed:

CBCheckMe.Checked
BPressMe.Caption

and the AComponent should be the form component that owns the button and checkbox.

Note that this call removes the value of the AObject (556) property.

See also: UpdateStoredList (550), LoadObjectsProps (555), LoadProperties (554), LoadAnyProperty (554)

27.6.10 TPropsStorage.AObject

Synopsis: Object to load or store properties from

Declaration: Property AObject : TObject

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: AObject is the object instance whose properties will be loaded or stored with any of the methods in the TPropsStorage class. Note that a call to StoreObjectProps (555) or LoadObjectProps (555) will destroy any value that this property might have.

See also: LoadProperties (554), LoadAnyProperty (554), StoreProperties (554), StoreAnyProperty (553), StoreObjectProps (555), LoadObjectProps (555)

27.6.11 TPropsStorage.Prefix

Synopsis: Prefix to use in storage

Declaration: Property Prefix : string

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Prefix is prepended to all property names to form the key name when writing a property to storage, or when reading a value from storage. This is useful when storing properties of multiple forms in a single section.

See also: TPropsStorage.Section (556)

27.6.12 TPropsStorage.Section

Synopsis: Section name for storage

Declaration: Property Section : string

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Section is used as the section name when writing values to storage. Note that when writing properties of subcomponents, their names will be appended to the value specified here.

See also: TPropsStorage.Section (556)

27.6.13 TPropsStorage.OnReadString

Synopsis: Read a string value from storage

Declaration: `Property OnReadString : TReadStrEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnReadString` is the event handler called whenever `TPropsStorage` needs to read a string from storage. It should be set whenever properties need to be loaded, or an exception will be raised.

See also: `OnWriteString` ([557](#)), `OnEraseSection` ([557](#)), `TReadStrEvent` ([549](#))

27.6.14 TPropsStorage.OnWriteString

Synopsis: Write a string value to storage

Declaration: `Property OnWriteString : TWriteStrEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnWriteString` is the event handler called whenever `TPropsStorage` needs to write a string to storage. It should be set whenever properties need to be stored, or an exception will be raised.

See also: `OnReadString` ([557](#)), `OnEraseSection` ([557](#)), `TWriteStrEvent` ([549](#))

27.6.15 TPropsStorage.OnEraseSection

Synopsis: Erase a section in storage

Declaration: `Property OnEraseSection : TEraseSectEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnEraseSection` is the event handler called whenever `TPropsStorage` needs to clear a complete storage section. It should be set whenever stringlist properties need to be stored, or an exception will be raised.

See also: `OnReadString` ([557](#)), `OnWriteString` ([557](#)), `TEraseSectEvent` ([548](#))

Chapter 28

Reference for unit 'simpleipc'

28.1 Used units

Table 28.1: Used units by unit 'simpleipc'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

28.2 Overview

The SimpleIPC unit provides classes to implement a simple, one-way IPC mechanism using string messages. It provides a TSimpleIPCServer (569) component for the server, and a TSimpleIPCClient (566) component for the client. The components are cross-platform, and should work both on Windows and unix-like systems.

The Unix implementation of the SimpleIPC unit uses file-based sockets. It will attempt to clean up any registered server socket files that were not removed cleanly.

It does this in the unit finalization code. It does not install a signal handler by itself, that is the task of the programmer. But program crashes (access violations and such) that are handled by the RTL will be handled gracefully.

This also means that if the process is killed with the KILL signal, it has no chance of removing the files (KILL signals cannot be caught), in which case socket files may remain in the filesystem.

28.3 Constants, types and variables

28.3.1 Resource strings

```
SErrActive = 'This operation is illegal when the server is active.'
```

Error message if client/server is active.

```
SErrInactive = 'This operation is illegal when the server is inactive.'
```

Error message if client/server is not active.

```
SErrServerNotActive = 'Server with ID %s is not active.'
```

Error message if server is not active

28.3.2 Constants

```
MsgVersion = 1
```

Current version of the messaging protocol

```
mtString = 1
```

String message type

```
mtUnknown = 0
```

Unknown message type

28.3.3 Types

```
TIPCClientCommClass = Class of TIPCClientComm
```

`TIPCClientCommClass` is used by `TSimpleIPCClient` ([566](#)) to decide which kind of communication channel to set up.

```
TIPCTServerCommClass = Class of TIPCTServerComm
```

`TIPCTServerCommClass` is used by `TSimpleIPCServer` ([569](#)) to decide which kind of communication channel to set up.

```
TMessageType = LongInt
```

`TMessageType` is provided for backward compatibility with earlier versions of the `simpleipc` unit.

```
TMsgHeader = packed record
  Version : Byte;
  MsgType : TMessageType;
  MsgLen  : Integer;
end
```

`TMsgHeader` is used internally by the IPC client and server components to transmit data. The `Version` field denotes the protocol version. The `MsgType` field denotes the type of data (`mtString` for string messages), and `MsgLen` is the length of the message which will follow.

28.3.4 Variables

```
DefaultIPCClientClass : TIPCCClientCommClass = Nil
```

`DefaultIPCClientClass` is filled with a class pointer indicating which kind of communication protocol class should be instantiated by the `TSimpleIPCCClient` (566) class. It is set to a default value by the default implementation in the `SimpleIPC` unit, but can be set to another class if another method of transport is desired. (it should match the communication protocol used by the server, obviously).

```
DefaultIPCServerClass : TIPCServerCommClass = Nil
```

`DefaultIPCServerClass` is filled with a class pointer indicating which kind of communication protocol class should be instantiated by the `TSimpleIPCServer` (569) class. It is set to a default value by the default implementation in the `SimpleIPC` unit, but can be set to another class if another method of transport is desired.

28.4 EIPCErrors

28.4.1 Description

`EIPCErrors` is the exception used by the various classes in the `SimpleIPC` unit to report errors.

28.5 TIPCCClientComm

28.5.1 Description

`TIPCCClientComm` is an abstract component which implements the client-side communication protocol. The behaviour expected of this class must be implemented in a platform-dependent descendent class.

The `TSimpleIPCCClient` (566) class does not implement the messaging protocol by itself. Instead, it creates an instance of a (platform dependent) descendent of `TIPCCClientComm` which handles the internals of the communication protocol.

The server side of the messaging protocol is handled by the `TIPCServerComm` (562) component. The descendent components must always be implemented in pairs.

See also: `TSimpleIPCCClient` (566), `TIPCServerComm` (562), `TSimpleIPCServer` (569)

28.5.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
561	Connect	Connect to the server
561	Create	Create a new instance of the <code>TIPCCClientComm</code>
561	Disconnect	Disconnect from the server
562	SendMessage	Send a message
562	ServerRunning	Check if the server is running.

28.5.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
562	Owner	r	<code>TSimpleIPCCClient</code> instance for which communication must be handled.

28.5.4 TIPCCliantComm.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TIPCCliantComm`

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TSimpleIPCCliant); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new instance of the `TIPCCliantComm` class, and stores the `AOwner` reference to the `TSimpleIPCCliant` (566) instance for which it will handle communication. It can be retrieved later using the `Owner` (562) property.

See also: `Owner` (562), `TSimpleIPCCliant` (566)

28.5.5 TIPCCliantComm.Connect

Synopsis: Connect to the server

Declaration: `procedure Connect; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Connect` must establish a communication channel with the server. The server endpoint must be constructed from the `ServerID` (565) and `ServerInstance` (568) properties of the owning `TSimpleIPCCliant` (566) instance.

`Connect` is called by the `TSimpleIPCCliant.Connect` (567) call or when the `Active` (565) property is set to `True`

Messages can be sent only after `Connect` was called successfully.

Errors: If the connection setup fails, or the connection was already set up, then an exception may be raised.

See also: `TSimpleIPCCliant.Connect` (567), `Active` (565), `Disconnect` (561)

28.5.6 TIPCCliantComm.Disconnect

Synopsis: Disconnect from the server

Declaration: `procedure Disconnect; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Disconnect` closes the communication channel with the server. Any calls to `SendMessage` are invalid after `Disconnect` was called.

`Disconnect` is called by the `TSimpleIPCCliant.Disconnect` (567) call or when the `Active` (565) property is set to `False`.

Messages can no longer be sent after `Disconnect` was called.

Errors: If the connection shutdown fails, or the connection was already shut down, then an exception may be raised.

See also: `TSimpleIPCCliant.Disconnect` (567), `Active` (565), `Connect` (561)

28.5.7 TIPCCliantComm.ServerRunning

Synopsis: Check if the server is running.

Declaration: `function ServerRunning : Boolean; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `ServerRunning` returns `True` if the server endpoint of the communication channel can be found, or `False` if not. The server endpoint should be obtained from the `ServerID` and `InstanceID` properties of the owning `TSimpleIPCCliant` (566) component.

See also: `TSimpleIPCCliant.InstanceID` (566), `TSimpleIPCCliant.ServerID` (566)

28.5.8 TIPCCliantComm.SendMessage

Synopsis: Send a message

Declaration: `procedure SendMessage (MsgType: TMessageType; Stream: TStream); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `SendMessage` should deliver the message with type `MsgType` and data in `Stream` to the server. It should not return until the message was delivered.

Errors: If the delivery of the message fails, an exception will be raised.

28.5.9 TIPCCliantComm.Owner

Synopsis: `TSimpleIPCCliant` instance for which communication must be handled.

Declaration: `Property Owner : TSimpleIPCCliant`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Owner` is the `TSimpleIPCCliant` (566) instance for which the communication must be handled. It cannot be changed, and must be specified when the `TIPCCliantComm` instance is created.

See also: `TSimpleIPCCliant` (566), `TIPCCliantComm.Create` (561)

28.6 TIPCTServerComm

28.6.1 Description

`TIPCTServerComm` is an abstract component which implements the server-side communication protocol. The behaviour expected of this class must be implemented in a platform-dependent descendent class.

The `TSimpleIPCTServer` (569) class does not implement the messaging protocol by itself. Instead, it creates an instance of a (platform dependent) descendent of `TIPCTServerComm` which handles the internals of the communication protocol.

The client side of the messaging protocol is handled by the `TIPCCliantComm` (560) component. The descendent components must always be implemented in pairs.

See also: `TSimpleIPCTServer` (569), `TIPCCliantComm` (560)

28.6.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
563	Create	Create a new instance of the communication handler
564	PeekMessage	See if a message is available.
564	ReadMessage	Read message from the channel.
563	StartServer	Start the server-side of the communication channel
563	StopServer	Stop the server side of the communication channel.

28.6.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
565	InstanceID	r	Unique identifier for the communication channel.
564	Owner	r	TSimpleIPCServer instance for which to handle transport

28.6.4 TIPCServerComm.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the communication handler

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TSimpleIPCServer); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the communication handler. It simply saves the `AOwner` parameter in the `Owner` ([564](#)) property.

See also: `Owner` ([564](#))

28.6.5 TIPCServerComm.StartServer

Synopsis: Start the server-side of the communication channel

Declaration: `procedure StartServer; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `StartServer` sets up the server-side of the communication channel. After `StartServer` was called, a client can connect to the communication channel, and send messages to the server.

It is called when the `TSimpleIPC.Active` ([565](#)) property of the `TSimpleIPCServer` ([569](#)) instance is set to `True`.

Errors: In case of an error, an `EIPCError` ([560](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `TSimpleIPCServer` ([569](#)), `TSimpleIPC.Active` ([565](#))

28.6.6 TIPCServerComm.StopServer

Synopsis: Stop the server side of the communication channel.

Declaration: `procedure StopServer; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `StartServer` closes down the server-side of the communication channel. After `StartServer` was called, a client can no longer connect to the communication channel, or even send messages to the server if it was previously connected (i.e. it will be disconnected).

It is called when the `TSimpleIPC.Active` (565) property of the `TSimpleIPCServer` (569) instance is set to `False`.

Errors: In case of an error, an `EIPCError` (560) exception is raised.

See also: `TSimpleIPCServer` (569), `TSimpleIPC.Active` (565)

28.6.7 TIPCServerComm.PeekMessage

Synopsis: See if a message is available.

Declaration: `function PeekMessage(TimeOut: Integer) : Boolean; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `PeekMessage` can be used to see if a message is available: it returns `True` if a message is available. It will wait maximum `TimeOut` milliseconds for a message to arrive. If no message was available after this time, it will return `False`.

If a message was available, it can be read with the `ReadMessage` (564) call.

See also: `ReadMessage` (564)

28.6.8 TIPCServerComm.ReadMessage

Synopsis: Read message from the channel.

Declaration: `procedure ReadMessage; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadMessage` reads the message for the channel, and stores the information in the data structures in the `Owner` class.

`ReadMessage` is a blocking call: if no message is available, the program will wait till a message arrives. Use `PeekMessage` (564) to see if a message is available.

See also: `TSimpleIPCServer` (569)

28.6.9 TIPCServerComm.Owner

Synopsis: `TSimpleIPCServer` instance for which to handle transport

Declaration: `Property Owner : TSimpleIPCServer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Owner` refers to the `TSimpleIPCServer` (569) instance for which this instance of `TSimpleIPCServer` handles the transport. It is specified when the `TIPCServerComm` is created.

See also: `TSimpleIPCServer` (569)

28.6.10 TIPServerComm.InstanceID

Synopsis: Unique identifier for the communication channel.

Declaration: `Property InstanceID : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `InstanceID` returns a textual representation which uniquely identifies the communication channel on the server. The value is system dependent, and should be usable by the client-side to establish a communication channel with this instance.

28.7 TSimpleIPC

28.7.1 Description

`TSimpleIPC` is the common ancestor for the `TSimpleIPCServer` (569) and `TSimpleIPCClient` (566) classes. It implements some common properties between client and server.

See also: `TSimpleIPCServer` (569), `TSimpleIPCClient` (566)

28.7.2 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
565	<code>Active</code>	<code>rw</code>	Communication channel active
565	<code>ServerID</code>	<code>rw</code>	Unique server identification

28.7.3 TSimpleIPC.Active

Synopsis: Communication channel active

Declaration: `Property Active : Boolean`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Active` can be set to `True` to set up the client or server end of the communication channel. For the server this means that the server end is set up, for the client it means that the client tries to connect to the server with `ServerID` (565) identification.

See also: `ServerID` (565)

28.7.4 TSimpleIPC.ServerID

Synopsis: Unique server identification

Declaration: `Property ServerID : string`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `ServerID` is the unique server identification: on the server, it determines how the server channel is set up, on the client it determines the server with which to connect.

See also: `Active` (565)

28.8 TSimpleIPCClient

28.8.1 Description

`TSimpleIPCClient` is the client side of the simple IPC communication protocol. The client program should create a `TSimpleIPCClient` instance, set its `ServerID` (565) property to the unique name for the server it wants to send messages to, and then set the `Active` (565) property to `True` (or call `Connect` (566)).

After the connection with the server was established, messages can be sent to the server with the `SendMessage` (568) or `SendStringMessage` (568) calls.

See also: `TSimpleIPCServer` (569), `TSimpleIPC` (565), `TIPCClientComm` (560)

28.8.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
567	<code>Connect</code>	Connect to the server
566	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of <code>TSimpleIPCClient</code>
566	<code>Destroy</code>	Remove the <code>TSimpleIPCClient</code> instance from memory
567	<code>Disconnect</code>	Disconnect from the server
568	<code>SendMessage</code>	Send a message to the server
568	<code>SendStringMessage</code>	Send a string message to the server
568	<code>SendStringMessageFmt</code>	Send a formatted string message
567	<code>ServerRunning</code>	Check if the server is running.

28.8.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
568	<code>ServerInstance</code>	rw	Server instance identification

28.8.4 TSimpleIPCClient.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TSimpleIPCClient`

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new instance of the `TSimpleIPCClient` class. It initializes the data structures needed to handle the client side of the communication.

See also: `Destroy` (566)

28.8.5 TSimpleIPCClient.Destroy

Synopsis: Remove the `TSimpleIPCClient` instance from memory

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` disconnects the client from the server if need be, and cleans up the internal data structures maintained by `TSimpleIPCClient` and then calls the inherited `Destroy`, which will remove the instance from memory.

Never call `Destroy` directly, use the `Free` method instead or the `FreeAndNil` procedure in `SysUtils`.

See also: [Create \(566\)](#)

28.8.6 TSimpleIPClient.Connect

Synopsis: Connect to the server

Declaration: `procedure Connect`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Connect` connects to the server indicated in the `ServerID` ([565](#)) and `InstanceID` ([566](#)) properties. `Connect` is called automatically if the `Active` ([565](#)) property is set to `True`.

After a successful call to `Connect`, messages can be sent to the server using `SendMessage` ([568](#)) or `SendStringMessage` ([568](#)).

Calling `Connect` if the connection is already open has no effect.

Errors: If creating the connection fails, an `EIPError` ([560](#)) exception may be raised.

See also: `ServerID` ([565](#)), `InstanceID` ([566](#)), `Active` ([565](#)), `SendMessage` ([568](#)), `SendStringMessage` ([568](#)), `Disconnect` ([567](#))

28.8.7 TSimpleIPClient.Disconnect

Synopsis: Disconnect from the server

Declaration: `procedure Disconnect`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Disconnect` shuts down the connection with the server as previously set up with `Connect` ([567](#)). `Disconnect` is called automatically if the `Active` ([565](#)) property is set to `False`.

After a successful call to `Disconnect`, messages can no longer be sent to the server. Attempting to do so will result in an exception.

Calling `Disconnect` if there is no connection has no effect.

Errors: If creating the connection fails, an `EIPError` ([560](#)) exception may be raised.

See also: `Active` ([565](#)), `Connect` ([567](#))

28.8.8 TSimpleIPClient.ServerRunning

Synopsis: Check if the server is running.

Declaration: `function ServerRunning : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ServerRunning` verifies if the server indicated in the `ServerID` ([565](#)) and `InstanceID` ([566](#)) properties is running. It returns `True` if the server communication endpoint can be reached, `False` otherwise. This function can be called before a connection is made.

See also: `Connect` ([567](#))

28.8.9 TSimpleIPCClient.SendMessage

Synopsis: Send a message to the server

Declaration: `procedure SendMessage(MsgType: TMessageType; Stream: TStream)`

Visibility: public

Description: `SendMessage` sends a message of type `MsgType` and data from `stream` to the server. The client must be connected for this call to work.

Errors: In case an error occurs, or there is no connection to the server, an `EIPCErr` (560) exception is raised.

See also: `Connect` (567), `SendStringMessage` (568)

28.8.10 TSimpleIPCClient.SendStringMessage

Synopsis: Send a string message to the server

Declaration: `procedure SendStringMessage(const Msg: string)`
`procedure SendStringMessage(MsgType: TMessageType; const Msg: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: `SendStringMessage` sends a string message with type `MsgType` and data `Msg` to the server. This is a convenience function: a small wrapper around the `SendMessage` (568) method

Errors: Same as for `SendMessage`.

See also: `SendMessage` (568), `Connect` (567), `SendStringMessageFmt` (568)

28.8.11 TSimpleIPCClient.SendStringMessageFmt

Synopsis: Send a formatted string message

Declaration: `procedure SendStringMessageFmt(const Msg: string; Args: Array of const)`
`procedure SendStringMessageFmt(MsgType: TMessageType; const Msg: string; Args: Array of const)`

Visibility: public

Description: `SendStringMessageFmt` sends a string message with type `MsgType` and message formatted from `Msg` and `Args` to the server. This is a convenience function: a small wrapper around the `SendStringMessage` (568) method

Errors: Same as for `SendMessage`.

See also: `SendMessage` (568), `Connect` (567), `SendStringMessage` (568)

28.8.12 TSimpleIPCClient.ServerInstance

Synopsis: Server instance identification

Declaration: `Property ServerInstance : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: `ServerInstance` should be used in case a particular instance of the server identified with `ServerID` should be contacted. This must be used if the server has its `GLocal` (572) property set to `False`, and should match the server's `InstanceID` (572) property.

See also: `ServerID` (565), `GLocal` (572), `InstanceID` (572)

28.9 TSimpleIPCServer

28.9.1 Description

`TSimpleIPCServer` is the server side of the simple IPC communication protocol. The server program should create a `TSimpleIPCServer` instance, set its `ServerID` (565) property to a unique name for the system, and then set the `Active` (565) property to `True` (or call `StartServer` (570)).

After the server was started, it can check for availability of messages with the `PeekMessage` (570) call, and read the message with `ReadMessage` (569).

See also: `TSimpleIPCClient` (566), `TSimpleIPC` (565), `TIPCServerComm` (562)

28.9.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
569	Create	Create a new instance of <code>TSimpleIPCServer</code>
570	Destroy	Remove the <code>TSimpleIPCServer</code> instance from memory
571	GetMessageData	Read the data of the last message in a stream
570	PeekMessage	Check if a client message is available.
570	StartServer	Start the server
570	StopServer	Stop the server

28.9.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
572	Global	rw	Is the server reachable to all users or not
572	InstanceID	r	Instance ID
572	MsgData	r	Last message data
571	MsgType	r	Last message type
572	OnMessage	rw	Event triggered when a message arrives
571	StringMessage	r	Last message as a string.

28.9.4 TSimpleIPCServer.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TSimpleIPCServer`

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new instance of the `TSimpleIPCServer` class. It initializes the data structures needed to handle the server side of the communication.

See also: `Destroy` (570)

28.9.5 TSimpleIPCServer.Destroy

Synopsis: Remove the TSimpleIPCServer instance from memory

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` stops the server, cleans up the internal data structures maintained by TSimpleIPCServer and then calls the inherited `Destroy`, which will remove the instance from memory.

Never call `Destroy` directly, use the `Free` method instead or the `FreeAndNil` procedure in `SysUtils`.

See also: `Create` ([569](#))

28.9.6 TSimpleIPCServer.StartServer

Synopsis: Start the server

Declaration: `procedure StartServer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `StartServer` starts the server side of the communication channel. It is called automatically when the `Active` property is set to `True`. It creates the internal communication object (a `TIPCServerComm` ([562](#)) descendent) and activates the communication channel.

After this method was called, clients can connect and send messages.

Prior to calling this method, the `ServerID` ([565](#)) property must be set.

Errors: If an error occurs a `EIPCErr` ([560](#)) exception may be raised.

See also: `TIPCServerComm` ([562](#)), `Active` ([565](#)), `ServerID` ([565](#)), `StopServer` ([570](#))

28.9.7 TSimpleIPCServer.StopServer

Synopsis: Stop the server

Declaration: `procedure StopServer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `StopServer` stops the server side of the communication channel. It is called automatically when the `Active` property is set to `False`. It deactivates the communication channel and frees the internal communication object (a `TIPCServerComm` ([562](#)) descendent).

See also: `TIPCServerComm` ([562](#)), `Active` ([565](#)), `ServerID` ([565](#)), `StartServer` ([570](#))

28.9.8 TSimpleIPCServer.PeekMessage

Synopsis: Check if a client message is available.

Declaration: `function PeekMessage (TimeOut: Integer; DoReadMessage: Boolean) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `PeekMessage` checks if a message from a client is available. It will return `True` if a message is available. The call will wait for `Timeout` milliseconds for a message to arrive: if after `Timeout` milliseconds, no message is available, the function will return `False`.

If `DoReadMessage` is `True` then `PeekMessage` will read the message. If it is `False`, it does not read the message. The message should then be read manually with `ReadMessage` (569).

See also: `ReadMessage` (569)

28.9.9 TSimpleIPCServer.GetMessageData

Synopsis: Read the data of the last message in a stream

Declaration: `procedure GetMessageData(Stream: TStream)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetMessageData` reads the data of the last message from `TSimpleIPCServer.MsgData` (572) and stores it in stream `Stream`. If no data was available, the stream will be cleared.

This function will return valid data only after a succesful call to `ReadMessage` (569). It will also not clear the data buffer.

See also: `StringMessage` (571), `MsgData` (572), `MsgType` (571)

28.9.10 TSimpleIPCServer.StringMessage

Synopsis: Last message as a string.

Declaration: `Property StringMessage : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `StringMessage` is the content of the last message as a string.

This property will contain valid data only after a succesful call to `ReadMessage` (569).

See also: `GetMessageData` (571)

28.9.11 TSimpleIPCServer.MsgType

Synopsis: Last message type

Declaration: `Property MsgType : TMessageType`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `MsgType` contains the message type of the last message.

This property will contain valid data only after a succesful call to `ReadMessage` (569).

See also: `ReadMessage` (569)

28.9.12 TSimpleIPCServer.MsgData

Synopsis: Last message data

Declaration: `Property MsgData : TStream`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `MsgData` contains the actual data from the last read message. If the data is a string, then `StringMessage` (571) is better suited to read the data.

This property will contain valid data only after a succesful call to `ReadMessage` (569).

See also: `StringMessage` (571), `ReadMessage` (569)

28.9.13 TSimpleIPCServer.InstanceID

Synopsis: Instance ID

Declaration: `Property InstanceID : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `InstanceID` is the unique identifier for this server communication channel endpoint, and will be appended to the `ServerID` (569) property to form the unique server endpoint which a client should use.

See also: `ServerID` (569), `Global` (569)

28.9.14 TSimpleIPCServer.Global

Synopsis: Is the server reachable to all users or not

Declaration: `Property Global : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Global` indicates whether the server is reachable to all users (`True`) or if it is private to the current process (`False`). In the latter case, the unique channel endpoint identification may change: a unique identification of the current process is appended to the `ServerID` name.

See also: `ServerID` (569), `InstanceID` (572)

28.9.15 TSimpleIPCServer.OnMessage

Synopsis: Event triggered when a message arrives

Declaration: `Property OnMessage : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnMessage` is called by `ReadMessage` (569) when a message has been read. The actual message data can be retrieved with one of the `StringMessage` (571), `MsgData` (572) or `MsgType` (571) properties.

See also: `StringMessage` (571), `MsgData` (572), `MsgType` (571)

Chapter 29

Reference for unit 'sqldb'

29.1 Used units

Table 29.1: Used units by unit 'sqldb'

Name	Page
bufdataset	??
Classes	??
db	227
sqlscript	??
System	??
sysutils	??

29.2 Overview

The SQLDB unit defines four main classes to handle data in SQL based databases.

1. TSQLConnection ([594](#)) represents the connection to the database. Here, properties pertaining to the connection (machine, database, user password) must be set. This is an abstract class, which should not be used directly. Per database type (mysql, firebird, postgres, oracle, sqlite) a descendent should be made and used.
2. TSQLQuery ([605](#)) is a `#fcl.db.TDataset` ([277](#)) descendent which can be used to view and manipulate the result of an SQL select query. It can also be used to execute all kinds of SQL statements.
3. TSQLTransaction ([624](#)) represents the transaction in which an SQL command is running. SQLDB supports multiple simultaneous transactions in a database connection. For databases that do not support this functionality natively, it is simulated by maintaining multiple connections to the database.
4. TSQLScript ([617](#)) can be used when many SQL commands must be executed on a database, for example when creating a database.

There is also a unified way to retrieve schema information, and a registration for connector types. More information on how to use these components can be found in UsingSQLDB ([575](#)).

29.3 Using SQLDB to access databases

SQLDB can be used to connect to any SQL capable database. It allows to execute SQL statements on any supported database type in a uniform way, and allows to fetch and manipulate result sets (such as returned by a `SELECT` statement) using a standard `TDataset` (277) interface. SQLDB takes care that updates to the database are posted automatically to the database, in a cached manner.

When using SQLDB, 3 components are always needed:

1. A `TSQLConnection` (594) descendent. This represents the connection to the database: the location of the database, and the username and password to authenticate the connection must be specified here. For each supported database type (Firebird, PostgreSQL, MySQL) there is a separate connection component. They all descend from `TSQLConnection`.
2. A `TSQLTransaction` (624) component. SQLDB allows you to have multiple active but independent transactions in your application. (useful for instance in middle-tier applications). If the native database client library does not support this directly, it is emulated using multiple connections to the database.
3. A `TSQLQuery` (605) component. This encapsulates an SQL statement. Any kind of SQL statement can be executed. The `TSQLQuery` component is a `TDataset` descendent: If the statement returns a result set, then it can be manipulated using the usual `TDataset` mechanisms.

The 3 components must be linked together: the connection must point to a default transaction (it is used to execute certain queries for metadata), the transaction component must point to a connection component. The `TSQLQuery` component must point to both a transaction and a database.

So in order to view the contents of a table, typically the procedure goes like this:

```
{ $mode objfpc } { $h+ }
uses sqlldb, ibconnection;

Var
  C : TSQLConnection;
  T : TSQLTransaction;
  Q : TSQLQuery;

begin
  // Create a connection.
  C:=TIBConnection.Create( Nil );
  try
    // Set credentials.
    C.UserName:='MyUSER';
    C.Password:='Secret';
    C.DatabaseName:='/home/firebird/events.fb';
    // Create a transaction.
    T:=TSQLTransaction.Create( C );
    // Point to the database instance
    T.Database:=C;
    // Now we can open the database.
    C.Connected:=True;
    // Create a query to return data
    Q:=TSQLQuery.Create( C );
    // Point to database and transaction.
```



```

Q.Database:=C;
Q.Transaction:=T;
// Set the SQL select statement
Q.SQL.Text:='SELECT * FROM USERS';
// And now use the standard TDataset methods.
Q.Open;
While not Q.EOF do
begin
  Writeln(Q.FieldName('U_NAME').AsString);
  Q.Next;
end;
Q.Close;
finally
  C.Free;
end;
end.

```

The above code is quite simple. The connection type is `TIBConnection`, which is used for Firebird/Interbase databases. To connect to another database (for instance PostgreSQL), the exact same code could be used, but instead of a `TIBConnection`, a `TPQConnection` component must be used:

```

{$mode objfpc}{$h+}
uses sqlldb, pqconnection;

Var
  C : TSQLConnection;
  T : TSQLTransaction;
  Q : TSQLQuery;

begin
  // Create a connection.
  C:=TPQConnection.Create( Nil );

```

The rest of the code remains identical.

The above code used an SQL `SELECT` statement and the `Open` method to fetch data from the database. Almost the same method applies when trying to execute other kinds of queries, such as DDL queries:

```

{$mode objfpc}{$h+}
uses sqlldb, ibconnection;

Var
  C : TSQLConnection;
  T : TSQLTransaction;
  Q : TSQLQuery;

begin
  C:=TIBConnection.Create( Nil );
  try
    C.UserName:='MyUSER';
    C.Password:='Secret';
    C.DatabaseName:='/home/firebird/events.fb';

```

```

T:=TSQLTransaction.Create(C);
T.Database:=C;
C.Connected:=True;
Q:=TSQLQuery.Create(C);
Q.Database:=C;
Q.Transaction:=T;
// Set the SQL statement. SQL is a tstrings instance.
With Q.SQL do
begin
Add('CREATE TABLE USERS ( ');
Add(' U_NAME VARCHAR(50), ');
Add(' U_PASSWORD VARCHAR(50) ');
Add(' ) ');
end;
// And now execute the query using ExecSQL
// There is no result, so Open cannot be used.
Q.ExecSQL;
// Commit the transaction.
T.Commit;
finally
C.Free;
end;
end.

```

As can be seen from the above example, the setup is the same as in the case of fetching data. Note that `TSQLQuery` (605) can only execute 1 SQL statement during `ExecSQL`. If many SQL statements must be executed, `TSQLScript` (617) must be used.

There is much more to `TSQLQuery` than explained here: it can use parameters (see `UsingParams` (579)) and it can automatically update the data that you edit in it (see `UpdateSQLs` (578)).

See also: `TSQLConnection` (594), `TSQLTransaction` (624), `TSQLQuery` (605), `TSQLConnector` (604), `TSQLScript` (617), `UsingParams` (579), `UpdateSQLs` (578)

29.4 Using the universal `TSQLConnector` type

The normal procedure when using `SQLDB` is to use one of the `TSQLConnection` (594) descendent components. When the database backend changes, another descendent of `TSQLConnection` must be used. When using a lot of different connection types and components, this may be confusing and a lot of work.

There is a universal connector component `TSQLConnector` (604) which can connect to any database supported by `SQLDB`: it works as a proxy. Behind the scenes it uses a normal `TSQLConnection` descendent to do the real work. All this happens transparently to the user code, the universal connector acts and works like any normal connection component.

The type of database can be set in its `ConnectorType` (604) property. By setting the `ConnectorType` property, the connector knows which `TSQLConnection` descendent must be created.

Each `TSQLConnection` descendent registers itself with a unique name in the initialization section of the unit implementing it: this is the name that should be specified in the `ConnectorType` of the universal connection. The list of available connections can be retrieved with the `GetConnectionList` (584) call.

From this mechanism it follows that before a particular connection type can be used, its definition must be present in the list of connector types. This means that the unit of the connection type

(`ibconnection`, `pqconnection` etc.) must be included in the `uses` clause of the program file: if it is not included, the connection type will not be registered, and it will not be available for use in the universal connector.

The universal connector only exposes the properties common to all connection types (the ones in `TSQLConnection`). It does not expose properties for all the properties available in specific `TSQLConnection` descendents. This means that if connection-specific options must be used, they must be included in the `Params` (603) property of the universal connector in the form `Name=Value`. When the actual connection instance is created, the connection-specific properties will be set from the specified parameters.

See also: `TSQLConnection` (594), `TSQLConnector` (604)

29.5 Retrieving Schema Information

Schema Information (lists of available database objects) can be retrieved using some specialized calls in `TSQLConnection` (594):

- `TSQLConnection.GetTableNames` (597) retrieves a list of available tables. The system tables can be requested.
- `TSQLConnection.GetProcedureNames` (597) retrieves a list of available stored procedures.
- `TSQLConnection.GetFieldNames` (597) retrieves a list of fields for a given table.

These calls are pretty straightforward and need little explanation. A more versatile system is the schema info query: the `TCustomSQLQuery.SetSchemaInfo` (590) method can be used to create a result set (dataset) with schema information. The parameter `SchemaType` determines the resulting information when the dataset is opened. The following information can be requested:

stTables Retrieves the list of user Tables in database. This is used internally by `TSQLConnection.GetTableNames` (597).

stSysTables Retrieves the list of system Tables in database. This is used internally by `TSQLConnection.GetTableNames` (597) when the system tables are requested

stProcedures Retrieves a list of stored procedures in database. This is used internally by `TSQLConnection.GetProcedureNames` (597).

stColumns Retrieves the list of columns (fields) in a table. This is used internally by `TSQLConnection.GetFieldNames` (597).

stProcedureParams This retrieves the parameters for a stored procedure.

stIndexes Retrieves the indexes for one or more tables. (currently not implemented)

stPackages Retrieves packages for databases that support them. (currently not implemented).

29.6 Automatic generation of update SQL statements

SQLDB (more in particular, `TSQLQuery` (605)) can automatically generate update statements for the data it fetches. To this end, it will scan the SQL statement and determine the main table in the query: this is the first table encountered in the `FROM` part of the `SELECT` statement.

For INSERT and UPDATE operations, the SQL statement will update/insert all fields that have `pfInUpdate` in their `ProviderFlags` property. Read-only fields will not be added to the SQL statement. Fields that are NULL will not be added to an insert query, which means that the database server will insert whatever is in the `DEFAULT` clause of the corresponding field definition.

The WHERE clause for update and delete statements consists of all fields with `pfInKey` in their `ProviderFlags` property. Depending on the value of the `UpdateMode` (615) property, additional fields may be added to the WHERE clause:

upWhereKeyOnly No additional fields are added: only fields marked with `pfInKey` are used in the WHERE clause

upWhereChanged All fields whose value changed are added to the WHERE clause, using their old value.

upWhereAll All fields are added to the WHERE clause, using their old value.

In order to let SQLDB generate correct statements, it is important to set the `ProviderFlags` (346) properties correct for all fields.

In many cases, for example when only a single table is queried, and no AS field aliases are used, setting `TSQLQuery.UsePrimaryKeyAsKey` (615) combined with `UpdateMode` equal to `upWhereKeyOnly` is sufficient.

If the automatically generated queries are not correct, it is possible to specify the SQL statements to be used in the `UpdateSQL` (612), `InsertSQL` (613) and `DeleteSQL` (613) properties. The new field values should be specified using params with the same name as the field. The old field values should be specified using the `OLD_` prefix to the field name. The following example demonstrates this:

```
INSERT INTO MYTABLE
  (MYFIELD,MYFIELD2)
VALUES
  (:MYFIELD, :MYFIELD2);

UPDATE MYTABLE SET
  MYFIELD=:MYFIELD
  MYFIELD2=:MYFIELD2
WHERE
  (MYFIELD=:OLD_MYFIELD);

DELETE FROM MYTABLE WHERE (MyField=:OLD_MYFIELD);
```

See also: `UsingParams` (579), `TSQLQuery` (605), `UpdateSQL` (612), `InsertSQL` (613), `DeleteSQL` (612)

29.7 Using parameters

SQLDB implements parametrized queries, simulating them if the native SQL client does not support parametrized queries. A parametrized query means that the SQL statement contains placeholders for actual values. The following is a typical example:

```
SELECT * FROM MyTable WHERE (id=:id)
```

The `:id` is a parameter with the name `id`. It does not contain a value yet. The value of the parameter will be specified separately. In SQLDB this happens through the `TParams` collection, where each element of the collection is a named parameter, specified in the SQL statement. The value can be specified as follows:

```
Params.ParamByname('id').AsInteger:=123;
```

This will tell SQLDB that the parameter `id` is of type integer, and has value 123.

SQLDB uses parameters for 3 purposes:

1. When executing a query multiple times, simply with different values, this helps increase the speed if the server supports parametrized queries: the query must be prepared only once.
2. Master-Detail relationships between datasets can be established based on a parametrized detail query: the value of the parameters in the detail query is automatically obtained from fields with the same names in the master dataset. As the user scrolls through the master dataset, the detail dataset is refreshed with the new values of the params.
3. Updating of data in the database happens through parametrized update/delete/insert statements: the `TSQLQuery.UpdateSQL` (612), `TSQLQuery.DeleteSQL` (613), `TSQLQuery.InsertSQL` (613) properties of `TSQLQuery` (605) must contain parametrized queries.

An additional advantage of using parameters is that they help to avoid SQL injection: by specifying a parameter type and value, SQLDB will automatically check whether the value is of the correct type, and will apply proper quoting when the native engine does not support parameters directly.

See also: `TSQLQuery.Params` (614), `UpdateSQLs` (578)

29.8 Constants, types and variables

29.8.1 Constants

```
DefaultSQLFormatSettings : TFormatSettings = (CurrencyFormat: 1; NegCurrFormat: 5; T
```

`DefaultSQLFormatSettings` contains the default settings used when formatting date/time and other special values in Update SQL statements generated by the various `TSQLConnection` (594) descendents.

```
DoubleQuotes : TQuoteChars = ('"', '"')
```

`DoubleQuotes` is the set of delimiters used when using double quotes for string literals.

```
LogAllEvents = [detCustom, detPrepare, detExecute, detFetch, detCommit, detRollBack]
```

`LogAllEvents` is a constant that contains the full set of available event types. It can be used to set `TSQLConnection.LogEvents` (601).

```
SingleQuotes : TQuoteChars = (''', ''')
```

`SingleQuotes` is the set of delimiters used when using single quotes for string literals.

```
StatementTokens : Array[TStatementType] of string = ('(unknown)', 'select', 'insert'
```

`StatementTokens` contains an array of string tokens that are used to detect the type of statement, usually the first SQL keyword of the token. The presence of this token in the SQL statement determines the kind of token.

29.8.2 Types

```
TCommitRollbackAction = (caNone, caCommit, caCommitRetaining, caRollback,
                          caRollbackRetaining)
```

Table 29.2: Enumeration values for type TCommitRollbackAction

Value	Explanation
caCommit	Commit transaction
caCommitRetaining	Commit transaction, retaining transaction context
caNone	Do nothing
caRollback	Rollback transaction
caRollbackRetaining	Rollback transaction, retaining transaction context

TCommitRollbackAction is currently unused in SQLDB.

```
TConnectionDefClass = Class of TConnectionDef
```

TConnectionDefClass is used in the RegisterConnection (585) call to register a new TConnectionDef (585) instance.

```
TConnInfoType = (citAll, citServerType, citServerVersion,
                  citServerVersionString, citClientName, citClientVersion)
```

Table 29.3: Enumeration values for type TConnInfoType

Value	Explanation
citAll	All connection information
citClientName	Client library name
citClientVersion	Client library version
citServerType	Server type description
citServerVersion	Server version as an integer number
citServerVersionString	Server version as a string

Connection information to be retrieved

```
TConnOption = (sqSupportParams, sqEscapeSlash, sqEscapeRepeat)
```

Table 29.4: Enumeration values for type TConnOption

Value	Explanation
sqEscapeRepeat	Escapes in string literals are done by repeating the character.
sqEscapeSlash	Escapes in string literals are done with backslash characters.
sqSupportParams	The connection type has native support for parameters.

This type describes some of the option that a particular connection type supports.

TConnOptions = Set of TConnOption

TConnOptions describes the full set of options defined by a database.

TDBEventType = (detCustom, detPrepare, detExecute, detFetch, detCommit, detRollBack)

Table 29.5: Enumeration values for type TDBEventType

Value	Explanation
detCommit	Transaction Commit message
detCustom	Custom event message
detExecute	SQLExecute message
detFetch	Fetch data message
detPrepare	SQL prepare message
detRollBack	Transaction rollback message

TDBEventType describes the type of a database event message as generated by TSQLConnection (594) through the TSQLConnection.OnLog (601) event.

TDBEventTypes = Set of TDBEventType

TDBEventTypes is a set of TDBEventType (582) values, which is used to filter the set of event messages that should be sent. The TSQLConnection.LogEvents (601) property determines which events a particular connection will send.

TDBLogNotifyEvent = procedure(Sender: TSQLConnection;
 EventType: TDBEventType; const Msg: string)
 of object

TDBLogNotifyEvent is the prototype for the TSQLConnection.OnLog (601) event handler and for the global GlobalDBLogHook (584) event handling hook. Sender will contain the TSQLConnection (594) instance that caused the event, EventType will contain the event type, and Msg will contain the actual message: the content depends on the type of the message.

TLibraryLoadFunction = function(const S: AnsiString) : Integer

TLibraryLoadFunction is the function prototype for dynamically loading a library when the universal connection component is used. It receives the name of the library to load (S), and should return True if the library was successfully loaded. It is used in the connection definition.

TLibraryUnloadFunction = procedure

TLibraryUnloadFunction is the function prototype for dynamically unloading a library when the universal connection component is used. It has no parameters, and should simply unload the library loaded with TLibraryLoadFunction (582)

TQuoteChars = Array[0..1] of Char

TQuoteChars is an array of characters that describes the used delimiters for string values.

```
TRowsCount = LargeInt
```

A type to contain a result row count.

```
TSchemaType = (stNoSchema, stTables, stSysTables, stProcedures, stColumns,
               stProcedureParams, stIndexes, stPackages, stSchemata)
```

Table 29.6: Enumeration values for type TSchemaType

Value	Explanation
stColumns	Columns in a table
stIndexes	Indexes for a table
stNoSchema	No schema
stPackages	Packages (for databases that support them)
stProcedureParams	Parameters for a stored procedure
stProcedures	Stored procedures in database
stSchemata	
stSysTables	System tables in database
stTables	User Tables in database

TSchemaType describes which schema information to retrieve in the TCustomSQLQuery.SetSchemaInfo (590) call. Depending on its value, the result set of the dataset will have different fields, describing the requested schema data. The result data will always have the same structure.

```
TSQLConnectionClass = Class of TSQLConnection
```

TSQLConnectionClass is used when registering a new connection type for use in the universal connector TSQLConnector.ConnectorType (604)

```
TSQLStatementInfo = record
  StatementType : TStatementType;
  TableName : string;
  Updateable : Boolean;
  WhereStartPos : Integer;
  WhereStopPos : Integer;
end
```

```
TStatementType = (stUnknown, stSelect, stInsert, stUpdate, stDelete, stDDL,
                  stGetSegment, stPutSegment, stExecProcedure,
                  stStartTrans, stCommit, stRollback, stSelectForUpd)
```


Table 29.7: Enumeration values for type TStatementType

Value	Explanation
stCommit	The statement commits a transaction
stDDL	The statement is a SQL DDL (Data Definition Language) statement
stDelete	The statement is a SQL DELETE statement
stExecProcedure	The statement executes a stored procedure
stGetSegment	The statement is a SQL get segment statement
stInsert	The statement is a SQL INSERT statement
stPutSegment	The statement is a SQL put segment statement
stRollback	The statement rolls back a transaction
stSelect	The statement is a SQL SELECT statement
stSelectForUpd	The statement selects data for update
stStartTrans	The statement starts a transaction
stUnknown	Unknown (other) information
stUpdate	The statement is a SQL UPDATE statement

TStatementType describes the kind of SQL statement that was entered in the SQL property of a TSQLQuery (605) component.

29.8.3 Variables

GlobalDBLogHook : TDBLogNotifyEvent

GlobalDBLogHook can be set in addition to local TSQLConnection.Onlog (601) event handlers. All connections will report events through this global event handler in addition to their OnLog event handlers. The global log event handler can be set only once, so when setting the handler, it is important to set up chaining: saving the previous value, and calling the old handler (if it was set) in the new handler.

29.9 Procedures and functions

29.9.1 GetConnectionDef

Synopsis: Search for a connection definition by name

Declaration: `function GetConnectionDef(ConnectorName: string) : TConnectionDef`

Visibility: default

Description: GetConnectionDef will search in the list of connection type definitions, and will return the one definition with the name that matches ConnectorName. The search is case insensitive.

If no definition is found, Nil is returned.

See also: RegisterConnection (585), TConnectionDef (585), TConnectionDef.TypeName (586)

29.9.2 GetConnectionList

Synopsis: Return a list of connection definition names.

Declaration: `procedure GetConnectionList(List: TStrings)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetConnectionList` clears `List` and fills it with the list of currently known connection type names, as registered with `RegisterConnection` (585). The names are the names as returned by `TConnectionDef.TypeName` (586)

See also: `RegisterConnection` (585), `TConnectionDef.TypeName` (586)

29.9.3 RegisterConnection

Synopsis: Register a new connection type for use in the universal connector

Declaration: `procedure RegisterConnection(Def: TConnectionDefClass)`

Visibility: default

Description: `RegisterConnection` must be called with a class pointer to a `TConnectionDef` (585) descendent to register the connection type described in the `TConnectionDef` (585) descendent. The connection type is registered with the name as returned by `TConnectionDef.TypeName` (586).

The various connection types distributed by Free Pascal automatically call `RegisterConnection` from the `initialization` section of their unit, so simply including the unit with a particular connection type is enough to register it.

Connection types registered with this call can be unregistered with `UnRegisterConnection` (585).

Errors: if `Def` is `Nil`, access violations will occur.

See also: `TConnectionDef` (585), `UnRegisterConnection` (585)

29.9.4 UnRegisterConnection

Synopsis: Unregister a registered connection type

Declaration: `procedure UnRegisterConnection(Def: TConnectionDefClass)`
`procedure UnRegisterConnection(ConnectionName: string)`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnRegisterConnection` will unregister the connection `Def`. If a connection with `ConnectionName` or with name as returned by the `TypeName` (586) method from `Def` was previously registered, it will be removed from the list of registered connection types.

Errors: if `Def` is `Nil`, access violations will occur.

See also: `TConnectionDef` (585), `RegisterConnection` (585)

29.10 TConnectionDef

29.10.1 Description

`TConnectionDef` is an abstract class. When registering a new connection type for use in the universal connector, a descendent of this class must be made and registered using `RegisterConnection` (585). A descendent class should override at least the `TConnectionDef.TypeName` (586) and `TConnectionDef.ConnectionClass` (586) methods to return the specific name and connection class to use.

See also: `TConnectionDef.TypeName` (586), `TConnectionDef.ConnectionClass` (586), `RegisterConnection` (585)

29.10.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
588	<code>ApplyParams</code>	Apply parameters to an instance of <code>TSQLConnection</code>
586	<code>ConnectionClass</code>	Class to instantiate when this connection is requested
587	<code>DefaultLibraryName</code>	Default library name
586	<code>Description</code>	A descriptive text for this connection type
587	<code>LoadedLibraryName</code>	Currently loaded library.
587	<code>LoadFunction</code>	Return a function to call when the client library must be loaded
586	<code>Type</code>	Name of the connection type
587	<code>UnLoadFunction</code>	Return a function to call when the client library must be unloaded

29.10.3 TConnectionDef.TypeName

Synopsis: Name of the connection type

Declaration: `class function TypeName; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `TypeName` is overridden by descendent classes to return the unique name for this connection type. It is what the `TSQLConnector.ConnectorType` ([604](#)) property should be set to select this connection type for the universal connection, and is the name that the `GetConnectionDef` ([584](#)) call will use when looking for a connection type. It must be overridden by descendents of `TConnectionDef`.

This name is also returned in the list returned by `GetConnectionList` ([584](#))

This name can be an arbitrary name, no restrictions on the allowed characters exist.

See also: `TSQLConnector.ConnectorType` ([604](#)), `GetConnectionDef` ([584](#)), `GetConnectionList` ([584](#)), `TConnectionDef.ConnectionClass` ([586](#))

29.10.4 TConnectionDef.ConnectionClass

Synopsis: Class to instantiate when this connection is requested

Declaration: `class function ConnectionClass; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `ConnectionClass` should return the connection class to use when a connection of this type is requested. It must be overridden by descendents of `TConnectionDef`.

It may not be `Nil`.

See also: `TConnectionDef.TypeName` ([586](#))

29.10.5 TConnectionDef.Description

Synopsis: A descriptive text for this connection type

Declaration: `class function Description; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Description` should return a descriptive text for this connection type. It is used for display purposes only, so ideally it should be a one-liner. It can be used to provide more information about the particulars of the connection type.

See also: `TConnectionDef.TypeName` ([586](#))

29.10.6 TConnectionDef.DefaultLibraryName

Synopsis: Default library name

Declaration: `class function DefaultLibraryName; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `DefaultLibraryName` should be set to the default library name for the connection. This can be used to let SQLDB automatically load the library needed when a connection of this type is requested.

See also: `TLibraryLoadFunction` (582), `TConnectionDef` (585), `TLibraryUnLoadFunction` (582)

29.10.7 TConnectionDef.LoadFunction

Synopsis: Return a function to call when the client library must be loaded

Declaration: `class function LoadFunction; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `LoadFunction` must return the function that will be called when the client library for this connection type must be loaded. This method must be overridden by descendent classes to return a function that will correctly load the client library when a connection of this type is used.

See also: `TLibraryLoadFunction` (582), `TConnectionDef.UnLoadFunction` (587), `TConnectionDef.DefaultLibraryName` (587), `TConnectionDef.LoadedLibraryName` (587)

29.10.8 TConnectionDef.UnLoadFunction

Synopsis: Return a function to call when the client library must be unloaded

Declaration: `class function UnLoadFunction; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnLoadFunction` must return the function that will be called when the client library for this connection type must be unloaded. This method must be overridden by descendent classes to return a function that will correctly unload the client library when a connection of this type is no longer used.

See also: `TLibraryUnLoadFunction` (582), `TConnectionDef.LoadFunction` (587), `TConnectionDef.DefaultLibraryName` (587), `TConnectionDef.LoadedLibraryName` (587)

29.10.9 TConnectionDef.LoadedLibraryName

Synopsis: Currently loaded library.

Declaration: `class function LoadedLibraryName; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `LoadedLibraryName` must be overridden by descendents to return the filename of the currently loaded client library for this connection type. If no library is loaded, an empty string must be returned.

See also: `TLibraryLoadFunction` (582), `TLibraryUnLoadFunction` (582), `TConnectionDef.LoadFunction` (587), `TConnectionDef.UnLoadFunction` (587), `TConnectionDef.DefaultLibraryName` (587)

29.10.10 TConnectionDef.ApplyParams

Synopsis: Apply parameters to an instance of `TSQLConnection`

Declaration: `procedure ApplyParams (Params: TStrings; AConnection: TSQLConnection)
; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `ApplyParams` must be overridden to apply any params specified in the `Params` argument to the `TSQLConnection` (594) descendent in `AConnection`. It can be used to convert `Name=Value` pairs to properties of the actual connection instance.

When called, `AConnection` is guaranteed to be of the same type as returned by `TConnectionDef.ConnectionClass` (586). `Params` contains the contents of the `TSQLConnection.Params` (603) property of the connector.

See also: `TSQLConnection.Params` (603)

29.11 TCustomSQLQuery

29.11.1 Description

`TCustomSQLQuery` encapsulates a SQL statement: it implements all the necessary `#fcl.db.TDataset` (277) functionality to be able to handle a result set. It can also be used to execute SQL statements that do not return data, using the `ExecSQL` (589) method.

Do not instantiate a `TCustomSQLQuery` class directly, instead use the `TSQLQuery` (605) descendent.

See also: `TSQLQuery` (605)

29.11.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
590	Create	Create a new instance of <code>TCustomSQLQuery</code> .
590	Destroy	Destroy instance of <code>TCustomSQLQuery</code>
589	ExecSQL	Execute a SQL statement that does not return a result set
591	ParamByName	Return parameter by name
588	Prepare	Prepare a query for execution.
591	RowsAffected	Return the number of rows (records) affected by the last DML/DDI statement
590	SetSchemaInfo	<code>SetSchemaInfo</code> prepares the dataset to retrieve schema info.
589	UnPrepare	Unprepare a prepared query

29.11.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
591	Prepared	r	Is the query prepared ?

29.11.4 TCustomSQLQuery.Prepare

Synopsis: Prepare a query for execution.

Declaration: `procedure Prepare; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Prepare` will prepare the SQL for execution. It will open the database connection if it was not yet open, and will start a transaction if none was started yet. It will then determine the statement type. Finally, it will pass the statement on to the database engine if it supports preparing of queries.

Strictly speaking, it is not necessary to call `prepare`, the component will prepare the statement whenever it is necessary. If a query will be executed repeatedly, it is good practice to prepare it once before starting to execute it. This will speed up execution, since resources must be allocated only once.

Errors: If the SQL server cannot prepare the statement, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TSQLQuery.StatementType` (607), `TCustomSQLQuery.UnPrepare` (589), `TCustomSQLQuery.ExecSQL` (589)

29.11.5 TCustomSQLQuery.UnPrepare

Synopsis: Unprepare a prepared query

Declaration: `procedure UnPrepare; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `UnPrepare` will unprepare a prepared query. This means that server resources for this statement are deallocated. After a query was unprepared, any `ExecSQL` or `Open` command will prepare the SQL statement again.

Several actions will unprepare the statement: Setting the `TSQLQuery.SQL` (612) property, setting the `Transaction` property or setting the `Database` property will automatically call `UnPrepare`. Closing the dataset will also unprepare the query.

Errors: If the SQL server cannot unprepare the statement, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TSQLQuery.StatementType` (607), `TCustomSQLQuery.Prepare` (588), `TCustomSQLQuery.ExecSQL` (589)

29.11.6 TCustomSQLQuery.ExecSQL

Synopsis: Execute a SQL statement that does not return a result set

Declaration: `procedure ExecSQL; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `ExecSQL` will execute the statement in `TSQLQuery.SQL` (612), preparing the statement if necessary. It cannot be used to get results from the database (such as returned by a `SELECT` statement): for this, the `Open` (294) method must be used.

The `SQL` property should be a single SQL command. To execute multiple SQL statements, use the `TSQLScript` (617) component instead.

If the statement is a DML statement, the number of deleted/updated/inserted rows can be determined using `TCustomSQLQuery.RowsAffected` (591).

The `Database` and `Transaction` properties must be assigned before calling `ExecSQL`. Executing an empty SQL statement is also an error.

Errors: If the server reports an error, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TCustomSQLQuery.RowsAffected` (591), `TDataset.Open` (294)

29.11.7 TCustomSQLQuery.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of TCustomSQLQuery.

Declaration: constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override

Visibility: public

Description: Create allocates a new instance on the heap and will allocate all resources for the SQL statement. After this it calls the inherited constructor.

Errors: If not enough memory is available, an exception will be raised.

See also: TCustomSQLQuery.Destroy ([590](#))

29.11.8 TCustomSQLQuery.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroy instance of TCustomSQLQuery

Declaration: destructor Destroy; Override

Visibility: public

Description: Destroy cleans up the instance, closing the dataset and freeing all allocated resources.

See also: TCustomSQLQuery.Create ([590](#))

29.11.9 TCustomSQLQuery.SetSchemaInfo

Synopsis: SetSchemaInfo prepares the dataset to retrieve schema info.

Declaration: procedure SetSchemaInfo(ASchemaType: TSchemaType;
ASchemaObjectName: string; ASchemaPattern: string)
; Virtual

Visibility: public

Description: SetSchemaInfo will prepare the dataset to retrieve schema information from the connection, and represents the schema info as a dataset.

SetSchemaInfo is used internally to prepare a query to retrieve schema information from a connection. It will store the 3 passed parameters, which are then used in the ParseSQL and Prepare stages to optimize the allocated resources. setting the schema type to anything other than stNoSchema will also set (or mimic) the SQL statement as soon as the query is prepared. For connection types that support this, the SQL statement is then set to whatever statement the database connection supports to retrieve schema information.

This is used internally by TSQLConnection.GetTableNames ([597](#)) and TSQLConnection.GetProcedureNames ([597](#)) to get the necessary schema information from the database.

See also: TSQLConnection.GetTableNames ([597](#)), TSQLConnection.GetProcedureNames ([597](#)), RetrievingSchemaInformation ([578](#))

29.11.10 TCustomSQLQuery.RowsAffected

Synopsis: Return the number of rows (records) affected by the last DML/DDI statement

Declaration: `function RowsAffected : TRowCount; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `RowsAffected` returns the number of rows affected by the last statement executed using `ExecSQL` (589).

Errors: If the connection or database type does not support returning this number, -1 is returned. If the query is not connected to a database, -1 is returned.

See also: `TCustomSQLQuery.ExecSQL` (589), `TSQLConnection` (594)

29.11.11 TCustomSQLQuery.ParamByName

Synopsis: Return parameter by name

Declaration: `function ParamByName(const AParamName: string) : TParam`

Visibility: public

Description: `ParamByName` is a shortcut for `Params.ParamByName` (400). The 2 following pieces of code are completely equivalent:

```
Qry.ParamByName('id').AsInteger:=123;
```

and

```
Qry.Params.ParamByName('id').AsInteger:=123;
```

See also: `Params.ParamByName` (400), `TSQLQuery.Params` (614)

29.11.12 TCustomSQLQuery.Prepared

Synopsis: Is the query prepared ?

Declaration: `Property Prepared : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Prepared` is true if `Prepare` (588) was called for this query, and an `UnPrepare` (589) was not done after that (take care: several actions call `UnPrepare` implicitly). Initially, `Prepared` will be `False`. Calling `Prepare` if the query was already prepared has no effect.

See also: `TCustomSQLQuery.Prepare` (588), `TCustomSQLQuery.UnPrepare` (589)

29.12 TCustomSQLStatement

29.12.1 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
592	Create	
592	Destroy	
592	Execute	
592	ParamByName	
592	Prepare	
593	RowsAffected	
592	Unprepare	

29.12.2 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
593	Prepared	r	

29.12.3 TCustomSQLStatement.Create

Declaration: constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override

Visibility: public

29.12.4 TCustomSQLStatement.Destroy

Declaration: destructor Destroy; Override

Visibility: public

29.12.5 TCustomSQLStatement.Prepare

Declaration: procedure Prepare

Visibility: public

29.12.6 TCustomSQLStatement.Execute

Declaration: procedure Execute

Visibility: public

29.12.7 TCustomSQLStatement.Unprepare

Declaration: procedure Unprepare

Visibility: public

29.12.8 TCustomSQLStatement.ParamByName

Declaration: function ParamByName(const AParamName: string) : TParam

Visibility: public

29.12.9 TCustomSQLStatement.RowsAffected

Declaration: `function RowsAffected : TRowsCount; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

29.12.10 TCustomSQLStatement.Prepared

Declaration: `Property Prepared : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

29.13 TServerIndexDefs

29.13.1 Description

`TServerIndexDefs` is a simple descendent of `TIndexDefs` (370) that implements the necessary methods to update the list of definitions using the `TSQLConnection` (594). It should not be used directly.

See also: `TSQLConnection` (594)

29.13.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
593	Create	Create a new instance of <code>TServerIndexDefs</code>
593	Update	Updates the list of indexes

29.13.3 TServerIndexDefs.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TServerIndexDefs`

Declaration: `constructor Create(ADataset: TDataSet); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` will rais an exception if `ADataset` is not a `TCustomSQLQuery` (588) descendent.

Errors: An `EDatabaseError` exception will be raised if `ADataset` is not a `TCustomSQLQuery` (588) descendent.

29.13.4 TServerIndexDefs.Update

Synopsis: Updates the list of indexes

Declaration: `procedure Update; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Update` updates the list of indexes, it uses the `TSQLConnection` (594) methods for this.

29.14 TSQLConnection

29.14.1 Description

`TSQLConnection` is an abstract class for making a connection to a SQL Database. This class will never be instantiated directly, for each database type a descendent class specific for this database type must be created.

Most of common properties to SQL databases are implemented in this class.

See also: `TSQLQuery` ([605](#)), `TSQLTransaction` ([624](#))

29.14.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
595	Create	Create a new instance of <code>TSQLConnection</code>
598	CreateDB	Create a new Database on the server
595	Destroy	Destroys the instance of the connection.
598	DropDB	Procedure to drop or remove a Database
596	EndTransaction	End the Transaction associated with this connection
596	ExecuteDirect	Execute a piece of SQL code directly, using a Transaction if specified
598	GetConnectionInfo	Return some information about the connection
597	GetFieldNames	Gets a list of the field names in the specified table
597	GetProcedureNames	Gets a list of Stored Procedures in the Database
597	GetSchemaNames	
597	GetTableNames	Get a list of the tables in the specified database
595	StartTransaction	Start the Transaction associated with this Connection

29.14.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
600	CharSet	rw	The character set to be used in this database
602	Connected		Is a connection to the server active or not
599	ConnOptions	r	The set of Connection options being used in the Connection
602	DatabaseName		The name of the database to which connection is required.
599	FieldNameQuoteChars	rw	Characters used to quote field names.
599	Handle	r	Low level handle used by the connection.
601	HostName	rw	The name of the host computer where the database resides
603	KeepConnection		Attempt to keep the connection open once it is established.
601	LogEvents	rw	Filter for events to log
603	LoginPrompt		Should SQLDB prompt for user credentials when a connection is activated.
601	OnLog	rw	Event handler for logging events
603	OnLogin		Event handler for login process
603	Params		Extra connection parameters
599	Password	rw	Password used when authenticating on the database server
602	Role	rw	Role in which the user is connecting to the database
600	Transaction	rw	Default transaction to be used for this connection
600	UserName	rw	The username for authentication on the database server

29.14.4 TSQLConnection.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TSQLConnection`

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initialized a new instance of `TSQLConnection` ([594](#)). After calling the inherited constructor, it will initialize the `FieldNameQuoteChars` ([599](#)) property and some other fields for internal use.

See also: `FieldNameQuoteChars` ([599](#))

29.14.5 TSQLConnection.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the instance of the connection.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` removes the connection from memory. When a connection is removed, all datasets are closed, and all transactions too.

29.14.6 TSQLConnection.StartTransaction

Synopsis: Start the Transaction associated with this Connection

Declaration: `procedure StartTransaction; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `StartTransaction` is a convenience method which starts the default transaction (`Transaction (600)`). It is equivalent to

```
Connection.Transaction.StartTransaction
```

Errors: If no transaction is assigned, an exception will be raised.

See also: `EndTransaction (596)`

29.14.7 TSQLConnection.EndTransaction

Synopsis: End the Transaction associated with this connection

Declaration: `procedure EndTransaction; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `StartTransaction` is a convenience method which ends the default transaction (`TSQLConnection.Transaction (600)`). It is equivalent to

```
Connection.Transaction.EndTransaction
```

Errors: If no transaction is assigned, an exception will be raised.

See also: `StartTransaction (595)`

29.14.8 TSQLConnection.ExecuteDirect

Synopsis: Execute a piece of SQL code directly, using a Transaction if specified

Declaration: `procedure ExecuteDirect(SQL: string); Virtual; Overload`
`procedure ExecuteDirect(SQL: string; ATransaction: TSQLTransaction)`
`; Virtual; Overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ExecuteDirect` executes an SQL statement directly. If `ATransaction` is `Nil` then the default transaction is used, otherwise the specified transaction is used.

`ExecuteDirect` does not offer support for parameters, so only statements that do not need parsing and parameters substitution can be handled. If parameter substitution is required, use a `TSQLQuery (605)` component and its `ExecSQL (589)` method.

Errors: If no transaction is assigned, and no transaction is passed, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TSQLQuery (605)`, `ExecSQL (589)`

29.14.9 TSQLConnection.GetTableNames

Synopsis: Get a list of the tables in the specified database

Declaration: `procedure GetTableNames(List: TStrings; SystemTables: Boolean); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetTableNames` will return the names of the tables in the database in `List`. If `SystemTables` is `True` then only the names of system tables will be returned.

`List` is cleared before adding the names.

Remark: Note that the list may depend on the access rights of the user.

See also: `TSQLConnection.GetProcedureNames` (597), `TSQLConnection.GetFieldNames` (597)

29.14.10 TSQLConnection.GetProcedureNames

Synopsis: Gets a list of Stored Procedures in the Database

Declaration: `procedure GetProcedureNames(List: TStrings); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetProcedureNames` will return the names of the stored procedures in the database in `List`.

`List` is cleared before adding the names.

See also: `TSQLConnection.GetTableNames` (597), `TSQLConnection.GetFieldNames` (597)

29.14.11 TSQLConnection.GetFieldNames

Synopsis: Gets a list of the field names in the specified table

Declaration: `procedure GetFieldNames(const TableName: string; List: TStrings)
; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetFieldNames` will return the names of the fields in `TableName` in `list`

`List` is cleared before adding the names.

Errors: If a non-existing tablename is passed, no error will be raised.

See also: `TSQLConnection.GetTableNames` (597), `TSQLConnection.GetProcedureNames` (597)

29.14.12 TSQLConnection.GetSchemaNames

Declaration: `procedure GetSchemaNames(List: TStrings); Virtual`

Visibility: public

29.14.13 TSQLConnection.GetConnectionInfo

Synopsis: Return some information about the connection

Declaration: `function GetConnectionInfo(InfoType: TConnInfoType) : string; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetConnectionInfo` can be used to return some information about the connection. Which information is returned depends on the `InfoType` parameter. The information is returned as a string. If `citAll` is passed, then the result will be a comma-separated list of values, each of the values enclosed in double quotes.

See also: `TConnInfoType` ([581](#))

29.14.14 TSQLConnection.CreateDB

Synopsis: Create a new Database on the server

Declaration: `procedure CreateDB; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CreateDB` will create a new database on the server. Whether or not this functionality is present depends on the type of the connection. The name for the new database is taken from the `TSQLConnection.DatabaseName` ([602](#)) property, the user credentials are taken from the `TSQLConnection.UserName` ([600](#)) and `TSQLConnection.Password` ([599](#)) properties.

Errors: If the connection type does not support creating a database, then an `EDatabaseError` exception is raised. Other exceptions may be raised if the operation fails, e.g. when the user does not have the necessary access rights.

See also: `TSQLConnection.DropDB` ([598](#))

29.14.15 TSQLConnection.DropDB

Synopsis: Procedure to drop or remove a Database

Declaration: `procedure DropDB; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `DropDB` does the opposite of `CreateDB` ([598](#)). It removes the database from the server. The database must be connected before this command may be used. Whether or not this functionality is present depends on the type of the connection.

Errors: If the connection type does not support creating a database, then an `EDatabaseError` exception is raised. Other exceptions may be raised if the operation fails, e.g. when the user does not have the necessary access rights.

See also: `TSQLConnection.CreateDB` ([598](#))

29.14.16 TSQLConnection.Handle

Synopsis: Low level handle used by the connection.

Declaration: `Property Handle : Pointer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Handle` represents the low-level handle that the `TSQLConnection` component has received from the client library of the database. Under normal circumstances, this property must not be used.

29.14.17 TSQLConnection.FieldNameQuoteChars

Synopsis: Characters used to quote field names.

Declaration: `Property FieldNameQuoteChars : TQuoteChars`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `FieldNameQuoteChars` can be set to specify the characters that should be used to delimit field names in SQL statements generated by `SQLDB`. It is normally initialized correctly by the `TSQLConnection` (594) descendent to the default for that particular connection type.

See also: `TSQLConnection` (594)

29.14.18 TSQLConnection.ConnOptions

Synopsis: The set of Connection options being used in the Connection

Declaration: `Property ConnOptions : TConnOptions`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `ConnOptions` is the set of options used by this connection component. It is normally the same value for all connections of the same type

See also: `TConnOption` (581)

29.14.19 TSQLConnection.Password

Synopsis: Password used when authenticating on the database server

Declaration: `Property Password : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Password` is used when authenticating the user specified in `UserName` (600) when connecting to the database server

This property must be set prior to activating the connection. Changing it while the connection is active has no effect.

See also: `TSQLConnection.UserName` (600), `TSQLConnection.HostName` (601)

29.14.20 TSQLConnection.Transaction

Synopsis: Default transaction to be used for this connection

Declaration: `Property Transaction : TSQLTransaction`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Transaction` should be set to a `TSQLTransaction` (624) instance. It is set as the default transaction when a query is connected to the database, and is used in several metadata operations such as `TSQLConnection.GetTableNames` (597)

See also: `TSQLTransaction` (624)

29.14.21 TSQLConnection.UserName

Synopsis: The username for authentication on the database server

Declaration: `Property UserName : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `UserName` is used to to authenticate on the database server when the connection to the database is established.

This property must be set prior to activating the connection. Changing it while the connection is active has no effect.

See also: `TSQLConnection.Password` (599), `TSQLConnection.HostName` (601), `TSQLConnection.Role` (602), `TSQLConnection.Charset` (600)

29.14.22 TSQLConnection.CharSet

Synopsis: The character set to be used in this database

Declaration: `Property CharSet : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Charset` can be used to tell the user in which character set the data will be sent to the server, and in which character set the results should be sent to the client. Some connection types will ignore this property, and the data will be sent to the client in the encoding used on the server.

This property must be set prior to activating the connection. Changing it while the connection is active has no effect.

Remark: `SQLDB` will not do anything with this setting except pass it on to the server if a specific connection type supports it. It does not perform any conversions by itself based on the value of this setting.

See also: `TSQLConnection.Password` (599), `TSQLConnection.HostName` (601), `TSQLConnection.UserName` (600), `TSQLConnection.Role` (602)

29.14.23 TSQLConnection.HostName

Synopsis: The name of the host computer where the database resides

Declaration: `Property HostName : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `HostName` is the the name of the host computer where the database server is listening for connection. An empty value means the local machine is used.

This property must be set prior to activating the connection. Changing it while the connection is active has no effect.

See also: `TSQLConnection.Role` (602), `TSQLConnection.Password` (599), `TSQLConnection.UserName` (600), `TSQLConnection.DatabaseName` (602), `TSQLConnection.Charset` (600)

29.14.24 TSQLConnection.OnLog

Synopsis: Event handler for logging events

Declaration: `Property OnLog : TDBLogNotifyEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `TSQLConnection` can send events for all the actions that it performs: executing SQL statements, committ and rollback of transactions etc. This event handler must be set to react on these events: they can for example be written to a log file. Only events specified in the `LogEvents` (601) property will be logged.

The events received by this event handler are specific for this connection. To receive events from all active connections in the application, set the global `GlobalDBLogHook` (584) event handler.

See also: `GlobalDBLogHook` (584), `TSQLConnection.LogEvents` (601)

29.14.25 TSQLConnection.LogEvents

Synopsis: Filter for events to log

Declaration: `Property LogEvents : TDBEventTypes`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `LogEvents` can be used to filter the events which should be sent to the `OnLog` (601) and `GlobalDBLogHook` (584) event handlers. Only event types that are listed in this property will be sent.

See also: `GlobalDBLogHook` (584), `TSQLConnection.OnLog` (601)

29.14.26 TSQLConnection.Connected

Synopsis: Is a connection to the server active or not

Declaration: `Property Connected :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Connected` indicates whether a connection to the server is active or not. No queries to this server can be activated as long as the value is `False`

Setting the property to `True` will attempt a connection to the database `DatabaseName` (602) on host `HostName` (601) using the credentials specified in `UserName` (600) and `Password` (599). If the connection or authentication fails, an exception is raised. This has the same effect as calling `Open` (264).

Setting the property to `False` will close the connection to the database. All datasets connected to the database will be closed, all transactions will be closed as well. This has the same effect as calling `Close` (574)

See also: `TSQLConnection.Password` (599), `TSQLConnection.UserName` (600), `TSQLConnection.DatabaseName` (602), `TSQLConnection.Role` (602)

29.14.27 TSQLConnection.Role

Synopsis: Role in which the user is connecting to the database

Declaration: `Property Role : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Role` is used to specify the user's role when connecting to the database user. Not all connection types support roles, for those that do not, this property is ignored.

This property must be set prior to activating the connection. Changing it while the connection is active has no effect.

See also: `TSQLConnection.Password` (599), `TSQLConnection.UserName` (600), `TSQLConnection.DatabaseName` (602), `TSQLConnection.Hostname` (601)

29.14.28 TSQLConnection.DatabaseName

Synopsis: The name of the database to which connection is required.

Declaration: `Property DatabaseName :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `DatabaseName` is the name of the database to which a connection must be made. Some servers need a complete path to a file, others need a symbolic name (an alias): the interpretation of this name depends on the connection type.

This property must be set prior to activating the connection. Changing it while the connection is active has no effect.

See also: `TSQLConnection.Password` (599), `TSQLConnection.UserName` (600), `TSQLConnection.Charset` (600), `TSQLConnection.Hostname` (601)

29.14.29 TSQLConnection.KeepConnection

Synopsis: Attempt to keep the connection open once it is established.

Declaration: Property `KeepConnection` :

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `KeepConnection` can be used to attempt to keep the connection open once it is established. This property is currently not implemented.

29.14.30 TSQLConnection.LoginPrompt

Synopsis: Should SQLDB prompt for user credentials when a connection is activated.

Declaration: Property `LoginPrompt` :

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `LoginPrompt` can be set to `True` to force the system to get a username/password pair from the user. How these data are fetched from the user depends on the `OnLogin` (603) event handler. The `UserName` (600) and `Password` (599) properties are ignored in this case.

See also: `TSQLConnection.Password` (599), `TSQLConnection.UserName` (600), `OnLogin` (603)

29.14.31 TSQLConnection.Params

Synopsis: Extra connection parameters

Declaration: Property `Params` :

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Params` can be used to specify extra parameters to use when establishing a connection to the database. Which parameters can be specified depends on the connection type.

See also: `TSQLConnection.Password` (599), `TSQLConnection.UserName` (600), `TSQLConnection.Hostname` (601), `TSQLConnection.DatabaseName` (602)

29.14.32 TSQLConnection.OnLogin

Synopsis: Event handler for login process

Declaration: Property `OnLogin` :

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `OnLogin` will be used when `loginPrompt` (603) is `True`. It will be called, and can be used to present a user with a dialog in which the username and password can be asked.

See also: `TSQLConnection.LoginPrompt` (603)

29.15 TSQLConnector

29.15.1 Description

`TSQLConnector` implements a general connection type. When switching database backends, the normal procedure is to replace one instance of `TSQLConnection` (594) descendent with another, and connect all instances of `TSQLQuery` (605) and `TSQLTransaction` (624) to the new connection.

Using `TSQLConnector` avoids this: the type of connection can be set using the `ConnectorType` (604) property, which is a string property. The `TSQLConnector` class will (in the background) create the correct `TSQLConnection` (594) descendent to handle all actual operations on the database.

In all other respects, `TSQLConnector` acts like a regular `TSQLConnection` instance. Since no access to the actually used `TSQLConnection` descendent is available, connection-specific calls are not available.

See also: `TSQLConnector.ConnectorType` (604), `UniversalConnectors` (577)

29.15.2 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
604	<code>ConnectorType</code>	rw	Name of the connection type to use

29.15.3 TSQLConnector.ConnectorType

Synopsis: Name of the connection type to use

Declaration: `Property ConnectorType : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ConnectorType` should be set to one of the available connector types in the application. The list of possible connector types can be retrieved using `GetConnectionList` (584) call. The `ConnectorType` property can only be set when the connection is not active.

Errors: Attempting to change the `ConnectorType` property while the connection is active will result in an exception.

See also: `GetConnectionList` (584)

29.16 TSQLCursor

29.16.1 Description

`TSQLCursor` is an abstract internal object representing a result set returned by a single SQL select statement (`TSQLHandle` (605)). statement. It is used by the `TSQLQuery` (605) component to handle result sets returned by SQL statements.

This object must not be used directly.

See also: `TSQLQuery` (605), `TSQLHandle` (605)

29.17 TSQLHandle

29.17.1 Description

`TSQLHandle` is an abstract internal object representing a database client handle. It is used by the various connections to implement the connection-specific functionality, and usually represents a low-level handle. It is used by the `TSQLQuery` (605) component to communicate with the `TSQLConnection` (594) descendent.

This object must not be used directly.

See also: `TSQLQuery` (605), `TSQLCursor` (604)

29.18 TSQLQuery

29.18.1 Description

`TSQLQuery` exposes the properties and some methods introduced in `TCustomSQLQuery` (588). It encapsulates a single SQL statement: it implements all the necessary `#fcl.db.TDataset` (277) functionality to be able to handle a result set. It can also be used to execute a single SQL statement that does not return data, using the `TCustomSQLQuery.ExecSQL` (589) method.

Typically, the `TSQLQuery.Database` (611) property must be set once, the `TSQLQuery.Transaction` (612) property as well. Then the `TSQLQuery.SQL` (612) property can be set. Depending on the kind of SQL statement, the `Open` (294) method can be used to retrieve data, or the `ExecSQL` method can be used to execute the SQL statement (this can be used for DDL statements, or update statements).

See also: `TSQLTransaction` (624), `TSQLConnection` (594), `TCustomSQLQuery.ExecSQL` (589), `TSQLQuery.SQL` (612)

29.18.2 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
608	Active		
608	AfterCancel		
608	AfterClose		
608	AfterDelete		
609	AfterEdit		
609	AfterInsert		
609	AfterOpen		
609	AfterPost		
609	AfterScroll		
608	AutoCalcFields		
609	BeforeCancel		
609	BeforeClose		
610	BeforeDelete		
610	BeforeEdit		
610	BeforeInsert		
610	BeforeOpen		
610	BeforePost		
610	BeforeScroll		
611	Database		The <code>TSQLConnection</code> instance on which to execute SQL Statements
616	DataSource		Source for parameter values for unbound parameters
613	DeleteSQL		Statement to be used when inserting a new row in the database
607	FieldDefs		List of field definitions.
608	Filter		
608	Filtered		
614	IndexDefs		List of local index Definitions
613	InsertSQL		Statement to be used when inserting a new row in the database
607	MaxIndexesCount		Maximum allowed number of indexes.
610	OnCalcFields		
611	OnDeleteError		
611	OnEditError		
611	OnFilterRecord		
611	OnNewRecord		
611	OnPostError		
614	ParamCheck		
614	Params		Parameters detected in the SQL statement.
614	ParseSQL		Should the SQL statement be parsed or not
612	ReadOnly		
607	SchemaType		Schema type
616	ServerFilter		Append server-side filter to SQL statement
616	ServerFiltered		Should server-side filter be applied
617	ServerIndexDefs		List of indexes on the primary table of the query
612	SQL		The SQL statement to execute
607	StatementType		SQL statement type
612	Transaction		Transaction in which to execute SQL statements
615	UpdateMode		How to create update SQL statements.
612	UpdateSQL		Statement to be used when updating an existing row in the database
615	UsePrimaryKeyAsKey		Should primary key fields be marked <code>pfInKey</code>

29.18.3 TSQLQuery.SchemaType

Synopsis: Schema type

Declaration: `Property SchemaType :`

Visibility: public

Access:

Description: `SchemaType` is the schema type set by `TCustomSQLQuery.SetSchemaInfo` (590). It determines what kind of schema information will be returned by the `TSQLQuery` instance.

See also: `TCustomSQLQuery.SetSchemaInfo` (590), `RetrievingSchemaInformation` (578)

29.18.4 TSQLQuery.StatementType

Synopsis: SQL statement type

Declaration: `Property StatementType :`

Visibility: public

Access:

Description: `StatementType` is determined during the `Prepare` (588) call when `ParseSQL` (614) is set to `True`. It gives an indication of the type of SQL statement that is being executed.

See also: `TSQLQuery.SQL` (612), `TSQLQuery.ParseSQL` (614), `TSQLQuery.Params` (614)

29.18.5 TSQLQuery.MaxIndexesCount

Synopsis: Maximum allowed number of indexes.

Declaration: `Property MaxIndexesCount :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `MaxIndexesCount` determines the number of index entries that the dataset will reserve for indexes. No more indexes than indicated here can be used. The property must be set before the dataset is opened. The minimum value for this property is 1. The default value is 2.

If an index is added and the current index count equals `MaxIndexesCount`, an exception will be raised.

Errors: Attempting to set this property while the dataset is active will raise an exception.

29.18.6 TSQLQuery.FieldDefs

Synopsis: List of field definitions.

Declaration: `Property FieldDefs :`

Visibility: published

Access:

29.18.7 TSQLQuery.Active

Declaration: Property Active :

Visibility: published

Access:

29.18.8 TSQLQuery.AutoCalcFields

Declaration: Property AutoCalcFields :

Visibility: published

Access:

29.18.9 TSQLQuery.Filter

Declaration: Property Filter :

Visibility: published

Access:

29.18.10 TSQLQuery.Filtered

Declaration: Property Filtered :

Visibility: published

Access:

29.18.11 TSQLQuery.AfterCancel

Declaration: Property AfterCancel :

Visibility: published

Access:

29.18.12 TSQLQuery.AfterClose

Declaration: Property AfterClose :

Visibility: published

Access:

29.18.13 TSQLQuery.AfterDelete

Declaration: Property AfterDelete :

Visibility: published

Access:

29.18.14 TSQLQuery.AfterEdit

Declaration: `Property AfterEdit` :

Visibility: published

Access:

29.18.15 TSQLQuery.AfterInsert

Declaration: `Property AfterInsert` :

Visibility: published

Access:

29.18.16 TSQLQuery.AfterOpen

Declaration: `Property AfterOpen` :

Visibility: published

Access:

29.18.17 TSQLQuery.AfterPost

Declaration: `Property AfterPost` :

Visibility: published

Access:

29.18.18 TSQLQuery.AfterScroll

Declaration: `Property AfterScroll` :

Visibility: published

Access:

29.18.19 TSQLQuery.BeforeCancel

Declaration: `Property BeforeCancel` :

Visibility: published

Access:

29.18.20 TSQLQuery.BeforeClose

Declaration: `Property BeforeClose` :

Visibility: published

Access:

29.18.21 TSQLQuery.BeforeDelete

Declaration: `Property BeforeDelete` :

Visibility: published

Access:

29.18.22 TSQLQuery.BeforeEdit

Declaration: `Property BeforeEdit` :

Visibility: published

Access:

29.18.23 TSQLQuery.BeforeInsert

Declaration: `Property BeforeInsert` :

Visibility: published

Access:

29.18.24 TSQLQuery.BeforeOpen

Declaration: `Property BeforeOpen` :

Visibility: published

Access:

29.18.25 TSQLQuery.BeforePost

Declaration: `Property BeforePost` :

Visibility: published

Access:

29.18.26 TSQLQuery.BeforeScroll

Declaration: `Property BeforeScroll` :

Visibility: published

Access:

29.18.27 TSQLQuery.OnCalcFields

Declaration: `Property OnCalcFields` :

Visibility: published

Access:

29.18.28 TSQLQuery.OnDeleteError

Declaration: Property OnDeleteError :

Visibility: published

Access:

29.18.29 TSQLQuery.OnEditError

Declaration: Property OnEditError :

Visibility: published

Access:

29.18.30 TSQLQuery.OnFilterRecord

Declaration: Property OnFilterRecord :

Visibility: published

Access:

29.18.31 TSQLQuery.OnNewRecord

Declaration: Property OnNewRecord :

Visibility: published

Access:

29.18.32 TSQLQuery.OnPostError

Declaration: Property OnPostError :

Visibility: published

Access:

29.18.33 TSQLQuery.Database

Synopsis: The TSQLConnection instance on which to execute SQL Statements

Declaration: Property Database :

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: Database is the SQL connection (of type TSQLConnection ([594](#))) on which SQL statements will be executed, and from which result sets will be retrieved. This property must be set before any form of SQL command can be executed, just like the Transaction ([612](#)) property must be set.

Multiple TSQLQuery instances can be connected to a database at the same time.

See also: TSQLQuery.Transaction ([612](#)), TSQLConnection ([594](#)), TSQLTransaction ([624](#))

29.18.34 TSQLQuery.Transaction

Synopsis: Transaction in which to execute SQL statements

Declaration: `Property Transaction :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Transaction` must be set to a SQL transaction (of type `TSQLTransaction` (624)) component. All SQL statements (`SQL` / `InsertSQL` / `updateSQL` / `DeleteSQL`) etc.) will be executed in the context of this transaction.

The transaction must be connected to the same database instance as the query itself.

Multiple `TSQLQuery` instances can be connected to a transaction at the same time. If the transaction is rolled back, all changes done by all `TSQLQuery` instances will be rolled back.

See also: `TSQLQuery.Database` (611), `TSQLConnection` (594), `TSQLTransaction` (624)

29.18.35 TSQLQuery.ReadOnly

Declaration: `Property ReadOnly :`

Visibility: published

Access:

29.18.36 TSQLQuery.SQL

Synopsis: The SQL statement to execute

Declaration: `Property SQL :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `SQL` is the SQL statement that will be executed when `ExecSQL` (589) is called, or `Open` (294) is called. It should contain a valid SQL statement for the connection to which the `TSQLQuery` (605) component is connected. `SQLDB` will not attempt to modify the SQL statement so it is accepted by the SQL engine.

Setting or modifying the SQL statement will call `UnPrepare` (589)

If `ParseSQL` (614) is `True`, the SQL statement will be parsed and the `Params` (614) property will be updated with the names of the parameters found in the SQL statement.

See also `Using parameters`

See also: `TSQLQuery.ParseSQL` (614), `TSQLQuery.Params` (614), `TCustomSQLQuery.ExecSQL` (589), `TDataset.Open` (294)

29.18.37 TSQLQuery.UpdateSQL

Synopsis: Statement to be used when updating an existing row in the database

Declaration: `Property UpdateSQL :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `UpdateSQL` can be used to specify an SQL UPDATE statement, which is used when an existing record was modified in the dataset, and the changes must be written to the database. `TSQLQuery` can generate an update statement by itself for many cases, but in case it fails, the statement to be used for the update can be specified here.

The SQL statement should be parametrized according to the conventions for specifying parameters. Note that old field values can be specified as `:OLD_FIELDNAME`

See also: `TSQLQuery.SQL` (612), `TSQLQuery.InsertSQL` (613), `TSQLQuery.DeleteSQL` (613), `TSQLQuery.UpdateMode` (615), `UsingParams` (579), `UpdateSQLS` (578)

29.18.38 TSQLQuery.InsertSQL

Synopsis: Statement to be used when inserting a new row in the database

Declaration: `Property InsertSQL :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `InsertSQL` can be used to specify an SQL INSERT statement, which is used when a new record was appended to the dataset, and the changes must be written to the database. `TSQLQuery` can generate an insert statement by itself for many cases, but in case it fails, the statement to be used for the insert can be specified here.

The SQL statement should be parametrized according to the conventions for specifying parameters. Note that old field values can be specified as `:OLD_FIELDNAME`

See also: `TSQLQuery.SQL` (612), `TSQLQuery.UpdateSQL` (612), `TSQLQuery.DeleteSQL` (613), `TSQLQuery.UpdateMode` (615), `UsingParams` (579), `UpdateSQLS` (578)

29.18.39 TSQLQuery.DeleteSQL

Synopsis: Statement to be used when inserting a new row in the database

Declaration: `Property DeleteSQL :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `DeleteSQL` can be used to specify an SQL DELETE statement, which is used when an existing record was deleted from the dataset, and the changes must be written to the database. `TSQLQuery` can generate a delete statement by itself for many cases, but in case it fails, the statement to be used for the insert can be specified here.

The SQL statement should be parametrized according to the conventions for specifying parameters. Note that old field values can be specified as `:OLD_FIELDNAME`

See also: `TSQLQuery.SQL` (612), `TSQLQuery.UpdateSQL` (612), `TSQLQuery.DeleteSQL` (613), `TSQLQuery.UpdateMode` (615), `UsingParams` (579), `UpdateSQLS` (578)

29.18.40 TSQLQuery.IndexDefs

Synopsis: List of local index Definitions

Declaration: `Property IndexDefs :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: List of local index Definitions

See also: `TCustomBufDataset.IndexDefs` ([574](#))

29.18.41 TSQLQuery.Params

Synopsis: Parameters detected in the SQL statement.

Declaration: `Property Params :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Params` contains the parameters used in the SQL statement. This collection is only updated when `ParseSQL` ([614](#)) is `True`. For each named parameter in the `SQL` ([612](#)) property, a named item will appear in the collection, and the collection will be used to retrieve values from.

When `Open` ([294](#)) or `ExecSQL` ([589](#)) is called, and the `Datasource` ([616](#)) property is not `Nil`, then for each parameter for which no value was explicitly set (its `Bound` ([393](#)) property is `False`), the value will be retrieved from the dataset connected to the datasource.

For each parameter, a field with the same name will be searched, and its value and type will be copied to the (unbound) parameter. The parameter remains unbound.

The Update, delete and insert SQL statements are not scanned for parameters.

See also: `TSQLQuery.SQL` ([612](#)), `TSQLQuery.ParseSQL` ([614](#)), `TParam.Bound` ([393](#)), `UsingParams` ([579](#)), `UpdateSQLS` ([578](#))

29.18.42 TSQLQuery.ParamCheck

Declaration: `Property ParamCheck :`

Visibility: published

Access:

29.18.43 TSQLQuery.ParseSQL

Synopsis: Should the SQL statement be parsed or not

Declaration: `Property ParseSQL :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `ParseSQL` can be set to `False` to prevent `TSQLQuery` from parsing the `SQL` (612) property and attempting to detect the statement type or updating the `Params` (614) or `StatementType` (607) properties.

This can be used when `SQLDB` has problems parsing the SQL statement, or when the SQL statement contains parameters that are part of a DDL statement such as a `CREATE PROCEDURE` statement to create a stored procedure.

Note that in this case the statement will be passed as-is to the SQL engine, no parameter values will be passed on.

See also: `TSQLQuery.SQL` (612), `TSQLQuery.Params` (614)

29.18.44 TSQLQuery.UpdateMode

Synopsis: How to create update SQL statements.

Declaration: `Property UpdateMode :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `UpdateMode` determines how the `WHERE` clause of the `UpdateSQL` (612) and `DeleteSQL` (613) statements are auto-generated.

upWhereAll Use all old field values

upWhereChanged Use only old field values of modified fields

upWhereKeyOnly Only use key fields in the where clause.

See also: `TSQLQuery.UpdateSQL` (612), `TSQLQuery.InsertSQL` (613)

29.18.45 TSQLQuery.UsePrimaryKeyAsKey

Synopsis: Should primary key fields be marked `pfInKey`

Declaration: `Property UsePrimaryKeyAsKey :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `UsePrimaryKeyAsKey` can be set to `True` to let `TSQLQuery` fetch all server indexes and if there is a primary key, update the `ProviderFlags` (346) of the fields in the primary key with `pfInKey` (239).

The effect of this is that when `UpdateMode` (615) equals `upWhereKeyOnly`, then only the fields that are part of the primary key of the table will be used in the update statements. For more information, see `UpdateSQLs` (578).

See also: `TSQLQuery.UpdateMode` (615), `TCustomBufDataset.Unidirectional` (574), `TField.ProviderFlags` (346), `pfInKey` (239), `UpdateSQLs` (578)

29.18.46 TSQLQuery.DataSource

Synopsis: Source for parameter values for unbound parameters

Declaration: `Property DataSource :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `DataSource` can be set to a dataset which will be used to retrieve values for the parameters if they were not explicitly specified.

When `Open` (294) or `ExecSQL` (589) is called, and the `DataSource` property is not `Nil` then for each parameter for which no value was explicitly set (its `Bound` (393) property is `False`), the value will be retrieved from the dataset connected to the `datasource`.

For each parameter, a field with the same name will be searched, and its value and type will be copied to the (unbound) parameter. The parameter remains unbound.

See also: `Params` (614), `ExecSQL` (589), `UsingParams` (579), `TParam.Bound` (393)

29.18.47 TSQLQuery.ServerFilter

Synopsis: Append server-side filter to SQL statement

Declaration: `Property ServerFilter :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `ServerFilter` can be set to a valid `WHERE` clause (without the `WHERE` keyword). It will be appended to the `select` statement in SQL (612), when `ServerFiltered` (616) is set to `True`. if `ServerFiltered` (616) is set to `False`, `ServerFilter` is ignored.

If the dataset is active and `ServerFiltered` (616) is set to `true`, then changing this property will re-fetch the data from the server.

This property cannot be used when `ParseSQL` (614) is `False`, because the statement must be parsed in order to know where the `WHERE` clause must be inserted: the `TSQLQuery` class will intelligently insert the clause in an SQL `select` statement.

Errors: Setting this property when `ParseSQL` (614) is `False` will result in an exception.

See also: `ServerFiltered` (616)

29.18.48 TSQLQuery.ServerFiltered

Synopsis: Should server-side filter be applied

Declaration: `Property ServerFiltered :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `ServerFiltered` can be set to `True` to apply `ServerFilter` (616). A change in the value for this property will re-fetch the query results if the dataset is active.

Errors: Setting this property to `True` when `ParseSQL` (614) is `False` will result in an exception.

See also: `ParseSQL` (614), `ServerFilter` (616)

29.18.49 TSQLQuery.ServerIndexDefs

Synopsis: List of indexes on the primary table of the query

Declaration: `Property ServerIndexDefs :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `ServerIndexDefs` will be filled - during the `Prepare` call - with the list of indexes defined on the primary table in the query if `UsePrimaryKeyAsKey` (615) is `True`. If a primary key is found, then the fields in it will be marked

See also: `UsePrimaryKeyAsKey` (615), `Prepare` (588)

29.19 TSQLScript

29.19.1 Description

`TSQLScript` is a component that can be used to execute many SQL statements using a `TSQLQuery` (605) component. The SQL statements are specified in a script `TSQLScript.Script` (620) separated by a terminator character (typically a semicolon (;)).

See also: `TSQLTransaction` (624), `TSQLConnection` (594), `TCustomSQLQuery.ExecSQL` (589), `TSQLQuery.SQL` (612)

29.19.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
617	Create	Create a new <code>TSQLScript</code> instance.
618	Destroy	Remove the <code>TSQLScript</code> instance from memory.
618	Execute	Execute the script.
618	ExecuteScript	Convenience function, simply calls <code>Execute</code>

29.19.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
621	CommentsinSQL		Should comments be passed to the SQL engine ?
619	DataBase	rw	Database on which to execute the script
620	Defines		Defined macros
619	Directives		List of directives
619	OnDirective	rw	Event handler if a directive is encountered
622	OnException		Exception handling event
620	Script		The script to execute
620	Terminator		Terminator character.
619	Transaction	rw	Transaction to use in the script
621	UseCommit		Control automatic handling of the <code>COMMIT</code> command.
622	UseDefines		Automatically handle pre-processor defines
621	UseSetTerm		Should the <code>SET TERM</code> directive be recognized

29.19.4 TSQLScript.Create

Synopsis: Create a new `TSQLScript` instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a `TSQLQuery` (605) instance which will be used to execute the queries, and then calls the inherited constructor.

See also: `TSQLScript.Destroy` (618)

29.19.5 TSQLScript.Destroy

Synopsis: Remove the `TSQLScript` instance from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` frees the `TSQLQuery` (605) instance that was created during the `Create` constructor from memory and then calls the inherited destructor.

See also: `TSQLScript.Create` (617)

29.19.6 TSQLScript.Execute

Synopsis: Execute the script.

Declaration: `procedure Execute; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Execute` will execute the statements specified in `Script` (620) one by one, till the last statement is processed or an exception is raised.

If an error occurs during execution, normally an exception is raised. If the `TSQLScript.OnException` (622) event handler is set, it may stop the event handler.

Errors: Handle errors using `TSQLScript.OnException` (622).

See also: `Script` (620), `TSQLScript.OnException` (622)

29.19.7 TSQLScript.ExecuteScript

Synopsis: Convenience function, simply calls `Execute`

Declaration: `procedure ExecuteScript`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ExecuteScript` is a convenience function, it simply calls `Execute`. The statements in the script will be executed one by one.

29.19.8 TSQLScript.DataBase

Synopsis: Database on which to execute the script

Declaration: `Property DataBase : TDatabase`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `DataBase` should be set to the `TSQLConnection` (594) descendent. All SQL statements in the `Script` (620) property will be executed on this database.

See also: `TSQLConnection` (594), `TSQLScript.Transaction` (619), `TSQLScript.Script` (620)

29.19.9 TSQLScript.Transaction

Synopsis: Transaction to use in the script

Declaration: `Property Transaction : TDBTransaction`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Transaction` is the transaction instance to use when executing statements. If the SQL script contains any `COMMIT` statements, they will be handled using the `TSQLTransaction.CommitRetaining` (625) method.

See also: `TSQLTransaction` (624), `TSQLTransaction.CommitRetaining` (625), `TSQLScript.Database` (619)

29.19.10 TSQLScript.OnDirective

Synopsis: Event handler if a directive is encountered

Declaration: `Property OnDirective : TSQLScriptDirectiveEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnDirective` is called when a directive is encountered. When parsing the script, the script engine checks the first word of the statement. If it matches one of the words in `Directives` (619) property then the `OnDirective` event handler is called with the name of the directive and the rest of the statement as parameters. This can be used to handle all kind of pre-processing actions such as `Set term \;`

See also: `Directives` (619)

29.19.11 TSQLScript.Directives

Synopsis: List of directives

Declaration: `Property Directives :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Directives` is a stringlist with words that should be recognized as directives. They will be handled using the `OnDirective` (619) event handler. The list should contain one word per line, no spaces allowed.

See also: `OnDirective` (619)

29.19.12 TSQLScript.Defines

Synopsis: Defined macros

Declaration: `Property Defines :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Defines` contains the list of defined macros for use with the `TSQLScript.UseDefines` (622) property. Each line should contain a macro name. The names of the macros are case insensitive. The `#DEFINE` and `#UNDEFINE` directives will add or remove macro names from this list.

See also: `TSQLScript.UseDefines` (622)

29.19.13 TSQLScript.Script

Synopsis: The script to execute

Declaration: `Property Script :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Script` contains the list of SQL statements to be executed. The statements should be separated by the character specified in the `Terminator` (620) property. Each of the statement will be executed on the database specified in `Database` (619). using the equivalent of the `TCustomSQLQuery.ExecSQL` (589) statement. The statements should not return result sets, but other than that all kind of statements are allowed.

Comments will be conserved and passed on in the statements to be executed, depending on the value of the `TSQLScript.CommentsinSQL` (621) property. If that property is `False`, comments will be stripped prior to executing the SQL statements.

See also: `TSQLScript.CommentsinSQL` (621), `TSQLScript.Terminator` (620), `TSQLScript.Database` (619)

29.19.14 TSQLScript.Terminator

Synopsis: Terminator character.

Declaration: `Property Terminator :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Terminator` is the character used by `TSQLScript` to delimit SQL statements. By default it equals the semicolon (;), which is the customary SQL command terminating character. By itself `TSQLScript` does not recognize complex statements such as `Create Procedure` which can contain terminator characters such as ";". Instead, `TSQLScript` will scan the script for the `Terminator` character. Using directives such as `SET TERM` the terminator character may be changed in the script.

See also: [OnDirective \(619\)](#), [Directives \(619\)](#)

29.19.15 TSQLScript.CommentsinSQL

Synopsis: Should comments be passed to the SQL engine ?

Declaration: `Property CommentsinSQL :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `CommentsInSQL` can be set to `True` to let `TSQLScript` preserve any comments it finds in the script. The comments will be passed to the `SQLConnection` as part of the commands. If the property is set to `False` the comments are discarded.

By default, `TSQLScript` discards comments.

See also: [TSQLScript.Script \(620\)](#)

29.19.16 TSQLScript.UseSetTerm

Synopsis: Should the SET TERM directive be recognized

Declaration: `Property UseSetTerm :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `UseSetTerm` can be set to `True` to let `TSQLScript` automatically handle the `SET TERM` directive and set the `TSQLScript.Terminator (620)` character based on the value specified in the `SET TERM` directive. This means that the following directive:

```
SET TERM ^ ;
```

will set the terminator to the caret character. Conversely, the

```
SET TERM ; ^
```

will then switch the terminator character back to the commonly used semicolon (;).

See also: [TSQLScript.Terminator \(620\)](#), [TSQLScript.Script \(620\)](#), [TSQLScript.Directives \(619\)](#)

29.19.17 TSQLScript.UseCommit

Synopsis: Control automatic handling of the COMMIT command.

Declaration: `Property UseCommit :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `UseCommit` can be set to `True` to let `TSQLScript` automatically handle the commit command as a directive. If it is set, the `COMMIT` command is registered as a directive, and the `TSQLScript.Transaction (619)` will be committed and restarted at once whenever the `COMMIT` directive appears in the script.

If this property is set to `False` then the commit command will be passed on to the SQL engine like any other SQL command in the script.

See also: [TSQLScript.Transaction \(619\)](#), [TSQLScript.Directives \(619\)](#)

29.19.18 TSQLScript.UseDefines

Synopsis: Automatically handle pre-processor defines

Declaration: Property UseDefines :

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: UseDefines will automatically register the following pre-processing directives:

```
#IFDEF
#IFNDEF
#ELSE
#ENDIF
#DEFINE
#UNDEF
#UNDEFINE
```

Additionally, these directives will be automatically handled by the TSQLScript component. This can be used to add conditional execution of the SQL script: they are treated as the conditional compilation statements found in the C macro preprocessor or the FPC conditional compilation features. The initial list of defined macros can be specified in the Defines (620) property, where one define per line can be specified.

In the following example, the correct statement to create a sequence is selected based on the presence of the macro FIREBIRD in the list of defines:

```
#IFDEF FIREBIRD
CREATE GENERATOR GEN_MYID;
#ELSE
CREATE SEQUENCE GEN_MYID;
#ENDIF
```

See also: TSQLScript.Script (620), TSQLScript.Defines (620)

29.19.19 TSQLScript.OnException

Synopsis: Exception handling event

Declaration: Property OnException :

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: OnException can be set to handle an exception during the execution of a statement or directive when the script is executed. The exception is passed to the handler in the TheException parameter. On return, the value of the Continue parameter is checked: if it is set to True, then the exception is ignored. If it is set to False (the default), then the exception is re-raised, and script execution will stop.

See also: TSQLScript.Execute (618)

29.20 TSQLStatement

29.20.1 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
623	Database		
623	DataSource		
623	ParamCheck		
623	Params		
623	ParseSQL		
624	SQL		
624	Transaction		

29.20.2 TSQLStatement.Database

Declaration: `Property Database` :

Visibility: published

Access:

29.20.3 TSQLStatement.DataSource

Declaration: `Property DataSource` :

Visibility: published

Access:

29.20.4 TSQLStatement.ParamCheck

Declaration: `Property ParamCheck` :

Visibility: published

Access:

29.20.5 TSQLStatement.Params

Declaration: `Property Params` :

Visibility: published

Access:

29.20.6 TSQLStatement.ParseSQL

Declaration: `Property ParseSQL` :

Visibility: published

Access:

29.20.7 TSQLStatement.SQL

Declaration: `Property SQL` :

Visibility: published

Access:

29.20.8 TSQLStatement.Transaction

Declaration: `Property Transaction` :

Visibility: published

Access:

29.21 TSQLTransaction

29.21.1 Description

`TSQLTransaction` represents the transaction in which one or more `TSQLQuery` (605) instances are doing their work. It contains the methods for committing or doing a rollback of the results of query. At least one `TSQLTransaction` must be used for each `TSQLConnection` (594) used in an application.

See also: `TSQLQuery` (605), `TSQLConnection` (594)

29.21.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
624	<code>Commit</code>	Commit the transaction, end transaction context.
625	<code>CommitRetaining</code>	Commit the transaction, retain transaction context.
626	<code>Create</code>	Create a new transaction
626	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroy transaction component
627	<code>EndTransaction</code>	End the transaction
625	<code>Rollback</code>	Roll back all changes made in the current transaction.
626	<code>RollbackRetaining</code>	Roll back changes made in the transaction, keep transaction context.
626	<code>StartTransaction</code>	Start a new transaction

29.21.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
627	<code>Action</code>	rw	Currently unused in SQLDB
627	<code>Database</code>		Database for which this component is handling connections
627	<code>Handle</code>	r	Low-level transaction handle
628	<code>Params</code>	rw	Transaction parameters

29.21.4 TSQLTransaction.Commit

Synopsis: Commit the transaction, end transaction context.

Declaration: `procedure Commit; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Commit` commits an active transaction. The changes will be irreversably written to the database.

After this, the transaction is deactivated and must be reactivated with the `StartTransaction` (626) method. To commit data while retaining an active transaction, execute `CommitRetaining` (625) instead.

Errors: Executing `Commit` when no transaction is active will result in an exception. A transaction must be started by calling `StartTransaction` (626). If the database backend reports an error, an exception is raised as well.

See also: `StartTransaction` (626), `CommitRetaining` (625), `Rollback` (625), `RollbackRetaining` (626)

29.21.5 TSQLTransaction.CommitRetaining

Synopsis: Commit the transaction, retain transaction context.

Declaration: `procedure CommitRetaining; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CommitRetaining` commits an active transaction. The changes will be irreversably written to the database.

After this, the transaction is still active. To commit data and deactivate the transaction, execute `Commit` (624) instead.

Errors: Executing `CommitRetaining` when no transaction is active will result in an exception. A transaction must be started by calling `StartTransaction` (626). If the database backend reports an error, an exception is raised as well.

See also: `StartTransaction` (626), `Retaining` (624), `Rollback` (625), `RollbackRetaining` (626)

29.21.6 TSQLTransaction.Rollback

Synopsis: Roll back all changes made in the current transaction.

Declaration: `procedure Rollback; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Rollback` undoes all changes in the databack since the start of the transaction. It can only be executed in an active transaction.

After this, the transaction is no longer active. To undo changes but keep an active transaction, execute `RollbackRetaining` (626) instead.

Remark: Changes posted in datasets that are coupled to this transaction will not be undone in memory: these datasets must be reloaded from the database (using `Close` and `Open` to reload the data as it is in the database).

Errors: Executing `Rollback` when no transaction is active will result in an exception. A transaction must be started by calling `StartTransaction` (626). If the database backend reports an error, an exception is raised as well.

See also: `StartTransaction` (626), `CommitRetaining` (625), `Commit` (624), `RollbackRetaining` (626)

29.21.7 TSQLTransaction.RollbackRetaining

Synopsis: Roll back changes made in the transaction, keep transaction context.

Declaration: `procedure RollbackRetaining; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `RollbackRetaining` undoes all changes in the databack since the start of the transaction. It can only be executed in an active transaction.

After this, the transaction is kept in an active state. To undo changes and close the transaction, execute `Rollback` (625) instead.

Remark: Changes posted in datasets that are coupled to this transaction will not be undone in memory: these datasets must be reloaded from the database (using `Close` and `Open` to reload the data as it is in the database).

Errors: Executing `RollbackRetaining` when no transaction is active will result in an exception. A transaction must be started by calling `StartTransaction` (626). If the database backend reports an error, an exception is raised as well.

See also: `StartTransaction` (626), `Commit` (624), `Rollback` (625), `CommitRetaining` (625)

29.21.8 TSQLTransaction.StartTransaction

Synopsis: Start a new transaction

Declaration: `procedure StartTransaction; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `StartTransaction` starts a new transaction context. All changes written to the database must be confirmed with a `Commit` (624) or can be undone with a `Rollback` (625) call.

Calling `StartTransaction` is equivalent to setting `Active` to `True`.

Errors: If `StartTransaction` is called while the transaction is still active, an exception will be raised.

See also: `StartTransaction` (626), `Commit` (624), `Rollback` (625), `CommitRetaining` (625), `EndTransaction` (627)

29.21.9 TSQLTransaction.Create

Synopsis: Create a new transaction

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new `TSQLTransaction` instance, but does not yet start a transaction context.

29.21.10 TSQLTransaction.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroy transaction component

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` will close all datasets connected to it, prior to removing the object from memory.

29.21.11 TSQLTransaction.EndTransaction

Synopsis: End the transaction

Declaration: `procedure EndTransaction; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `EndTransaction` is equivalent to `RollBack` (625).

See also: `RollBack` (625)

29.21.12 TSQLTransaction.Handle

Synopsis: Low-level transaction handle

Declaration: `Property Handle : Pointer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Handle` is the low-level transaction handle object. It must not be used in application code. The actual type of this object depends on the type of `TSQLConnection` (594) descendent.

29.21.13 TSQLTransaction.Action

Synopsis: Currently unused in SQLDB

Declaration: `Property Action : TCommitRollbackAction`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Action` is currently unused in SQLDB.

29.21.14 TSQLTransaction.Database

Synopsis: Database for which this component is handling connections

Declaration: `Property Database :`

Visibility: `published`

Access:

Description: `Database` should be set to the particular `TSQLConnection` (594) instance this transaction is handling transactions in. All datasets connected to this transaction component must have the same value for their `Database` (611) property.

See also: `TSQLQuery.Database` (611), `TSQLConnection` (594)

29.21.15 TSQLTransaction.Params

Synopsis: Transaction parameters

Declaration: `Property Params : TStringList`

Visibility: published

Access: Read, Write

Description: `Params` can be used to set connection-specific parameters in the form of `Key=Value` pairs. The contents of this property therefor depends on the type of connection.

See also: `TSQLConnection` ([594](#))

Chapter 30

Reference for unit 'streamcoll'

30.1 Used units

Table 30.1: Used units by unit 'streamcoll'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

30.2 Overview

The `streamcoll` unit contains the implementation of a collection (and corresponding collection item) which implements routines for saving or loading the collection to/from a stream. The collection item should implement 2 routines to implement the streaming; the streaming itself is not performed by the `TStreamCollection` (632) collection item.

The streaming performed here is not compatible with the streaming implemented in the `Classes` unit for components. It is independent of the latter and can be used without a component to hold the collection.

The collection item introduces mostly protected methods, and the unit contains a lot of auxiliary routines which aid in streaming.

30.3 Procedures and functions

30.3.1 ColReadBoolean

Synopsis: Read a boolean value from a stream

Declaration: `function ColReadBoolean(S: TStream) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `ColReadBoolean` reads a boolean from the stream `S` as it was written by `ColWriteBoolean` (631) and returns the read value. The value cannot be read and written across systems that have different endian values.

See also: [ColReadDateTime \(630\)](#), [ColWriteBoolean \(631\)](#), [ColReadString \(631\)](#), [ColReadInteger \(630\)](#), [ColReadFloat \(630\)](#), [ColReadCurrency \(630\)](#)

30.3.2 ColReadCurrency

Synopsis: Read a currency value from the stream

Declaration: `function ColReadCurrency(S: TStream) : Currency`

Visibility: default

Description: `ColReadCurrency` reads a currency value from the stream `S` as it was written by `ColWriteCurrency (631)` and returns the read value. The value cannot be read and written across systems that have different endian values.

See also: [ColReadDateTime \(630\)](#), [ColReadBoolean \(629\)](#), [ColReadString \(631\)](#), [ColReadInteger \(630\)](#), [ColReadFloat \(630\)](#), [ColWriteCurrency \(631\)](#)

30.3.3 ColReadDateTime

Synopsis: Read a `TDateTime` value from a stream

Declaration: `function ColReadDateTime(S: TStream) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `ColReadDateTime` reads a currency value from the stream `S` as it was written by `ColWriteDateTime (631)` and returns the read value. The value cannot be read and written across systems that have different endian values.

See also: [ColWriteDateTime \(631\)](#), [ColReadBoolean \(629\)](#), [ColReadString \(631\)](#), [ColReadInteger \(630\)](#), [ColReadFloat \(630\)](#), [ColReadCurrency \(630\)](#)

30.3.4 ColReadFloat

Synopsis: Read a floating point value from a stream

Declaration: `function ColReadFloat(S: TStream) : Double`

Visibility: default

Description: `ColReadFloat` reads a double value from the stream `S` as it was written by `ColWriteFloat (632)` and returns the read value. The value cannot be read and written across systems that have different endian values.

See also: [ColReadDateTime \(630\)](#), [ColReadBoolean \(629\)](#), [ColReadString \(631\)](#), [ColReadInteger \(630\)](#), [ColWriteFloat \(632\)](#), [ColReadCurrency \(630\)](#)

30.3.5 ColReadInteger

Synopsis: Read a 32-bit integer from a stream.

Declaration: `function ColReadInteger(S: TStream) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `ColReadInteger` reads a 32-bit integer from the stream `S` as it was written by `ColWriteInteger` (632) and returns the read value. The value cannot be read and written across systems that have different endian values.

See also: `ColReadDateTime` (630), `ColReadBoolean` (629), `ColReadString` (631), `ColWriteInteger` (632), `ColReadFloat` (630), `ColReadCurrency` (630)

30.3.6 ColReadString

Synopsis: Read a string from a stream

Declaration: `function ColReadString(S: TStream) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `ColReadStream` reads a string value from the stream `S` as it was written by `ColWriteString` (632) and returns the read value. The value cannot be read and written across systems that have different endian values.

See also: `ColReadDateTime` (630), `ColReadBoolean` (629), `ColWriteString` (632), `ColReadInteger` (630), `ColReadFloat` (630), `ColReadCurrency` (630)

30.3.7 ColWriteBoolean

Synopsis: Write a boolean to a stream

Declaration: `procedure ColWriteBoolean(S: TStream; AValue: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ColWriteBoolean` writes the boolean `AValue` to the stream. `S`.

See also: `ColReadBoolean` (629), `ColWriteString` (632), `ColWriteInteger` (632), `ColWriteCurrency` (631), `ColWriteDateTime` (631), `ColWriteFloat` (632)

30.3.8 ColWriteCurrency

Synopsis: Write a currency value to stream

Declaration: `procedure ColWriteCurrency(S: TStream; AValue: Currency)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ColWriteCurrency` writes the currency `AValue` to the stream `S`.

See also: `ColWriteBoolean` (631), `ColWriteString` (632), `ColWriteInteger` (632), `ColWriteDateTime` (631), `ColWriteFloat` (632), `ColReadCurrency` (630)

30.3.9 ColWriteDateTime

Synopsis: Write a `TDateTime` value to stream

Declaration: `procedure ColWriteDateTime(S: TStream; AValue: TDateTime)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ColWriteDateTime` writes the `TDateTime` `AValue` to the stream `S`.

See also: `ColReadDateTime` (630), `ColWriteBoolean` (631), `ColWriteString` (632), `ColWriteInteger` (632), `ColWriteFloat` (632), `ColWriteCurrency` (631)

30.3.10 ColWriteFloat

Synopsis: Write floating point value to stream

Declaration: `procedure ColWriteFloat (S: TStream; AValue: Double)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ColWriteFloat` writes the double `AValue` to the stream `S`.

See also: `ColWriteDateTime` (631), `ColWriteBoolean` (631), `ColWriteString` (632), `ColWriteInteger` (632), `ColReadFloat` (630), `ColWriteCurrency` (631)

30.3.11 ColWriteInteger

Synopsis: Write a 32-bit integer to a stream

Declaration: `procedure ColWriteInteger (S: TStream; AValue: Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ColWriteInteger` writes the 32-bit integer `AValue` to the stream `S`. No endianness is observed.

See also: `ColWriteBoolean` (631), `ColWriteString` (632), `ColReadInteger` (630), `ColWriteCurrency` (631), `ColWriteDateTime` (631)

30.3.12 ColWriteString

Synopsis: Write a string value to the stream

Declaration: `procedure ColWriteString (S: TStream; AValue: string)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ColWriteString` writes the string value `AValue` to the stream `S`.

See also: `ColWriteBoolean` (631), `ColReadString` (631), `ColWriteInteger` (632), `ColWriteCurrency` (631), `ColWriteDateTime` (631), `ColWriteFloat` (632)

30.4 EStreamColl

30.4.1 Description

Exception raised when an error occurs when streaming the collection.

30.5 TStreamCollection

30.5.1 Description

`TStreamCollection` is a `TCollection` (??) descendent which implements 2 calls `LoadFromStream` (633) and `SaveToStream` (633) which load and save the contents of the collection to a stream.

The collection items must be descendents of the `TStreamCollectionItem` (634) class for the streaming to work correctly.

Note that the stream must be used to load collections of the same type.

See also: `TStreamCollectionItem` (634)

30.5.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
633	LoadFromStream	Load the collection from a stream
633	SaveToStream	Load the collection from the stream.

30.5.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
633	Streaming	r	Indicates whether the collection is currently being written to stream

30.5.4 TStreamCollection.LoadFromStream

Synopsis: Load the collection from a stream

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromStream(S: TStream)`

Visibility: public

Description: `LoadFromStream` loads the collection from the stream `S`, if the collection was saved using `SaveToStream` ([633](#)). It reads the number of items in the collection, and then creates and loads the items one by one from the stream.

Errors: An exception may be raised if the stream contains invalid data.

See also: `TStreamCollection.SaveToStream` ([633](#))

30.5.5 TStreamCollection.SaveToStream

Synopsis: Load the collection from the stream.

Declaration: `procedure SaveToStream(S: TStream)`

Visibility: public

Description: `SaveToStream` saves the collection to the stream `S` so it can be read from the stream with `LoadFromStream` ([633](#)). It does this by writing the number of collection items to the stream, and then streaming all items in the collection by calling their `SaveToStream` method.

Errors: None.

See also: `TStreamCollection.LoadFromStream` ([633](#))

30.5.6 TStreamCollection.Streaming

Synopsis: Indicates whether the collection is currently being written to stream

Declaration: `Property Streaming : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Streaming` is set to `True` if the collection is written to or loaded from stream, and is set again to `False` if the streaming process is finished.

See also: `TStreamCollection.LoadFromStream` ([633](#)), `TStreamCollection.SaveToStream` ([633](#))

30.6 TStreamCollectionItem

30.6.1 Description

TStreamCollectionItem is a TCollectionItem (??) descendent which implements 2 abstract routines: LoadFromStream and SaveToStream which must be overridden in a descendent class.

These 2 routines will be called by the TStreamCollection ([632](#)) to save or load the item from the stream.

See also: TStreamCollection ([632](#))

Chapter 31

Reference for unit 'streamex'

31.1 Used units

Table 31.1: Used units by unit 'streamex'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??

31.2 Overview

streamex implements some extensions to be used together with streams from the classes unit.

31.3 TBidirBinaryObjectReader

31.3.1 Description

TBidirBinaryObjectReader is a class descendent from TBinaryObjectReader (??), which implements the necessary support for BiDi data: the position in the stream (not available in the standard streaming) is emulated.

See also: TBidirBinaryObjectWriter ([636](#)), TDelphiReader ([636](#))

31.3.2 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
635	Position	rw	Position in the stream

31.3.3 TBidirBinaryObjectReader.Position

Synopsis: Position in the stream

Declaration: `Property Position : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Position` exposes the position of the stream in the reader for use in the `TDelphiReader` (636) class.

See also: `TDelphiReader` (636)

31.4 TBidirBinaryObjectWriter

31.4.1 Description

`TBidirBinaryObjectReader` is a class descendent from `TBinaryObjectWriter` (??), which implements the necessary support for BiDi data.

See also: `TBidirBinaryObjectWriter` (636), `TDelphiWriter` (638)

31.4.2 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
636	<code>Position</code>	rw	Position in the stream

31.4.3 TBidirBinaryObjectWriter.Position

Synopsis: Position in the stream

Declaration: `Property Position : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Position` exposes the position of the stream in the writer for use in the `TDelphiWriter` (638) class.

See also: `TDelphiWriter` (638)

31.5 TDelphiReader

31.5.1 Description

`TDelphiReader` is a descendent of `TReader` which has support for BiDi Streaming. It overrides the stream reading methods for strings, and makes sure the stream can be positioned in the case of strings. For this purpose, it makes use of the `TBidirBinaryObjectReader` (635) driver class.

See also: `TDelphiWriter` (638), `TBidirBinaryObjectReader` (635)

31.5.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
637	<code>GetDriver</code>	Return the driver class as a <code>TBidirBinaryObjectReader</code> (635) class
637	<code>Read</code>	Read data from stream
637	<code>ReadStr</code>	Overrides the standard <code>ReadStr</code> method

31.5.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
637	Position	rw	Position in the stream

31.5.4 TDelphiReader.GetDriver

Synopsis: Return the driver class as a `TBidirBinaryObjectReader` ([635](#)) class

Declaration: `function GetDriver : TBidirBinaryObjectReader`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetDriver` simply returns the used driver and typecasts it as `TBidirBinaryObjectReader` ([635](#)) class.

See also: `TBidirBinaryObjectReader` ([635](#))

31.5.5 TDelphiReader.ReadStr

Synopsis: Overrides the standard `ReadStr` method

Declaration: `function ReadStr : string`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadStr` makes sure the `TBidirBinaryObjectReader` ([635](#)) methods are used, to store additional information about the stream position when reading the strings.

See also: `TBidirBinaryObjectReader` ([635](#))

31.5.6 TDelphiReader.Read

Synopsis: Read data from stream

Declaration: `procedure Read(var Buf; Count: LongInt); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Read` reads raw data from the stream. It reads `Count` bytes from the stream and places them in `Buf`. It forces the use of the `TBidirBinaryObjectReader` ([635](#)) class when reading.

See also: `TBidirBinaryObjectReader` ([635](#)), `TDelphiReader.Position` ([637](#))

31.5.7 TDelphiReader.Position

Synopsis: Position in the stream

Declaration: `Property Position : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: Position in the stream.

See also: `TDelphiReader.Read` ([637](#))

31.6 TDelphiWriter

31.6.1 Description

`TDelphiWriter` is a descendent of `TWriter` which has support for BiDi Streaming. It overrides the stream writing methods for strings, and makes sure the stream can be positioned in the case of strings. For this purpose, it makes use of the `TBidirBinaryObjectWriter` (636) driver class.

See also: `TDelphiReader` (636), `TBidirBinaryObjectWriter` (636)

31.6.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
638	<code>FlushBuffer</code>	Flushes the stream buffer
638	<code>GetDriver</code>	Return the driver class as a <code>TBidirBinaryObjectWriter</code> (636) class
638	<code>Write</code>	Write raw data to the stream
639	<code>WriteStr</code>	Write a string to the stream
639	<code>WriteValue</code>	Write value type

31.6.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
639	<code>Position</code>	rw	Position in the stream

31.6.4 TDelphiWriter.GetDriver

Synopsis: Return the driver class as a `TBidirBinaryObjectWriter` (636) class

Declaration: `function GetDriver : TBidirBinaryObjectWriter`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetDriver` simply returns the used driver and typecasts it as `TBidirBinaryObjectWriter` (636) class.

See also: `TBidirBinaryObjectWriter` (636)

31.6.5 TDelphiWriter.FlushBuffer

Synopsis: Flushes the stream buffer

Declaration: `procedure FlushBuffer`

Visibility: public

Description: `FlushBuffer` flushes the internal buffer of the writer. It simply calls the `FlushBuffer` method of the driver class.

31.6.6 TDelphiWriter.Write

Synopsis: Write raw data to the stream

Declaration: `procedure Write(const Buf; Count: LongInt); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Write` writes `Count` bytes from `Buf` to the buffer, updating the position as needed.

31.6.7 TDelphiWriter.WriteString

Synopsis: Write a string to the stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteStr(const Value: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteStr` writes a string to the stream, forcing the use of the `TBidirBinaryObjectWriter` (636) class methods, which update the position of the stream.

See also: `TBidirBinaryObjectWriter` (636)

31.6.8 TDelphiWriter.WriteValue

Synopsis: Write value type

Declaration: `procedure WriteValue(Value: TValueType)`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteValue` overrides the same method in `TWriter` to force the use of the `TBidirBinaryObjectWriter` (636) methods, which update the position of the stream.

See also: `TBidirBinaryObjectWriter` (636)

31.6.9 TDelphiWriter.Position

Synopsis: Position in the stream

Declaration: `Property Position : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Position` exposes the position in the stream as exposed by the `TBidirBinaryObjectWriter` (636) instance used when streaming.

See also: `TBidirBinaryObjectWriter` (636)

31.7 TStreamHelper

31.7.1 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
640	<code>ReadDWordBE</code>	
640	<code>ReadDWordLE</code>	
640	<code>ReadQWordBE</code>	
640	<code>ReadQWordLE</code>	
640	<code>ReadWordBE</code>	
640	<code>ReadWordLE</code>	
641	<code>WriteDWordBE</code>	
640	<code>WriteDWordLE</code>	
641	<code>WriteQWordBE</code>	
640	<code>WriteQWordLE</code>	
641	<code>WriteWordBE</code>	
640	<code>WriteWordLE</code>	

31.7.2 TStreamHelper.ReadWordLE

Declaration: `function ReadWordLE : Word`

Visibility: `default`

31.7.3 TStreamHelper.ReadDWordLE

Declaration: `function ReadDWordLE : dword`

Visibility: `default`

31.7.4 TStreamHelper.ReadQWordLE

Declaration: `function ReadQWordLE : QWord`

Visibility: `default`

31.7.5 TStreamHelper.WriteWordLE

Declaration: `procedure WriteWordLE(w: Word)`

Visibility: `default`

31.7.6 TStreamHelper.WriteDWordLE

Declaration: `procedure WriteDWordLE(dw: dword)`

Visibility: `default`

31.7.7 TStreamHelper.WriteQWordLE

Declaration: `procedure WriteQWordLE(dq: QWord)`

Visibility: `default`

31.7.8 TStreamHelper.ReadWordBE

Declaration: `function ReadWordBE : Word`

Visibility: `default`

31.7.9 TStreamHelper.ReadDWordBE

Declaration: `function ReadDWordBE : dword`

Visibility: `default`

31.7.10 TStreamHelper.ReadQWordBE

Declaration: `function ReadQWordBE : QWord`

Visibility: `default`

31.7.11 TStreamHelper.WriteWordBE

Declaration: `procedure WriteWordBE(w: Word)`

Visibility: `default`

31.7.12 TStreamHelper.WriteDWordBE

Declaration: `procedure WriteDWordBE(dw: dword)`

Visibility: `default`

31.7.13 TStreamHelper.WriteQWordBE

Declaration: `procedure WriteQWordBE(dq: QWord)`

Visibility: `default`

Chapter 32

Reference for unit 'StreamIO'

32.1 Used units

Table 32.1: Used units by unit 'StreamIO'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

32.2 Overview

The `StreamIO` unit implements a call to reroute the input or output of a text file to a descendent of `TStream` (??).

This allows to use the standard pascal `Read` (??) and `Write` (??) functions (with all their possibilities), on streams.

32.3 Procedures and functions

32.3.1 AssignStream

Synopsis: Assign a text file to a stream.

Declaration: `procedure AssignStream(var F: Textfile; Stream: TStream)`

Visibility: default

Description: `AssignStream` assigns the stream `Stream` to file `F`. The file can subsequently be used to write to the stream, using the standard `Write` (??) calls.

Before writing, call `Rewrite` (??) on the stream. Before reading, call `Reset` (??).

Errors: if `Stream` is `Nil`, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TStream` (??), `GetStream` (643)

32.3.2 GetStream

Synopsis: Return the stream, associated with a file.

Declaration: `function GetStream(var F: TTextRec) : TStream`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetStream` returns the instance of the stream that was associated with the file `F` using `AssignStream` ([642](#)).

Errors: An invalid class reference will be returned if the file was not associated with a stream.

See also: `AssignStream` ([642](#)), `TStream` (??)

Chapter 33

Reference for unit 'syncobjs'

33.1 Used units

Table 33.1: Used units by unit 'syncobjs'

Name	Page
System	??
sysutils	??

33.2 Overview

The `syncobjs` unit implements some classes which can be used when synchronizing threads in routines or classes that are used in multiple threads at once. The `TCriticalSection` ([645](#)) class is a wrapper around low-level critical section routines (semaphores or mutexes). The `TEventObject` ([647](#)) class can be used to send messages between threads (also known as conditional variables in Posix threads).

33.3 Constants, types and variables

33.3.1 Constants

`INFINITE = (-1)`

Constant denoting an infinite timeout.

33.3.2 Types

`PSecurityAttributes = Pointer`

`PSecurityAttributes` is a dummy type used in non-windows implementations, so the calls remain Delphi compatible.

`TEvent = TEventObject`

`TEvent` is a simple alias for the `TEventObject` ([647](#)) class.

`TEventHandle = Pointer`

`TEventHandle` is an opaque type and should not be used in user code.

`TWaitResult = (wrSignaled, wrTimeout, wrAbandoned, wrError)`

Table 33.2: Enumeration values for type `TWaitResult`

Value	Explanation
<code>wrAbandoned</code>	Wait operation was abandoned.
<code>wrError</code>	An error occurred during the wait operation.
<code>wrSignaled</code>	Event was signaled (triggered)
<code>wrTimeout</code>	Time-out period expired

`TWaitResult` is used to report the result of a wait operation.

33.4 TCriticalSection

33.4.1 Description

`TCriticalSection` is a class wrapper around the low-level `TRTLCriticalSection` routines. It simply calls the RTL routines in the system unit for critical section support.

A critical section is a resource which can be owned by only 1 caller: it can be used to make sure that in a multithreaded application only 1 thread enters pieces of code protected by the critical section.

Typical usage is to protect a piece of code with the following code (`MySection` is a `TCriticalSection` instance):

```
// Previous code
MySection.Acquire;
Try
  // Protected code
Finally
  MySection.Release;
end;
// Other code.
```

The protected code can be executed by only 1 thread at a time. This is useful for instance for list operations in multithreaded environments.

See also: [Acquire \(646\)](#), [Release \(646\)](#)

33.4.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
646	<code>Acquire</code>	Enter the critical section
647	<code>Create</code>	Create a new critical section.
647	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroy the criticalsection instance
646	<code>Enter</code>	Alias for <code>Acquire</code>
647	<code>Leave</code>	Alias for <code>Release</code>
646	<code>Release</code>	Leave the critical section
646	<code>TryEnter</code>	Try and obtain the critical section

33.4.3 TCriticalSection.Acquire

Synopsis: Enter the critical section

Declaration: `procedure Acquire; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Acquire` attempts to enter the critical section. It will suspend the calling thread if the critical section is in use by another thread, and will resume as soon as the other thread has released the critical section.

See also: `Release` ([646](#))

33.4.4 TCriticalSection.Release

Synopsis: Leave the critical section

Declaration: `procedure Release; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Release` leaves the critical section. It will free the critical section so another thread waiting to enter the critical section will be awakened, and will enter the critical section. This call always returns immediately.

See also: `Acquire` ([646](#))

33.4.5 TCriticalSection.Enter

Synopsis: Alias for `Acquire`

Declaration: `procedure Enter`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Enter` just calls `Acquire` ([646](#)).

See also: `Leave` ([647](#)), `Acquire` ([646](#))

33.4.6 TCriticalSection.TryEnter

Synopsis: Try and obtain the critical section

Declaration: `function TryEnter : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `TryEnter` tries to enter the critical section: it returns at once and does not wait if the critical section is owned by another thread; if the current thread owns the critical section or the critical section was obtained successfully, `true` is returned. If the critical section is currently owned by another thread, `False` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCriticalSection.Enter` ([646](#))

33.4.7 TCriticalSection.Leave

Synopsis: Alias for `Release`

Declaration: `procedure Leave`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Leave` just calls `Release` ([646](#))

See also: `Release` ([646](#)), `Enter` ([646](#))

33.4.8 TCriticalSection.Create

Synopsis: Create a new critical section.

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new critical section, and initializes the system objects for the critical section. It should be created only once for all threads, all threads should use the same critical section instance.

See also: `Destroy` ([647](#))

33.4.9 TCriticalSection.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroy the criticalsection instance

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` releases the system critical section resources, and removes the `TCriticalSection` instance from memory.

Errors: Any threads trying to enter the critical section when it is destroyed, will start running with an error (an exception should be raised).

See also: `Create` ([647](#)), `Acquire` ([646](#))

33.5 TEventObject

33.5.1 Description

`TEventObject` encapsulates the `BasicEvent` implementation of the system unit in a class. The event can be used to notify other threads of a change in conditions. (in POSIX terms, this is a conditional variable). A thread that wishes to notify other threads creates an instance of `TEventObject` with a certain name, and posts events to it. Other threads that wish to be notified of these events should create their own instances of `TEventObject` with the same name, and wait for events to arrive.

See also: `TCriticalSection` ([645](#))

33.5.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
648	Create	Create a new event object
648	destroy	Clean up the event and release from memory
648	ResetEvent	Reset the event
649	SetEvent	Set the event
649	WaitFor	Wait for the event to be set.

33.5.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
649	ManualReset	r	Should the event be reset manually

33.5.4 TEventObject.Create

Synopsis: Create a new event object

Declaration: `constructor Create(EventAttributes: PSecurityAttributes;
 AManualReset: Boolean;InitialState: Boolean;
 const Name: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` creates a new event object with unique name `AName`. The object will be created security attributes `EventAttributes` (windows only).

The `AManualReset` indicates whether the event must be reset manually (if it is `False`, the event is reset immediatly after the first thread waiting for it is notified). `InitialState` determines whether the event is initially set or not.

See also: `ManualReset` ([649](#)), `ResetEvent` ([648](#))

33.5.5 TEventObject.destroy

Synopsis: Clean up the event and release from memory

Declaration: `destructor destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the low-level resources allocated for this event and releases the event instance from memory.

See also: `Create` ([648](#))

33.5.6 TEventObject.ResetEvent

Synopsis: Reset the event

Declaration: `procedure ResetEvent`

Visibility: public

Description: `ResetEvent` turns off the event. Any `WaitFor` ([649](#)) operation will suspend the calling thread.

See also: `SetEvent` ([649](#)), `WaitFor` ([649](#))

33.5.7 TEventObject.SetEvent

Synopsis: Set the event

Declaration: `procedure SetEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `SetEvent` sets the event. If the `ManualReset` (649) is `True` any thread that was waiting for the event to be set (using `WaitFor` (649)) will resume it's operation. After the event was set, any thread that executes `WaitFor` will return at once. If `ManualReset` is `False`, only one thread will be notified that the event was set, and the event will be immediatly reset after that.

See also: `WaitFor` (649), `ManualReset` (649)

33.5.8 TEventObject.WaitFor

Synopsis: Wait for the event to be set.

Declaration: `function WaitFor(Timeout: Cardinal) : TWaitResult`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `WaitFor` should be used in threads that should be notified when the event is set. When `WaitFor` is called, and the event is not set, the thread will be suspended. As soon as the event is set by some other thread (using `SetEvent` (649)) or the timeout period (`TimeOut`) has expired, the `WaitFor` function returns. The return value depends on the condition that caused the `WaitFor` function to return.

The calling thread will wait indefinitely when the constant `INFINITE` is specified for the `TimeOut` parameter.

See also: `TEventObject.SetEvent` (649)

33.5.9 TEventObject.ManualReset

Synopsis: Should the event be reset manually

Declaration: `Property ManualReset : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: Should the event be reset manually

33.6 THandleObject

33.6.1 Description

`THandleObject` is a parent class for synchronization classes that need to store an operating system handle. It introduces a property `Handle` (650) which can be used to store the operating system handle. The handle is in no way manipulated by `THandleObject`, only storage is provided.

See also: `Handle` (650)

33.6.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
650	destroy	Free the instance

33.6.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
650	Handle	r	Handle for this object
650	LastError	r	Last operating system error

33.6.4 THandleObject.destroy

Synopsis: Free the instance

Declaration: `destructor destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` does nothing in the Free Pascal implementation of `THandleObject`.

33.6.5 THandleObject.Handle

Synopsis: Handle for this object

Declaration: `Property Handle : TEventHandle`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read

Description: `Handle` provides read-only access to the operating system handle of this instance. The public access is read-only, descendent classes should set the handle by accessing it's protected field `FHandle` directly.

33.6.6 THandleObject.LastError

Synopsis: Last operating system error

Declaration: `Property LastError : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read

Description: `LastError` provides read-only access to the last operating system error code for operations on `Handle` ([650](#)).

See also: `Handle` ([650](#))

33.7 TSimpleEvent

33.7.1 Description

`TSimpleEvent` is a simple descendent of the `TEventObject` ([647](#)) class. It creates an event with no name, which must be reset manually, and which is initially not set.

See also: `TEventObject` ([647](#)), `TSimpleEvent.Create` ([651](#))

33.7.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
651	Create	Creates a new <code>TSimpleEvent</code> instance

33.7.3 `TSimpleEvent.Create`

Synopsis: Creates a new `TSimpleEvent` instance

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: default

Description: `Create` instantiates a new `TSimpleEvent` instance. It simply calls the inherited `Create` ([648](#)) with `Nil` for the security attributes, an empty name, `AManualReset` set to `True`, and `InitialState` to `False`.

See also: `TEventObject.Create` ([648](#))

33.8 `TSynchroObject`

33.8.1 Description

`TSynchroObject` is an abstract synchronization resource object. It implements 2 virtual methods `Acquire` ([651](#)) which can be used to acquire the resource, and `Release` ([651](#)) to release the resource.

See also: `Acquire` ([651](#)), `Release` ([651](#))

33.8.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
651	Acquire	Acquire synchronization resource
651	Release	Release previously acquired synchronization resource

33.8.3 `TSynchroObject.Acquire`

Synopsis: Acquire synchronization resource

Declaration: `procedure Acquire; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Acquire` does nothing in `TSynchroObject`. Descendent classes must override this method to acquire the resource they manage.

See also: `Release` ([651](#))

33.8.4 `TSynchroObject.Release`

Synopsis: Release previously acquired synchronization resource

Declaration: `procedure Release; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Release` does nothing in `TSynchroObject`. Descendent classes must override this method to release the resource they acquired through the `Acquire` ([651](#)) call.

See also: `Acquire` ([651](#))

Chapter 34

Reference for unit 'URIParser'

34.1 Overview

The `URIParser` unit contains a basic type (`TURI` ([653](#))) and some routines for the parsing (`ParseURI` ([654](#))) and construction (`EncodeURI` ([653](#))) of Uniform Resource Indicators, commonly referred to as URL: Uniform Resource Location. It is used in various other units, and in itself contains no classes. It supports all protocols, username/password/port specification, query parameters and bookmarks etc..

34.2 Constants, types and variables

34.2.1 Types

```
TURI = record
  Protocol : string;
  Username : string;
  Password : string;
  Host : string;
  Port : Word;
  Path : string;
  Document : string;
  Params : string;
  Bookmark : string;
  HasAuthority : Boolean;
end
```

`TURI` is the basic record that can be filled by the `ParseURI` ([654](#)) call. It contains the contents of a URI, parsed out in it's various pieces.

34.3 Procedures and functions

34.3.1 EncodeURI

Synopsis: Form a string representation of the URI

Declaration: `function EncodeURI(const URI: TURI) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `EncodeURI` will return a valid text representation of the URI in the URI record.

See also: `ParseURI` ([654](#))

34.3.2 FilenameToURI

Synopsis: Construct a URI from a filename

Declaration: `function FilenameToURI(const Filename: string; Encode: Boolean) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `FilenameToURI` takes `Filename` and constructs a `file:` protocol URI from it.

Errors: None.

See also: `URIToFilename` ([655](#))

34.3.3 IsAbsoluteURI

Synopsis: Check whether a URI is absolute.

Declaration: `function IsAbsoluteURI(const UriReference: string) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsAbsoluteURI` returns `True` if the URI in `UriReference` is absolute, i.e. contains a protocol part.

Errors: None.

See also: `FilenameToURI` ([654](#)), `URIToFileName` ([655](#))

34.3.4 ParseURI

Synopsis: Parse a URI and split it into its constituent parts

Declaration: `function ParseURI(const URI: string; Decode: Boolean) : TURI; Overload`
`function ParseURI(const URI: string; const DefaultProtocol: string;`
`DefaultPort: Word; Decode: Boolean) : TURI; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `ParseURI` decodes URI and returns the various parts of the URI in the result record.

The function accepts the most general URI scheme:

```
proto://user:pwd@host:port/path/document?params#bookmark
```

Missing (optional) parts in the URI will be left blank in the result record. If a default protocol and port are specified, they will be used in the record if the corresponding part is not present in the URI.

See also: `EncodeURI` ([653](#))

34.3.5 ResolveRelativeURI

Synopsis: Return a relative link

Declaration:

```
function ResolveRelativeURI(const BaseUri: WideString;
                           const RelUri: WideString;
                           out ResultUri: WideString) : Boolean
; Overload
function ResolveRelativeURI(const BaseUri: UTF8String;
                           const RelUri: UTF8String;
                           out ResultUri: UTF8String) : Boolean
; Overload
```

Visibility: default

Description: `ResolveRelativeURI` returns in `ResultUri` an absolute link constructed from a base URI `BaseURI` and a relative link `RelURI`. One of the two URI names must have a protocol specified. If the `RelURI` argument contains a protocol, it is considered a complete (absolute) URI and is returned as the result.

The function returns `True` if a link was successfully returned.

Errors: If no protocols are specified, the function returns `False`

34.3.6 URIToFilename

Synopsis: Convert a URI to a filename

Declaration:

```
function URIToFilename(const URI: string; out Filename: string) : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

Description: `URIToFilename` returns a filename (using the correct Path Delimiter character) from URI. The URI must be of protocol `File` or have no protocol.

Errors: If the URI contains an unsupported protocol, `False` is returned.

See also: `ResolveRelativeURI` (655), `FilenameToURI` (654)

Chapter 35

Reference for unit 'zipper'

35.1 Used units

Table 35.1: Used units by unit 'zipper'

Name	Page
BaseUnix	??
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??
zstream	678

35.2 Overview

zipper implements zip compression/decompression compatible with the popular .ZIP format. The zip file format is documented at <http://www.pkware.com/documents/casestudies/APPNOTE.TXT>. The Pascal conversion of the standard zlib library was implemented by Jacques Nomssi Nzali. It is used in the FCL to implement the (??) class.

35.3 Constants, types and variables

35.3.1 Constants

CENTRAL_FILE_HEADER_SIGNATURE = \$02014B50

Denotes beginning of a file entry inside the zip directory. A file header follows this marker.

Crc_32_Tab : Array[0..255] of LongWord = (\$00000000, \$77073096, \$ee0e612c, \$990951ba

Table used in determining CRC-32 values. There are various CRC-32 algorithms in use; please refer to the ZIP file format specifications for details.

END_OF_CENTRAL_DIR_SIGNATURE = \$06054B50

Marker specifying end of directory within zip file

```
FIRSTENTRY = 257
```

```
LOCAL_FILE_HEADER_SIGNATURE = $04034B50
```

Denotes beginning of a file header within the zip file. A file header follows this marker, followed by the file data proper.

```
TABLESIZE = 8191
```

35.3.2 Types

```
BufPtr = PByte
```

```
Central_File_Header_Type = packed record
  Signature : LongInt;
  MadeBy_Version : Word;
  Extract_Version_Reqd : Word;
  Bit_Flag : Word;
  Compress_Method : Word;
  Last_Mod_Time : Word;
  Last_Mod_Date : Word;
  Crc32 : LongWord;
  Compressed_Size : LongWord;
  Uncompressed_Size : LongWord;
  Filename_Length : Word;
  Extra_Field_Length : Word;
  File_Comment_Length : Word;
  Starting_Disk_Num : Word;
  Internal_Attributes : Word;
  External_Attributes : LongWord;
  Local_Header_Offset : LongWord;
end
```

This record contains the structure for a file header within the central directory.

```
CodeArray = Array[0..TABLESIZE] of CodeRec
```

```
CodeRec = packed record
  Child : SmallInt;
  Sibling : SmallInt;
  Suffix : Byte;
end
```

```
End_of_Central_Dir_Type = packed record
  Signature : LongInt;
  Disk_Number : Word;
  Central_Dir_Start_Disk : Word;
  Entries_This_Disk : Word;
  Total_Entries : Word;
  Central_Dir_Size : LongWord;
  Start_Disk_Offset : LongWord;
  ZipFile_Comment_Length : Word;
end
```

The end of central directory is placed at the end of the zip file. Note that the end of central directory record is distinct from the Zip64 end of central directory record and zip64 end of central directory locator, which precede the end of central directory, if implemented.

```
FreeListArray = Array[FIRSTENTRY..TABLESIZE] of Word
```

```
FreeListPtr = ^FreeListArray
```

```
Local_File_Header_Type = packed record
  Signature : LongInt;
  Extract_Version_Reqd : Word;
  Bit_Flag : Word;
  Compress_Method : Word;
  Last_Mod_Time : Word;
  Last_Mod_Date : Word;
  Crc32 : LongWord;
  Compressed_Size : LongWord;
  Uncompressed_Size : LongWord;
  Filename_Length : Word;
  Extra_Field_Length : Word;
end
```

Record structure containing local file header

```
TablePtr = ^CodeArray
```

```
TCustomInputStreamEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject;
                                     var AStream: TStream) of object
```

```
TOnCustomStreamEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject; var AStream: TStream;
                                  AItem: TFullZipFileEntry) of object
```

```
TOnEndOfFileEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject; const Ratio: Double)
                          of object
```

Event procedure for an end of file (de)compression event

```
TOnStartFileEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject;const AFileName: string)
                    of object
```

Event procedure for a start of file (de)compression event

```
TProgressEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject;const Pct: Double) of object
```

Event procedure for capturing compression/decompression progress

35.4 EZipError

35.4.1 Description

Exception specific to the zipper unit

35.5 TCompressor

35.5.1 Description

This object compresses a stream into a compressed zip stream.

35.5.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
660	Compress	Compresses input stream to output stream
659	Create	Creates a (??) object
660	ZipBitFlag	
660	ZipID	Identifier for type of compression
660	ZipVersionReqd	

35.5.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
660	BufferSize	r	Size of buffer used for compression
661	Crc32Val	rw	Running CRC32 value
660	OnPercent	rw	Reference to OnPercent event handler
660	OnProgress	rw	Reference to OnProgress event handler

35.5.4 TCompressor.Create

Synopsis: Creates a (??) object

Declaration: constructor Create(AInFile: TStream;AOutFile: TStream;
ABufSize: LongWord); Virtual

Visibility: public

35.5.5 TCompressor.Compress

Synopsis: Compresses input stream to output stream

Declaration: `procedure Compress; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

35.5.6 TCompressor.ZipID

Synopsis: Identifier for type of compression

Declaration: `class function ZipID; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

35.5.7 TCompressor.ZipVersionReqd

Declaration: `class function ZipVersionReqd; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

35.5.8 TCompressor.ZipBitFlag

Declaration: `function ZipBitFlag : Word; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

35.5.9 TCompressor.BufferSize

Synopsis: Size of buffer used for compression

Declaration: `Property BufferSize : LongWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

35.5.10 TCompressor.OnPercent

Synopsis: Reference to OnPercent event handler

Declaration: `Property OnPercent : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

35.5.11 TCompressor.OnProgress

Synopsis: Reference to OnProgress event handler

Declaration: `Property OnProgress : TProgressEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

35.5.12 TCompressor.Crc32Val

Synopsis: Running CRC32 value

Declaration: `Property Crc32Val : LongWord`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: Running CRC32 value used when writing zip header

35.6 TDeCompressor

35.6.1 Description

This object decompresses a compressed zip stream.

35.6.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
661	Create	Creates decompressor object
661	DeCompress	Decompress zip stream
662	ZipID	Identifier for type of compression

35.6.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
662	BufferSize	<code>r</code>	Size of buffer used in decompression
662	Crc32Val	<code>rw</code>	Running CRC32 value used for verifying zip file integrity
662	OnPercent	<code>rw</code>	Percentage of decompression completion
662	OnProgress	<code>rw</code>	Event handler for OnProgress procedure

35.6.4 TDeCompressor.Create

Synopsis: Creates decompressor object

Declaration: `constructor Create(AInFile: TStream; AOutFile: TStream;
ABufSize: LongWord); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

35.6.5 TDeCompressor.DeCompress

Synopsis: Decompress zip stream

Declaration: `procedure DeCompress; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

35.6.6 TDeCompressor.ZipID

Synopsis: Identifier for type of compression

Declaration: `class function ZipID; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

35.6.7 TDeCompressor.BufferSize

Synopsis: Size of buffer used in decompression

Declaration: `Property BufferSize : LongWord`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

35.6.8 TDeCompressor.OnPercent

Synopsis: Percentage of decompression completion

Declaration: `Property OnPercent : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

35.6.9 TDeCompressor.OnProgress

Synopsis: Event handler for OnProgress procedure

Declaration: `Property OnProgress : TProgressEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

35.6.10 TDeCompressor.Crc32Val

Synopsis: Running CRC32 value used for verifying zip file integrity

Declaration: `Property Crc32Val : LongWord`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

35.7 TDeflater

35.7.1 Description

Child of `TCompressor` ([659](#)) that implements the Deflate compression method

35.7.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
663	Compress	
663	Create	
663	ZipBitFlag	
663	ZipID	
663	ZipVersionReqd	

35.7.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
663	CompressionLevel	rw	

35.7.4 TDeflater.Create

Declaration: constructor Create(AInFile: TStream; AOutFile: TStream;
ABufSize: LongWord); Override

Visibility: public

35.7.5 TDeflater.Compress

Declaration: procedure Compress; Override

Visibility: public

35.7.6 TDeflater.ZipID

Declaration: class function ZipID; Override

Visibility: public

35.7.7 TDeflater.ZipVersionReqd

Declaration: class function ZipVersionReqd; Override

Visibility: public

35.7.8 TDeflater.ZipBitFlag

Declaration: function ZipBitFlag : Word; Override

Visibility: public

35.7.9 TDeflater.CompressionLevel

Declaration: Property CompressionLevel : Tcompressionlevel

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

35.8 TFullZipFileEntries

35.8.1 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
664	FullEntries	rw	

35.8.2 TFullZipFileEntries.FullEntries

Declaration: `Property FullEntries[AIndex: Integer]: TFullZipFileEntry; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

35.9 TFullZipFileEntry

35.9.1 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
664	CompressedSize	r	
664	CompressMethod	r	
664	CRC32	rw	

35.9.2 TFullZipFileEntry.CompressMethod

Declaration: `Property CompressMethod : Word`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

35.9.3 TFullZipFileEntry.CompressedSize

Declaration: `Property CompressedSize : LongWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

35.9.4 TFullZipFileEntry.CRC32

Declaration: `Property CRC32 : LongWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

35.10 TInflater

35.10.1 Description

Child of TDeCompressor ([661](#)) that implements the Inflate decompression method

35.10.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
665	Create	
665	DeCompress	
665	ZipID	

35.10.3 TInflater.Create

Declaration: constructor Create(AInFile: TStream; AOutFile: TStream;
ABufSize: LongWord); Override

Visibility: public

35.10.4 TInflater.DeCompress

Declaration: procedure DeCompress; Override

Visibility: public

35.10.5 TInflater.ZipID

Declaration: class function ZipID; Override

Visibility: public

35.11 TShrinker**35.11.1 Description**

Child of TCompressor ([659](#)) that implements the Shrink compression method

35.11.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
666	Compress	
665	Create	
666	Destroy	
666	ZipBitFlag	
666	ZipID	
666	ZipVersionReqd	

35.11.3 TShrinker.Create

Declaration: constructor Create(AInFile: TStream; AOutFile: TStream;
ABufSize: LongWord); Override

Visibility: public

35.11.4 TShrinker.Destroy

Declaration: destructor Destroy; Override

Visibility: public

35.11.5 TShrinker.Compress

Declaration: procedure Compress; Override

Visibility: public

35.11.6 TShrinker.ZipID

Declaration: class function ZipID; Override

Visibility: public

35.11.7 TShrinker.ZipVersionReqd

Declaration: class function ZipVersionReqd; Override

Visibility: public

35.11.8 TShrinker.ZipBitFlag

Declaration: function ZipBitFlag : Word; Override

Visibility: public

35.12 TUnZipper

35.12.1 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
668	Clear	Removes all entries and files from object
667	Create	
667	Destroy	
668	Examine	Opens zip file and reads the directory entries (list of zipped files)
667	UnZipAllFiles	Unzips all files in a zip file, writing them to disk
668	UnZipFiles	Unzips specified files

35.12.2 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
668	BufferSize	rw	
670	Entries	r	
670	FileComment	r	
670	FileName	rw	Zip file to be unzipped/processed
670	Files	r	Files in zip file (deprecated)
668	OnCloseInputStream	rw	
669	OnCreateStream	rw	
669	OnDoneStream	rw	
669	OnEndFile	rw	Callback procedure that will be called after unzipping a file
668	OnOpenInputStream	rw	
669	OnPercent	rw	
669	OnProgress	rw	
669	OnStartFile	rw	Callback procedure that will be called before unzipping a file
670	OutputPath	rw	Path where archive files will be unzipped

35.12.3 TUnZipper.Create

Declaration: constructor Create

Visibility: public

35.12.4 TUnZipper.Destroy

Declaration: destructor Destroy; Override

Visibility: public

35.12.5 TUnZipper.UnZipAllFiles

Synopsis: Unzips all files in a zip file, writing them to disk

Declaration: procedure UnZipAllFiles; Virtual
 procedure UnZipAllFiles(AFileName: string)

Visibility: public

Description: This procedure unzips all files in a (??) object and writes the unzipped files to disk.

The example below unzips the files into "C:\windows\temp":

```

uses
  Zipper;
var
  UnZipper: TUnZipper;
begin
  UnZipper := TUnZipper.Create;
  try
    UnZipper.FileName := ZipFilePath;
    UnZipper.OutputPath := 'C:\Windows\Temp';
    UnZipper.UnZipAllFiles;
  
```

```
finally
    UnZipper.Free;
end;
end.
```

35.12.6 TUnZipper.UnZipFiles

Synopsis: Unzips specified files

Declaration: `procedure UnZipFiles(AFileName: string;FileList: TStrings)`
`procedure UnZipFiles(FileList: TStrings)`

Visibility: public

35.12.7 TUnZipper.Clear

Synopsis: Removes all entries and files from object

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: public

35.12.8 TUnZipper.Examine

Synopsis: Opens zip file and reads the directory entries (list of zipped files)

Declaration: `procedure Examine`

Visibility: public

35.12.9 TUnZipper.BufferSize

Declaration: `Property BufferSize : LongWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

35.12.10 TUnZipper.OnOpenInputStream

Declaration: `Property OnOpenInputStream : TCustomInputStreamEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

35.12.11 TUnZipper.OnCloseInputStream

Declaration: `Property OnCloseInputStream : TCustomInputStreamEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

35.12.12 TUnZipper.OnCreateStream

Declaration: Property OnCreateStream : TOnCustomStreamEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

35.12.13 TUnZipper.OnDoneStream

Declaration: Property OnDoneStream : TOnCustomStreamEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

35.12.14 TUnZipper.OnPercent

Declaration: Property OnPercent : Integer

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

35.12.15 TUnZipper.OnProgress

Declaration: Property OnProgress : TProgressEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

35.12.16 TUnZipper.OnStartFile

Synopsis: Callback procedure that will be called before unzipping a file

Declaration: Property OnStartFile : TOnStartFileEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

35.12.17 TUnZipper.OnEndFile

Synopsis: Callback procedure that will be called after unzipping a file

Declaration: Property OnEndFile : TOnEndOfFileEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

35.12.18 TUnZipper.FileName

Synopsis: Zip file to be unzipped/processed

Declaration: `Property FileName : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

35.12.19 TUnZipper.OutputPath

Synopsis: Path where archive files will be unzipped

Declaration: `Property OutputPath : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

35.12.20 TUnZipper.FileComment

Declaration: `Property FileComment : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

35.12.21 TUnZipper.Files

Synopsis: Files in zip file (deprecated)

Declaration: `Property Files : TStrings`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: List of files that should be compressed in the zip file. Note: deprecated. Use `Entries.AddFileEntry(FileName)` or `Entries.AddFileEntries(List)` instead.

35.12.22 TUnZipper.Entries

Declaration: `Property Entries : TFullZipFileEntries`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

35.13 TZipFileEntries

35.13.1 Description

Files in the zip archive

35.13.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
671	AddFileEntries	
671	AddFileEntry	Adds file to zip directory

35.13.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
671	Entries	rw	Entries (files) in the zip archive

35.13.4 TZipFileEntries.AddFileEntry

Synopsis: Adds file to zip directory

Declaration: `function AddFileEntry(const ADiskFileName: string) : TZipFileEntry`
`function AddFileEntry(const ADiskFileName: string;`
`const AArchiveFileName: string) : TZipFileEntry`
`function AddFileEntry(const AStream: TStream;`
`const AArchiveFileName: string) : TZipFileEntry`

Visibility: public

Description: Adds a file to the list of files that will be written out in the zip file.

35.13.5 TZipFileEntries.AddFileEntries

Declaration: `procedure AddFileEntries(const List: TStrings)`

Visibility: public

35.13.6 TZipFileEntries.Entries

Synopsis: Entries (files) in the zip archive

Declaration: `Property Entries[AIndex: Integer]: TZipFileEntry; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

35.14 TZipFileEntry

35.14.1 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
672	Assign	
672	Create	
672	IsDirectory	
672	IsLink	

35.14.2 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
672	ArchiveFileName	rw	
673	Attributes	rw	
673	CompressionLevel	rw	
673	DateTime	rw	
673	DiskFileName	rw	
673	OS	rw	Indication of operating system/filesystem
673	Size	rw	
672	Stream	rw	

35.14.3 TZipFileEntry.Create

Declaration: constructor Create(ACollection: TCollection); Override

Visibility: public

35.14.4 TZipFileEntry.IsDirectory

Declaration: function IsDirectory : Boolean

Visibility: public

35.14.5 TZipFileEntry.IsLink

Declaration: function IsLink : Boolean

Visibility: public

35.14.6 TZipFileEntry.Assign

Declaration: procedure Assign(Source: TPersistent); Override

Visibility: public

35.14.7 TZipFileEntry.Stream

Declaration: Property Stream : TStream

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

35.14.8 TZipFileEntry.ArchiveFileName

Declaration: Property ArchiveFileName : string

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

35.14.9 TZipFileEntry.DiskFileName

Declaration: Property DiskFileName : string

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

35.14.10 TZipFileEntry.Size

Declaration: Property Size : Integer

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

35.14.11 TZipFileEntry.DateTime

Declaration: Property DateTime : TDateTime

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

35.14.12 TZipFileEntry.OS

Synopsis: Indication of operating system/filesystem

Declaration: Property OS : Byte

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: Currently either OS_UNIX (if UNIX is defined) or OS_FAT.

35.14.13 TZipFileEntry.Attributes

Declaration: Property Attributes : LongInt

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

35.14.14 TZipFileEntry.CompressionLevel

Declaration: Property CompressionLevel : Tcompressionlevel

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

35.15 TZipper

35.15.1 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
675	Clear	
674	Create	
674	Destroy	
675	SaveToFile	
675	SaveToStream	
674	ZipAllFiles	Zips all files in object and writes zip to disk
675	ZipFiles	

35.15.2 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
675	BufferSize	rw	
677	Entries	rw	
676	FileComment	rw	
676	FileName	rw	
676	Files	r	
676	InMemSize	rw	
676	OnEndFile	rw	
675	OnPercent	rw	
676	OnProgress	rw	
676	OnStartFile	rw	

35.15.3 TZipper.Create

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

35.15.4 TZipper.Destroy

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

35.15.5 TZipper.ZipAllFiles

Synopsis: Zips all files in object and writes zip to disk

Declaration: `procedure ZipAllFiles; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: This procedure zips up all files in the TZipper ([674](#)) object and writes the resulting zip file to disk.

An example of using this procedure:

```
uses
  Zipper;
var
```

```

    Zipper: TZipper;
begin
    try
        Zipper := TZipper.Create;
        Zipper.FileName := ParamStr(1); //Use the first parameter on the command line as
        for I := 2 to ParamCount do //Use the other arguments on the command line as fil
            Zipper.Entries.AddFileEntry(ParamStr(I), ParamStr(I));
        Zipper.ZipAllFiles;
    finally
        Zipper.Free;
    end;
end.

```

35.15.6 TZipper.SaveToFile

Declaration: procedure SaveToFile(AFileName: string)

Visibility: public

35.15.7 TZipper.SaveToStream

Declaration: procedure SaveToStream(AStream: TStream)

Visibility: public

35.15.8 TZipper.ZipFiles

Declaration: procedure ZipFiles(AFileName: string; FileList: TStrings)
 procedure ZipFiles(FileList: TStrings)
 procedure ZipFiles(AFileName: string; Entries: TZipFileEntries)
 procedure ZipFiles(Entries: TZipFileEntries)

Visibility: public

35.15.9 TZipper.Clear

Declaration: procedure Clear

Visibility: public

35.15.10 TZipper.BufferSize

Declaration: Property BufferSize : LongWord

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

35.15.11 TZipper.OnPercent

Declaration: Property OnPercent : Integer

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

35.15.12 TZipper.OnProgress

Declaration: Property OnProgress : TProgressEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

35.15.13 TZipper.OnStartFile

Declaration: Property OnStartFile : TOnStartFileEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

35.15.14 TZipper.OnEndFile

Declaration: Property OnEndFile : TOnEndOfFileEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

35.15.15 TZipper.FileName

Declaration: Property FileName : string

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

35.15.16 TZipper.FileComment

Declaration: Property FileComment : string

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

35.15.17 TZipper.Files

Declaration: Property Files : TStrings; deprecated;

Visibility: public

Access: Read

35.15.18 TZipper.InMemSize

Declaration: Property InMemSize : Integer

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

35.15.19 TZipper.Entries

Declaration: Property Entries : TZipFileEntries

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Chapter 36

Reference for unit 'zstream'

36.1 Used units

Table 36.1: Used units by unit 'zstream'

Name	Page
Classes	??
gzio	??
System	??
zbase	??

36.2 Overview

The `ZStream` unit implements a `TStream` (??) descendent (`TCompressionStream` (679)) which uses the deflate algorithm to compress everything that is written to it. The compressed data is written to the output stream, which is specified when the compressor class is created.

Likewise, a `TStream` descendent is implemented which reads data from an input stream (`TDecompressionStream` (682)) and decompresses it with the inflate algorithm.

36.3 Constants, types and variables

36.3.1 Types

```
Tcompressionlevel = (clnone, clfastest, cldefault, clmax)
```

Table 36.2: Enumeration values for type `Tcompressionlevel`

Value	Explanation
<code>cldefault</code>	Use default compression
<code>clfastest</code>	Use fast (but less) compression.
<code>clmax</code>	Use maximum compression
<code>clnone</code>	Do not use compression, just copy data.

Compression level for the deflate algorithm

`Tgzopenmode = (gzopenread, gzopenwrite)`

Table 36.3: Enumeration values for type `Tgzopenmode`

Value	Explanation
<code>gzopenread</code>	Open file for reading
<code>gzopenwrite</code>	Open file for writing

Open mode for gzip file.

36.4 Ecompressionerror

36.4.1 Description

`ECompressionError` is the exception class used by the `TCompressionStream` (679) class.

36.5 Edecompressionerror

36.5.1 Description

`EDecompressionError` is the exception class used by the `TDecompressionStream` (682) class.

36.6 Egzfileerror

36.6.1 Description

`Egzfileerror` is the exception class used to report errors by the `Tgzfilestream` (685) class.

See also: `Tgzfilestream` (685)

36.7 Ezliberror

36.7.1 Description

Errors which occur in the `zstream` unit are signaled by raising an `EZLibError` exception descendant.

36.8 Tcompressionstream

36.8.1 Description

`TCompressionStream`

36.8.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
680	<code>create</code>	Create a new instance of the compression stream.
680	<code>destroy</code>	Flush data to the output stream and destroys the compression stream.
681	<code>flush</code>	Flush remaining data to the target stream
681	<code>get_compressionrate</code>	Get the current compression rate
680	<code>write</code>	Write data to the stream

36.8.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
681	<code>OnProgress</code>		Progress handler

36.8.4 Tcompressionstream.create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the compression stream.

Declaration: `constructor create(level: Tcompressionlevel; dest: TStream; Askipheader: Boolean)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of the compression stream. It merely calls the inherited constructor with the destination stream `Dest` and stores the compression level.

If `AskipHeader` is set to `True`, the method will not write the block header to the stream. This is required for deflated data in a zip file.

Note that the compressed data is only completely written after the compression stream is destroyed.

See also: `Destroy` ([680](#))

36.8.5 Tcompressionstream.destroy

Synopsis: Flush data to the output stream and destroys the compression stream.

Declaration: `destructor destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` flushes the output stream: any compressed data not yet written to the output stream are written, and the deflate structures are cleaned up.

Errors: None.

See also: `Create` ([680](#))

36.8.6 Tcompressionstream.write

Synopsis: Write data to the stream

Declaration: `function write(const buffer; count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Write` takes `Count` bytes from `Buffer` and compresses (deflates) them. The compressed result is written to the output stream.

Errors: If an error occurs, an `ECompressionError` (679) exception is raised.

See also: `Read` (679), `Seek` (679)

36.8.7 `Tcompressionstream.flush`

Synopsis: Flush remaining data to the target stream

Declaration: `procedure flush`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `flush` writes any remaining data in the memory buffers to the target stream, and clears the memory buffer.

36.8.8 `Tcompressionstream.get_compressionrate`

Synopsis: Get the current compression rate

Declaration: `function get_compressionrate : single`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `get_compressionrate` returns the percentage of the number of written compressed bytes relative to the number of written bytes.

Errors: If no bytes were written, an exception is raised.

36.8.9 `Tcompressionstream.OnProgress`

Synopsis: Progress handler

Declaration: `Property OnProgress :`

Visibility: `public`

Access:

Description: `OnProgress` is called whenever output data is written to the output stream. It can be used to update a progress bar or so. The `Sender` argument to the progress handler is the compression stream instance.

36.9 `Tcustomzlibstream`

36.9.1 `Description`

`TCustomZlibStream` serves as the ancestor class for the `TCompressionStream` (679) and `TDecompressionStream` (682) classes.

It introduces support for a progress handler, and stores the input or output stream.

36.9.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
682	create	Create a new instance of TCustomZlibStream
682	destroy	Clear up instance

36.9.3 Tcustomzlibstream.create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of TCustomZlibStream

Declaration: `constructor create(stream: TStream)`

Visibility: public

Description: Create creates a new instance of TCustomZlibStream. It stores a reference to the input/output stream, and initializes the deflate compression mechanism so they can be used by the descendents.

See also: TCompressionStream ([679](#)), TDecompressionStream ([682](#))

36.9.4 Tcustomzlibstream.destroy

Synopsis: Clear up instance

Declaration: `destructor destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Destroy cleans up the internal memory buffer and calls the inherited destroy.

See also: Tcustomzlibstream.create ([682](#))

36.10 Tdecompressionstream

36.10.1 Description

TDecompressionStream performs the inverse operation of TCompressionStream ([679](#)). A read operation reads data from an input stream and decompresses (inflates) the data as it goes along.

The decompression stream reads its compressed data from a stream with deflated data. This data can be created e.g. with a TCompressionStream ([679](#)) compression stream.

See also: TCompressionStream ([679](#))

36.10.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
683	create	Creates a new instance of the TDecompressionStream stream
683	destroy	Destroys the TDecompressionStream instance
684	get_compressionrate	Get the current compression rate
683	read	Read data from the compressed stream
684	seek	Move stream position to a certain location in the stream.

36.10.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
684	OnProgress		Progress handler

36.10.4 TDecompressionStream.create

Synopsis: Creates a new instance of the `TDecompressionStream` stream

Declaration: `constructor create(Asource: TStream; Askipheader: Boolean)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates and initializes a new instance of the `TDecompressionStream` class. It calls the inherited `Create` and passes it the `Source` stream. The source stream is the stream from which the compressed (deflated) data is read.

If `ASkipHeader` is `true`, then the gzip data header is skipped, allowing `TDecompressionStream` to read deflated data in a .zip file. (this data does not have the gzip header record prepended to it).

Note that the source stream is by default not owned by the decompression stream, and is not freed when the decompression stream is destroyed.

See also: `Destroy` ([683](#))

36.10.5 TDecompressionStream.destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the `TDecompressionStream` instance

Declaration: `destructor destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the inflate structure, and then simply calls the inherited `destroy`.

By default the source stream is not freed when calling `Destroy`.

See also: `Create` ([683](#))

36.10.6 TDecompressionStream.read

Synopsis: Read data from the compressed stream

Declaration: `function read(var buffer; count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Read` will read data from the compressed stream until the decompressed data size is `Count` or there is no more compressed data available. The decompressed data is written in `Buffer`. The function returns the number of bytes written in the buffer.

Errors: If an error occurs, an `EDeCompressionError` ([679](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `Write` ([680](#))

36.10.7 Tdecompressionstream.seek

Synopsis: Move stream position to a certain location in the stream.

Declaration: `function seek(offset: LongInt; origin: Word) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Seek` overrides the standard `Seek` implementation. There are a few differences between the implementation of `Seek` in Free Pascal compared to Delphi:

- In Free Pascal, you can perform any seek. In case of a forward seek, the Free Pascal implementation will read some bytes until the desired position is reached, in case of a backward seek it will seek the source stream backwards to the position it had at the creation time of the `TDecompressionStream` and then again read some bytes until the desired position has been reached.
- In Free Pascal, a seek with `soFromBeginning` will reset the source stream to the position it had when the `TDecompressionStream` was created. In Delphi, the source stream is reset to position 0. This means that at creation time the source stream must always be at the start of the zstream, you cannot use `TDecompressionStream.Seek` to reset the source stream to the begin of the file.

Errors: An `EDecompressionError` ([679](#)) exception is raised if the stream does not allow the requested seek operation.

See also: `Read` ([683](#))

36.10.8 Tdecompressionstream.get_compressionrate

Synopsis: Get the current compression rate

Declaration: `function get_compressionrate : single`

Visibility: public

Description: `get_compressionrate` returns the percentage of the number of read compressed bytes relative to the total number of read bytes.

Errors: If no bytes were written, an exception is raised.

36.10.9 Tdecompressionstream.OnProgress

Synopsis: Progress handler

Declaration: `Property OnProgress :`

Visibility: public

Access:

Description: `OnProgress` is called whenever input data is read from the source stream. It can be used to update a progress bar or so. The `Sender` argument to the progress handler is the decompression stream instance.

36.11 TGZFileStream

36.11.1 Description

TGZFileStream can be used to read data from a gzip file, or to write data to a gzip file.

See also: TCompressionStream (679), TDeCompressionStream (682)

36.11.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
685	create	Create a new instance of TGZFileStream
686	destroy	Removes TGZFileStream instance
685	read	Read data from the compressed file
686	seek	Set the position in the compressed stream.
686	write	Write data to be compressed

36.11.3 TGZFileStream.create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of TGZFileStream

Declaration: `constructor create(filename: ansistring; filemode: Tgzopenmode)`

Visibility: public

Description: Create creates a new instance of the TGZFileStream class. It opens FileName for reading or writing, depending on the FileMode parameter. It is not possible to open the file read-write. If the file is opened for reading, it must exist.

If the file is opened for reading, the TGZFileStream.Read (685) method can be used for reading the data in uncompressed form.

If the file is opened for writing, any data written using the TGZFileStream.Write (686) method will be stored in the file in compressed (deflated) form.

Errors: If the file is not found, an EZlibError (679) exception is raised.

See also: Destroy (686), TGZOpenMode (679)

36.11.4 TGZFileStream.read

Synopsis: Read data from the compressed file

Declaration: `function read(var buffer; count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Read overrides the Read method of TStream to read the data from the compressed file. The Buffer parameter indicates where the read data should be stored. The Count parameter specifies the number of bytes (*uncompressed*) that should be read from the compressed file. Note that it is not possible to read from the stream if it was opened in write mode.

The function returns the number of uncompressed bytes actually read.

Errors: If Buffer points to an invalid location, or does not have enough room for Count bytes, an exception will be raised.

See also: Create (685), Write (686), Seek (686)

36.11.5 TGZFileStream.write

Synopsis: Write data to be compressed

Declaration: `function write(const buffer;count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Write` writes `Count` bytes from `Buffer` to the compressed file. The data is compressed as it is written, so ideally, less than `Count` bytes end up in the compressed file. Note that it is not possible to write to the stream if it was opened in read mode.

The function returns the number of (uncompressed) bytes that were actually written.

Errors: In case of an error, an `EZlibError` (679) exception is raised.

See also: `Create` (685), `Read` (685), `Seek` (686)

36.11.6 TGZFileStream.seek

Synopsis: Set the position in the compressed stream.

Declaration: `function seek(offset: LongInt;origin: Word) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Seek` sets the position to `Offset` bytes, starting from `Origin`. Not all combinations are possible, see `TDecompressionStream.Seek` (684) for a list of possibilities.

Errors: In case an impossible combination is asked, an `EZlibError` (679) exception is raised.

See also: `TDecompressionStream.Seek` (684)

36.11.7 TGZFileStream.destroy

Synopsis: Removes `TGZFileStream` instance

Declaration: `destructor destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` closes the file and releases the `TGZFileStream` instance from memory.

See also: `Create` (685)